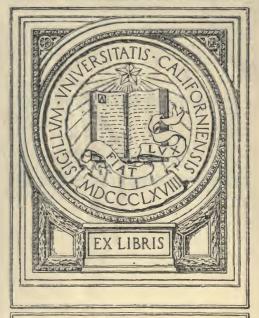


IN MEMORIAM J. Henry Senger







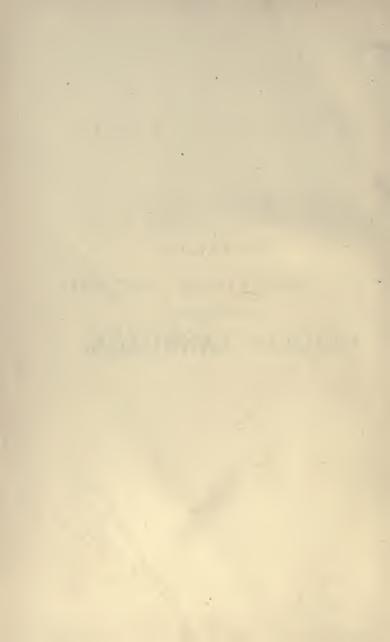
Digitized by the Internet Archive in 2007 with funding from Microsoft Corporation

HOSSFELD'S

NEW PRACTICAL METHOD

FOR LEARNING THE

GERMAN LANGUAGE.



HOSSFELD'S

NEW PRACTICAL METHOD

FOR LEARNING THE

GERMAN LANGUAGE.

BY

CH. BRENKMANN,

PROFESSOR OF THE GERMAN LANGUAGE,

CONTENTS.

- 1.—A complete Grammar, with explanatory Exercises and Vocabulary
- 2.—A German Reader (Prose and Poetry).
- 3.—One hundred pages of English-German Dialogues and of Commercial Correspondence.
- 4.—A Supplement, containing the Conjugation of German Verbs and an Alphabetical List of Irregular Verbs.

5.—A separate Key.

THE NEW YORK
SCHOOL BOOK CLEARING HOUSE.

No. 65 Duane Street.

NOW PUBLISHED BY

Arthur Hinds & Co. 4 Cooper Institute, M. Y. City.

IN MEMORIAM

Frag. J. Henry Senger

Uniform with this Work.

HOSSFELD'S FRENCH METHOD.

HOSSFELD'S SPANISH METHOD.

HOSSFELD'S ITALIAN METHOD.

KEYS TO EACH SEPARATE.

Copyright 1889.

849 B 837

CONTENTS.

(See also Index, page V.)

D 4		page
Preface	•••	1
The German Alphabet		4
German Alphabet for writing	6. P	5
Pronunciation of the vowels		6
" Exercise		7
" of consonants		8
" Exercise		9
Remarks on pronunciation, and emphasis in pronunci	iation	10
Division of Syllables, Capital letters, Signs of punctu	ation	11
Parts of Speech and their definition	11	-12
Gender, number, case		12
Exceptions to the rules of the declension of substantiv	ves 13	-17
Table of the declension of the article, etc	•••	18
Table of terminations of the four declensions		19
The article and the noun.—Definite Article. — First	de-	
clension of nouns	•••	20
Declension of the definite article.—Second declension	of	
nouns		24
Declension of the indefinite article.—Third declensi	on	28
Fourth declension of nouns		32
Nouns with prepositions	36	& 40
Declension of proper nouns		44
926682		

Determinative edications Dominator direction	Ind
Determinative adjectives.—Demonstrative adjectives.—Verbs used with negations	_ 48
Possessive adjectives.—Remarks on regular verbs	
Interrogative adjectives	56
Qualifying adjectives.—Their declension	60,64 & 68
Irregular verbs.—Remarks on their conjugation	68
Remarks on the declensions of adjectives	72
Comparison of adjectives	76
" (irregular).—Place of some wo	rds 80
Pronouns.—Personal pronouns	84
Reflective pronouns.—Place of personal pronouns	88
Possessive pronouns	
Demonstrative pronouns	96
Interrogative pronouns	100
Relative pronouns	104 & 108
Indefinite pronouns	112
Remarks on pronouns	116
Numerals	120122
Indefinite Numerals	126
Verbs.—Conjugation of verbs.—Auxiliary verbs.—Aux	κ-
iliary verbs of mood	
Regular verbs	131—133
Irregular verbs	
Compound verbs.—Separable verbs	
Verbs sometimes separable, sometimes inseparable	146 & 150
Classification of verbs.—Transitive verbs.—Passive ver	
Reflective verbs	
Intransitive verbs	
Impersonal verbs	166
Adverbs.—List of adverbs	170—171
Remarks on the adverbs and their position	172
Remarks on the adverbs.—Their comparison	176
Prepositions.—Lists	.180—181
Remarks on prepositions	182 & 186
Conjunctions. —Co-ordinative conjunctions	. 190
Subordinative conjunctions	194 & 198

Development of James (all properties and properties	ag e
Remarks on conjunctions (adverbs & prepositions) 198, 202, 206, 210 & 2	14
	14
Gender of nouns	
Formation of nouns by derivation 221—2	23
On the regular verbs 2	
Division of words into syllables 2	
SYNTAX 2	
The article and the noun 2	
Qualifying adjectives	
Pronouns and determinative adjectives 238 & 2	42
Numerals 242,246 & 2	
and numerals 2	54
Auxiliary verbs of mood 258-2	60
On Lassen and to like 2	64
On tenses and moods of verbs 2	
The infinitive and the present participle 2	72
Government of verbs 276 & 2	80
On the passive voice.—On es, there	84
Position of the object and the negation might in a sentence 2	89
APPENDIX 2	94
On the article and the noun 294—2	
On the preposition and the genitive of nouns297-2	98
On the qualifying adjective 2	98
On the qualifying adjective 22 On the declension of adjectives 298—2	99
On the pronouns, determinative adjectives and nu-	
merals 299—3	
On the verbs	
Agreement of verb and subject 3	
On separable verbs 3	
On to have 3	
On to be	
On to do 309—3	
On to make	11

	pay
On to get	311-319
On the cases (vocative, nominative, genitive, dative a accusative)	
Verbs governing the accusative in German and a p	re-
position in English	319
Remarks on the prepositions about, by, in	
Verbs with prepositions	320-328
Adjectives with prepositions	326-328
Instructions how to correspond in German with the	
of Hossfeld's Commercial Correspondent	329-34

Conjugation of the German Verbs, see Supplement at the end of the book.

INDEX.

A puge	After 210
Abbreviations XII	All 126, 246, 254, 301, 302
Aber (but) 198	All that 301
About 319	
Accusative 318	Alphabet (German) 4
Adjectives (Demonstrative) 48	" (German for writing) 5
" (Determinative)	Anderthalb, etc. (one and
48, 238, 254, 299	a half, etc.) 242
(T-+	Another 126, 250
, (Possessive)	Any 126, 246, 250
52, 238, 299, 302	Anybody, anything 112
,, (Qualifying) 230,298	Appendix 294
declension 60, 64, 68, 72, 298	Apposition 122, 226, 230
apposition 230	Article (Definite)
7	20, 24, 126, 226, 294, 295, 301
used as nouns 230	Article (Indefinite) 28, 226, 294
governingthe accusative 318 ,, the dative 234, 315 ,, the genitive 234, 313	As 206
,, the dative 234,315	
,, thegenitive 234,313	As as (not so as) 80, 206
, prepositions 234,326	At 182
(Lists of 170, 171	At all 172,303
Remarks on 172, 176, 198	Any at all 246
Fosition of 80, 172	(to) Ask 89, 262
Position of 80, 172 of interrogation not	(to) Avoid 112
of interrogation not used in direct questions 198	
	В
Adverbial expressions in the genitive 313	(to) Be 154, 259, 284, 309
-in the accusative 318	Before 206
III the accusative	200

Besides 202	Enough 126
Besides 202 Both 126, 254, 302	(to) Enter 72
But 198	©3 84, 166, 238, 284
By155, 186, 210, 319	
,	Euch 84 Euer (your) (Em.) 52, 302
C	Every 126, 246
Cases12, 312	Everybody, everyone 112, 126
Comparison(of adjectives) 76, 80	Everything 126
,, (of adverbs) 176	
Conjunctions (Co-ordinative)	\mathbf{F}
190	Few (a) 126
" (Subordinative)	Fond (to be fond of) 176
194, 198	For 186, 202
194, 198 ,, (Remarks on) 198	Former (The) 300
Could 258	From 186
D	100
D	G
Dadurch daß 210	Ganz (all, the whole of, etc.) 246
Damit, daran, etc. 84, 116	Gender 12
Dative 315	,, of nouns 218—220
Declensions (Tables of) 18, 19	(words having a
Dein (thy) 52	" (words having a double gender) … 221
Derfelbe, etc. 48, 96, 116 Divers 302	Gender of pronouns and adjectives referring to
Divers 302	adjectives referring to
(to) Do 133, 146, 309	nouns 254, 303
Du (thou) 52, 84	Genitive 297, 313
Dürfen (to be allowed)	" of personal pro-
64, 130, 260	nouns 84, 303 (to) Get 264, 311
E	Gentlemen 300
© (elided) 52, 60, 72, 76, 84	H
Each 126, 302	Haben (to have)
Each other 112, 238	20, 28, 36, 40, 44, 130
Either 250	
Either or 190	Half (the) 122, 246 (to) Have 258, 264, 308
Emphasis (or stress in pronunciation) 10	He (him, her) who 108
	() 100

page

page

page	page
Her, hers, his 52, 92	Letters (Capital) 11
\$10th (high) 72	(to) Like 176, 264
However 190, 214	Little (A) 126, 302
	Loben (to praise) 32, 36, 40, 44
I	Longer (Any, not any
lf 206	longer) 250
	Lost (To be lost) 307
Shr (your), ihr (you, their) 52,84	
In 186, 320 Judem 210	M
	Madam, 300
Infinitive without 311 130, 272, 304	(to) Make 264, 310
,, with zu 133, 272, 305	Many 80, 126, 302
,, with um zu 304	Many (a), many a man 126
,, with tim 3tt 304	May, might 260, 304
,, used as substantive 272	(to) Meet 85, 162
Infinitive with an ac-	Mine (of mine, etc.) 92, 238
cusative after verbs	Mögen (may, to like) 64, 130, 260
expressing a know- ledge, wish, command 305	Moods of verbs 130, 132, 133, 268
Infinitive after words of	More 80, 126, 250
interrogation 305	Most 80, 126
Interjections 214	Much 80, 126, 302
Inversion 288	Müssen (to be obliged) 56,130,258
It 84, 116	My 52
It 84,116 It is I, etc 84	
Its 52, 92	N
Its 52, 92 Just 172	Negations (Verbs used
	with negations) 48
K	Neither (not either) 250
Rönnen (to be able) 56, 130, 258	Neither nor 190
, , , , , ,	Nicht (not) (Position of) 48, 289
L	No (not any, not a) 53, 126
Ladies, ladies and gentlemen 300	Nobody (not anybody) 112
Lassen (to let, to leave, etc.) 264	Nominative 312
Last (The last but one, etc.) 242	None (no one) 126
Latter (The) 300	Nothing (not anything) 112
Lest 214	Not only but also 190
at a	100

pa	ige		po	age
Nouns (Declension of)		One	72, 112, 122, 12	26
20, 24, 28, 3	32	One anot	her (each other) 1	12
" (Declension of	75	One's (on	e's self) 88, 24	42
proper) 44, 230, 29	90			72
Nouns (Exceptions to rules of declension)	13		he)48, 96, 19	26
	17		me or other) 24	
,, (Use of the plural			52,5	
of synonomous words)	17			
Nouns (Plural not used		etc.)	his, of her own, 25	38
in the singular) 29	96			
Nouns (used in the sin-			P	
gular or plural) 29	96	Participle	(Past)	
Nouns formed by deri-			52, 131, 154, 30	07
vation 22	112	,,		•
Nouns (Derivative or		iliary v	verbs of mood 64, 13	30
Compound) 29	96		e(Present) 210,272,30	
Nouns expressing meas-			es used as ad-	
ure, number, weight			72, 25	30
226, 295, 296, 31	- 1	Parts of	Speech	11
Nouns in apposition 22			26	
" (Genitive of) 29	37		oice 154, 284, 313, 31	
,, in the Dative and	0		11	
Accusative (position) 80, 28 Nouns in the Accusative 31			e 20, 238, 24	
	i		ons(Nouns with) 36,4	
	2	_	(Lists) 18	
Numbers (Cardinal used substantively) 30	0		(Remarks on)	
Numbers (Ordinal in ap-		"	182, 186, 198, 31	
position) 12	22		(Position) 18	
Numerals	-	Pronouns		
120, 126, 242, 254, 29	9	"	(Correlative) 10	
			(Demonstrative)	
0		"	(Indefinite) 11	12
Object (position) 28	19	-	(Interrogative) 10	00
Of 40, 100, 122, 226, 29	7	"	(Personal) 84,238,30	
Ohne (without) 11		_99	" (Position)88,28	
Ohne daß 21		"	(Reflective) 88, 23	
On 18		"	(Relative) 104, 25	
-		11	(100100176) 104, 20	*

page	page T
Pronouns (Use of pronouns by a monarch) 302	
	(to) Take 266, 270
Punctuation (Signs of) 11	Tenses of verbs 130, 268
(to) Put 266, 270	That (those) 48, 96, 108, 116
~	,, (relative) 104
S	" (conjunction) 210
Same (The) 48, 96	" which 108
" (The very) 300	,, (those, they) who 108
Sein (to be) 24,28,36,40,44,130	Their, theirs 52, 92
Self (myself, etc.) 88, 112	Then 202
(to) Send 146	The one 242
Several 126	The one
Shall 60	1110 111 0110
She who 108	I HCIC (CD)
Should 259, 304	There is, there are 166
Sie (you) 84	They 84, 112
Since 206	Them 84, 116
Sir 300	(to) Think 146, 266
Sp 214	This (these) 48, 96, 116, 171
Sollen (shall, ought) 60, 130, 259	Though (although) 206
Some 126, 246, 302	Thy, thine 52, 92
Somebody, some one 112, 126	To 40, 56, 133, 182, 210
Something 112	Together 172
Still 202	Too 202
Subject'(Position)	Two (beide) 302
80, 133, 190, 194, 288	
,, (Agreement of verb and subject) 307	U
verb and subject) 307	um zu 210, 304
Subjunctive	Unless 214
133, 138, 206, 214, 268, 304 Substantive (see Noun)	
Substitutes of the article 60, 64	
Such 48,96	Various 302
Such as 300	Verb (Agreement of verb
Sundry 302	and subject) 307
Syllables (Division) 11,224	Verbs (List of) see Part 14
Syntax 225	" (Classification) 154
C) IIIOAA	,,

page	page
Verbs (Transitive) 154,280,318	Vocative 312
,, (Passive)154,284,313,314	Vowels (Pronunciation) 6
" (Reflective) 158	
" (Intransitive) 162, 318	W
" (Impersonal) 166, 317	Wer (which of) 242
" (Conjugation) 130	
" (Auxiliary) 130	Werden (to become 130
" (Auxiliary of mood)	What, what kind (sort) of 56, 100, 242, 300
56, 60, 64, 130, 258	
Verbs (Compound) 142	Whatever, whatsoever 303
" (Separable and in-	Whatever (any whatever) 246
separable) 142, 146, 150, 308	When 202
Verbs (Regular) 52, 131, 223	Which 56, 100, 104, 300
" (Irregular) 68,138	Who, whose, whom 100, 104
" (Tenses and moods)	Whoever, whosoever 303
130, 268	Whole 126
" governing the Nom-	Wievielte (Der) 301
inative 24, 276, 312	Will 60
Verbs governing the Gen-	With 186
itive 276, 314 Verbs governing the Da-	Without 181, 210
tive 276, 280, 316	Wollen (to be willing, to
Verbs governing the Ac-	wish) 60, 130, 259
cusative 24, 280, 318	Womit, woran, etc. 100, 116
Verbs governing the Ac-	Would 259
cusative in German and	
a preposition in English 319	Y
Verbs governing preposi-	
tions 280, 320	Yes (body) 288
Verbs (Position) 36, 40, 64, 80,	Yet 170, 202
104, 133, 190, 194, 198, 288	Your 52
Verbs (Remarks) 288, 304	Yours 92

PREFACE.

THE SUCCESS attending the publication of Hossfeld's Methods for acquiring the modern languages (first issued by The Society for Promoting Knowledge of Foreign Languages, London), has been almost phenomenal. One million copies of the series, comprising the German, French, Spanish and Italian Methods, have been issued to meet the demand during the eight years of their publication.

To meet the requirements of a school method as well as of a practical method for those who desire to study privately (either with or without an instructor), the publishers have issued the New Practical Method for Learning the German Language.

The book is divided into 63 lessons, each of which generally consists of 4 pages.

The first page is devoted to Grammar;

The second contains Exercises on the Rules and Verbs given on the opposite page;

The third gives Questions on the same Rules, destined for pupils who are preparing for an examination where they will have to answer similar questions; and also Conversations in which these rules are illustrated;

The fourth page consists always of a graduated Reading Exercise, which must not only be read aloud, but also translated with the help of the indications given either between the lines, or at the end of the page.

In this order of study, the German language is taught as it is actually spoken and used, and not as many of the German grammars make it out to be. The reading matter is well selected, familiarizing the pupil with such idioms as are most essential. The lessons are carefully graded, beginning with short and distinct

sentences. Lists of idioms are dry and soon forgotten by the pupil; but when framed in useful conversation or pleasant anecdotes they make a stronger impression on the mind, and remain fixed in the memory.

The Reading Exercises are, at first, accompanied by interlinear translations, giving a clear idea of German thought and expression, in direct contrast with the English. The interlinear translations are gradually superseded by references to footnotes, giving only the translation of the new and hitherto unused words, or their derivatives. This method, while interesting, is stimulating to the student to exercise the knowledge already gained. The entire work, including ten pages of contents and a convenient index, and an appendix, contains over 375 pages. The appendix comprises the principal rules already given in the Exercises, supplemented by others, which, while of no vital importance, are useful and very convenient for those who desire to study the language thoroughly. It contains also sixteen pages of forms for commercial correspondence, together with the conjugations of the German verbs, and a list of irregular verbs.

We specially recommend to Instructors the use of the Keys, printed on single leaves of strong paper—one lesson on each leaf. One of these leaves is to be given to each pupil after the exercises have been worked out, so that he may himself see and correct the mistakes (if any) he has made. This having been done, the corrected exercises and the key should be returned to the instructor for revision.

The correction by the pupil himself has been proved to be one of the most successful features of this method; it compels him to go a second time over his work, and by this means the mistakes he has made are vividly brought before him. As a result, the same mistakes are less likely to recur, and the teacher will be spared a long, tedious, and relatively fruitless work.

Explanation of the Abbreviations used in this book.

A., Acc., Accus.,—Accusative.
Adj.—Adjective.
Adv.—Adverb.
Conj.,—Conjunction.
D., Dat.—Dative.
Decl.—Declension or declined.
D. l.—Declined like.
Ex.—Example(s).
F., Fem.—Feminine.
G., Gen., Genit.—Genitive.
Gen.—Gender.
Imp.—Impersonal.
Intr.—Irregular.

M., Masc. - Masculine.

N., Neut.—Neuter.
N., Nom.—Nominative.
P.—Page.
Perf.—Perfect.
Pl., Plur.—Plural.
Press.—Present.
Refl.—Reflective.
Reg.—Regular.
S.—See.
Sing.—Singular.
Subj.—Subjunctive.
Trans.—Transitive or Translate.
* before a verb, like *gepen, *tommen, etc., means that the verb is conjugated with fein.

The following Works are issued for use in conjunction u this Grammar, and will be found of great assistance facilitating the study of the German Language:—	
KEY to the Exercises in Hossfeld's German Grammar	6d.
HOSSFELD'S GERMAN READER, on an entirely new plan This book contains a selection of letters written by the	2s.

This book contains a selection of letters written by the most eminent personages of this century: Prince Bismarck, Count Moltke, the late German Emperors, Baron Stein, and others. A new feature in this work is the letters written by eminent women whose names are household words in Germany.

HOSSFELD'S				
CORRESPON	NDENT; or, th	ne art of	composing	any
mercantile le	etter in either	German or	English	(vide
page 327 of th	is Grammar)			2s.

HOSSFELD'S GERMAN DICTIONARY, 766 pages ... 2s.

GERMAN EXERCISES AND IDIOMS, by Prof. Carl Mengel, containing the Idioms and Exercises thereon 2s. 6d. This Work will be found indispensable to students wishing to gain more than a superficial knowledge of the German Language.

FIRST DIVISION.

ELEMENTARY.

THE GERMAN ALPHABET

The German Alphabet consists of 26 letters, which are as follows:

а—А а	ah	9 п-N п	enn
в—В в	beh	D 0-0 0	oh
с—С с	tseh	№ р—Р р	peh
b—D d	deh	Q q—Q q	kooh
е—Е е	eh	% r—R r	airr
f—F f	eff	ess—Ss	ess
g—G g	gheh'	T t—T t	teh
ӈ —Н һ	hah	u u—U u	ooh
i—I i	ee .	B v—V v	fow
j—J j	yott	23 w—W w	veh
₹—K k	kah	ж г —х х	iks
ı—L l	ell	2) n-Y y	ipsillon
m—M m	emm	3 3-Z z	tsett
	6—B b c—C c b—D d c—E e f—F f g—G g h—H h i—I i j—J j f—K k I—L l	b—B b beh c—C c tseh b—D d deh c—E e eh f—F f eff g—G g gheh h—H h hah i—I i ee i—J j yott f—K k kah I—L l ell	b—B b beh c—C c tseh b—D d deh c—E e eh f—F f eff g—G g gheh i—I i ee i—J j yott t—K k kah I—L l ell D o—O o R p—P p D q—Q q R r—R r S s T t—T t U u D w—V v M w—W w X x—X x J y y—Y y

NOTE.—The student will observe that the outlines of several of these letters are very similar; we recommend him to take particular notice of the distinguishing differences between—

The Vowels are:

All the remaining letters of the Alphabet are Consonants.

The Modified Vowels are:

A a, D ö, Ü ü. Old form Ae, De, Ue.

The Double Vowels are:

aa, ee, oo.

The Diphthongs are:

Mi ai (an), Gi ei (en), Au au, Gu eu, Au au.

The Compound Consonants are:

d, ds, ng, d, pf, ph, qu, fd, fp, ft, B, th. dt, .

The Double Consonants are:

ff, II, mm, rr, &c.

GERMAN ALPHABET FOR WRITING. Deutsche Schreibschrift.

aa Lb Lr Di Ma, Aa Bb, Bb Cc, Cc Db, Dd Ge, Ee If Gy Gf Fi Jj F, f, Ff Gg, Gg Sh, Hh Ji, Ii Si, Ji Dk Ll Min Un . Rf, Kk Ll, Mi, Mm An, Nn Co De Gy Ru Ups Do, Oo Pp, Pp Qq, Qq Rr, Rr Sfs, Ss It Win No Men Tt, Tt Uu, Uu Bv, V v Bw, Ww de My Zz of ok ff Xx, Xx Dy, Yy B3, Zz dy, ch d, ck ff, ff pl fly å å å ß, sz g, tz ä, ä ö, ö ü, t

PRONUNCIATION.

Simple Vowels.

- a sounds like a in far Laden, Kragen, rar; but it has a shorter sound in—bald, Blatt, fallen.
- e has an open and a close sound;

if open it sounds like a in rare—ber, wer; but shorter in Welt, Felb;

if close like ey in abbey—ben, wen; but shorter in benn, wenn; it sounds like e in father or e in begin, when occurring in a final syllable or in an unaccented prefix; as in—Naje, Laben, Fabel, labend, Alter, bedanken, Gesell, entfam;

it is mute after i (vide i).

- i (h) if long sounds like ee in been-mir, Bier, Lieb; if short like i in mill-Bild, Mitte, Wind, Myrte.
- o if long sounds like o in tone—Hof, Ioben, Ton; if short like o in rock—Gold, kommen, Sonne.
- u if long sounds like oo in moon—Bruber, gut, rufen; if short like u in full—Bruft, Butter, Hund.

Simple Vowels Modified.

- ä if long sounds like ea in bear—Bär, Bäber, Läben; if short like a in ham—Kämme, Männer, fällt.
- ö if long sounds similar to the e in her—lösen, Königin, Köbel; if short similar to the u in but—Götter, Hönlen.
- ii having no equivalent in the English language must be heard from the master. The easiest way to get at the sound is to pronounce the ee in been with rounded lips:
 - it is long in-Bügel, Bute, Bruber, über, Rube;
 - it is short in-füllen, Gunde, Butte, muffen, Muller.

Double Vowels.

- aa & oo sound like the simple a or o, but always long; as in
 —Baar, Saal, Boot, Soole.
- ee follows the same rule, but has only the sound of ey in abbey; as in—Meer, See, Seele.

Compound Vowels or Diphthongs.

- ai (an), ei (en) sound like i in wine, but ei is a little closer than ai; as in—Main, Mai, Saite, Seite, bein, Eile.
- an sounds similar to ou in house; as in—blan, Haus.
- äu & en sound similar to oy in boy; as in-Braute, Saute, neu, Saule, freuen, heute.

Pronunciation Exercise.

REMARKS ON PRONUNCIATION.

The Emphasis (or Stress) is on the first syllable except the word begins with one of the prefixes

be, ge, er, ber, zer, emp, ent

in which case the second syllable has the stress.

All vowels have a long sound except when followed by two or more consonants, when they become short; vowels followed by h or th are long.

Vowels before \$ or \$ are sometimes long, sometimes short.

Words with the simple Vowels a, e, i (y), o, n.

Mar, Fall, wen, wenn, wer, hell, Ente, begegnen, Bier, Mitte, Ton, Gold, Bruder, Butter, Myrte, enden, dir, matt, Mutter, Glas, entkam, Bild, Ball, Ernte, tief, Konne, Wagen, nun, tragen, Nest, Kof, bald, lesen, labend, Miter, Kamun, Negel, Matte, Bogen, Syrup, rusen, Gesell, mir, Herr, Regen, Kose, sommen, gut, Kippe, sagen, Brille, Vlatt, beben, Lied, Ioben, Horn, Gras, Berg, Dose, Gunst, Gott, Fett, Fabel, Hud, Segel, Nad, Kind, Brust, Sonne, Bett, Laden, Brod, Aragen, tadeln.

Words with the modified Vowels a, v, ii.

Bär, Kämme, lösen, Hödle, Bügel, füllen, Pöbel, Mässe, Kübe, Bäber, können, für, Sünde, Mörder, hüten, brüllen, Götter, fällt, trübe, Hände, Müge, Hüte, Öfen, Männer, Königin, Hüte, Möbel, bändigen, Gemüse, Übel, Gärten, Löffel, Hülfe, Läden, über.

Words with the double Vowels an, ee, oo.

Paar, Meer, Boot, Heer, Moor, Aal, Loos, Raa, Alee, Lootje, Saal, Seele, Waare, Soole, Moos, Beere, Aas, Beet, baar, See, Haar.

Words with the compound Vowels or Diphthongs ai (an*), ei (en*), au, äu, eu.

Saite, Seite, blau, Bräute, heute, Bein, Laie, aus, Feige, betäuben, freuen, Laib, taub, Reis, Raifer, Baum, dein, Säute, faufen, Eile, Baiern (Bayern), neu, Fäuste, bei, leugnen, Main, Geist, Eule, Trauer, Mai, Feile, Hain, Laub, Beil, Freude, Bauer, klein, kaum, fein, Säule, laufen, Mais, heim, Leute, rein, Hain, Naum, mein, braun, Rain, Hau, Maibaum, Haus, Treue, Bäume, Auge, Beh, Räuber, Meher, Laute.

^(*) at and et occur only in a few proper names.

Simple Consonants.

Consonants are in general pronounced as in English, except:

- c before ä, e, i, h, sounds like ts—Căjar, Centner, Cicero, Chlinder g sounds always like g in garden — Garten, Georg, liegen, Königin; but g after i sounds slightly like d, (vide d), if the
- g is not followed by a vowel—fertig, Fertigkeit, König.

 4 at the beginning of a word or syllable is aspirated like h in home—haben, erheben, lebhaft, Freiheit; it is mute after a vowel,—Bahn, lehren, roh.

i sounds like y in yes-ja, Jatob, jung.

t is never silent before n-Anabe, Anie.

f sounds like the s in see, son-Sie, Sohn, Bafe.

\$ (s final) like the ss in glass-Saus, lispeln.

t followed by i and another vowel (in words derived from the Latin) is pronounced as ts—Nation, Patient; but it retains its proper sound in words ending in tie—Aristotratie, Diplomatie.

v sounds like f-Bater, Bulver, vergeffen.

w sounds like v in velvet-Bein, mer, erwarten.

3 sounds like ts-Berg, Beit, gu, erzählen.

Compound Consonants.

th has the sound of the Scotch ch in loch—Loch, Buch, leicht; it sounds like k at the beginning of words—Chior, Chrift.

hs sounds like x-Fuchs, Lachs, Wachs.

ng sounds always like ng in singer—Finger, singen, lang, Junge. pf sounds like p and f pronounced in one sound—Ropf, Vserd.

ph is pronounced like f-Phosphor, Photograph.

qu is pronounced like kv in English-Qual, quer, bequem.

ich sounds like sh in ship-Schiff, Fisch, herrschen.

ip and ft at the beginning of a word or its root sound like a slight shp and sht — Spiel, iprechen, Boripiel, versprechen, stehen, staunen, entstehen, erstaunlich;

but otherwise ip and it sound as in English—ift, beriten.

(called ess-tsett) has the sound of ss and is used instead of if at the end of a word or syllable, before t, and after compound vowels—Fing, miglid, bewußt, heißen.

th and bt sound always like t-Than, roth, rathen, Stadt, tödten.

to stands instead of z after a simple vowel-

Plat, Rate, schäten, siten.

Double Consonants.

ff, M, mm, rr, &c., are pronounced like the simple f, l, m, r, &c., but cause the preceding vowel to have a short sound —Lamm, Schiff, können, ftatt, voll.

Pronunciation Exercise.

Words with the Simple Consonants.

Cäsar, Cicero, Garten, liegen, Königin, König, haben, lebhaft, Freiheit, Bahn, erhöhen, ja, Jakob, Kunbe, Knie, Sie, Base, Haus, Nation, Aristokratie, Bater, Gevatter, Wein, erwarten, Herz, Beit, gesund, sorgen, Glas, Better, Habe, Gesundheit, wer, zwei, säumig, Citrone, Knoten, Jude, Lob, Hahn, Wand, Georg, Centner, wenig, schu, Gans, Herbst, Holz, Portion, Knall, Zahn, Chlinder, Fertigkeit, vergessen, bald, Heller, Ruhm, jeder, geben, Abzug, Wurm, Rose, Station, jung, Knabe, Diplomatie, Feld, zu, Pulver, geliebt, gehen, Ceder, Ziege, Jahr, mehren, kneten, Sohn, roh, erheben, halb, erzählen, wollen, Suppe, verloren, lispeln, Mehl, Benetianer, grob, wild, Gehör, Zehe, Knappe, gereizt, Honig, Jubel, Wille, Patient, sertig, Art, Zwiebel, versertigen.

Words with the Compound and Double Consonants.

Loch, wachen, China, Bachs, Finger, fliden, Sad, Ropf, Pferd, Phosphor, Qual, Schiff, Spiel, Boripiel, staunen, erstaunlich, ift. lispeln, Fluß, bewußt, Thau, Stadt, Blat, figen, Lamm, ftatt. Bach, seicht, Pflege, Afche, Thor, fing, Spaß, Spatz, läßt, Pflock, Dutend, Rif, fist, bruden, Buch, fteden, Berfted, Lachs, herrichen, roth, Glaschen, nicht, rauchern, berften, fteben, entfteben. heißen, schätzen, Hecht, Fächer, nachschlagen, Pfarrer, pfeifen, Theil, Verrath, mischen, Fuß, Fußboden, Netz, Sprache, Aussprache, leicht, Chlor, fingen, Ontel, Pflange, Photograph, bequem, Pfeil, Pfennig, Sang, Müte, suchen, Milch, Tifch, voll, miglich, Drache, Ddis, Bfiff, Angel, Rog, Sat, faß, Stod, Spazierftod, paden, Rauch, leuchten, lang, Fuchs, tobten, ich, Teich, beden, quer. rathen, können, bezahlen, Anecht, Besuch, trant, Christ, boch, Nachen, Rate, fprechen, Thier, Geficht, Recht, thun, Bunge, Rechen, Rod, Löcher, Licht, pflüden, Ding, Ueberfluß, ichuten, Bücher, muß, Ribe, wichtig, Chaos, pfanben, ichaffen, Sproß, Stall, Genuß, erwachen, Gedicht, Ruß, Pfeife, schlecht, pechschwarz, Pflafter, Stich, Ruß, Laich, Tage, Masse, fpannen, Flachs, bag, hangen, Thee, Pforte, Dienft, ftopfen, reichen, Bag, Rlingel, Bferch, Sache.

REMARKS ON PRONUNCIATION.

- b and b at the end of a word or syllable (when not followed by a vowel) sound more like p and t as in halb, Sanbiduh, Bad, lebhaft.
- Consonants and vowels in words of French derivation keep their original pronunciation; as in—Sauce, Rage, Journal, Servictte, Chocolabe, &c.; but it is well to dispense with the use of such words where possible.
- ie, iel, ien in some names of persons, plants, countries and their derivatives, are pronounced as separate syllables, thus—i-e, i-el, i-en; as in—Julie, Daniel, Afazie, Spanien, &c., also in Familie(*), Actie, Arie, Bestie, Furie, Reliquie, etc.

The following words must always be pronounced short: ab, am, an, bis, bes, im, in, man, ob, um, bom, bon, was, weg, zu, zum, and a few others.

Emphasis (or Stress) in Pronunciation.

The Emphasis (or Stress) in words of more than one syllable is always on the first—Feber, Feuer, Dinte, englisch, ichreiben, frenen.

Except when the first syllable is one of the following unaccented prefixes—be, ge, er, ver, zer, emp, ent; in which case the second syllable has the stress; as in—Besudy, Gesahr, erleben, verderben, zerbrechen, Empsang, entlansen.

In compound words there is more stress on the first word than on the second; as—Hutmacher, Hausthüre, Sonnenstrahlen, Regenjährm.

On the second syllable are accented all words formed with ba, her, hin, wo, and a preposition; as—bamit, herbei, hinauf, wozu, also all adverbs beginning with zu, as—zurüd, zugleich, zuwider, &c.

Words ending in ei have the stress more on this syllable; as—Arzenei, Reiterei.

Words of foreign origin(†) have generally the stress on the last syllable; as—Monarch, Natur, Soldat, Philosoph, &c.

Verbs in iren and ieren have the stress on the i and ie; as-halbiren, spazieren.

^(*) The nouns in which the s after i is sounded, have the stress on the vowel preceding is.

^(†) We shall always indicate where the stress is required in words of foreign derivation by printing the vowels in thick letters or in italics.

Division of Syllables.

Syllables are formed in German pretty much on the same rules as in English; they commence, if possible, always with a consonant, and if there are two consonants they are divided.

Capital Letters.

In German as in English capital letters are used at the beginning of a sentence. Further, all words used as nouns begin with a capital letter, and also the pronouns—Sie (you), and 3hr (your); but ich (I) only takes a capital at the beginning of a sentence.

Signs of Punctuation.

These signs are the same as in English, except the hyphen. which is marked in German thus (:).

Parts of Speech.

There are ten parts of Speech in the German language viz: the Article, das Geschlechtswort; the Noun, das Hauptwort; the Adjective, das Gigenschaftswort; the Pronoun, das Fürwort; the Numeral, das Zahltvort; the Verb, das Zeitwort; the Adverb, das Umstandswort; the Preposition, das Borwort; the Conjunction, das Bindewort, and the Interjection, der Empsindungslaut.

DEFINITION OF THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

The ARTICLE (bas Geschlechtswort) is a word put before nouns to limit or define their application; as, the man, ber Mann; the woman, bie Frau; the house, bas haus; a man, ein Mann; a woman, eine Frau; a house, ein Haus.

A Noun (ein Sauptwort) is the name of anything which exists, or which we can conceive to exist, whether material or immaterial; as, man, Mann; house, Haus; virtue, Tugenb.

The Adjective (bas Eigenschaftswort) is a word added to a noun, either to mark its quality or to distinguish it more accurately; as,

the good child, das gute Rind; the man is tall, ber Mann ift groß.

A PRONOUN (ein Fürwort) is a word used instead of a

noun; as, he (John) is rich, er (Johann) ist reich.

The Numeral (bas Bahiwort) is a word used to indicate quantity; it is generally used with the noun like an adjective; as, the three pears, bie brei Birnen; How many apples have you? Bie viele Apiel haben Sie? I have two, in habe zwei.

The VERB (bas Beitwort) is a word by which we affirm-1. What anything does; 2. What is done to it; 3. In what

state it exists; as,

the boy plays, ber Knabe spielt; the boy was beaten, ber Knabe wurde geschlagen;

the boy sleeps, ber Anabe fchläft.

An Advers (ein Umstandswort) is a word which modifies a verb, an adverb, or an adjective; as,

he writes well, er schreibt gut;

he will be here soon, er wird balb hier fein;

my sister is much prettier, meine Schwester ift viel ichoner.

The Preposition (bas Bormort) serves to show the relation of a noun or pronoun to some other word in the sentence; as the book is on the table, bas Buch ist auf dem Tische; he sat behind me, er sas hinter mir.

A CONJUNCTION (cin Binbemort) is a word which serves to connect the different parts of an enlarged sentence; as, John and Jacob went out yesterday, Johann und Jafob gin-

gen gestern aus;

I cannot come, because I am ill, ich kann nicht kommen, weil ich krank bin.

The Interjection (ber Empfinbungslaut) is a word which expresses any sudden desire or violent emotion; as,

Hush! you will wake the child, Still! Sie werden das Kind

aufwecken;

alas! all is lost, ach! Alles ist verloren.

Gender.

In German, as in English, there are three genders, the

masculine, the feminine and the neuter.

Words referring to males are generally masculine and those referring to females are generally feminine, but words representing inanimate objects, which in English are neuter, may be in German, either masculine, feminine or neuter, but no fixed rules can be given to determine the gender.

We earnestly advise students never to use a noun without ascertaining the gender, and to fix it in the mind by placing the proper article before it. Those who act upon this advice will save themselves much trouble which the learning of genders would

otherwise cause.

Number.

There are two numbers in German—the *singular* which is used for one person or thing—the *plural* which is used for more than one.

Case.

The German Declensions have four cases: the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative; three of them, viz., the Nominative, Genitive (called also Possessive), and Accusative (called also Objective), are employed as in English: that is to say, the Nominative points to the subject of the verb, the Accusative to its object, and the Genitive indicates possession. The Dative is generally equivalent to the English objective with the preposition to preceding.

Declension of Nouns or Substantives.

In the German language substantives are declined, and this declension is generally based upon the gender and the termination of the word

to be declined.

We divide the German Nouns or Substantives into four Classes or Declensions, (*) as is shown in the following classification into Declensions, exceptions included.—The pages 13 to 17 are intended for reference only, as all the principal rules are given again in the lessons, together with numerous exercises on them. The exceptions, however, are not repeated in the Grammar to the lessons, as we hold that if this be done the principal rules can neither be sufficiently treated, nor the exceptions mastered, and it is our practice to bring the usual exceptions. hereafter in the vocabulary, this being the best plan to acquire them. thoroughly and with the least trouble.

REMARKS ON THE DECLENSION OF NOUNS.

1. The inflection of the cases of a noun is based on the nominative of the singular; thus, if the noun take a termination in the singular or plural this termination is added to the nominative of the singular.

2. In the dative of the plural all declinable German words which

do not end in n in the plural, add n.

FIRST DECLENSION.

THE FIRST DECLENSION comprises all feminine nouns; they do not change in the singular, in the plural they add en; those ending in e, el, er add n only, and those in in double the n before adding en.

Exception 1. Feminine nouns in nig(**) and fat, of which there are only a few, and seldom used in the plural, add e only in the plural, and change the β into fi; as,
bit Remitting, the knowledge Plural: bit Remitting bit Trūbfat the affliction ,, bit Trūbfate

Exception 2.—Die Mutter, the mother, and die Tochter, the daughter, are in the plural die Mütter, die Töchter.

Exception 3. The following feminine nouns (mostly of one syllable)

and their derivatives(†) add e in the plural, and modify the vowel:

die Ausflucht, the evasion die Hand, the hand die Hant, the skin die Braut, the bride die Braut, the bride die Kraft, the strength die Kuh, the cow die Bank, the bench die Braut, the bride die Brust, the breast die Faust, the fist die Feuersbrunst, the conflagration die Frucht, the fruit die Gans, the goose die Gruft, the vault

die Kunst, the art die Laus, the louse die Luft, the air die Lust, the desire die Magd, the maid-servant die Macht, the power

die Maus, the mouse die Nacht, the night die Nuss, the nut die Sau, the sow die Schnur, the string die Stadt, the town, city die Wand, the wall

die Wurst, the sausage die Zunft, the guild die Zusammenkunft, the meeting

Plural: bie Ausflüchte, bie Merte, bie Braute, etc.

The Plurals of die Anglt, the anxiety (anguish) & die Noth, the need, occur in the dative in some expressions like: in Anglten, in Adthen.

(**) According to a new orthography the nouns in his are spelled now sometimes his, plural as above hise.

(†) Derivatives are declined like the nouns from which they are derived; this is

of course the case in all the following rules and exceptions.

^(*) This division into classes or declensions is quite arbitrary, as some grammarians take 2, some 3, 4, 5, or even 7 declensions. Therefore a student must not only know to which declension a word belongs, but carefully learn how words of such gender, and such termination form their cases.

SECOND DECLENSION.

THE SECOND DECLENSION comprises all masculine and neuter nouns ending in el, en, er, and the neuters in e and lein; they add s in the genitive singular, and do not change in the plural except in the dative, when those ending in e, el, er, add n.

EXCEPTION 1. The following nouns (all masculine except bas Riofter.) modify their vowels in the plural:

der Acker, the field
der Apfel, the apple
der Boden, the ground
der Bruder, the brother
der Faden, the thread
der Garten, the garden
der Graben, the ditch
der Hafen, the port, harbo

1	CIL	prarar.
ı	der	Hammel, the wether
	der	Hammer, the hammer
	der	Handel, the bargain
١	der	Laden, the shop
	das	Kloster, the cloister
	der	Kragen, the collar
	der	Magen, the stomach
	der	Mangel the mont

der Mantel, the cloak
der Nagel, the nail
der Ofen, the stove
der Sattel, the saddle
der Schnabel, the beak
der Schwager, the brother-in
der Vater, the father -law
der Vogel, the bird

Plural: bie Bruber, bie Garten, bie Defen, etc.

EXCEPTION 2. The following masculine nouns (and two neuter nouns in e) add n in the plural:

das Auge, the eye der Baier, the Bavarian der Bauer, the peasant das Ende, the end

der Kaffer, the Kaffir der Muskel, the muscle

der Gevatter, the godfather der Pantoffel, the slipper der Hummer, the lobster der Pommer, the Pomeranian der Stachel, the sting der Vetter, the cousin

Plural: bie Augen, bie Baiern

THIRD DECLENSION.

THE THIRD DECLENSION comprises 1. all masculine nouns ending in e which add n in all cases of the singular and plural; 2. all masculine nouns of foreign origin (accented on the last syllable), referring to persons, which do not end in l, n, r; they add en in all cases of the singular or plural.

Like the nouns under Number 2 are declined :-

a. All other masculine nouns of foreign origin ending in ant and graph (i. e. those referring to animals and things) and all masculine nouns in ar, which are names of nations; as,

der Elephant, the elephant, ber Telegraph, the telegraph, der Magnar, the Magyar, etc:

Plural: die Elephanten, die Telegraphen, die Magharen.

b. The following masculine nouns of foreign origin which do not belong to those under 2 and a:

der Corsar, the corsair der Husar, the husar der Janitschar, the Janis-der Rebell, the rebel SULTY

der Subaltern, the subaltern | der Veteran, the reteran

der Tyrann, the tyrant der Uhlan, the uhlan der Vasall, the vassal

and a few more which are seldom used.

Plural: bie Corfaren, bie Rometen etc:

c. The following masculine nouns mostly of one syllable:

der Held, the hero der Hirt(*), the herdsman der Mensch, the man der Mohr, the negro der Ahn, the ancestor der Prinz, the prince der Schultheiss, the mayer der Bär, the bear der Christ, the christian der Spatz, the sparrow der Fink, the finch der Fürst, the prince der Geck, the fop der Graf, the count der Steinmetz, the stoneder Narr, the fool der Ochs,(*) the ox der Pfau(**), the peacock cutter der Thor, the fool der Vorfahr, the ancestor

and a few more which are seldom used.

Plural: bie Ahnen, bie Baren, etc.

EXCEPTION 1. The following masculine nouns in e (formerly ending in en) add in the Genitive singular ns instead of n:

der Friede, the peace der Glaube, the faith der Haufe, the heap der Same, the seed der Funke, the spark der Gedanke, the thought der Schade, the damage der Name, the name der Wille, the will

Genitive sing .: bes Friedens, bes Funtens, etc.

EXCEPTION 2. Der Raje, (†) the cheese, follows the second declension.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION comprises all masculine and neuter nouns which do not belong to the second and third declensions (i. e. most nouns not ending in e, el, en, er, lein, and all foreign masculine and neuter nouns, except the masculines referring to persons, which do not end in l, n, r.); they take es or s in the genitive and generally e in the dative of the singular; in the plural they add e, except in the dative plural where they add en.

In the plural those of the above nouns which contain one of the vowels a, o, u, au modify these vowels (i. e. change them into ä, ö, ü, au); but in nouns of more than one syllable these vowels are only modified if in the last syllable. Those neuter nouns which modify, further

add er instead of e.

Foreign nouns accented on the last syllable very rarely modify.

EXCEPTION 1. The following masculine nouns do not modify in the plural:

der Ruf, the call der Rumpf, the trunk, body der Salm, the salmon der Arm, the arm der Lachs, the salmon der Besuch, the visit der Laut, the sound der Leichnam, the corpse der Luchs, the lynx der Dachs, the badger der Docht, the wick der Schuft, the mean fellow der Dolch, the dagger der Molch, the salamander der Schuh, the shoe der Monat, the month der Mond, the moon der Mord, the murder der Park, the park der Pfad, the path der Dom, the dome der Stoff, the stuff der Erfolg, the success der Gemahl, the spouse der Grad, the degree der Strolch, the stroller der Tag, the day der Takt, the time (in music) der Halm, the helm der Thron, the throne der Herold, the herald der Pfropf, the graft, stopper der Verhau, the abattis der Huf, the hoof der Pol, the pole der Verlust, the loss der Hund, the dog der Versuch, the der Zoll, the inch the experider Puls, the pulse der Kuckuk, the cuckoo [ment der Punkt, the point

and a few more which are seldom used.

Plural: bie Arme, bie Besuche, etc. ber Saal, the saloon, is in the plural bie Sale.

(†) der Käs can also be used.

^(*) Hirte and Ochse are also used.
(**) Der Pfau, plural die Pfaue, follows as well the 4th Declension.

EXCEPTION 2. The following neuter nouns do not modify, and therefore add only e in the plural:

das Brod, the bread
das Elland, the island
das Gan, the yarn
das Gebot, the bidding
das Gespann, the team
das Gespann, the request

das Gespann, the request

Plural: bit @ebote, the English
das Tan, the cable
das Tan, the cable
das Tor, the gate

Also the few neuter nouns in sal, very seldom used in the plural, do not modify; as, bas Schidsal, the fate, plural: bie Schidsale. Das Chot the choir, and bas Floß, the raft, are in the plural bie Chöre, bie Flöße.

EXCEPTION 3. The following masculine nouns add in the plura er, and modify:

der Geist, the spirit
der Gott, the god
der Irrthum, the error
der Leib, the body

der Wald, the forest
Plural: bie Geifter, bie Götter,

der Wurn, the worm
der Vormund, the quardian
has the plural die Vormunder vorm

EXCEPTION 4. The following neuter nouns, (having none of the vowels a, o, u, au,) add er in the plural:

das Augenlid, the eye-lid das Geschlecht, the sex das Reis, the twig das Gespenst, the spectre das Glied, the limb das Kind, the child das Bild, the picture das Brett, the board das Regiment, the regiment das Rind, the black-cattle das Schild, the signboard das Ei, the egg das Schwert, the sword das Feld, the field das Kleid, the dress das Geld, the money das Lied, the song das Stift, the ecclesiastical das Gemüth, the mind das Nest, the nest foundation das Weib, the woman

Plural: bie Augenliber, bie Bretter, otc.

Das Aas, the carrion, das Spital (Hospital), the hospital, are in the plural—bie Aser, die Spitäler (Hospitäler).

EXCEPTION 5. The following masculine nouns of foreign origin modify their last vowel:

der Admiral, the admiral der Cardinal, the cardinal der General, the general der Canal, the canal der Corporal, the corporal der Palast, the palace

Plural; bie Admiral der General der General, the general der Morast, the morass der Canal, the canal der Palast, the palace

EXCEPTION 6. The following nouns are declined thus:

Alexander	SING. N.	der Fels(en) G.	des Felsens	D.dem Fels(en) A	den Fels(en)
the rock	PLUR.	die Felsen	der Felsen	den Felsen	die Felsen
the heart	SING.	das Herz	des Herzens	dem Herzen	das Herz
PMG HGGLL	PLUR.	die Herzen	der Herzen	den Herzen	die Herzen
the gentleman	SING.	der Herr	des Herrn	dem Herrn	den Herrn
(Mr., Lord)	PLUR.	die Herren	der Herren	den Herren	die Herren
the spur	SING.	der Sporn	des Spornes	dem Sporne	den Sporn
ene aput	PLUR.	die Sporen	der Sporen	den Sporen	die Sporen

A small number of masculine and neuter nouns add in the Genitive singular s (or es), and in all the plural cases en, but do not modify; viz:

1. All masculine nouns of foreign origin ending in or accented on the syllable preceding or; (in the plural the accent passes overtoor); as, ber Nather the doctor, her Synthyline the professor.

Gen. sing: bes Doftor, the doctor; ber Brosessor, the professor;
Blural: bie Doftoren, bie Brosessor

^(*) Most compound words in mann denoting a profession form their plural by changing mann into leule; as, der Kaufmann, the merchant; der Hauptmann, the captain; Plural: die Kaufleute, die Hauptleute; also der Edelmann, the nobleman; die Edelleute.

2. The following masculine and neuter nouns:

das Interesse(*), the interest der Kapaun, the capon der Konsul(*), the consul das Bett, the bed der Schmerz, the pain(**). der See(*), the lake der Staat, the state der Dämon, the demon der Dorn, the thorn der Fasan, the pheasant der Mast, the mast (of a ship) das Statut, the statute der Nachbar(*), the neighder Forst, the forest der Strahl, the ruy emd, the shirt
usekt, the insect
usekt, the insect
usekt, the insect
der Nerv, the nerve
der Obelisk, the obelisk
das Ohr, the ear
and a few more which are seldom used. das Hemd, the shirt der Ungar, the Hungarian der Unterthan, the subject das Insekt, the insect das Juwel, the jewel der Tribun, the tribune

Gen. sing: bes Bettes, bes Dorns, bes Fasans, bes Konsuls. Plural: bie Betten, bie Dornen, bie Fasanen, bie Konsuln.

3. Masculine nouns in us and neuter nouns in um (taken from the Latin) change in the plural these terminations into en, and those in us remain in the genitive singular unchanged; as, ber Globus, the globe; bas Chmmafium, the gymnasium.

Plural: bie Globen, bie Gymnafien.

4. bas Rapital, the fund; bas Mineral, the mineral; bas Material, the material; are in the plural bie Rapitalien, bie Mineralien, bie Materialien.

Note: All nouns taken from other languages which have retained their original form unchanged, may be declined as in their own language; that is especially the case with nouns belonging to modern languages(†); as,

ber Lord, the lord; ber Banquier, the banker; bas Cajino, the casino. Plural: bie Lords, bie Banquiers, bie Cafinos

5. The following nouns (and a few more) have two significations indicated by the termination of the word in the plural:

das Band Bänder, ribbons Bande, ties die Bank Banken, banks Bänke, benches das Gesicht Gesichte, visions Gesichter, faces der Laden Laden, shutters Läden, shops das Land Länder, separate countries Lande, the various parts, provinces, or districts of the same empire das Licht Lichte, candles Lichter, lights

Oerter, places (towns) Orte, places (spots) der Strauss Sträusse, nosegays Strausse, ostriches das Wort Wörter, single words . Worte, connected words der Zoll Zölle, tolls Zolle, inches

Das Denimai, the monument; bas Cemach, the apartment; bas Cemanh, the garment; bas Thai, the valley, have besides their regular plural forms: Dentmäler, Gemächer, Gemänder, Thäler, also the plural forms: Dentmale, Gemache, Gewande, Thale, used in poetry.

6. The following words have no plural, therefore, when the idea of plurality is implied the nlural of synonymous words must be used:

or branding ro	THE PLICA OF OF POWER OF	, og word now	
SINGULAR.	SYNONYMOUS	1	PLURAL.
	WORD.		
der Bund	das Bündniss	the alliance	die Bündnisse
der Dank	die Danksagung	the thanks	die Danksagungen
die Ehre	die Ehrenbezeugung	the honour	die Ehrenbezeugungen
das Lob	die Belobung	the praise	die Belobungen
der Lohn	die Belohnung	the reward	die Belohnungen
der Rath	der Rathschlag	the advice	die Rathschläge
der Streit	die Streitigkeit	the contention	die Streitigkeiten
der Tod	der Todesfall	the death	die Todesfälle
tas Unglück	der Unglücksfall	the misfortune	die Unglücksfälle
las Vergnügen	die Vergnügung	the pleasure	die Vergnügungen
der Zank	die Zänkerei	the quarrel	die Zänkereien
der Zwist	die Zwistigkeit	the dispute	die Zwistigkeiten
			

(*) They add in the plural n only.
(**) Old Genitive singular form: des Schmerzens. (†) Such nouns usually retain their original pronunciation.

The following table of Declensions of the article, etc. is intended for reference only, as we shall treat of them again in our grammar lessons.

Declension of the Definite Article.

SINGULAI	R. Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	PLURAL of all Genders
Nominative Genitive Dative Accusative	bes bem ben	die der der die	bas, the bes, of the bem, to the bas, the	bie, the ber, of the ben, to the bie, the

bieser, this wesder, which jener, that jeber, each, every and a few others, have similar terminations to the Definite Article, viz:

SINGULAR	R. Masc.	Fe	m.	Neuter	PLURAL of all Genders	
N.	er	(e	es	e	
G.	es	(er	eŝ	er	
D.	em	(er	em	en	
A.	en	(2	ез	e	
			EX	AMPLE.		
SINGULAR.	Masc.	Fem.		Neuter	PUURAL of all Genders	

SINGU	LAR. Masc.	Fem.	New	ter	PUURAL of a	ll Genders
N.	dief-er	dief=e	dief-es,	this	diej=e,	these
G.	dies-es	dief-er	diefes,	of this	dief-er,	of these
D.	dief-em	biej-er	diej-em,	to this	dief-en,	to these
A.	dief-en	dief=e	dief-es,	this	dies-e,	these

Declension of the Indefinite Article.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter
Nominative	ein	ein-e	ein, a or an
Genitive Dative	ein=e3 ein=em	ein=er ein=er	ein-e3, of a No ein-em, to a plural.
Accusative	ein-en	ein-e	ein, a or an

The following eight words are declined in the Singular like the Indefinite Article, and in the Plural they take the same terminations as the words biefer, welcher &c.

mein, bein, fein,	thy		3hr euer	} your
unser,		108		her, their no, none

EXAMPLE

SING	ULAR. Masc.	Fem.	Neut	er	PLURAL of all	Genders
N.	mein	mein-e	mein,	my	mein-e,	
G. D.	mein=e3 mein=em	mein=er mein=er	mein-e3,			
A.	mein-en	mein-e	mein-em, mein,	my	mein-en, mein-e,	

Table of terminations of the four Declensions.

Table of terminations of	T the loar beelensiens
First Declension.	Third Declension,
SINGULAR. PLURAL.	SINGULAR. PLURAL.
N.— —en or n	N - n or en
G en or n	G. — n or en — n or en
D.— —en or n	D. — n or en — n or en
A.— —en or n	A. — n or en — n or en
	Thomas Design
Second Declension.	Fourth Declension.
N	N.— -e, "-e or "-er
G3	G.—es or s -e, "-e or "-er
D.— — — n	D.—generally e -en, "-en or "-
A.—	A.— l-e, "-e or "-er
	0
Examples:- FIRST DE	CLENSION.
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
N. die Biene the bee	die Biene-n the bees
G. der Biene of the bee	der Biene-n of the bees den Biene-n to the bees
D. der Biene to the bee	den Biene-n to the bees
A. die Biene the bee	die Biene-n the bees
SECOND DI	ECLENSION.
N. der Pfarrer the parson	die Pfarrer the parsons
G. des Pfarrer-s of the parson	
D. dem Pfarrer to the parson	den Pfarrer-n to the parsons
A. den Pfarrer the parson	
THIRD DE	CLENSION.
G. des Löwe-n of the lion	her Romes of the lions
D. bem Löwe-n to the lion	hen Somesn to the lions
A. den Löwe-n the lion	die Löwe-n the lions

. E	OURTH DI	ECLENSIO	N.
N. der Stuhl		die Stühl-e	the chairs
G. des Stuhl-es		der Stühl-e	of the chairs
D. dem Stuhl-e	to the chair	den Stühl-en	to the chairs
A. den Stuhl	the chair	die Stühl-e	the chairs

General Rule .- All German nouns belong to the Fourth Declension with the exception of-

All Feminine Nouns (which belong to the first declension),

All Masculine and Neuter Nouns ending in el, en, er, and neuters in e, and lein (which belong to the second declension).

All Masculine Nouns ending in e, and masculine Foreign Nouns accented on the last syllable, referring to persons, and not ending in l, n. r (which belong to the third Declension).

First Lesson.

Erfte Leftion.

The Article and the Noun.

The Definite Article the is translated by

ber before a masculine noun in the singular; as, ber Ontel.(*) the uncle ber Schlüssel, the key bie before a feminine noun in the singular; as, bie Lante, the aunt bie Uhr, the watch bas before a neuter noun in the singular; as,

bas before a neuter noun in the singular; as, bas Simmer, the room bas Gebäube, the building bie before any noun in the plural; as,

bic Ontel, the uncles bie Zanten, the aunts bie Zimmer, the rooms

The FIRST DECLENSION of Nouns

comprises all feminine nouns.

RULES: 1. Feminine nouns do not change in the singular, in the plural they add en; as,

SINGULAR.

N. & A. bie Frau, the woman
D. ber Frau, of the woman
D. ber Frau, to the woman
D. ber Frau, to the woman
D. ber Fraue, to the woman

2. Feminine nouns ending in e, e1, er, add in the plural n only; as,

N. & A. die Tante, the aunt
G. der Tante, of the aunt
D. der Tante, to the aunt
ber Tante:n, to the aunts
ben Tante:n, to the aunts

3. Feminine nouns ending in in double the n in the plural, before adding en; as,

N. & A. die Königin, the queen
G. der Königin, to the queen
D. der Königin, to the queen
ber Königin n.en, to the queens
der Königin n.en, to the queens

Note: -The English Possessive the boy's book, the girl's bonnet is usually translated the book of the boy, the bonnet of the girl, etc.

The auxiliary verb(†) haben, to have.

SINGULAR. Indicative Present. SINGULAR. habe ich, have 1? 1st Person ich habe, I have bu haft, haft bu, hast thou? 2nd thou hast 3rd " masc. hat er, has he? er hat, he has 3rd ", fem. fie hat, she has hat sie, has she? " neuter es hat, hat es, has it? 3rd it has PLURAL. PLURAL 1st wir haben, we have haben wir, have we? Sie haben, } youhave haben Gie, 2nd have you? 22 habt ihr, fie haben, they have ! haben fie, have they? 3rd

(*) We indicate the gender of nouns by either placing ber before, or m. (masculine) after a masculine noun bie ", ", f. (feminine) after a feminine noun bas ", ", n. (neuter) after a neuter noun

(†) The verbs being of the utmost importance we shall give a part of them in each lesson, independently of the other rules.

The Vocabulary

is to be learned by heart as these words will not be given again.

sunt, Tante f. brush, Bürfte, f. building, Gebäube n. door, Thüre f. fork, Gabel f. key, Schlüssel m. knife, Messer n.

newspaper, Beitung f. no, nein potato, Kartoffel f. queen, Königin f. room, Limmer n. sister, Schwester f. spoon, Lössel m. teacher, Lehrer m. teacher f., Lehrerin f. uncle, Onfel m. watch (clock), Uhr f. who, wer woman, Frau f. yes, ja

Exercise No. 1.

1. Decline the following nouns in the singular and plural as shown in the examples on the preceding page: die Uhr,—die Bürste,—die Thüre,—die Gabel,—die Kartossel,—die Schwester; and afterwards translate:

The teacher,—the spoon,—the sister,—the fork,—the knife,—the building,—the teachers,(*)—the sisters,—the knives(*),—the watch, the watches,—the brush, the brushes,—the fork, the forks,—the sister, the sisters,—the teacher (f.), the teachers (f.),—of the woman, of the women,—to the aunt to the aunts,—the potato (Acc.), the potatoes (Acc.),—the aunt's key,—to the watch, to the watches,—the uncle,—the newspaper (Acc.), the newspapers (Acc.),—of the sister, of the sisters,—to the queen, to the queens,—the room,—to the brush, to the brushes,—the woman, the women.

I have,—has he?—we have,—thou hast,—have they?—you have,—she has,—have we?—it has,—have you?—they have,—hast thou?—he has,—have I?—has she?

2. Haben Sie die Uhr? Ja, ich habe die Uhr. Der Onkel hat zweit Bürsten. Ich gab² es der Frau. Wer hat die Zeitungen? Hast du die Gabeln? Nein, aber³ ich habe die Lössel. Der Schlüssel gehört⁴ der Tante. Wir sahen⁵ die Lehrerinnen. Das Gebäude gehört⁴ den Schwestern der Tante. Wer hat die Kartoffeln? Wir sahen⁵ das Zimmer der Königin.

Who has the newspapers? Have you two¹ watches? No, but³ I have two¹ brushes. We saw⁵ the teacher's (f.) aunt. The building belongs⁴ to the queen. Hast thou the fork? Yes, I have the fork. Who has the knife? The teacher has two¹ sisters. Who gave² it to the woman? Has the uncle the newspapers? The spoon belongs⁴ to the woman's sister. Have you the potatoes? No, but³ I have the forks. The building has two¹ doors.

^(*) The plural of this noun is the same as the singular,

1 awei, two 2 gab, gave 3 aber, but 4 gehört, belongs 5 fahen, saw

- 1. What is the translation of the definite article the in German!
- 2. When is the translated der, when das, and when die?
- 3. How are feminine nouns declined in the singular?
- 4. How are feminine nouns declined in the plural?
- 5. How are feminine nouns ending in e, el, er, declined in the plural?
- 6. How are feminine nouns ending in in declined in the plural?
- 7. How is the English Possessive like: the uncle's knife, the aunt's forks, etc. usually translated into German?
- 8. How can you recognise when a noun is masculine, when feminine, and when neuter?

Conversation.

Good morning.
Good day.
Good evening.
Has the uncle the brush?
No, (madam,) but (aber) he has
the knife.

Have you the aunt's watch? Yes, (sir,) I have the aunt's watch and (und) fork.

Who has the newspaper?
The teacher has the newspaper.

Have you the potatoes? Yes, I have the potatoes and the forks.

Did you see (sahen Sie) the teachers (f.)?

Yes, I saw (sah) the teachers and the women.

Who has the knife? The aunt has the knife.

Does the building belong (gehört) to the queen?

No, it belongs to the queen's sister.

Has the room two (zwei) doors? No, theroom has three (drei) doors.

Have you two lady-teachers?

No, but I have two gentlementeachers.

Hast thou the aunt's brushes? Yes, I have the aunt's two brushes. Guten Morgen. Guten Tag. Guten Abend. Hat der Onkel die Bürste? Nein, aber er hat das Messer.

Haben Sie die Uhr der Tante? Ja, ich habe die Uhr und die Gabel der Tante. Wer hat die Zeitung? Der Lehrer hat die Zeitung. Haben Sie die Kartoffeln? Ja, ich habe die Kartoffeln und die Gabeln.

Sahen Sie die Lehrerinnen? Ja, ich sah die Lehrerinnen und

die Frauen. Wer hat das Messer? Die Tante hat das Messer.

Gehört das Gebäude der Königin?

Nein, es gehört der Schwester der Königin.

Hat das Zimmer zwei Thüren? Rein, das Zimmer hat drei Thüren.

Haben Sie zwei Lehrerinnen? Nein, aber ich habe zwei Lehrer.

Haft du die Bürsten der Tante? Ja, ich habe die zwei Bürsten der Tante.

Reading Exercise No. 1.

Aller Anfang ist schwer. Was haben Sie in der All commencement is difficult What have you in the Sand? I have a German newspaper What is that Wem gehört dies? Sind sie reich? Sind Sie arm? To whom belongs this Are they rich Are you poor Es ift kalt. Ift es warm? Wer ift da? Guten Morgen. It is cold Is it warm Who is there Good morning Guten Abend. Guten Tag. Wo waren Sie gestern?
Good evening Good day Where were you yesterday habe meinen Onkel besucht. Mit Speck fängt man Mäuse. Unsere Rate hat einen Vogel gefangen. Sprechen Sie Our cat has a bird caught Speak Deutsch? Ja, ein wenig. Können Sie mich verstehen?
German Yes a little Can you me understand Can you me understand Ja, sehr gut. Was wünschen Sie? Bitte, geben Sie mir Yes very good What want you Pray give (you) to me meinen Hut. Ich danke Ihnen. Gehen Sie heute my hat I thank to you Go you to-day(this) Nachmittag aus? Nein, ich bleibe daheim. Das Wetter afternoon out No I remain at home The weather ift zu kalt. Heute ist es sehr warm. Wieviel Uhr ist es? is too cold To-day is it very warm Howmuch o'clock is it Es ist zehn Uhr. Warum kommen Sie so spät? Mein It is ten o'clock Why come you so late My Bruder war heute in dem Theater. Bitte, nehmen Sie brother was to-day in the theatre Pray take (you) Bergessen Sie nicht, heute Abend zu kommen. Forget (you) not to-day evening to Morgen Abend werden wir das Concert besuchen. Saft To-morrow evening shall we the concert visit bu schon zu Mittag gegessen? Nein, wir essen nicht vor eaten thou already to noon No we eat not before ein Uhr. Was für Wetter hatten Sie auf Ihrer Reise? one o'clock What for (kind of) weather had you on your journey Gestern Abend habe ich meinen Regenschirm verloren. Yesterday evening have I my umbrella

Bweite Leftion.

The Article and the Noun (continued).

Declension of the Definite Article.

SINGULAR Mass. Fem Neuter PLURAL of all Genders Nominative her hie bas, the bie, the Genitive hes ber bes, of the bem, to the ber, of the Dative bem ben, to the bie, the ber Accusative ben bie bas, the

The SECOND DECLENSION of Nouns

comprises all masculine and neuter nouns ending in el, en or, and the neuters in e and lein.

RULE.—Masculine and neuter nouns ending in el, en, es and the neuters in e and lein, add \$\beta\$ in the genitive singular, and do not change in the plural, (except in the dative plural, when those ending in el, er, e add n(*); as,

SINGULAR.	PLURAL,
N. ber Ontel, the uncle	bie Ontel, the uncles
G. bes Ontels, of the uncle	ber Ontel, of the uncles
D. bem Ontel, to the uncle	ben Onkel-n, to the uncles bie Onkel, the uncles
N. das Beilchen, the violet	bie Beilchen, the violets
G. des Beilchens, of the violet	ber Beilchen, of the violets
D. dem Beilchen, to the violet	ben Beilchen, to the violets
A. das Beilchen, the violet	bie Beilchen, the violets
N. der Pfarrer, the parson	bie Pfarrer, the parsons
G. des Pfarrers, of the parson	ber Pfarrer, of the parsons
D. dem Pfarrer, to the parson	ben Pfarrer, to the parsons
A. den Pfarrer, the parson	bie Pfarrer, the parsons

Note.—Most verbs require the noun which follows them in the accusative (if the noun is not the subject of the sentence). This rule must be observed with masculines in the singular where the article differs in the nominative and accusative; as,

Ich have ben Schlüssel, I have the key Der Ontel sah ben Lehrer, the uncle saw the teacher

The verb to be and a few others make an exception to this rule and require the following nouns in the nominative case; as,

Der Ontel ift ber Lehrer, the uncle is the teacher

The auxiliary verb fein, to be.

Indicative Present.

4q bin, I am
bu bif, thou art
er (ife, e8) ift, he (she, it) is
wir find, we are
Sie find (ifr feid), you are
fie find, they are

bin id, am I? bift bu, art thou? iff er (fie, es), is he (she, it)? find wir, are we? find Sie (fetb ifr), are you? find fie, are they?

^(*) In the dative of the plural all declinable German words, which is not end in n in the plural, add n.

and, und but, aber cake, Kucen m. carriago, Wagen m. cherry, Kiriche f. dish, Schüsself, gimlet, Bohrer m. girl, Mäbchen n. needle, Kabel f. parson, Klarrer m. pen, Feber f. picture, Gemälbe n. plate, Teller m. pupil, Schüler m. pupil, Schülerin f.
ross, Koje f.
sail, Segel n.
violet, Beilchen n.
where, two
window, Fenster n.
young-lady, Fräusein n.

Exercise No. 2.

1. Decline in the singular and plural: der Schlüsset,—die Nadel,—das Mädchen,—der Schüler,—die Feder,—das Gemälde,—das Fräulein,—die Rose,—der Teller;—and afterwards translate:

The spoon, the spoons,—the sail, the sails,—the carriage, the carriages,—the girl, the girls,—the pupils,—the window, the windows,—the picture, the pictures,—the young-lady, the young-ladies,—of the key, of the keys,—of the violet, of the violets,—of the plate, of the plates,—of the buildings,—to the sail, to the sails,—to the cake, to the cakes,—to the teacher, to the teachers,—to the young-lady, to the voung-ladies,—the uncle (Acc.), the uncle (Acc.),—the girl (Acc.), the gimlets (Acc.),—the picture (Acc.), the pictures (Acc.),—the preson (Acc.),—to the populs (f.),—of the room,—to the needles,—to the knives,—the cherries (Acc.),—to the key.

Am I?—we are,—are you?—thou art,—is he?—they are,—is she?—you are,—is it?—have I?—are we?—she has,—have we?—they have,—I am,—have you?—you are,—has he?—you have,—he is,—are they?—it has,—is it?

2. Wer hat den Schlüssel? Hier ist der Schlüssel, aber wo ist das Messer? Wer sahe den Onkel? Der Onkel ist der Psarrer. Haben Sie die Kirschen? Die Thüre des Eebäudes ist geschlossen. Der Wagen gehörte den Schüsern des Onkels. Hat das Mädschen die Beilchen? Sind die Thüren und Fenster offens? Wo ist der Ruchen? Ich sahe Vohrer. Ich bin die Schülerin des Fräuseins.

I saw² the parson. Is the window of the room open⁵? The picture belongs⁴ to the uncle. Where are the plates and the dishes? Who has the ginlet? Here¹ is the gimlet, but where are the needles? He is the aunt's teacher. The doors of the building are shut.³ Are you the young-lady's pupil (f.)? The cake belongs⁴ to the woman's girl. Where are the spoons and the forks? Has the teacher (f.) the cherries? I saw² the parson's carriage. Here¹ is the newspaper.

1. How are the Nominative and Accusative of the definite article the translated in the masculine, how in the neuter, and how in the feminine and plural?

2. How are the Genitive and Dative of the definite article translated in the masculine and neuter, how in the feminine, and how in the

plural?

3. What terminations do masculine and neuter nouns add ending in el, en, er, and the neuters in e and lein in the singular, and in which case or cases of the singular?

4. Are these nouns the same in the plural as in the singular!

5. Which of these nouns take n in the dative plural?

6. What is the general rule for all declinable German words in the dative plural? 7. In what case do nouns, which are not the subject of the sentence.

stand after a verb?

8. With what nouns must this rule be observed, and why? 9. What verb requires the following noun in the nominative?

Conversation.

Where is the key? Here (hier) is the key. Who has the gimlet? The uncle has the gimlet. Have you the pen? No, the aunt has the pen. Are you the teacher? No, I am the pupil. Who saw (sah) the parson's carriage? I saw the carriage and the parson.

Has the girl the roses? Yes, she has roses and violets. Are you the young-lady's pupil (f.)?

No, I am the pupil's sister.

Are the windows open (offen)? The windows are shut (geschlossen), but the door is open. Do the cakes belong (gehören) to

the girl's teacher (f.)? No, the cakes belong to the girl.

Have you the dishes and the plates?

No, I have only (nur) the plates

Wo ist der Schlüssel? Bier ift der Schluffel. Wer hat den Bohrer? Der Onkel hat den Bohrer. haben Sie die Feber? Rein, die Tante hat die Feder. Sind Sie der Lehrer? Rein, ich bin der Schüler. Wer fah den Wagen des Bfar-

Ich sah den Wagen und den Pfarrer.

hat das Mädchen die Rofen? Ja, sie hat Rosen und Beilchen. Sind Sie die Schülerin des Fräuleins?

Nein, ich bin die Schwester der Schülerin.

Sind die Tenfter offen?

Die Fenster sind geschlossen, aber die Thüre ist offen.

Gehören die Ruchen der Lehrerin des Mädchens?

Nein, die Ruchen gehören dem Mädchen.

haben Sie die Schüffeln und die Teller?

Mein ich habe nur die Teller.

Reading Exercise No. 2.

Es ist nicht Alles Gold, was glänzt. Deffnen Sie It is not all gold what glitters Open (you) bas Fenster. Machen Sie die Thüre zu. Wo wohnen Sie? window (make) Shut (you) the door (too) Where reside you Wir wohnen in biesem hübschen Sause. Wann haben Sie reside in this pretty house When have diesen Rock gekaust? Wo ist Ihre Schwester? Sie ging this coat bought Where is your sister She went mit der Tante spazieren. Die Tage werden länger und with the aunt walking The days become longer and bie Nächte fürzer. Das Wetter war vorgestern sehr the nights shorter The weather was theday before yesterday very schön. In England wird es nicht fo falt als in beautiful In England becomes it not so cold as Deutschland. Ich habe vergessen Handschuhe zu kaufen. I have forgotten gloves to buy Wie heißen die sieben Tage der Woche? Sie heißen: How are called the seven days of the week They are called Sonntag, Montag, Dienstag, Mittwoch, Donnerstag, Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Freitag, Samstag (Sonnabend). Wie viele Monate hat Sunday How many months has bas Jahr? Das Jahr hat zwölf Monate: Januar, The year has twelve months Februar, März, April, Mai, Juni, Juli, August February March April May June July August September, October, November, December. Lesen Sie September October November December Read you viel Deutsch? Ja, ziemlich viel. Lesen Sie auch laut? much German Ves pretty much Read you also aloud Sa, immer; denn lautes Lesen ist die beste Uebung, um Yes always for loud reading is the best practice in order eine gute Aussprache zu bekommen. Lesen Sie biese a good pronunciation to get Read you these a good pronunciation to get Seiten recht oft burch. Ende gut, Alles gut. pages very often through End well all well

Third Lesson.

Dritte Lettion

The Article (concluded), & the Noun (continued).

The Indefinite article a or an is translated by

cin before a masculine noun in the singular; as, ein Onlet, an uncle ein Եփկնյթե, a key eine before a feminine noun in the singular; as,

eine Tante, an aunt eine Uhr, a watch
ein before a neuter noun in the singular; as,
ein Rimmer, a room ein Gebaube, a building

Declension of the Indefinite Article.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neuter	
Nominative Genitive Dative Accusative	ein ein:e8 ein:em ein:en	ein-e ein-er ein-er ein-e	ein, a or an ein:es, of a ein:em, to a ein, a or an	No plural

The THIRD DECLENSION of Nouns

comprises all masculine nouns ending in e, and all masculine nouns of foreign origin(*) (accented on the last syllable) referring to persons, which do not end in l, n, r

RULES: 1. Masculine nouns ending in e add n in all cases of the singular and plural; as,

Singular.	Plura	ıl.
N. ber Anabe, the boy,	bie Anabe-n, the boy	
G. des Anabe-n, of the boy,	ber Anabeen, of the l	boys
D. bem Anabe:n, to the boy	ben Anabeen, to the	boys
A. ben Anabeen, the boy	bie Anabein, the boy	3

2. Masculine nouns of foreign origin (accented on the last syllable), referring to persons which do not end in l, n, r, add en in all cases of the singular and plural; as,

N.	ber	Solbat,	the soldier	die	Golbat:en,	the soldiers
			of the soldier			of the soldiers
			to the soldier			to the soldiers
A.	ben	Goldat:en,	the soldier	bie	Colbat:en,	the soldiers

Imperfect of the Auxiliary verbs

ich hatte, I	had	
bu hatteft.		t
er (fie, es)	hatte, he (she, it) had
wir hatten,	we had	
Gie hatten	(ihr hattet	von had

fie hatten, they had

haben, to have

ich war, I was bu warst, thou wast er (sie, e3) war, he (she, it) was wir waren, we were Sie waren (shr waret), you were sie waren, they were

fein, to be

^(*) Nouns of foreign origin are nouns mostly taken from the Latin and Greek, and in most cases they can be recognised by the same or nearly the same spelling as in English, and the accentuation on their last syllable.

" agent, ber Agent " boy, ber Knabe " customer, ber Runbe Englishman, ber Eng-

länder Frenchman, ber Fran-., hare, ber Safe

the advocate, ber Abvotat, the hunter, ber Jäger " manufacturer. Fabritant monarch, ber Do:

> narch " nephew, ber Reffe ,, nieco, die Nichte only, nur or. ober

the photographer. Photograph " president ber Brafibent " Russian, ber Ruffe

,, sailor, ber Matroje ,, soldier, ber Solbat ,, student (collegian). ber Stubent

Exercise No. 3.

1. Decline in the singular: ein Runde,-ein Fenfter,-eine Nichte,-ein Mädchen,-eine Frau, - ein Agent; - also in the singular and plural: der Neffe,—der Photograph,—der Hafe, ber Student:—and afterwards translate:

The sailor, the sailors,—the Russian, the Russians,—the advocate, the advocates,—the manufacturer, the manufacturers,—of a Frenchman. of the Frenchmen, -of the president, of the presidents, -to the hare, to the hares,—to an agent, to the agents,—a nephew (Acc.), the nephews (Acc.),—the photographer (Acc.), the photographers,—a niece (Nom. & Acc.), -a window (Nom. & Acc.), -to a pen, -to a sail, -to a newspaper,—to a violet,—to a hunter, to the hunters,—a soldier (Acc.). the soldiers (Acc.), -of a rose, -of an Englishman, -to a customer, to the customers, -of the monarch, of the monarchs, -of a young-lady, of the young-ladies,—a student (Acc.), the students (Acc.),—a needle (Acc.), the needles (Acc., -a boy (Acc.), the boys. - a picture, the pictures.

Was I !- she had, -we were, -had you !- they had, -were you !she was, -had he?-thou hadst, -you are, -she was, -we had, -was it? -are they?-you have, -we are, -you were, -have I?-are you?-thou art. - have they ?- hadst thou ?- was he ?- you had, - they were.

2. Hat der Matroje eine Schwester? Der Soldat ift der Neffe eines Abvotaten. Wir find Studenten. Der Jager brachte' einen Hasen. Sahen Sie³ den Fabrikanten? Ich sah³ nur den Agenten des Fabrikanten. Es ist das Gemälde eines Mädchens. Der Monarch schriebs dem Präsidenten. Der Franzose ift ein Photo-Die Rosen gehörens einer Nichte des Russen. Saben Sie2 die Knaben oder die Mädchen? Ich fah3 den Neffen des Kfarrers.

Are the soldiers Englishmen or Russians? The teacher is the student's uncle. The photographer is a customer of the manufacturer. Did you see2 the monarch? I saw3 only the president. Have you ar aunt? Who brought1 the cake? It was the picture of a young-lady. The advocate wrote4 to the Frenchman's agent. Who saw3 the sailors? We are the photographer's customers. I saw a sail. The needles belong⁵ to the boy's sister. I brought the gimlet and the knives. Where are the forks and the plates?

1. What is the translation of the indefinite article a or an in German?

2. When is a or an translated ein, and when eine?

How are the Nominative and Accusative of the indefinite article translated in the masculine, how in the neuter, and how in the feminine?
 How are the Genitive and the Dative of the indefinite article translated

in the masculine and neuter, and how in the feminine?

 5. What termination do masculine nouns in e add in the Genitive, Dative and Accusative singular, and in all cases of the plural?
 6. Which nouns take a similar termination in all these cases, and what

is the termination?

nouns in English?

7. On which syllable have nouns of foreign origin usually the accent?
8. What similarity have these nouns in general with the corresponding

Conversation.

Have you a niece? Yes, I have a niece and a nephew.

Are you the manufacturer's agent?

No, I am a customer of the manufacturer.

Are the students Frenchmen? No, they (it) are Russians. Is that (dies) the president?

No, he (it) is only the president's advocate.

Did you see (sahen Sie) the soldiers?

Yes, we saw (sahen) the soldiers and the sailors. Were you a customer of the photo-

were you a customer of the photographer?

Yes, I was a long time (lange Zeit) his (sein) customer.

Has the manufacturer a nephew? No, but he has a niece.

Have you a knife or a fork?

I have a knife.

Did you bring (brachten) the hare?
No, the hunter brought (brachte)
the hare.

Does the watch belong (gehört) to the Frenchman?

No, the watch belongs to the Englishman.

Are you the student's teacher!

No, I am his uncle.

Haben Sie eine Nichte? Ja, ich habe eine Nichte und einen Neffen.

Sind Sie der Agent des Fabrikanten?

Nein, ich bin ein Kunde des Fabrifanten.

Sind die Studenten Franzosen? Nein, es sind Russen.

Ift dies der Präsident? Nein, es ist nur der Abvokat des Bräsidenten.

Sahen Sie die Solbaten?

Ja, wir sahen die Soldaten und die Matrosen.

Waren Sie ein Kunde des Photographen?

Ja, ich war lange Zeit sein Kunde.

hat der Fabrikant einen Neffen? Nein, aber er hat eine Nichte. haben Sie ein Messer ober eine

Gabel? Ich habe ein Messer.

Brachten Sie den Hafen? Nein, der Jäger brachte ben

Hafen. Gehört die Uhr dem Franzosen?

Nein, die Uhr gehört dem Eng-

länder. Sind Sie der Lehrer der

Studenten? Rein, ich bin sein Onkel.

Reading Exercise No. 3.

Translate this and the following anecdotes. The words which the student has already learnt are omitted and indicated by a . and those which are the same in English as in German are indicated by a —

Unterschied zwischen Edelmann und Bauer.

(Distinction between nobleman and peasant.)

(Distinction between nobleman and peasant.)
Die Edelleute in Deutschland waren früher sehr noblemen in Germany . formerly very
stolz auf ihre Geburt. Ein Ebelmann machte eine Reise proud on their birth . nobleman made . journey
zu Pferde. Er ritt voraus und sein Diener hinter ihm. on horse (back) . rode in front . his servant behind him
Bald sahen sie auf einem Kirchhose viele Schädel liegen. soon saw . on . churchyard many skulls lie
Einige waren weiß; aber die meisten waren schwarz. Der some . white most . black .
Ebelmann rief seinen Diener und sagte: Betrachte diese nobleman called his servant . said look at these
Schäbel genau. Du wirst einen Unterschied sinden. Die skulls carefully . wilt . distinction find .
weißen sind die Schädel von Edelleuten und die schwarzen white (ones) skulls of noblemen black (ones)
die Schädel von Bürgern und Bauern. Der Diener hatte skulls of citizens . peasants . servant .
nichts zu antworten, und sie ritten weiter. Nach einer nothing to reply rode farther (on) after one
Stunde sahen sie einen Galgen. Da waren auch einige hour saw gallows there . also some
Schädel, aber alle waren weiß. Der Diener ritt zu seinem skulls . all . white . servant rode to his
Haster . said look at (you) these skulls carefully
Alle find weiß und baher nur Schädel von Edelleuten. all . white . therefore . skulls of noblemen
here gives . neither eitizens nor peasants

The FOURTH DECLENSION of Nouns

comprises all masculine and neuter nouns which do not belong to the second or third declension (i. e. those not ending in e, el, en, er, lein, and all foreign masculine and neuter nouns, except the masculines referring to persons which do not end in l, n, r.

Rules: 1. Masculine and neuter nouns (the above excepted) take es or s in the genitive and generally e in the dative of the singular; in the plural they add e, except in the

dative plural where they add en; as,

N. der Tisch, the table G. des Tisches, of the table D. dem Tische, to the table A. den Tisch, the table bie Tische, the tables ber Tische, of the tables ben Tijden, to the tables bie Tijde, the tables N. bas Pferb, the horse G. bes Pferbes, of the horse D. bem Pferbes, to the horse A. bas Pferb, the horse bie Pferd:e, the horses ber Pferd:e, of the horses ben Pferden, to the horses bie Bferd:e, the horses

2. Those of the above nouns which contain one of the vowels a, o, u, au modify such vowel in the plural (i.e. change a into a, o into o, u into u, au into au) besides adding e. The Neuter nouns which can modify, further add er instead of e.

Note. - Nouns of more than one syllable can only modify if a, o, u or au occur in their last syllable.

N. ber Borhang, the curtain G. bes Borhang:(e)s, of the curtain D. dem Borhang:(e), to the curtain

A. ben Borhang, the curtain N. das Haus, the house G. bes Saufees, of the house to the house A. dem Baufe,

the house A. bas Saus,

bie Borhang-e, the curtains ber Borhangee, of the curtains ben Borhang:en, to the curtains bie Borhangee, the curtains

bie Saufer, the houses ber Saufer, of the houses ben Bauf-ern, to the houses bie Baufer, the houses

Foreign nouns generally do not modify; as, bas Metall, the metal; Plural: die Metalle.

Note 1.—The e may be omitted in the terminations of the Genitive and Dative singular in words of more than one syllable, and also in many non: s ω one syllable, especially those ending in l, m, n, r. In the Genitive es must be used in nouns terminating with a hissing sound like s, sl, r, de.

2.-Words with the double vowels aa and oo in general do not modify.

3.—Nouns ending in § and is change in taking a termination § or \$ into ff.

The Regular verb loben, to praise.

Indicative Present.

ich lobe(*), I praise (I am praising) bu lobit, thou praisest er (fie, e3) lobt, he (she, it) praises wir loben, we praise Sie loben (ihr lobt), you praise Re loben, they praise

Imperfect.

ich lobte(*), I praised (I was praising) bu lobteft, thou praisedst er (fie, eš) lobte, he (she, it) praised wir lobten, we praised Sie lobten (ihr lobtet), you praised fie lobten, they praised

^(*) The above is the only form existing in German to render the Present and Imperfect, and it is also used to form the Interrogative; as, lobe ich, do I praise?

the book, bas Buch , castle, bas Schloß ,, chair, ber Stuhl ,, coat, ber Rock , curtain, ber Borhang ,, duchy, basherzogthum

, duke, ber bergog

the glass, bas Glas ,, hat, bonnet, ber Hut ,, horse, bas Herb ,, house, bas Haus ,, king, ber König ,, leaf, bas Blatt ,, pencil, ber Bleiftift

the present, bas Geichens , roof, bas Dach , ruler, bas Sineal ,, ship, bas Schiff , table, ber Tich ,, tree, ber Baum ,, village, bas Dorf

Exercise No. 4.

1. Decline in the singular and plural: der König, — das Schiff, — der Hut, — das Dorf, — der Baum, — das Blatt, — der Herzagg, — das Geschenk, — der Bleistift, — das Lineal; — and afterwards translate:

The king, the kings,—a present, the presents.—of a curtain, of the curtains,—of the glass, of the glasses,—to the coat, to the coats,—to a castle, to the castles,—a tree (Acc.), the trees (Acc.),—a house (Acc.), the houses (Acc.),—to a table, to the tables,—to the present, to the presents,—of a horse, of the horses,—the hat (Acc.), the hats (Acc.),—the duchy, the duchies,—the pencil, the pencils,—to the ruler, to the rulers,—of the roof, of the roofs,—to a chair, to the chairs,—to the village, to the villages,—the ship (Acc.), the ships (Acc.),—the duke (Acc.), the dukes (Acc.),—to the book, to the books,—of the leaf, of the leaves.

Does she praise?—we praised,—he was praising,—are they praising?—you are praising,—were they praising?—dost thou praise?—did you praise?—I am praising,—were we praising?—did I praise?—you are praising,—were they praising?—do you praise?—they praise.

2. Die Bäume haben Blätter. Wer sah' den König? Der Matrose sah' die Segel der Schisse. Ich hatte zwei Hüte. Wosind die Febern und die Bleististe? Der Agent kaustes die Pferbe des Pfarrers. Haben Sie die Etühle? Die Thüre des Jausies ist geschlossen. Die zwei? Schlösser gehörens dem Herzog(e). Wer hat die Lineale der Knaben! Ein Kunde des Onkels kaustes einen Rock. Sind die Vorhänge grün⁶? Sahen Sie? die Dächer der Haufer?

Are the monarchs kings or dukes? The presents belong⁵ to the teacher's pupils. Has the woman a curtain? Have you the glasses? Who saw¹ the advocate's carriage and horses?(*) Two² villages belong⁵ to the manufacturer. Who bought³ the coats? The duchies belong⁵ to the dukes. Are the windows of the room shut⁴? Where are the boy's books? Did you seo? the roof of a castle? I bought³ a pencil, a pen and a ruler. The leaves of the trees are green.⁶ The aunt bought³ a table and two² chairs.

^(*) The article if standing with nouns of different gender and number must always be repeated in German.

¹ sah, saw 2 zwei, two 3 taufte, bought 4 geschsossen, shut 5 gehören, beione 6 grün, green 7 sahen Sie, did you see?

I. What terminations do the masculine and neuter nouns, not belonging to the second or third declension, take in the singular and plural?

2. If any of these nouns contain one of the vowels a, o, u, au, what

is done with these vowels?

3. If such a vowel occur in a noun of more than one syllable, when

are these vowels to be modified only?

4. Do neuter nouns, which modify in the plural, take the same termination as those neuters which do not modify? If not, what termination do they take?

5 Do foreign nouns, which have the accent on the last syllable, also

modify?

6. With what nouns may the e in the Genitive and Dative singular termination be omitted?

7. When must the full Genitive termination es be used? 8. Are the double vowels aa and oo generally modified?

9. How are 5 or 5 of nouns ending in 5 or 15 changed, when the noun takes a termination?

10. How many forms are there to render the Present and the Imperfect

in German?

11. What is the literal English translation from the German of the 1st person singular of the Present and Imperfect of to praise, used affirmatively and interrogatively?

Conversation.

Where are the books and the newspapers?

Here (hier) is a book and a news-

paper.

Have the trees (any) leaves? Yes, they have (leaves).

Are the leaves green (grün)? Yes, they are (green).

Have you a pencil?

Yes, I have a pencil and a ruler.

Is the manufacturer's village large (gross).

No, it is small (klein.)
Have you the coat and the brush?
I have only the coat.

Where is the uncle's hat?

Here are the uncle's and the agent's hats.

Did the uncle buy (kaufte) a table? No, the aunt bought a table and

two (zwei) chairs.
Did you see (sahen) the ships?

No, I saw (sah) only the ships' sailors.

Wo find die Bucher und die Beitungen?

hier ist ein Buch und eine Reitung.

haben die Bäume Blätter? Ja, sie haben Blätter:

Sind die Blätter grün? Ja, sie sind grün.

Haben Sie einen Bleistift? Ja, ich habe einen Bleistift und ein Lineal.

Ist das Dorf des Fabrikanten groß?

Nein, es ist klein. [Burste? Haben Sie ben Rod und bie Ich habe nur ben Rod.

Wo ist der Hut des Onkels? Hier sind die Hüte des Onkels

und des Agenten. Kaufte der Onkel einen Tisch?

Nein, die Tante kaufte einen Tisch und zwei Stühle.

Sahen Sie die Schiffe?

Nein, ich fah nur die Matrosen der Schiffe.

Reading Exercise No. 4.

Wer ist ein Herr in England?

(Who . . gentleman . England?):

Der berühmte Philosoph und Buchdrucker Benjamin
Franklin war nach Europa gekommen; er hatte einen Neger to Europe come negro
als Diener. Franklin war bekanntlich sehr wißbegierig und as servant — as is known very inquisitive
reiste daher in ganz England umher, um die Fabriken travelled therefore in(the)whole — about inorder manufactories
und andere Merkwürdigkeiten zu sehen. Sein Diener other curiosities to see his servant
begleitete ihn immer und sah deshalb auch alles. Sie accompanied him always and saw therefore also all .
famen endlich nach London zurück. Den folgenden Tag came at last to — back . following day
fagte Franklin zu dem Neger: Nun hast du ganz England said — to the negro now (the)whole(of) —
gesehen. Bie gefällt es dir denn?—Der Neger schüttelte negen how pleases . to thee then . negro shook
den Kopf und sagte:—England ist ein sehr sonderbares Land. head . said — very strange country
Alles arbeitet hier. Das Wasser und der Rauch arbeiten.
Die Pferde, die Ochsen und sogar die Hunde arbeiten. Die oxen even dogs work
Männer, die Frauen und die Kinder arbeiten. Alles men children work all
arbeitet, doch eines arbeitet nicht. Das Schwein arbeitet works yet one works not . pig works
nicht. Das Schwein thut nichts als essen, trinken und not pig does nothing than eat drink
schlafen. Das Schwein allein ist ein Herr in England.

Fifth Lesson.

Fünfte Lektion.

Nouns with Prepositions.

The case of a Noun or any declinable word is governed by the preceding preposition, verb etc., and until a complete explanation is given, we shall always indicate the case required by such a word.

Prepositions being of frequent occurrence, we give already in this lesson the most usual ones, indicating the case they govern. They have to be learnt by heart, and the student

should well note which case they require.

In the following lessons other usual prepositions are given in the vocabulary, the case they govern being indicated; a complete list will be found in the Chapter on prepositions.

Prepositions governing the Genitive are:

während, during; wegen, on account of; as, während bes Gewitters, during the thunderstorm

Prepositions governing the Dative are:

aus, out of; mit, with; von, from; as, mit bem knaben, with the boy

Prepositions governing the Accusative are:
"Burth, through; für, for; ohne, without; as,
one ben knaben, without the boy

The translation of the above prepositions give the literal and usual meanings, yet they are frequently translated otherwise.—Until rules are given we indicate whenever a different translation is required, and students should carefully commit such variations to memory.

The verbs haben, fein, loben.

Past Participle.

gehabt, had gewesen, been

gewesen, been gelobt, praised Sein, to be.

Perfect.

ich bin geweien, (*) I have been bu bijt geweien, thou hast been er ift geweien, he has been wir find geweien, we have been Sie find geweien, you have been or ihr feib geweien, they have been fie find geweien, they have been Pluperfect.

id war geweien, I had been bu warst geweien, thou hadst been er war geweien, he had been wir waren geweien, we had been wir waren geweien, you had been or iftr waret geweien, you had been stewaren geweien, they had been

Saben, to have.

the habe gehabt(*), I have had etc. | id) hatte gehabt, I had had etc. | etc. |

Loben, to praise.

habe gelobt(*), I have praised etc. etc. etc.

NOTE.—In a sentence the past participle is always put last; as, Der Lehrer hat den Knaben gelobt, the teacher has praised the boy.

^(*) The Perfect and Pluperfect tenses of the verb fein are formed with fein (to be), and those of the verbs haben and foben are formed with haben (to have) as in English.

already, jcon
bad, jchlecht
the bread, bas Brob
,,, butter, bie Butter
cold, talt
fine, nice, jchön
the gardener, ber Gärtner

the garden, ber Garten
Plurl: die Gärten
good, gut (Stunde
the lesson (hour), die
, letter, ber Brief
,, paper, daß Papier

" rain, ber Regen

the (railway) station, ber Bahnhof , thunderstorm, bas very, fehr Gewitter warm, warm the weather, bas Wetter ,, yard, ber Hof

Exercise No. 5.

1. During the rain,—on account of a thunderstorm,—during the lesson,—on account of the trees,—out of a yard,—with the young-lady,—from a door,—with the teachers (f.),—through the station,—for a girl,—without a woman,—through the gardens,—without the gardener,—with the teachers,—through a yard,—out of a castle,—for the aunt.—on account of the weather,—with a letter,—out of the building,—without the bread and butter,—for a nephew of the photographer,—out of a door,—with the papers,—from a king,—for the soldiers,—without the plates and forks,—with the watches (or clocks),—from the villages.

Been,—we have been,—had he been?—had,—has she h d?—you had had,—praised,—they have praised,—had I praised?—have you been?—I have had,—had they been?—we have praised,—had it been?—he had had,—have I been?—thou hast praised,—have they had?—I praised,—did you praise?—we are praising,—does he praise?—she was praising,—they praise,—did I praise?

2. Die Knaben gingen mit den Lehrern. Das Wetter ist sehr schön und warm gewesen. Die Studenten kamen während des Gewitters. Haben Sie den Schlüssel gehabt? Die Watrosen kamen von den Schissen. Die Butter ist sehr schlecht gewesen. Der Soldat kam aus einem Hose. Die Kartosseln sind schon kalt. Der Jäger kam ohne einen Hasen. Sind die Hier der Tante schön? Waren die Bücher für den Franzossen ober für den Kussen? Der Onkel ging mit einem Gärtner durch den Garten. Hat der Lehrer den Schüler gelobt? Ist das Brod gut gewesen?

Are the cherries good or bad? The weather is already very warm. We came² from the station. The presents are for the parson. The girls went¹ with the young-lady. Has the weather been cold or warm? The gardener went⁴ through the gardens. The horses came² on account of the thunderstorm. The duke has praised the soldiers. The advocate's sister came³ out of the house. Are the roses and violets nice? The woman came³ without a cake. Who has had the gimlet? The president came³ during the lesson. Have you had the glasses? The uncle's agent came³ without the letters.

¹ gingen, went 2 tamen, came 3 tam, came 4 ging, went

1. By what word is the case in which a noun, or any declinable word stands, governed?

2. What cases are governed by the prepositions mahrent (daring), mit (with), ohne (without), burch (through), wegen (on account of), and (aut

of), für (for), bon (from)?

3. Can these prepositions always be translated literally from the English, and what must be observed, when another translation has to be used? 4. With what verb are formed the perfect and pluperfect of the verb

fein?

With what verb are formed the perfect and pluperfect of the verbs haben and loben?

6. Where in a sentence is the past participle put in German?

Conversation.

Who had the watch?

The Englishman's niece had the watch.

Was the picture for the uncle?

No. it was for the aunt.

Was the weather fine? No, it was very cold. Is the cake warm? No, it (he) is already cold. Was the butter good?

The butter was good, but the bread was bad.

Did the woman come (kam) with a letter?

Yes, she had a letter.

Did the president come from the king?

No, he came from the duke.

Did the boy go (ging) through the house or through the yard?

He went through the garden.

Did the advocate come during the

No, he came during the thunderstorm.

Had you the knife?

Yes, I had it.

Did the teacher (f.) come out of the house or out of the (railway) station?

She came out of the station.

Wer hat die Uhr gehabt?(*) Die Michte des Englanders hat die Alhr gehabt.

Ist das Gemälde für den Ontel

gewefen?

Mein, es ift für die Tante gewesen.

Ist das Wetter schön gewesen? Rein, es ift fehr falt gewesen. Ist der Ruchen warm?

Rein, er ift schon kalt. 3ft die Butter gut gewesen?

Die Butter war gut, aber das Brod ift schlecht gewesen.

Ram die Frau mit einem Briefe?

Ja, sie hat einen Brief gehabt. Ram der Prafident bon dem Rönig?

Rein, er fam von dem Bergog. Ging der Anabe durch das Haus oder durch den Sof?

Er ging durch den Garten.

Kam der Advokat während Hegens?

Nein, er fam mahrend des Bemitters.

Haben Sie das Meffer gehabt?

Ja, ich habe es gehabt Ram die Lehrerin aus dem Saufe

oder aus dem Bahnhoi?

Sie fam aus dem Bahnhof.

^(*) In German the perfect tense and imperfect tense are very often used indifferently when in English the imperfect is used, especially in conversation.

Reading Exercise No. 5.

Gerechtigfeit.

(Justice.)

Gin Schmied in Spanien hatte einen Reisenden sauf
ber Landstraße ermordet. Er wurde angeklagt und zum high-road murdered was accused to(the)
Tobe verurtheilt. Die Bauern seines Dorfes hörten death condomned . peasants of his heard
bavon. Sie kamen zu bem Richter ur'd sagten: "Wir
fommen Sie um eine Gnade zu bitten. Sie haben
unsern Schmied zum Tode verurtheilt. Aber wir können our smith to(the) death condemned
nicht ohne ihn leben. Er muß unsere Wagen und Pstliige not . him live . must our carts . plomphs
ausbessern. Wir bitten Sie daher, ihn nicht zu hängen." mend . ask . therefore him not to .lmang
Der Richter antwortete: "Ich kann dieses Mal Ihr Gesuch . judge answered . ean this time your petition
nicht bewilligen. Der Schmied hat einen Menschen er- not grant . smith . man
mordet und muß deshalb sterben. Wir müssen Gerech= murdered . must therefore die . must justice
tigkeit üben." Die Bauern hatten diese Antwort nicht practise peasants this answer not
erwartet und waren betroffen. Sie berathschlagten mit expected . perplexed . deliberated .
einander, gingen dann zu dem Richter zurück und sagten: each other went then judgo back said
"Sie haben ganz Recht, wir mufsen Gerechtigkeit üben. Wir must justice practise
haben nun zwei Weber in unserm kleinen Dorfe. Ein Weber now two weavers . our small . One weaver
ist genug. Hängen Sie den andern Weber anstatt des enough hang other weaver instead of . Schmickes. So werden wir Gerechtigkeit üben."

Nouns with Prepositions (concluded).

In the declensions the Genitive is indicated by of, and the Dative by to; of and to are not rendered in German, being expressed by the termination of the article (Noun, etc.); viz: of the, bes; to the, bem; etc. Frequently, however, of and to have to be translated in German according to the following principal rules, which suffice for the present.

Of is expressed by the Genitive if standing between two nouns, the first of them governing the second (i. e. if the first noun belongs to the second noun); as, - bie Thure bes hauses, the door of the house ber Reffe eines Bfarrers, the nephew of a parson

Of is translated by von (from), with the dative after, if no such noun precedes it; as,-Bir fprachen bon bem Ontel, we spoke of the uncle

To has to be translated by 3" with the dative after, and we indicate it when it has to be rendered by the Dative without translating to; as,

Ich gehe zu dem Onkel, I am going to the uncle. Das Messer gehört dem Onkel, the knise belongs (Dat.) to the uncle.

If of and to require a different translation than above, we indicate it.

Besides the prepositions governing the Genitive, Dative, or Accusative, there are prepositions governing sometimes the Dative, and sometimes the Accusative.

Prepositions governing the Dative or Accusative are:

an, at; auf, on, upon; in, in, into; unter, under, below, among.

The Dative usually follows these prepositions; but the Accusative is used if the sentence expresses a movement or a direction towards the object standing after the preposition, thus answering to the question whither?

Ex. with the Dat .: Der Onfel iff in bem Garten, the uncle is in the garden. Der Onkel geht in dem Garten spazieren, the uncle is walking in the garden. Der Onkel sah ein Kind in dem Garten, the uncle saw a child in the garden. Das Buch liegt auf dem Tische, the book is lying on the table.

With the Acc.: 3ch fah in ben Garten, I looked (whither?) in the garden. Legen Sie bas Buch auf ben Tijch, lay the book (whither?) on the table.

The dative usually implies rest or presence in something, and is answering then to the question where?

Note.—Prepositions are often contracted with the definite article. The most usual contractions are:

am for an dem im for in dem jum for zu dem bom for bon dem ans for an das ins for in das jur for zu der

Future of the verbs haben, sein, loben.

		4)	
ich werbe,	1	I shall	
bu wirft,	haben	thou wilt	have
er wird	or	he will	or
wir werden	> fein	we shall	be
Sie werben	or	you will	or
for ihr mertet), loben	you will	praise
lie werben	,	they will	

Note. - In sentences the infinitive of the Future (haben, fein, loben, etc.) always put last; as, 3ch werde bas Madden toben, I shall praise the girl. the day, ber Tag
Plur: bie Tage
,, fortress bie Heftung
,, ink, bie Tinte [faß
,, inkstand, bas Tinten,, lady, bie Dame

much, viel

many, viele the river, ber Fluß still, noch the wall, bie Wand Plur: bie Wände , water, bas Wasser the week, bie Woche when, wann?

1, eins(†) 6, fechs
2, zwei 7, fieben
3, brei 8, acht
4, vier 9, neun
5, fünf 10, zehn

Exercise No. 6.

1. The ruler of the boy, of the queen,(*) the leaves of a book of a key,(*) to a lady,(*) to the manufacturer's customers,(*) to (Dat.) a girl, at the door,(**) (whither?) at a door,(**) upon a house (whither?) on the house, in a fortress, (whither?) into the fortress, under the table, (whither?) under a table, in a week, of the days,(*)—(whither?) at the rivers, upon the chair, (whither?) in the castle, the walls of a room, to the building,(*) the ink in the inkstand,—at the window,—(whither?) at the water,—among the pupils (f.), (whither?) on the trees, below a duke, to (Dat.) the gardener, on a rose.

We shall be, I shall have, they will praise, will he have? thou wilt be, will you praise? she will be, will they have? I shall praise, we shall have, it will be, we have had, have you been? do they praise? he was praising, has she been? I have praised.

2. Sprechen Sie¹ von dem Fabrikanten? Sind die Knaben noch in dem (or im) Zimmer? Legen Sie² den Bleistift auf den Tisch. Wann wird der Onkel in das (or ins) Haus gesen³? Licgt⁴ die Bürste des Lehrers auf dem Stuhle? Wer wird das Gemälde au (on) die Wand hängen⁵? Hängen Sie⁵ die Röcke au (on) die Kand hängen⁵? Hängen Sie⁵ die Röcke au (on) die Thüre. Sind (are there) viele Bäume in dem (or im) Garten? Liegt⁴ die Zeitung unter dem Buche? Legen Sie⁵ den Brief unter das Lineal. In dem Tintensaß ist (there is) sehr viel Tinte. Wann wird die Tante zu der (or zur) Königin gehen³.

Are you still in the garden? Is the needle lying⁴ on the table. Are [there] many soldiers in the fortress? I have had the Russian's horses. When will the president go³ to the monarch? Lay² the rulers on the table. Do you speak¹ of the thunderstorm? Is [there] still much water in the dish? There (es) are many Frenchmen among the sailors of the ship. I shall hang⁵ the hats on (an) the window. Lay² the newspaper and the paper under a book. The boys have been on the 'trees in the yard. When will the ladies be in the room? Has the king had many fortresses? When will you be to (an) the river?

^(†) eins if standing with a noun is ein and is declined like the indefinite article.

^(*) Of and to have to be translated by bom and zu, according to the given rules.

(**) Put the accusative after prepositions preceded by whither, otherwise the Dative.

¹ sprechen Sie, do you speak? 2 segen Sie, lay 3 gehen, go 4 liegt, is lying 5 hangen, hang 6 hangen Sie, hang.

- 1. How is of to be rendered, if standing between two nouns, of which the first is governing the second?
- 2. How is of to be rendered before a noun not governed by another noun?
- 3. How is to to be rendered, when no other translation is indicated?
- 4. What prepositions govern sometimes the Dative, and sometimes the Accusative?
- 5. What case usually follows these prepositions?
- 6. But when must the Accusative be used?
- 7. To what question does the Accusative answer?
- 8. What is usually implied by the Dative, and to what question does it answer?
- 9. How can the prepositions an, in, du, non be contracted with the article bem?
- 10. For what are the contractions and, ind, our used?
- 11. What is the place of the infinitive of the Future tense in a sentence?

Conversation.

When wilt thou go to the uncle? I shall go in three days.

Are the boys in the garden?
No, they went (gingen) into the yard.

Please (bitte), lay (legen Sie) the letters on a table.

The letters and the newspapers are lying (liegen) on the table in the room.

Are the hats hanging (hangen) on (an) the wall?

No, but I shall hang (hangen) the hats and the coats on the wall.

A paper is lying (liegt) under the chair.

Please, lay it on the table under a ruler.

Did you go (gingen) to (an) the river?

Yes, and a sailor has also been to the river.

Are [there] many ships on the river?

Yes, I saw (sah) eight ships. When will you come (kommen)? We shall come in two hours. Wann wirst du zum Onkel gehen? Ich werde in drei Tagen gehen. Sind die Knaben im Garten? Nein, sie gingen in den Hof.

Bitte, legen Sie bie Briefe auf einen Tisch.

Die Briefe und die Zeitungen liegen auf dem Tische im Limmer.

hangen die hüte an der Wand?

Nein, aber ich werde die Hate und die Rocke an die Band hängen.

Ein Papier liegt unter bem Stuhle.

Bitte, legen Sie es auf bea Tijch unter ein Lineal.

Gingen Sie an den Fluß?

Ja, und ein Matroje ist auch am Flusse gewesen.

Sind viele Schiffe auf dem Flusse?

Ja, ich sach acht Schiffe.

Wann werden Sie kommen? Wir werden in zwei Stunden kommen.

Reading Exercise No. 6.

I. Gin dider Rasehandler hatte die Gewohnheit mit sich stout cheesemonger . . habit . him felbst zu sprechen. Er ritt einmal auf seinem Pferde in self . speak . rode once his die Stadt und bemerkte an dem Wege einen Rirschbaum . town . perceived . . way cherry-tree voll schöner Rirfchen. Es gelüftete ihn, bavon zu effen. full of . . . tempted . of them . eat Er ftellte fich aufrecht auf ben Sattel, um an die Aefte . put himself upright . . saddle in order . . branches langen zu fonnen. Der Baum ftand in einem biden Bereach . be able . . stood . . thick büsche von Dornen und Disteln. Der gute Mann blicket thicket . thorns . thistles . good man looked um sich her und bewunderte die Geduld feines Pferdes. round himself about . admired . patience of his . Ich wäre in einer artigen Berlegenheit, wenn Jemand . should be . . nice embarassement if somebody "Büh" rufen und ich herunterfallen würde. Er fagte gee up call . . fall down would dieses Wort ziemlich laut. Das Pferd begann zu traben, this word rather loud . began . trot und unfer Reiter fiel mitten in die Dornen. . our rider fell amidst . . thorns II. Ein herr ging während großer Sonnenhige in

II. Ein Herr ging während großer Sonnenhitze in great sun heat .

einem Garten spazieren. Sein Gärtner schlief unter einem his walking his slept .

Baume. Er näherte sich ihm zornig und sagte zu ihm:—approached himself him angrily said him
Kerl, du liegst hier, anstatt zu arbeiten? Du verdienst tellow liest here instead of work deservest nicht, daß dich die Sonne bescheint! — Ich habe mich not that thee sun shines upon myself deschalb auch in den Schatten gelegt, antwortete der Gärtner. therefore also shade laid answered

Declension of Proper Nouns.

(Names of persons, countries, towns, villages, rivers, etc.).

1. Names of persons are generally used without the article, and then their declension consists in taking \$ or '\$ in the Genitive; '& being preferred with surnames. - If two or more names belong to the same person the last is declined only; as,

Rarle. Charles'; Gothe's, Gothe's; Friedrich Schiller's, Frederick

Schiller's.

Christian Names ending in 3, fth, r or 3 add in the Genitive ens, and feminines ending in e add ns; as, Srangens, Frank's: Mariens, Mary's.

In the Genitive the proper name may either precede the other noun or stand after; as,

Karls hut or der hut Karls, Charles' hat; Schiller's Berke or die Berke Schiller's, Schiller's works

Note.—The Dative and Accusative do not change; however there is an old form in $\mathfrak m$ or $\mathfrak m$, which is sometimes added in these cases, principally to the Christian Names ending in $\mathfrak F$, $\{\mathfrak g, \mathfrak g, \mathfrak g, \mathfrak g\}$, and the feminines in $\mathfrak e$.

If preceded by the article Names of Persons do not change; as, ber Sut bes Rarl, the hat of Charles

Rules when the article must stand, are given in the chapter on the employment of the article.

2. Names of places, and neuter names of countries are generally used without the article; they take in the Genitive an 3 or 's, but those ending in \$, \(\text{t}, \) annot take \$, and bon must be used, which also can be used with the other names, instead of adding 3; as,

die Straßen Berlin's or die Straßen von Berlin, the streets of Berlin; der Reichthum England's or der Reichthum von England, the riches of England;—but: die Einwohner von Mainz, the inhabitants of Mayence

If such a proper name is preceded by a noun indicating the title of a person, of must be translated by von; as,

bie Rönigin bon England, the queen of England

The other proper names (not those of persons), are used with the article, and follow the declension to which they belong, according to their gender and termination; as,

bas Wasser bes Rheines, the water of the Rhine; ber Präsident ber Schweiz, the president of Switzerland.

Note.—In the plural proper nouns are seldom used, and then generally follow the common declensions.

The verbs haben, sein, loben.

Imperative.

habe, have (thou) haben Sie } have (you) fei, be (thou) feien Sie, be (you) lobe, praise (thou) loben Sie, } praise (you) Berlin, Berlin n.
Charles, Katl
Elizabeth, Elijabeth
the emperor, der Kaifer
England, England n.
Frank, Franz
Frederick, Friedrich
Germany. Deutschland n.
Gothe, Göthe (wohner
the inhabitant, der EinLondon, London n.

Mary, Marie
Mayence, Mainz n.
the poem, das Gedicht
,, Rhine. der Rhein
Schiller, Schiller
Scotland, Schotfland n.
the shore, das Ufer
,, street, die Straße
Switzerland, die Schweiz
the work, das Wert

11, elf 12, zwölf 13, breizehn 14, vierzehn 15, fünfzehn 16, fedzehn 17, fiebzehn 18, adtzehn 19, neunzehn 20. zwanzia

Exercise No. 7.

1. Frederick's,—Elizabeth's,—Gœthe's,—Frederick Schiller's,—Frank's—Mary's—Charles' knife,—Elizabeth's roses,—Gœthe's works,—Frank's gimlet,—the carriage of (the) Charles,—the poems of (the) Schiller,—the houses of London,—the villages of Scotland,—the inhabitants of Paris (Paris),—the emperor of Germany,—the king of England,—the shores of the Rhine,—the inhabitants of Switzerland,—Frederick's watch,—the buildings of Berlin,—Gœthe's poems,—the streets of Mayence,—the president of Switzerland,—Frank's book,—the rivers of Germany,—Mary's needles,—the stations of London,—to (an) the Rhine,—for England,—from Charles,—without Switzerland,—for Elizabeth,—with Germany,—through Mayence.

Praise!—have (thou)!—be!—praise (thou)!—have!—be (thou)!—praise!—be!—have!—you will have,—I have been,—I shall praise,—had you praised?—we had been,—he will be,—I praised,—she had had,—we shall have,—they are praising,—they will have,—will she praise?—do you praise?

2. Wo ist Friedrichs Hut? Karl hat Mariens Löffel gehabt. Sind die Straßen Berlin's schön? Wer hat Elisabeths Lineal gehabt? Haben Sie Göthe's Gedichte gelesen!? Nein, aber ich haber Friedrich Schiller's Werke gelesen!. Marie hat Franzens Bleistist. Die Häuser von Paris sind sehr schön. Sind Sie schweiz gewesen? Wann sind Sie in der Schweiz gewesen? Elisabeth war die Königin von England und Marie die Königin von Schottland. Ist Friedrichs Onkel in London? Wer ist der Präsident der Schweiz?

Have you had Mary's book? We have Goethe's works. Are thehouses of London fine? I have been in Switzerland. Where is Charles' pen? Who is the emperor of Germany? Have you ever? been to (an) arriver of England? Frederick has Frank's brush. Was Mary the queet of Scotland or of England? Charles praises the inhabitants of Mayence. Have you read! Schiller's poems? I have read! of the shores of the Rhine. Elizabeth's aunt has been in Berlin. Mayence is a fortress on (an) the Rhine.

¹ celeien. read 2 ichon, ever (already)

How are the Names of Persons, used without the article, declined?
 When two or more names belong to the same person, which name

is declined?

3. What names take in the Genitive ens, and which ns?

4. What place has the name of a person in the Genitive if standing with another noun?

- 5. Do names of persons change in the Dative and Accusative, and what old form exists for expressing these cases for Christian names?
- 6. If an article precedes such a name, how is the name declined then?
 7. How are Names of Places, and neuter names of countries declined?
- 8. How is the Genitive of such names rendered, if ending in s, x, z?
 9. How is of translated if such a name is preceded by a noun indicating the title of a person?

10. Are the other proper names (not those of persons) used with the article, and how are they declined?

Conversation.

Hast thou seen (geschen) Charles' glass?
Yes, it is on Mary's table.
Where are Gothe's mems?

Where are Gothe's poems?
They are among the books in Elizabeth's room.

Have you many books?

I have only Frederick Schiller's works.

Have you been at (in) Berlin? No, but I shall be in Paris in three weeks.

Are the houses of London fine?
The houses of London and Paris are fine.

Was Elizabeth the queen of Scotland or of England?

She was the queen of England.

Are the monarchs of Germany kings or emperors?

They (it) are emperors and kings.

Is Mayence a fortress of Germany or of Switzerland?

It is a fortress in Germany.

Where is the Rhine? It is a river of Germany.

Have you ever (already) been to (an) the Rhine?

No, I have not (nicht) been there (dort).

Haft du Karls Glas gesehen?

Ja, es ist auf Mariens Tisch. Wo sind Göthe's Gebichte? Sie sind unter den Büchern in Elisabeths Zimmer.

Haben Sie viele Bücher? Ich habe nur Friedrich Schiller's Werke.

Sind Sie in Berlin gewesen? Rein, aber ich werde in drei Wochen in Baris sein.

Sind die Häuser London's schon? Die Häuser von London und von Baris sind schon.

War Elijabeth die Königin von Schottland oder von England? Sie war die Königin von Eng-

land.

Sind die Monarchen Dentschland's Könige oder Kaiser? Es sind Kaiser und Könige. Ift Mainz eine Festung Deutsch-

land's ober der Schweiz? Es ift eine Festung in Deutsch-

land. Wo ist der Rhein?

Es ist ein Fluß Dentschland's. Sind Sie schon am Rhein(e)

gewesen? Bain ich him nicht dart samesan

Nein, ich bin nicht dort gewesen.

Reading Exercise No. 7.

I. Ein Fremder kam nach London und besuchte das Irren= stranger came to - . visited . madhaus in Bedlam. Er sprach mit einigen ber Arren und house . - . spoke . some . madmen . erhielt von einem fehr vernünftige Antworten. Der Frre received . . sensible answers . madman führte den Besucher durch die Zimmer und erklärte ihm led . visitor . . . explained (to)him die Krankheiten aller andern Wahnsinnigen. Der Herr gentleman war über die verständigen Erklärungen erstaunt und fagte: . about(at) . clever explanations astonished . said Aber erklären Sie mir nun, warum find Sie benn hier? explain me now why . . then . Wegen eines Streites, sagte ber Wahnsinnige.—Das muß ein sonderbarer Streit gewesen sein; was war es benn?-. . what . . then . strange quarrel fragte der Besucher. Der Frre erwiederte:—Die asked . visitor . madman replied . world fagte, ich wäre toll, und ich fagte, die Welt wäre toll. said . was mad . . said . world was mad Aber die Welt hatte die Stimmenmehrheit und schickte mich . world . . majority of votes . sent me hierher. here.

II. Ein Pfarrer begegnete einmal einem kleinen, sehr witigen met once little witty
Anaben und sagte zu ihm:—Sage mir, mein Aind, wo said him tell me my child.
Gott ift, und ich werde dir einen Apfel geben. Der Anabe cod to thee give antwortete schnell:—Sagen Sie mir, Herr Pfarrer, wo answered quickly tell me Mr.
Gott nicht ist, und ich werde Ihnen zwei Aepfel geben.—God not to you apples give

Eighth Lesson.

Achte Lettion.

The Determinative Adjectives

consist of demonstrative, possessive, interrogative and indefinite numeral adjectives.—In German these words are called adjectives, whenever followed by a noun.

The Demonstrative Adjectives.

Sing. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur. of all Gen.
dieser	diese . "	biefes this	biefe these
lener	jene	jenes that	jene those
ber	bie	bas this	bie these
folder	folche	foldes such	folde such
berjenige	biejenige	basjenige that	biejenigen those
berfelbe	biejelbe	basselbe	bieselben ? the
ber nämliche	bie namliche	bas nämliche	bie nämlichen same
ber anbere	bie anbere	bas andere	bie anderen the other

Diejer, jener follow the declension of the definite article (page 18).

Examples: dieser Knabe, this boy; bas Messer bieses Anaben, the knisof this boy; jene Frau und dieses Mädchen, that woman and this girl; mit jener Frau und ohne dieses Mädchen, with that woman and without this girl.

Dieser, biese, etc., are generally also the translation of the English that, whenever that does not express opposition to this; as,

bieser Tisch, that table; biese Stühle, those chairs

Der, bie, etc., are sometimes used instead of biefer, biefe, etc.—They are declined exactly like the definite article, but have, if used as demonstratives, always the full stress in pronunciation, while the definite article has no stress.

3ch fenne ben Golbaten, I know this (or that) soldier

Soldjer, soldje, etc. are declined like dieser, diese, etc. if not standing with ein, eine, etc.; as,

folches Bier, such beer; mit folchen Matrojen, with such sailors

Solder, solde, etc. in the singular generally are used with ein, eine, etc., which may stand either before or after.

If followed by ein, forth only is used for all genders which is not declined at all; as,—forth eine Rönigin, such a queen.

Ein joscher, berjenige, berjesbe, ber nämliche, ber andere follow the declension of adjectives preceded by an article, and will be treated along with the demonstrative pronouns.

Verbs used with Negations.

In negative tenses in German the negation (like not, nothing, never, .c.) is put after the verb or after its auxiliary in compound tenses; as,

ich habe nicht. I have not ich lobe nicht, I do not praise (or I am not praising) lobie ich nicht, did I not praise (or was I not praising)? loben Sie nicht, do not (don't) praise! ich vin nicht gewesen, I have not been ich werde nicht loben, I shall not praise

In a sentence the *negation* is generally placed after the noun or pronoun following the verb; but before, if the noun or pronoun is preceded by a preposition in German; as,

Der Lehrer lobte den Knaben nicht, the teacher did not praise the boy. Ich din nicht in dem Garten gewesen, I have not deen in the garden.

after, nach (Dative) the beer, bas Bier
,, church, bie Kirche
,, gentleman (Mr.), ber
bert* Plur: bie herren
high, hoch
how, wie Miss, Fräulein n. Mrs., Frau f.

(*) G. des Berrn D. bem Berrn A. ben Berrn

the (military) officer, der 21, einundzwanzig old, alt Effizier 22, zweiundzwanzig poor, arm poor, arm rich, reich the school, die Schule " son, ber Sohn

,, tower, ber Thurm ,, wine, ber Wein young, jung

24, vierundzwanzig 25, fünfundzwanzig 26, fechsundzwanzig 27, fiebenundzwauzig.

28, achtundzwauzig 29. neunundzwanzig

Exercise No. 8.

1. This gentleman and that lady,—this beer and those glasses, the teacher of this boy .- a door of this church and a window of that building,—the teacher (f.) of these girls,—with this spoon or with that fork,—out of this house or from that towers,—for that soldier and for this woman,-through that village and through these streets,-that curtain,—the ink of that inkstand,—with that dish,—through that room,—those pens,—for this(*) student,—from that(*) school,—this(*) book, -with these(*) hunters, -for such wine, -with such butter, such bread,—the roofs of such houses,—such a rain,—for such a newspaper,-during such a thunderstorm.

We have not,—he is not,—they do not praise,—had I not?—werethey not?-did she not praise?-you have not had,-have I not been? -I have not praised, -will they not have ?-it will not be, -we shall not praise, -are we not praising?-I was not praising, -you do not praise, -they did not praise, -is he not praising?

2. Dieser Wein ift gut, aber jenes Bier ift schlecht. Thurme dieser Kirche find hoch. Der Sohn dieses Fabrikanten ift noch jung. Ich kenne ben Herrn nicht. Ist dieser Abvokat nicht reich? Haben Sie schon' solche Butter gehatt? Wie alt ist biese Dame? Die Einwohner dieses Dorses sind nicht arm. Kennen Sie3 Fräulein Schmidt? Der Neffe dieser Dame ist reich, aber die Nichte jenes herrn ist arm. Wir kamen nicht' nach biesem Stu-benten. Sind solche Kirschen auf biesem Baume? Frau Braun ist die Tante dieses Offiziers. Wir find in solch einem Garten gewesen.

How old is this gentleman? Is the niece of this lady still young? Do you know Mrs. Braun? Is that agent rich or poor? This butter is good, but that bread is bad. Those girls did not come4 after these Is Mr. Schmidt not the uncle of this young-lady? We have such violets in this garden. The towers of this castle are not high. How many pupils are in this school? I don't know! that(*) Russian. Have you ever been in such a church? These gentlemen are officers, and those gentlemen are students. Charles has not had this letter.

^(*) Use ber, bie, etc. instead of biefer, biefe, etc.

¹ ich fenne nicht, I don't know 2 fcon, ever (already) 2 fennen Sie, do you know? 4 famen nicht, did not come.

1. What is the Nominative and Accusative of dieser and jener in the masculine, what in the neuter, and what in the feminine and plural?

2. What is the Genitive and Dative of dieser and jener in the masculine and neuter, what in the feminine, and what in the plural?

3. When is that generally translated by dieser?

4. Der, die, etc. if used instead of dieser, diese, etc., how are they distinguished from the definite article?

5. When are solcher, solche, etc. declined like dieser, diese, etc.?

6. How can such a be rendered in German?

7. Solch in solch ein is it declinable?

8. What place does the negation occupy in a negative tense in German? 9. What place does the negation occupy in a sentence in German, if the verb is followed by a noun or pronoun?

10. What place does the negation occupy if the noun or pronoun is pre-

ceded by a preposition in German?

Conversation.

Who is this gentleman? It is Mr. Schmidt. And who is that lady? It is Mrs. Braun, the sister of (the) Mr. Schmidt

Do you know (kennen) that younglady?

Yes, it is Miss Braun.

Did Frank come (kam) with this sailor?

No, he came with that soldier.

Is the niece of that lady old? No, she is still very young. Have you such a wine or such a I have only such a beer.

Has Frederick had the uncle's

No, he has not had the key.

Have you been in this garden?

I have not been in this garden, but in that yard. Who is the teacher of these boys? Mr. Braun is the teacher. Is that officer rich? No, he is not rich.

Wer ist dieser (or ber) Berr? Es ist herr Schmidt. Und wer ift jene Dame?

Es ift Frau Braun, die Schwester des Herrn Schmidt.

Rennen Sie biefes (or bas) Fräulein.

Ja, es ist Fräulein Braun. Ram Frang mit diesem Matrosen?

Rein, er fam mit jenem Goldaten.

Ist die Nichte jener Dame alt? Mein, fie ift noch fehr jung. Saben Sie folden Wein ober

solches Bier? Ich habe nur solches Bier.

Bat Friedrich den Schluffel des Onkels gehabt?

Nein, er hat den Schlüssel nicht gehabt.

Sind Gie in diejem

gewesen? Ich bin nicht in diesem Garten

gewesen, aber in jenem Sofe. Wer ist der Lehrer dieser Anaben! Herr Braun ist der Lehrer.

Ift diefer Offizier reich? Mein, er ift nicht reich.

Reading Exercise No. 8.

I. Gin Matrofe begegnete bor seiner Ginschiffung nach met before his embarkation Indien einem alten Berrn. Dieser hatte die Familie Seã family India . old Matrosen gut gekannt. Er fragte ihn:- Wie können well known . asked him . can wagen, auf das Meer zu gehen? Ihr Vater starb venture go your stather died einem Brack, ebenso Ihr Großvater und Urgroßvater. . wreck the same your grand-father . great grand-father find fehr fühn .- Berr X., -autwortete ber Matrofe, -aber . . bold . . answered . . . fagen Sie mir, wo ftarb benn Ihr Bater?-Der me . died then your father erwiederte:- Er ftarb fehr fanft in feinem Bett, ebenfo alle replied . died . gently . his bed the same all meine Vorfahren .- Ei, Berr X.!- fagte der Matrofe, my fore-fathers why . . said . . Ihre Borfahren ftarben alle im Bett? Wie konnen Sie vour fore-fathers died all bed . bann wagen, ins Bett zu geben ?then venture , bed . go II. Ein Lord war sehr reich. Aber er war auch ein großer · · · . also . great Verschwender. In wenigen Jahren hatte er sein halbes . (a) few years . . his half Bermögen verschwendet. Giner von seinen Freunden sprach fortune squandered . . his friends spoke eines Tages mit ihm dariiber und zeigte ihm die Folgen. . day . him about it . showed him . consequences Sie haben Recht, sagte ber Lord. Es steht schlimm mit . right said . - . stands bad Ich fürchte, ich werde als Bettler sterben. Das ist . fear . . as beggar die nicht bas Schlimmfte, sagte fein Freund. Aber Sie werben worst said his friend als Bettler leben. Das ift noch viel schlimmer. · beggar live . . . much worse

The Possessive Adjectives.

Sing. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur. of all Gen.
mein	meine	mein	meine my
bein	deine	bein	beine thy
fein	seine	<u> fein</u>	seine his (its)
ihr	ihre	ihr	ihre her (its)
unser	unsere	unser	unsere our
Ihr	Thre	Ihr	Thre }
or (euer)	(euere)	(euer)	(euere) your
ihr	ihre	ihr	ihre their

The possessive adjectives in the singular are declined like the indefinite article, and in the plural like the definite article (vide: page 18); but observe, in the declensions of unjer and euer, that the terminations are added to er and not instead of er; as,

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur.
	unser	unser=e	unser	unser-e
	unser=e3	unser-er	unser=es	unjer-er
	unser=em	unser=er	·unser-em	unser=en
A.	unser=en	unser=e	unser	unser-e

Examples: mein Buch und beine Jeber; my book and thy pen ber Garten unferes Onfels; our uncle's garden mit Ihren Pferben; with your horses.

Notes: 1.—unser and euer may elide the e before or after r, if attermination is added; as,—unserm or unserm, eures or euers, etc.

2.—ener (your) is the plural form of bein (thy), and is only used in familiar conversation with relations, friends, and children (also with animals). The ordinary form is 3hr (your), which is used for singular and plural. Inorder to distinguish it from ihr (their) it is written with a capital 3.

Remarks on Regular Verbs.

Most German verbs end in en, and the regular verbs areconjugated like soben; i.e. they take off en, substituting instead the same termination as soben; as,

loben, to praise; faufen, to buy; ich lobe, ich faufe, ich lobe, ich faufe, ich lobte, ich faufte; gelobt, gefauft

In the Past Participle of verbs beginning with an unaccented prefix like be, ge, er, ber, zer, emp, ent, no ge is prefixed; as,—pertanjen, to sell; pertanje, sold

Note.—bu (thou) and ihr (you) are used with the same persons as bein (thy) and ener (your), and with Sie (your) and fie (they) the same rule must be observed as with Jhr (your) and ihr (their).

^(*) In this part of our Grammar in treating of the verbs, we limit ourselves to give only those tenses and rules which are important in the beginning, as the verbs will be treated fully later on.

to expect, erwarten the daughter, die Tochter Plur: die Töchter

the brother, ber Bruber
Plur: die Brüber
to duy, kaufen
the child, das Kind
Plur: die Kinder
to cost, koften
to cost, koften to live, to be alive, leben the mother, die Mutter Plur: die Mütter no, not any, kein(*) the parents, die Eltern (*) fein is declined like mein, etc. (see p. 18).

to sell, verkaufen since, seit (Dative) what, was? Wink, idus;
30, breißig
31, einunddreißig
40, bierzig
41, einundvierzig
50, fünfzig
60, jechzig

Exercise No. 9.

1. My father, -thy mother, -his child, -her daughters, -our uncle's customers, - your sister's plate, - the walls of your (2nd form) room,-the presents of their parents,-with my brother,-from thy aunt, -out of his castle, -with her children, - for our parson, -without your niece, -through their village, -for our mothers, -with his daughter, -without your nephew, -their brothers, -the carriage of my teacher.—the sails of his ships,—with no needle,—from your pupils (f.), -not any horses, -the roof of my house.

We live (dwell). —I am buving, —it costs, (*)—do they live (are alive)?—do you expect?—art thou selling?—I sold,—did we let?(*) was he living (dwelling)?—did they cost(*)?—did she sell?—you bought, -didst thou live (wast alive)?-we have been living (dwelling). -it had cost(*), -they are let(*), -have you expected(*), -I shall buy, -we shall expect, -will he dwell?-you were not living (alive), -sell! -do not expect!-it is not let(*),-they do not reside.

2. Bas toften Ihre Bleiftifte? Leben feine Eltern noch? Seit wann erwarten die Rinder ihren Bater? Seit einer Woche. Bwei von Ihren Gemälden hangen' an (on) der Band meines Zimmers. Dieser Offizier wohnt nicht in unserm Hause. Mein Bruber und meine Mutter(†) gingen² in euren Garten. Zwei Töchter seiner Tante sind in London. Hast du kein Kapier? Haben Sie Ihren Hut verkaust? Hat der Ugent diese Pserde für den Berzog gefauft? Der Photograph hat sein Saus nicht vermiethet.

Has your father sold his chairs? I am expecting my advocate at (auf) the station. We went1 into their yard. What have you bought in Switzerland? Our house has been let (is let) three days b since a. There (es) are many violets in our garden. The girls went2 with their brothers. Have you not expected your mother? Who is residing in our king's castle? Have these trees not any leaves? Her inkstand is on a table in my room. Their aunt has not any cake. father's and mother's (†) watches are hanging on (an) the wall of their room. How many children has his sister? How much did your brush cost?

^{(*(} Verbs having a t or b before en, insert an e before adding t or ft. (†) Possessive adjectives or any other determinative adjective must be repeated before every noun, if of different gender or number.

1 hangen, are hanging 2 gingen, went

- What is the Nominative and Accusative of mein, dein, sein, unser, euer, Ihr, ihr in the masculine, what in the neuter, and what in the feminine and plural?
- 2. What is the Genitive and Dative of these words in the masculine and neuter, what in the feminine, and what in the plural?
- 3. What letter may unser and euer elide, when adding a termination
- 4. Of what word is euer the plural form, and only when is it used?
- 5. What is the ordinary form for rendering your in the singular or plural? How must it be written, and why?
- 6. According to what verb are regular verbs conjugated, and how are the terminations added?
- 7. What are the terminations of a regular verb in the present indicative, and what are those in the imperfect?
- 8. How is the past participle formed?
- 9. When is ge prefixed in forming the past participle?
- 10. What are the terminations of the imperative?

Conversation.

Are you expecting your father at (auf) the station?

No, I am expecting my mother. Whom (wen) did you expect in (auf) the street?

I was expecting my teacher's nephew.

How many brothers has your teacher (f.)?

She has four brothers.

How many children has our agent's aunt?

She has five; two sons and three daughters.

Is your advocate's sister living in this house?

No, but his niece is living there (da).

Since when has this building been let (is let)?

Six weeks since.

Are the father and mother of this boy still living?

Yes, his parents are still alive.

What have you bought in our village?

I have bought [some] bread and butter. Erwarten Sie Ihren Bater auf dem Bahnhof?

Nein, ich erwarte meine Mutter. Ben haben Sie auf der Straße erwartet?

Ich erwartete den Neffen meines Lehrers.

Wie viele Brüder hat Ihre Lehrerin?

Sie hat vier [Brüder].

Wie viele Kinder hat die Tante unfres Agenten?

Sie hat fünf; zwei Söhne und drei Töchter.

Wohnt die Schwester Ihres Advokaten in diesem Hause?

Nein, aber seine Nichte wohnt da.

Seit wann ift bieses Gebäude bermiethet?

Seit jechs Wochen.

Leben der Later und die Mutter dieses Anaben noch?

Ja, seine Eltern leben noch. Was haben Sie in unserem

Dorfe gekauft? Ich habe Brod und Butter ge-

fauft.

Reading Exercise No. 9.

Ein Hauster ging einmal durch einen Wald. Die Hitze pedlar went once forest . heat
war unerträglich, und der Mann beschloß zu ruhen. Er undearable . man resolved . rest
legte sich unter einen Baum und nahm eine Haub auß seinem laid himself
Kasten. Die Haube setzte er auf den Kopf, schloß den den de
Rasten und schlief. Als er nach einigen Stunden erwachte, box . slept when a. sew . aweok
fand er den Kasten zu seiner Ueberraschung offen, und alle sound box surprise open . all
Hauben waren verschwunden.—Gütiger Himmel! rief er, und caps disappeared kind heaven cried
bliefte aufwärts. Da sah er alle Aeste des Baumes mit looked upwards there saw . all branches
Uffen besetzt, und jeder Uffe hatte eine Saube auf dem Ropfe.
monkeys occupied each monkey cap head Der Haustrer wußte lange nicht, was er thun follte. pedlar knew long . what . do should
Zulett sagte er zu sich: — Die Affen haben gesehen, wie at last said himself . monkeys . seen .
ich meine Haube aufsetzte, und es ebenso gemacht. Ich
will meine Haube wieder in den Kasten legen, sie werden
dann vielleicht dasselbe thun. Er erhob sich, nahm die then perhaps the same do . rose took .
Haube vom Kopfe, schwenkte sie in der Luft, legte sie in cap . head swang air laid
den Kasten, und perhara sich hinter einem Busche. Die
. box . hid himself behind . bush Affen thaten wie er vermuthet hatte. Sie stiegen sofort monkeys did . presumed . descended directly
von dem Baume, schwenkten die Hauben in der Lust und swang
legten sie dann, einer nach dem andern, in den Kasten.

Tenth Lesson.

Behnte Leftion.

The Interrogative Adjectives.

Sing. Mass. Fem. Neut. Plur. of all Gen. tveldjer weldje weldje which?

was für ein was für eine was für ein was für what (kind of)?

Welcher? welche? etc. are declined like dieser (vide: page 18)

Examples: welcher hut, which hat? welche Thure, which door? welches Fenster, which window? für welchen Knaben, for which boy? zu welcher Dame, to which lady? bas Buch welches Mabchens, the book of which girl?

Was für ein? was für eine? etc. are only used before nouns in the singular.—In the declension was für does not change ein alone being inflected, and declined like the indefinite article; as,

was für ein Tisch, what table? mit was für einem Soldaten, with what soldier?

Mas für? is used before nouns in the plural, and is undeclinable; as,

mit was für Solbaten, with what soldiers?

Mas für? (without ein) is further used in the singular before names of materials; as,

was für Tinte, what ink? mit was für Wein, with what wine? in was für Brod, in what bread?

The Indefinite Numeral Adjectives will be treated along with the Numerals.

The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood.

Present Indicative.

ich muß, I must (I am obliged, etc.) bu mußt, thou must er muß, he must bir müßen, we must sie müßen or ihr müßt, you must fie müßen, they must

Imperfect.

id) mußte, I was obliged
bu mußteft, thou wast obliged
er mußte, he was obliged
mir mußten, we were obliged
Eie mußten or ihr mußtet, you were
fie mußten, they were obliged [obliged

Rönnen, (can) to be able.

ich fann, I can (I am able, etc.) bu fannst, thou canst er fann, he can bur fönnen, we can Sie fönnen or ihr fönnt, you can

fie fonnen, they can

id founte, I could (I was able, etc.) bu founteft, thou couldst er founte, he could wir founten, we could Sie founten or ihr fountet, you could fie founten, they could

Note.—to before the infinitive of a verb in a sentence is generally translated by \mathfrak{zu} ; but is not translated if the verb is used with an auxiliary verb of mood in German; as,

3ch muß zu meinem Ontel gehen, I must (I am obliged to) go to my uncle. 3ch tann nicht tommen, I cannot (I am not able to) come.

^{.(*)} Such an infinitive must always stand last in a sentence.

alone, allein also, auch to belong to, gehören(D.) black, ichwarz the country, bad Land ,, meat, bad Meijch ,, cousin, ber Better Plur: die Bettern

the cousin(f.), die Cousine* (die Base, die Wuhme) quite, ganz red, roth the town, die Stadt Plur: die Städte to travel, reisen

the year, das Jahre
Plur: die Jahre
70, siedzig
80, achtzig
90, neunzig
100, hundertundeins
&c. &c.

(*) Pronounce: Ru:fi:ne.

Exercise No. 10.

to visit, besuchen

1. Which cousin?—which town?—which year?—which knives?—the cousin (f.) of which student?—the brother of which woman?—the queen of which country?—the streets of which towns?—with which cousin?—out of which school?—from which child?—after which pupils?—through which station?—for which villages?—what table?—the towers of what church?—out of what building?—for what emperor?—what pens?—with what sailors?—what meat?—from what wine?—for what butter?

We must,—am I obliged ?—you are obliged,—thou must,—is he obliged ?—they must,—were you obliged ?—thou wast obliged,—I was obliged,—were we obliged ?—they were obliged,—was she obliged ?—it can,—are they able ?—can you ?—thou art able,—I can,—are we able ?—was I able ?—we could,—he was able,—could they ?—you were able,—thou couldst,—you must,—was he not obliged ?—we can,—I could not,—I must not,—you cannot.

2. Welche Stadt besuchen Sie dieses Jahr? Ich werde Berlin besuchen, aber ich muß auch nach (to) Paris reisen. In welchen Ländern war Ihr Better schon? Meine Cousine kann nicht allein reisen. Was für Wein ist in diesem Elase? In was für einem Sause haben Ihre Citern gewohnt? Von welchem Offizier hat Ihr Onkel sein Pferd gekauft? Was für Tinte ist in diesen Tintenfässern? Die Tinte in diesem Tintenfaß ist roth, und die Tinte in einem Tintenfaß ist schweizer ganz allein nach (to) Deutschland? Was für Matrosen erwartet dieser Engländer? Welchem Agenten gehört dieser Earten? Was für einen Wagen haben Sie gekaust?

For which boy is this knife? Which ink in these !nkstands is black? What meat did you buy? Which castles is he obliged to visit? From what girls are these roses? Which towns have you visited? Your mother cannot go (travel) quite alone to (nach) Berlin. What cherries are on this tree? The roses in our garden are quite red. With which cousin (f.) does your sister go (travel)? Our cousin is obliged to visit the president. To which(*) children do those presents belong? What gentleman is living in your house? This key cannot belong to your brother. In which country is the Rhine?

^{(*) &}quot;To which" must be rendered by the Dative, as genoren (belong) governs the Dative (see the translation of "to" on page 40).

1. What is the Nominative and 'Accusative of welcher in the masculine what in the neuter and what in the feminine and plural? 2. What is the Genitive and Dative of welcher in the masculine and

neuter what in the feminine and what in the plural?

3. Before what nouns is was für ein used, and how is it declined? 4. Before what nouns is was für used, and how is it declined?

5. Before what nouns in the singular is was für without ein used?

6. How is to before the infinitive of a verb generally translated? and how when this infinitive stands in German with an auxiliary verb of mood?

Conversation.

Which gentleman is your cousin? The officer is my cousin.

To (nach) which town in Germany are you going (travelling)?

I am going to Berlin.

Which lady is your teacher's (f.) cousin?

My teacher (f.) has no cousin. For which boys have you bought those gimlets and knives?

For our parson's sons.

Where (wohin) do you go (gehen) this year?

I shall go into (auf) the country. What officer is living in your house?

It is our president's son.

What children are in your garden?

They (it) are the daughters of my photographer.

What meat did you buy in the

I did not buy any meat, but .I bought [some] butter.

Is your mother quite alone in her room?

No, my brother is also in the

Are you obliged to sell your horse?

Yes, it is too (zu) old. When can you let this room?

I cannot let it before (vor) three weeks.

Welcher Herr ist Ihr Better ? Der Offigier ift mein Better. Nach welcher Stadt in Deutsch-

land reisen Gie? Ich reise nach Berlin.

Welche Dame ist die Coufine Ihrer Lehrerin ?

Meine Lehrerin bat feine Cousine. Für welche Anaben haben Sie diese Bohrer und Messer gefauft?

Für die Sohne unfres Pfarrers. Wohin gehen Gie diefes Sahr!

Ich werde auf das Land gehen. Bas für ein Offizier wohnt in Shrem Sauje?

Es ist der Cohn unsers Präfidenten.

Bas für Kinder find in Ihrem Garten !

Es find die Töchter meines Photographen.

Was für Fleisch thaben Sie in der Stadt gefauft ?

Ich taufte fein Fleisch, aber ich habe Butter gefauft.

Bit Ihre Mutter gang allein in ihrem Zimmer?

Rein, mein Bruder ift auch im

Bimmer. Müffen Sie Ihr Pferd vertaufen ? Ja, es ift zu alt.

Wann fonnen Gie biefes Bimmer be miethen?

Ich tann es nicht vor brit Wochen vermiethen.

Reading Exercise No. 10.

I. Ein herr ging mit zwei Damen in einer haubtstroße
Liverpool's spazieren. Ein Bettler näherte sich ihnen.
- walking . beggar approached them
Eine der Damen hatte den Bettler schon oft gesehen und beggar . often seen
sagte zu ihrem Begleiter:- Das ist ein sonderbarer Allter.
said companion this strange old man
Sie mögen ihm so viel Gelb geben wie Sie wollen, er may him as much money give as you will(like) be
wechselt das Gelbstück und behält nie mehr als einen
changes . piece of money . keeps never more than .
Bennh Der Rerl muß bumm fein, bemertte ber Berr,
fellow . stupid . observed
ich will ihn prüfen.—Er nahm dann ein Goloftuck und
. will him try . took then . piece of gold .
legte es in den Hut des Armen. Der Bettler sagte nati-
einer längeren Paufe:- Mein Herr, ich will biesmal eine
. rather long pause sir will this time .
Ausnahme machen und das ganze Stück behalten. Aber exception make whole piece keep
thun Sie es nicht mehr Der herr, nicht wenig über
do more (again)
diese unerwartete Antwort erstaunt, ging weiter, und seine unexpected answer astonished went farther
Damen kicherten vor Bergnügen tittered (with) pleasure
II. Ein Bauer sach auf einer Jagd einen Dachs in ein badger badger
O. A. CAVILLEN banfuckta Cohnall ihi zu ananaifan Otto
Loch schlüpfen und versuchte schnell, ihn zu ergreifen. Ein hole slip tried quickly him seize
Jäger fragte haftig den Bauer:—Hast du den Dachs? asked hastily peasant balger
-Nein, aber er hat mich,—schrie der Bauer, welcher eben
me screamed . peasant who
von dem Dachse in die Hand gebissen wurde.
badger bitten was

Eleventh Lesson.

Elfte Lettion.

The Qualifying Adjectives.

Adjectives used as predicate, i.e. if they follow the verb, are invariable; as,—Mein Bierb iff aut, my horse is good

Adjectives used as attribute, i. e. if they precede the noun, must agree with it in gender, number, and case, according to the following rules:

1. Attributive adjectives preceded by the definite article or substitute,* add en in all cases, except in the following cases of the singular; viz: in the nominative masculine, and in the nominative and accusative feminine and neuter, when they add e only; thus:

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur. of all Gen.
N. ber	gut=e	biese gut:e	jenes gut-e	welche guten
G. beg	gut-en	biefer gut:en	jenes gut:en	welcher gut:en
D. ben	n gut=en	biefer gut:en	jenem gut-en	welchen gut:en
A. ben	gut=en	biese gut-e	jenes gut:e	welche gut=en

Examples: dieser gute Tisch, this good table die Tochter der fraufen Frau, the daughter of the siek woman mit welchen alten Häusern, with which old houses?

Note.—The ϵ in the termination is omitted, when the adjective ends in ϵ .

The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood (continued).

Present Indicative.

1th will, I will (I am willing, I wish, bu willft, thou wilt er wil, he will mir wollen, we will Gie wollen or ihr wollt, you will fie wollen, they will

Imperfect.

ich wollte, I would (I was willing, I bu wollteft, thou wouldst wished, etc.)
er wollte, he would
wir wollten, we would
Gie wollten, or ihr wolltet, you would
fie wollten, they would

Sollen, (shall) ought.

ich soll, I shall (I am to, etc.) bu sollst, thou shalt er soll, he shall but sollen, we shall see sollen or ihr sollt, you shall see sollen or the shall.

ich sollte, I should (I ought, I was bu solltest, thou shouldst [to, etc.) er sollte, he should wir sollten, we should Sie sollten or ihr solltet, you should see sollten or ihr solltet, you should

Notes: 1.—Thou wilt, he will, you will, they will, with another verb following are translated by merben (bu mirft, er mirb, Sie merben or ihr merbet, sie merben), when expressing future.—When they are used in the sense of, to be willing, to wish, they are translated by mosten (bu miss, er will, Sie mosten or ihr most, sie mosten).

2.—I shall, we shall with another verb following, generally expressing future, are translated by werben (id werbe, wir werben); but shall 1? shall we? in the meaning of am I to? are we to? have to be rendered by follen (foll id? follen wir?).

^(*) We call substitutes of the definite article those determinative adjectives which are declined like it; as,—biefer, jener, weigher, jeber, mander, (joider) (vide page 18).

the animal, bas Thier ,, basket, ber Korb blue, blau the carpet, ber Teppich ,, cat, die Kate ,, colour, die Farbe deep, tief the dog, ber hund

Plur: die Hunde the flower, die Blume " friend, der Freund " friend(f.), die Freundin green, grün industrious, fleißig lazy, idle, trage 130, hundert (und) dreißig large, great, tall, big, groß 131, hunderteinundbreißig:

little, small, flein sick, ill, frant 110, hundert(unb)zehn 111, hundert(und)elf 120, hundert(und)zwanzig. 121,hunderteinundzwanzig.

Exercise No. 11.

1. Decline in German in the singular and plural:—the little dog. -this blue flower, -which big animal !--that (jener) industrious pupil, -the good friend (f.), -this sick child ; -and afterwards translate: -

The old friend, the old friends, -this small door and those large windows.—the water of which deep river? the waters of which deeprivers?—the daughter of the rich lady, the daughters of the rich ladies, -the mother of this young girl, the mothers of such young girls,with this bad wine and with those bad cakes, -out of which old church? out of which old churches?—from the red roof, from the red roofs, for this lazy pupil and that industrious pupil (f.), for these lazy pupils and for those industrious pupils (f.), -through which nice country? through which nice countries?-the green colour of that large basket, -since the cold rain, -for such poor children, -which red carpet !on account of the warm weather.

He is willing, -do they wish? - we will, - I will not, - do you wish ?-thou wishest,-I would,-we would not,-thou wast willing, -you would, -they were willing, -did he wish?-you shall, -shalt thou? -it shall not, -are they not to ?-we are to, -am I to ?-they should, he ought, -I was to, -ought we?-should you not?-thou oughtest,are you able?-we must,-I cannot,-he is obliged.

2. Der reiche Fabritant ift frank. Die rothen Rosen find in dem (or im) Korbe. Diese jungen Thiere sind Ragen. Mein Bater ist in dem (or im) blauen Zimmer. Für welchen fleißigen Schüler ist dieses Geschenk? Diese alte Frau und jenes junge Mädchen sind arm. Ich habe den alten Freund meines Onkels besucht. Wollen Sie in dem (or im) schwarzen Wagen reisen? Wo haben Sie diese guten Federn gekauft? Soll ich solches grüne Papier kaufen? Dieses Fräulein ist die Nichte jenes alten Serrn.

I will sell these old chairs. Is this nice house let? We shall buy this red curtain or that blue carpet. To which industrious boy do these pencils belong? You ought to sell the sick horse. What are the green glasses to cost? The sailors of this large ship are Frenchmen. Is the red rose in that basket? Shall we visit the old castle? The son of the rich advocate is ill. I could not buy the little dogs. This black cat is from our aunt. Am I to live in that large house? I did not. wish to buy such bad wine. These nice books are the works of Goethe. They are not to visit the poor woman.

Is an adjective, used as predicate, declined?

2. What termination takes an attributive adjective if preceded by the definite article or substitute in the Nominative and Accusative masculine and what in the Nominative and Accusative feminine and neuter?

What termination takes such an adjective, in the Genitive and Dative masculine, feminine, neuter, and in all the plural cases?

4. What words do we call substitutes of the definite article, and which are they?

5. When are thou will, he will, you will, they will to be rendered by

mernene

6. When are these words to be rendered by mollen?

7. How are I shall and we shall, with another verb following, generally rendered in German, and what then do they usually express?

8. When are shall I? shall we? to be rendered by follow?

Conversation.

Are your pupils industrious?
The girls are industrious, but the boys are lazy

Where have you bought this big

I have bought him (ihn) in (auf) the country.

What did this blue pencil cost?

It (he) did not cost very much.
Who is living in that large building?
It is the house of the rich Russian.

Sell this old table and those old chairs.

I shall only sell the old table.

Which red flowers shall I buy?

The red roses in that basket

Will you have [some] of this good bread?

Yes, please (bitte).
Which ink will you buy?
I wish to buy this black ink.

Are these little animals dogs?

No, they (ii) are my aunt's young cats.

· Sind Ihre Schüler fleifig? Die Mädchem sind, fleifig, aber die Knaben sind träge.

Wo haben Sie diesen großen Sund gefauft?

Ich habe ihn auf dem Lande gekauft.

Was hat dieser blaue Bleistist' gekoffet?

Er fostete nicht fehr viel!

Wer wohnt in diesem großens Gebäude?

Es ist das Haus des reichen Russen.

Verkausen Sie diesen alten Tischt und jene alten Stühle.

Ich werde nur den alten Tisch verkaufen:

Welcher rothen Blumen foll' ich faufen?

Die rothen Rosen in diesem-

Wollen Sie von diesem guten Brode [haben]?

Ja, bitte.

Welche Tinte wollen Sie kaufen? Ich, will diese schwarze Tinte kaufen.

Sind diese kleinen Thiere Hunde! Nein, es sind die jungen Kapen meiner Tante.

Reading Exercise No. 11.

Un einem fehr kalten December-Abend tam ein Reisender an das Wirthshaus eines Dorses. Er trat in traveller . . inn of a . . . stepped . das allgemeine Wirthschaftszimmer. Alle Plätze vor dem public barroom all seats before. Feuer waren besetzt, und es war ihm unmöglich, sich zu fire occupied to him impossible himself! wärmen. Aergerlich darüber, sagte er zum Hausknecht: angry about it said . . ostler fehen, was für ein Pferd biefes sonderbare Futter fresse see strange food eats/ofbeasts)
Sie verließen deshalb ihre Plätze und gingen in den left therefore . seats . went . Stall. Der neue Gast wählte nun den besten Plat am stable . new guest chose now . best seat . Feuer und machte es sich bequem. Einige Augenblicke später kam der Hausknecht, gefolgt von den Neugierigen, later came . ostler followed . . . curious-ones zuriid. Er erklärte, das Pferd wolle die Austern nicht back declared would oysters . fressen.—Bas!—rief der Herr mit der ernstesten Miene, eatsofbeats) . eried . . most serious air es will die Austern nicht fressen? Nin gut, geben Sie oysters eat/os beasts) now well give mir ben Teller; ich will bann biefelben effen und auf eure give however health to it drink Seu und Hafer. hay . oats

The Qualifying Adjectives (continued).

2. Attributive Adjectives preceded by the indefinite article or substitute(*) are declined as if preceded by the definite article, except in the singular Nominative masculine, when they add er, and in the singular Nominative and Accusative neuter, when they add es, instead of e;(**) thus:

	Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur. of all Gen.
		gut:er gut:en	meine gut-e meiner gut-en	Ihr gut-es	teine gut:en
D.	einem	gut-en	meiner gut=en	Ihres gut:en Ihrem gut:en	feiner gut-en feinen gut-en
A.	einen	gut=en	meine gut:e	Ihr auties	feine autsen

Examples: ein guter Stuhl, a good chair Ihr junges Pferd, your young horse ber hund seiner reichen Tante, his rich aunt's dog mit unsern armen Solbaten, with our poor soldiers

The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood (concluded). Dürfen, to be allowed.

Present Indicative.

ich barf, I am allowed
bu barjit, thou art allowed
er barf, he is allowed
mir bürjen, we are allowed
Gie bürjen or ihr bürjt, you are allowed
it bürfen, they are allowed

id burfte, I was allowed bu burfteft, thou wast allowed er burfte, he was allowed bur burften, we were allowed Sie burften or ihr burftet, you were jie burften, they were allowed allowed

Imperfect.

Mogen, (may) to like.

ich mag, I may (I like, etc.) bu magft, thou mayest er mag, he may wir mögen, we may Sie mögen or ihr mögt, you may jie mögen, they may

ich mochte, I liked bu mochteft, thou likedst er mochte, he liked wir mochten, we liked Sie mochten or ihr mochtet, you liked sie mochten, they liked

Note.—The interrogative forms: may I? may he? may we? may they? are generally translated by burjen (burjen id;? burjer? burjen wir? burjen jie?), and have then the meaning of "to be allowed".

The infinitive form of an auxiliary verb of mood is generally used as a past participle in the compound tenses.—The tenses usually stand in connection with the infinitive of another verb which in German has to precede the auxiliary verb of mood, and in a sentence both are put last; as,

Ich habe gehen müssen, I have been obliged to go. Ich hatte das haus nicht fausen können, I had not been able to buy the house. Er hat kommen wollen, he has been willing to come.

^(*) We call substitutes of the indefinite article those words which are declined like it; viz: the possessive adjectives mein, bein, etc., and the word fein (vide page 18).

^(**) As the preceding article or substitute does not indicate the gender and case by its termination, the adjective must show it.

attentive, aufmerksam autumn, der Herbst (or das Spätjahr) dead, tobt the grand-father.

the grand-daughter, bie wet, naß new, neu Entelin winter, ber Binter pleasant, agreeable, an- 140, hundert(und)vier bas Spätjahr)
lead, tobt
the grand-father, bet
greichm the season, bie Jahreszeit
greichm the season, bie Jahreszeit
greichm the season, bie Jahreszeit
summer, ber Sommer
grand-mother, bie
grand-son, ber Entel useful, nüğlid Frühjahr
winter, ber Sunter, or sunter,

Exercise No. 12.

Decline in German:—a good grand-father,—my good parents; - his old grand-mother, - her young grand-daughters, - our useful book. - their useful books: - and afterwards translate: -

A warm summer, -my good mother, -thy new ruler, -the friend of his little grand-son, -the officers of our great queen, -the inhabitants of your fine country,—out of their deep river,—in (Dat.) no pleasant. season, -with an industrious girl, -for my attentive pupil, -without his useful cat, - through our small village, - your tall brothers, - the friends (f.) of their little sisters, -with no sick children, -for her nice poems, -with your old grand-father, -my young horse, -through a cold winter, -their large fortress, -my rich cousin, -for our rich uncle, -during a fine autumn.

Are you allowed ?-thou art not allowed .- I am allowed .- are we' allowed?-she is not allowed,-they are allowed,-he was allowed,were they not allowed ?-you were allowed,-wast thou allowed ?-we were allowed, -was I not allowed ?-we may, -I do not like, -it may, -do they like !- may you !- thou likest, - thou likedst, - you liked, did we like ?- I liked, -he did not like, -they liked, -is he willing ? -you ought, -I am obliged, -they were able.

2. Der Berbst(*) ift eine angenehme Sahreszeit in England. Wir werden einen warmen Sommer haben. Wie viele Enkel hat Ihr alter Großvater? Ich habe keine aufmerksamen Schüler in meiner Schule. Meine gute Großmutter ist todt. Darf ich in Ihren schönen Garten gehen'? Hast du ein neues Messer kaufen dürfen? Sein neuer Hut ist auf dem Tische. Mögen Sie unsere schwarzen Kirschen? Haben Sie Ihr altes Pferd vertaufen mussen ? Meine Cousine Marie hat ihre armen Eltern besuchen dürfen.

The father of my good friend is very rich. A good cat is very useful. Her little children are ill. We shall have a cold winter. Our old dog is dead. May we go! to your sick mother? Have you had a pleasant spring in Germany? You are not allowed to go1 into my large room. Do you like his old wine? Their good grand-father is dead. Have you been able to sell your green curtains? He does not sell any good beer.

^(*) With names of seasons the definite article must always be used in German.

¹ gehen, go

1. What termination takes an attribute adjective, if preceded by the indefinite article or substitute in the Nominative and Accusative masculine and which in the Nominative and Accusative feminine and neuter?

2. What termination takes such an adjective in the Genitive and Dative masculine, feminine, neuter, and in all the plural cases?

3. What words do we call substitutes of the indefinite article, and which

are they?

- 4. What termination does the adjective take, if preceded by the indefinite article or substitute in the Nominative masculine and in the Nominative and Accusative neuter; and why?
- 5. How are may I? may he? may we? may they? generally translated?
 6. What form is generally used as past participle in the compound tenses of an auxiliary verb of mood?

7. Whenever the infinitive of another verb stands in connection with

such an infinitive form, which of them has to stand last?

3. Where are these two verbs put in a sentence?

Conversation.

Is a good dog useful? Yes, dogs and also cats are useful.

Have you sold your new hat?

No, but I have sold my old coat.

Is Charles' father a short gentleman?

No, he is very tall. Is your carpet green? No, our new carpet is blue.

Will you sell your young horses?

Yes, a rich manufacturer will buy the fine animals.

May I take (nehmen) [some] of your good butter?

We have not any good butter; but will you not take [some] of this good bread?

Have you been able to buy her nice violets?

No, she will not sell any flowers.

Has Frederick an old grand-father?

His grand-father is dead, but his old grand-mother is still alive.

Ift ein guter Hund nüplich? Ja, Hunde und auch Kapen sind nüplich.

haben Sie Ihren neuen hut berkauft?

Nein, aber ich habe meinen alten Rock verkauft.

Ist Karl's Bater ein kleiner Herr?

Nein, er ist sehr groß. Ist Ihr Teppich grün?

Nein, unser neuer Teppich ist

Wollen Sie Ihre jungen Pferde verkaufen?

Ja, ein reicher Fabrikant will die schönen Thiere kaufen.

Darf ich von Ihrer guten Butter nehmen?

Wir haben keine gute Butter; aber wollen Sie nicht von diesem guten Brode nehmen?

haben Sie ihre schönen Beilchen kaufen können?

Nein, sie will keine Blumen verkaufen.

hat Friedrich einen alten Groß-

Sein Großvater ift todt, aber feine alte Großmutter lebt noch.

Reading Exercise No. 12.

I. Ein französischer Bergog war zu einem Feste geladen. French . feast invited An dem Tische des Herzogs saß auch ein Erzbischof. sat . . archbishop war ein sehr würdiger Serr von seltenen Fähigkeiten, aber · rare · qualities worthy von niedriger Herkunft. Der Herzog sprach fehr viel, und origin . spoke der Prälat widerlegte ihn öfters in seinen Meinungen. prelate contradicted him often . . opinions Erzürnt darüber, sagte ber Herzog endlich zu ihm:-Ich irritated about it said . . at last him glaube, es ware für Sie schicklicher, manchmal ein wenig think . were . . more proper sometimes . little bescheibener zu sein, und Ihre Herkunft nicht zu vergessen.more modest . . . origin . . forget Der Erzbischof erwiederte:-Ich vergeffe fie nie, und ich . archbishop returned . forget . never . weiß gewiß, wenn Sie ber Sohn meines Baters wären, know surely if Sie in dieser Minute Schweine hüten murben .minute pigs keep would

II. Jemand fragte einen reichen Bauer nach seinem Alter. somebody asked . . peasant . age Beiß Gott!- sagte er,-ich kann nicht genau sagen, bin knows God said exactly tell ich vierzig ober zweiundvierzig Jahre alt.—Wie kommt es, comes daß Sie nicht wiffen, wie alt Sie find?-Ich habe noch that . . know yet nie meine Jahre gezählt. Ich zähle meine Aecker, mein . counted . count fields Bieh und mein Geld. Alles dies kann ich verlieren, aber . money all this meine Jahre verliere ich nie .lose , never

Thirteenth Lesson.

Dreizehnte Leftion.

The Qualifying Adjectives (continued).

3. Attributive Adjectives if not preceded by an article or substitute take the terminations of biefer (vide page 18).

In the Genitive of the singular, en is preferred to e3(*); thus:

S	ing. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plu	r. of all Gen.
	gut-er	gut=e	gut=e3		gut=e
	gut-en (or es)	gut=er	gut=en (or	e3)	gut-er
	gut-em	gut=er	gut-em		gut-en
A.	gut-en	gut=e	gut-es		gut=e

Examples: schliecher Bein, bad wine ein Glas guten Weines, a glass of good wine mit strischer Butter, with fresh butter kaltes Basser, cold water ausmerksame Schuler, attentive pupils.

The Irregular Verbs.

The most important parts of the auxiliary and the regular verbs having been gone through, we shall now begin to consider the Irregular Verbs according to their importance.—In the lessons we give the Infinitive only, for the other tenses the student must refer to our list of verbs.

Their irregularity affects but the Imperfect teuse and the Past Participle. In the list therefore only the Past Participle is indicated and the first person singular of the Imperfect (of the Indicative) from which the other persons are formed thus:

SINGULAR:—2nd person by adding it (or eit),—3rd person is the same as the 1st person;—Plural:—all three persons by adding en (or n), the 2nd person plural if used with ihr adding t (or et).—See list of verbs page 27.

Some verbs are also irregular in the 2nd and 3rd persons singular of the Present and in the singular of the Imperative, which will be indicated in the list.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs:—*fommen, to come *ftehen, to stand verstehen(**), to understand *gehen, to go, to walk.

Note.—The perfect and pluperfect tense of regular and irregular verbs denoting movement (†) are generally formed with the auxiliary fein, to be; as,—ich bin gefommen, I have come ich war gegangen, I had gone

Some other verbs also follow this rule, as, — sieten, to stand (but not versiesen). All verbs conjugated with scin we shall mark with a *.

^(*) This is done for the sake of euphony, as most masculine and neuter nouns form their genitive in 3 or e3 in the singular.

^(**) Compound verbs are conjugated like their root verbs, but observe that verbs with the unaccented prefixes be, gc, etc. do not prefix ge in the past participle (s. p. 52).

^(†) Such verbs are: to come, to go, to walk, to travel, to swim, to sink, to run, to arrive, to fly, to spring, to ride, to fall, etc.

always, immer
the apple, ber Applel
Plur: bie Aepfel
cheap, billig
dear, expensive, theuer
faithful, tren
fresh, friid
the fruit, bas Obft
generally, gewöhnlich

to lay, to put, legen the milk, bie Mildy , pear, bie Birne the people, bie Leute ripe, reif sour, fauer sweet, füß too, zu unripe, unreif 1.000, (ein)tausenb
1,001, (ein)tausenbunbeins, etc.
1,100, (ein)tausenbeinshunbert or elshunbert, etc.
2,000, zweitausenb, etc.
10,000, zehntausenb, etc.

Exercise No. 13.

1. Decline in German:—red wine,—fresh butter,—ripe fruit,—unripe apples,—sour pears,—little children,—cheap paper;—and after-woards translate:—

Sweet cake,—black ink,—cold beer,—good parents,—a glass of old wine,—a glass of fresh milk,—on account of bad weather,—the father of industrious girls,—after [some] warm rain,—with sour milk,—from unripe fruit,—out of old churches,—through expensive wine,—for sweet butter,—without cheap meat,—for faithful dogs,—many rich people,—small houses,—with very(*) good apples,—through unripe pears,—deep water,—in (Dat.) red paper.

He is coming,—they stand,—do you understand?—thou dost not go,—I do not come,—we go,—thou wentest,—were you standing?—I understood,—we did not come,—they were going,—she stood,—we have walked,—I had understood,—he had come,—they have stood,—you will come,—we shall go,—will he understand?—go!

2. Haben Sie nügliche Bücher? Wer legte unreises Obst in meinen Korb? Unsere Tante ist mit frischer Milch gekommen. Kleine Kinder und alte Leute sind gewöhnlich gute Freunde. Ihr Bater hat zu theueren Wein gekauft. Auf diesem Baume (there) sind schönen Kirschen. Ihr Bruder soll süße Birnen kausen. Wollen Sie blaues oder rothes Papier haben? Reue Bücher sind nicht immer gute Bücher. Die Einwohner der (of) Dörser wohnen gewöhnlich in kleinen Häusern.

Old friends are generally(*) good friends. Put [some] fresh bread on the table. (The) dogs are faithful animals. Old wine is good for sick people. My cousin has only unripe apples in his garden. The woman has come with bad meat. Have you bought red curtains? Sweet fruit is always ripe. The manufacturer has bought too(*) small horses for his large carriage. We bought very(*) expensive wine in the town. Who likes ripe pears? Did you lay blue or green paper under the book? (The) spring and (the) autumn are generally(*) pleasant seasons. Will you have a glass of old wine? Has your old friend gone? These flowers have fine colours.

^(*) Adverbs are not declined.

- 1. What termination does an adjective take, if not preceded by an article or substitute, in the Nominative and Accusative masculine what in the Nominative and Accusative neuter and what in the Nominative and Accusative feminine and plural?
- 2. What termination does such an adjective take in the Genitive and Dative masculine and neuter what in the Genitive and Dative feminine and what in the Genitive and Dative plural?
- 3. To what termination is en preferred in the Genitive singular?
- 4. In what tenses do German irregular verbs differ from the regulars?
- 5. From what person of the Imperfect are the other persons formed, and how?
- 6. Of what verbs are the perfect tenses formed with the auxiliary fein instead of haben?

Conversation.

Have you bought an expensive hat?

brother?

No, I have bought two cheap hats.

Do you like fresh milk? Yes, I do (like).

Has your uncle ripe apples and pears in his garden?

No, he has only unripe fruit. Have you bought [some] good butter?

Yes, this butter is quite fresh. Have you come with your

No. I came with my sister.

Has your friend gone to (in the) church?

No, he went to (in the) town. Did you well (gut) understand

the parson? No. I could not understand him

(inn) well; he spoke (iprach) too low (leife).

Who has stood in the street? Little children and old people stood there (ba).

Have you not been obliged to go into (auf) the country? No, but I ought to go to (nach)

Germany.

Saben Sie einen theueren Sut gekauft?

Nein, ich habe zwei billige Sute gekauft.

Mogen Sie frische Milch? Ja, ich mag.

Sat Ihr Ontel reife Apfel und Birnen in seinem Garten? Dein, er hat nur unreifes Dbft.

Haben Sie gute Butter gefauft?

Ra, biefe Butter ift gang frisch. Sind Sie mit Ihrem Bruder gefommen?

Mein, ich tam mit meiner Schwester.

Ift Ihr Freund in bie Rirche gegangen?

Rein, er ging in die Stadt.

Saben Sie ben Pfarrer gut verstanden?

Rein, ich konnte ihn nicht gut verfteben; er fprach zu leife.

Wer ift in der Straße gestanden? Kleine Kinder und alte Leute standen ba.

Haben Sie nicht auf das Land gehen muffen?

Nein, aber ich sollte nach Deutschland gehen (or reisen).

Reading Exercise No. 13.

Friedrich Wilhelm der Erste von Breußen war wizig William . first Prussia und hatte gern witige Leute. Gin junger Geiftlicher witty hoffte burch feinen Wit eine Pfarrstelle zu erhalten. Er hoped . . wit . parsonage . ging jeden Morgen in den Garten bes Königs in der every morning Hoffnung, ben König bort zu finden. Gines Morgens fand . . there . find morning found er ihn wirklich. Der König ging zu ihm und begann mit . him really ihm zu sprechen. Er erhielt schnelle und gute Antworten . talk answers . received quick und ichien zufrieden. Der Geiftliche faßte Muth und bat . clergyman took courage . asked seemed pleased ihn um eine Pfarrstelle. Der König überlegte einen him for . parsonage . . considered Angenblick und sagte: "Ich kann es Ihnen nicht gleich said . . . to you versprechen. Ich muß vorher mit dem Minister reden. before . . Aber sagen Sie mir, wo find Sie her?" "Ich bin ein me . do you come from tell Berliner Ihre Majestät." "Es thut mir leid," fagte ber I am sorry majesty "Tenn alle Berliner taugen nichts."
for all are good for nothing Majestat," said . Clergyman there are them . Ich selbst kenne zwei." "Wer sind diese tüchtige Leute. myself know zwei?" fragte der König neugierig. "Der eine," sagte der curiously asked Geistliche, "ist Ihre Majestät, und der andere bin ich." majesty other Der König lächelte, und den folgenden Morgen erhielt following morning smiled got . . der Geistliche eine Pfarrstelle. clergyman . parsonage

Fourteenth Lesson.

Vierzehnte Lektion.

Remarks on the Declensions of Adjectives.

When several adjectives stand with one noun, all of them are declined alike; and as a rule they precede the noun in German; as,

ber kleine, aufmerkjame Knabe, the little, attentive boy ein kleiner, ausmerkjamer Knabe, a little, attentive boy mit seinem größen und treuen Hunde, with his big and faithful dog für ein kleines, altes Haus, kor a small, old house ein Korb guter reiser Aepsel, a basket of good ripe apples.

If an adjective refer to a noun mentioned and the noun is understood, it takes the same termination, as if it were followed by the noun, which is understood(*).—The English word one, if

used instead of the noun, is not rendered then; as,

Where is the blane Bleistift?—Here is the red one.—Here is a red one. Where is the blue pencil?—Here is the red one.—Here is a red one. Will you buy black or red ink?—I shall buy black. Haben Sie gutes. Bier?—Ja, ich habe seri—Ya, ich habe serii ha

Note.—The adjective hoth (high), if used as an attribute, becomes hoh; as,

ber hohe Baum, the high tree

Adjectives referring to nations begin with a small letter in German, unless used as nouns. - They generally end in ifth; as,

frauξοξίζα, French engắiζα, English ruffiζα, Russian. In beutζα, German, the i is left out.

Adjectives ending in el elide the e before adding a termination .- Those ending in en, er may do the same, and all three kinds may elide the e of a termination instead, if euphony will Thus: allow it.

(buntel, dark) ein buntler Borhang, a dark curtain (offen, open) ein offnes Fenster, an open window (theuce, dear, expensive) bie theure Uhr, the expensive watch.

OBSERVATION. - Participles, if used as adjectives, follow throughout the rules of adjectives; as,

verlauft, sold bas verlaufte Pferd, the sold horse tommend, coming für ben kommenben Tag, for the coming day.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: effen, to eat bergeffen, to forget geben, to give vergeben, to forgive lejen, to read fehen, to see, to look *treten, to step, to enter(**).

^(*) If in English the noun is repeated, in German the adjective alone is usually put, the noun being left out; as,

In welches Theater werben Sie heute Abend gehen?—Ich werbe ins s beutiche genen. To which theatre will you go this evening?—I shall go to the German theatre.

[&]quot;(**) To enter (a house, room. etc.) is usually translated by *treten in (Acc.).

brown, braun dark, buntel English, english to fetch, holen French, franzöllich German, beutich the glove, ber Ganbichub Plur: die Hanbichube

honest, ehrlich naughty, uncutig open, offer Russian, ruffich to send, forward, ichiden the umbrella, ber Regenichirm

yellow, gelb 100,000, hunderttausend 200,000, zweihunderttausend, etc a million, eine Million two millions, zwei Mils sionen, etc.

Exercise No. 14.

1. The lazy, naughty boy,—the daughter of an honest, poor woman,—with good, cold meat,—for these industrious and attentive girls,—your large, blue dish,—of (von) which new, brown carpet?—what plate? A large one,—this new fork? No, that old one,—out of which building? Out of the high one,—on account of which customers? On account of our good ones,—for what kind of wine? For [some] red,—in (Dat.) what newspapers? In (Dat.) Russian and German ones,—a yellow colour? No, a dark-one,—which gloves? These black ones,—with English sailors,—an expensive umbrella? No, a cheap one,—for a French teacher,—a small, open door.

They do not eat,—he forgets,—I am giving,—do we forgive?—are you reading?—thou seest,—he steps,—I ate,—we did not forget,—didst thou give?—you forgave,—she read,—were they seeing?—we did not step,—have you eaten?—thou hadst forgotten,—has he given?—they had not forgiven,—we had read,—I have seen,—had you stepped?—give (thou)/—read!—do not forget!—he will not forgive,—I shall see,—have you stepped?—I have stood,—had he gone?—we have not come,—they were standing,—did you go?—she came.

2. Wer hat diese schönen, großen Aepfel geschickt? Holen Sie einen guten Regenschirm sür Fräulein Marie. Haben Sie (any) guten französsischen Wein? Nein, aber ich habe (some) sehr guten beutschen. Ist die Farbe dieser handschuhe nicht zu dunkel? Können Sie englische Zeitungen lesen? Ich kann englische und kranzössische lesen. Welches Glas wollen Sie haben, das grüne ober das gelbe? Wit was sür Ofsizieren ging Ihr Nesse? Er ist mit russischen gegangen. Schickte der Jäger einen alten Hasen? Nein, einen jungen.

Is that (das) an English or a German ship? It is a German one. What gloves have you bought? I bought yellow ones. The church of our town has two very high towers. What books have you read? I have read French ones. Will (wollen) you fetch my new brown unbrella? A poor little girl has stepped into (or entered) the house. Shall I forgive (Dat.) the naughty boys? Did you send (Dat.) your teacher (f.) yellow or red roses? I have sent red ones. Has the woman fine, ripe pears in her basket? She has quite ripe ones. The soldier came through an open window into the house.

- 1. How are adjectives declined, if several of them stand with one noun?
- 2. If in English an adjective refers to a noun mentioned and the noun is understood, what termination does it take?
- 3. Is the English word one rendered, if it is used instead of the noun?
- 4. What form has the adjective hoth (high), if used as an attribute?
- 5. Do adjectives, referring to nations, begin with a capital letter in German, and how do they generally end?
- 6. What do adjectives ending in of elide when adding a termination?
- 7. What adjectives can do the same?
- 8. What may all three kinds do if euphony will allow it?
- 9. What rules follow participles used as adjectives?

Conversation.

I have eaten a good ripe pear.

Who has given it (fie) to (Dat.)

you (Ihnen)?

Our gardener gave it to me (mir). Where have you bought these fine brown gloves?

I have bought them (fie) in the town.

Have you [any] green paper? No, I have only blue.

Has your brother a good watch? Yes, he has an expensive watch. Did you read this English newspaper?

No, I have read that German one.

May I give you (Shnen) a glass of this good old wine?

No, please (bitte) give me (mir) a glass [of] new wine.

What have you forgotten?

I have forgotten my French books. Who has looked into the room?

It was our agent.
Can you forgive (Dat.) the

Can you forgive (Dat.) the naughty boy?

I have already forgiven him (ihm).

When did you come to your lesson?

An hour ago (vor.)

Ich habe eine gute reife Birne gegessen.

Wer hat sie Ihnen gegeben?

Unser Gartner gab sie mir.

Wo haben Sie diese schönen braunen Handschuhe gekauft? Ich habe sie in der Stadt ge-

fauft. Haben Sie grünes Papier? Nein, ich habe nur blaues.

hat Ihr Bruder eine gute Uhr? Ja, er hat eine theure. Lasen Sie diese englische Zeitung?

Nein, ich habe jene deutsche gelesen:

Darf ich Ihnen ein Glas von diesemguten alten Wein geben? Nein, bitte geben Sie mir ein Glas neuen.

Was haben Sie vergessen?

Ich habe meine französischen Bücher vergessen.

Wer hat in das Zimmer gesehen? Es war unser Agent.

Können Sie dem unartigen Knaben vergeben?

Ich habe ihm schon vergeben.

Wann find Sie zu Jhrer Stunde gekommen? Vor einer Stunde.

Reading Exercise No. 14.

I. Der Raufmann und feine Runden.

(The shopkeeper and his customers.)

Ein Berr brauchte ein Baar Strümpfe. Er trat in needed . pair (of) stockings einen Laden und fagte zu dem Bandler :- Geben Gie mir . dealer . said . shop ein Paar Strümpfe, aber gute.—Der Labenhändler zeigte . pair (of) stockings . . . shopman ihm fünf Paar. Der herr wählte ein Paar und fragte to him . pairs . . chose . pair . bann:-Bas follen biese Strümpfe kosten?- Bier then . . stockings marks saate ber Kaufmann.-Das ist zu viel, sagte ber said . shopkeeper that . . . said Ich bin ein Freund von Ihrem Hause und komme immer zu Ihnen. Sie muffen mir die Strumpfe daher etwas . to me . stockings therefore something billiger geben .- Ich danke Ihnen dafür, fagte der Rauf= . thank you for it said . shopmann: Aber ich kann die Strümpfe nicht für weniger . . stockings . . geben. Von meinen Freunden muß ich leben; meine Feinde enemics kommen nicht zu mir .--II. Wie weit ift es von Olbenburg bis Bremen? fragte

11. Wie weit ift es von Oldenburg bis Bremen? fragte
far to — asked
ein Fremder.—Acht Stunden.—Und wie weit ift es von
stranger (miles) far

Bremen bis Oldenburg?—Nun, da wird kein Unterschied
well there difference
stein!—O! bitte um Verzeihung, das ist nicht immer der Fall.
beg your pardon that always case
So sind es z. B. (zum Beispiel) von Ostern bis Psingsten
for example Baster Whitsuntide
7 Wochen und von Pfingsten bis Ostern 45!—
Whitsuntide to Baster

Comparison of Adjectives.

The comparative of adjectives is formed by adding er to the ordinary form (the Positive); the superlative by adding ft, or, by adding ften and placing am before; as,

Positive. Comparative. Superlative.
Thein, small fleiner, smaller fleinft, am kleinften, smallest aufmerkjame, attentive aufmerkjamer, more attentive familien, most attentive

The comparative and superlative, if attributes, are declined like other adjectives, the terminations being added to the above forms (fleiner, fleinft).—Thus:

Sing. Masc. Fem. Neut. Plur, of all Gen. Compar-ative. ber fleiner:e ein fleiner:er — fleiner:er bie fleiner:e bas fleiner:e bie fleiner:en eine fleiner:e ein fleiner:es meine fleiner:en - fleiner:e - fleiner:es fleiner:e Superla- ber fleinste bie fleinste bas fleinft:e fleinit:en mein fleinit:es meine fleinft-en tive. fleinit:er fleinft:e fleinft:es - fleinit:e

Examples:—Ein Kleiner-er Tiich, a smaller table, ber Kleinste Tiich, the smallest table bie Kleiner-e Uhr, the smaller watch, meine Kleinste Uhr, my smallest watch biese Kleiner-e Henster, this smaller window, unser Kleinstes Fenster, our smallest window Kleiner-e Bäume, smaller trees, bie Kleinsten Bäume, the smallest trees.

If the noun is understood the adjective in the Comparative or Superlative, like the Positive, takes the usual terminations; as,

Bir haben schöne Aepfel, aber unser Better hat schönerse (aber unser Better hat bie schönften). We have nice apples, but our cousin has nicer ones (but our cousin has the nicest ones). Sei ist die schönste bon ben Damen. She is the nicest of the ladies.

The Comparative and Superlative, if predicates, are invariable, and the form "am flein "ften" must be used in the Superlative; as,

Das Haus ist kleiner. The house is smaller. Das Haus ist am Keinsten. The house is (the) smallest. Er ist ausmerksamer. He is more attentive. Er war am ausmerksamsten. He was most attentive.

Notes.—1. Adjectives which do not allow the superlative termination ft to be easily sounded, insert an e before ft. Such are the adjectives ending in b, t, th, \$, \$, ft, \$. Thus:

ichlecht, bad ichlechteft, am ichlechteften beiß, hot beißeft, am beißeften

2. Adjectives in es and generally those in en, er in the Comparative drop the e before I, n, r; as,—buntes (dark), buntler theuer (expensive), theurer

3. Adjectives in e in the Comparative add r only, and in the Superlative they omit the e when possible; as,—trage (lazy), trager, tragft

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: befehlen, to command, to order empfehlen, to recommend brechen, to break zerbrechen, to break (to pieces) helfen, to help.

to choose, wählen the coffee, der Kaffee cool, tühl the cup, die Taffe "evening, der Abend hot, heiß impolite, unhöslich

to look for, to seek, suchen merry, vergniigt the over coat, (great coat), ber überroof the pocket-handkerchief, bas Laschentuch polite, höfisch

the sugar, ber Buder than, als, wie the tea, ber Thee the first, ber, bie, basse erste, Plur: bie ersten the second, ber zweite ,, third, bec britte

* The ordinal numbers are declined like adjectives.

Exercise No. 15.

1. Cheap, cheaper, cheapest(*),—deep, deeper, deepest(*),—pleasant, more pleasant, most pleasant(*),—honest, more honest, most honest(*),—a more naughty boy, the most naughty boy,—a richer lady, the richest lady,—the smaller pocket-handkerchief, my smallest pocket-handkerchief,—politer people, the impolitest people,—during a cooler evening,—with his freshest milk,—from the newer knife,—out of the finest gardens,—for our cheapest sugar,—without the smaller cup,—for my newest ruler,—for riper pears,—which coffee? The cheaper one,—withwhich pupil (f.)? With the most attentive one,—for sweeter fruit? No, for sourer,—what days? The merriest days,—he is more faithful, he is most faithful,—it was more useful, it was most useful,—the hottest tea,—for a darker colour,—with the lazier pupils,—for a more expensive over-coat.

He commands,—they are recommending,—thou breakest,—do your break (to pieces)?—we do not help,—I order (command),—I was recommending,—we broke,—did they break (to pieces)?—she did not help,—you commanded,—thou recommendedst,—have you broken?—thous hadst broken (to pieces),—I have helped,—we had not ordered (commanded),—have they not recommended?—break (thou)/—break (topieces)/—don't help!—command (thou)/—recommend!

2. Die Kinder waren im Garten vergnügter als (or wie) im Jause. Was für einen Ueberrock suchen Sie? Meinen neustenz Der Sommer ist die heißeste Jahreszeit. Meine Mutter hat diestheureren Taschentücher gewählt. Haben Sie von der alten Butter gegessen? Der Kasse in dieser Tasse ist sow der Thee in jener Tasse. Dieser Juder ist am billigsten. Werhat das schönste Messer hat das schönste Messer karl hat das schönste.

Which season is more pleasant, (the) spring or (the) autumn? Are you looking for your newest pocket-handkerchief? (The) dogs are more faithful than (the) cats. What over-coat did you choose, a cheap one or the most expensive one? Have you broken(**) the smaller cup? These apples are sweet, those pears are sweeter, and these cherries are (the) sweetest. All the (alle) children were merry, but the girls were the merriest. (The) cooler evenings are more pleasant. My sister's friend (f.) always^b reads^a the most useful books.

^(*) Translate the superlative in both forms, as shown in the first examples.

^(**) To break in the sense of to break to pieces is translated by zerbrechen.

- 1. How is the comparative of an adjective formed?
- 2. How is the superlative formed?
- 3. How are the comparative and superlative declined, if attributes?
- 4. What is done if the noun is understood?
- 5. Are the comparative and superlative declined, if predicates, and which superlative form can only be used as predicate?
- 6. What adjectives insert an e before ft in the superlative?
- 7. What do adjectives in ef, and, usually, those in en and er drop in the comparative?
- & What do adjectives in e add or omit when adding the Comparative and Superlative terminations?

Conversation.

Which hat is nicer, this black one or that brown one?
The black one is nicer.

Who has the darkest gloves?

Elizabeth has the darkest ones. Have you a smaller dog than your cousin or your friend?

No, my friend's dog is (the) smallest.

Can you recommend these cherries?

No, the cherries in that basket are sweeter.

Don't break the glasses.

I have already broken the smaller one.

Who has ordered (Dat.) the soldiers to go to (in the) church? Their officer ordered (it) them

(ihnen).
Where (wohin) are you going?
I am going home (nach hause),
I have forgotten my pockethandkerchief.

Whence (woher) do you come? I have been looking for my knife in the garden.

When will you buy a new overcoat?

I shall buy one (einen) in three weeks.

Welcher Hut ist schöner, dieser schwarze oder jener braune?

Der schwarze ist schöner. Wer hat die dunkelsten Hand-

schuhe? Elisabeth hat die dunkelsten.

Haben Sie einen kleineren Hund als (or wie) Ihr Better ober Ihr Freund?

Nein, der Hund meines Freundes ift am kleinsten.

Können Sie diese Kirschen empfehlen?

Nein, die Kirschen in jenem Korbe sind süßer.

Zerbrechen Sie die Gläser nicht. Ich habe schon das kleinere zerbrochen.

Wer hat den Soldaten befohlen in die Kirche zu gehen? Ihr Offizier befahl es ihnen.

Wohin gehen Sie! Ich gehe nach Haufe, ich habe

mein Taschentuch vergessen.

Woher kommen Sie? Ich habe mein Messer im Garten gesucht.

Wann werden Sie einen neuen Ueberrock taufen?

Ich werde in drei Wochen einen faufen.

Reading Exercise No. 15.

Alphons der Fünfte, König von Arragonien, genannt
der Großmüthige, war der Held seines Jahrhunderts. Er
bachte nur daran, Andere glücklich zu machen. Dieser thought . of that others happy . make
Fürst ging gern ohne Gesolge und zu Fuß durch die prince liked to go . attendance . on soot
Straßen seiner Hauptstadt. Man machte ihm einst Borsone (they) made him once remon-
strances about . danger . walks . an-
wortete: "Ein Bater, welcher unter seinen Kindern umherswered who . about
geht, hat nichts zu fürchten."
Einer von seinen Schahmeistern brachte ihm eine Summe one . treasurers brought him . sum
von tausend Dukaten. Ein Offizier war gerade zugegen present und sagte ganz leise zu Jemand: "Wenn ich nur diese
low . some-one if
Summe hätte, wie würde ich glücklich sein!" — Der König sum would have . should . happy
hatte es gehört und sprach: "Du sollst es sein. Rimm heard . spoke
ducats . thee
Eine mit Matrosen und Soldaten beladene Galeere ging
unter; er befahl, ihnen Hülfe zu bringen; man zögerte. down bring one(they)hesitated
—Da sprang Alphons selbst in ein Boot und sagte zu there sprang — himself boat . said .
den Umstehenden: "Ich will lieber ihr Gefährte, als der bystanders . better . companion .
Buschauer ihred Tobed sein."

Sixteenth Lesson.

Sechzehnte Lektion.

Comparison of Adjectives (concluded).

The following adjectives, all of one syllable, modify the vowels a, o, or u in the Comparative and Superlative:

alt. old lang, long grob, coarse charf, sharp roth, red arg, arrant dwach, weak arm, poor jung, young hart, hard falt, cold ichwarz, black flug, prudent ftart, strong frumm, crooked frant, sick, ill marm, warm furz, short

Ex.: alt alter, older or elder altest, am altesten, oldest or eldest gröber, coarser gröbst, am gröbsten, coarsest jung junger, younger jungst, am jungsten, youngest

The following are sometimes modified, and sometimes not:

bίαβ, pale sáth, smooth gart, tender gesund, healthy, naβ, wet fromm, pious wholesome

The following are compared irregularly:

Positive. Comparative. Superlative.

größ, large (great, etc.) größer, larger bester best. dam größten, largest best. dam größten, largest best. dam größten, largest best. dam größten, best best. dam hödsten, higher nahe, near näher, nearet nädst, am nädsten, nearest nacht, am nädsten, nearest

viel, much (undeclinable) } mehr, more undeclinable) meist, am meisten, most

In Comparisons as—as is translated: ebenjo—als (or wie), and not so—as: nicht jo—als (or wie); as,

Sein Ontel ift ebenso reich als (or wie) mein Bater. His uncle is as rich as my father. Der Knabe ist nicht so krant als (or wie) bas Mädchen. The boy is not so ill as the girl.

REMARKS ON THE PLACE OF SOME WORDS IN GERMAN SENTENCES.

1. Adverbs of time (like: to-day, to-morrow, soon, always, again, after a week, in three days, etc.) stand directly after the verb or auxiliary; as,—Mein Freund geht heute nicht in die Kitche. My friend does not go to church to-day. Ich werbe in drei Wochen meinen Ontel beluchen. I shall visit my uncle in three weeks.

2. As in English, these words can commence a sentence, but then, in German, the verb or auxiliary precedes the subject; as,

heute geht mein Freund nicht in die Kirche. To-day my friend does not go to church. In drei Wochen werde ich meinen Ontel besuchen. In three weeks I shall visit my uncle.

3. A noun in the Dative generally precedes a noun in the Accusative; as,—Ich have meinem Bruber einen Schliffel gegeben. I have given a key to my brother.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: nehmen, to take fprechen, to speak versprechen, to promise stehlen, to steal.

here, hier long, lang the month, ber Monat Plur: die Monate the mountain, ber Berg near, naße the night, die Nacht Plur: die Nacht the pocket, die Laigie short, fury strong, ftart the wind, ber Wind to-day, heute to-morrow, morgen yesterday, geftern the day before yesterday, borgeftern | übermorgen the day after to-morrow,

the fourth, ber vierte
,, fifth, ber sinste
,, sixth, ber sedste
,, seventh, ber siebenta
(or ber siebte)
,, eighth, ber achte
,, ninth, ber neunte
,, tenth, ber gesnte

Exercise No. 16.

1. Cold, colder, coldest,—old, older (elder), oldest (eldest),—red, redder, reddest,—poor, poorer, poorest,—young, younger, youngest,—sick, sicker, sickest,—black, blacker, blackest,—short, shorter, shortest,—strong, stronger, strongest,—long, longer, longest,—warm, warmer, warmest,—high, higher, highest,—much, many, more, most,—large, larger, largest,—good, better, best,—near, nearer, nearest (next),—my largest pocket,—a warmer month,—the next station,—higher mountains,—a stronger wind,—he is as poor as his brother,—these pencils are not so expensive as those pens.

We take,—I am speaking,—do they promise?—he steals,—thou takest,—do you speak?—I promised,—we did not steal,—was she taking?—they did not speak,—they promised,—you stole,—thou wast taking,—have you spoken?—I had not taken,—speak (thou)/—don't promise!—do (thou) not steal!—take (thou)/—I cannot promise,—we shall take,—thou shalt not steal,—he will speak,—are you allowed to take?

2. Das Wetter war gestern schöner als (or wie) heute. Unser Brod wird morgen besser sein. Haben Sie dem armen Anaben Ihren besten hut gegeben? Das jüngste Kind meiner Schwester ist am kräntsten. Die Berge der Schweiz sind höher als (or wie) die Berge Deutschlands. Wasser ist gut, Bier ist besser, ader Wein ist war besten. Ich vin nicht so alt als (or wie) Ihre Coussine. Hier sind wärmere Handschuhe. Werden Sie übermorgen ebensoschen Veilchen kausen können als (or wie) gestern? Welche Monate sind am wärmsten?

Where is the nearest station? I will visit the president's eldest son to-morrow. To-day the wind is stronger than yesterday. The pockets in my new over-coat are larger than the pockets in my old one. I gave better books to (Dat.) your friend. (The) most people are not rich. The day after to-morrow we shall have the longest day. How old is your eldest girl? My nephew is not so young as your daughter. Where are the highest mountains? The woman was as ill the day before yesterday as [she was] yesterday. Your uncle will be here in two months. In (im) summer the days are longest and the nights shortest. You have many books, but I have more, and Charles has the most.

- 1. What adjectives modify their vowels in the comparative and superlative?
- 2. What adjectives are sometimes modified, and sometimes not?
- 3. Which are compared irregularly?
- 4. How are as—as and not so—as translated in comparisons?
- 5. What place do Adverbs of time occupy in a German sentence?
- 6. Can these words also commence a sentence, and what is then done in German?
- 7. If a noun in the Dative, and one in the Accusative occur in a sentence, which noun must precede the other in German?

Conversation.

Was the weather finer yesterday

than [it is] to-day?

Yesterday it was finer, but the day before yesterday (it) was finest.

Is my cup larger than your

glass? Your cup is as large as my

glass. How old is the eldest sister of

your friend (f.)?

She is seventeen years old.
Was there (went) a colder wind
the day before yesterday than
to-day?

No, the wind is as cold to-day.

What have you said (gefagt) to your friend?

I promised to visit his parents in a fortnight (pierzehn Tagen). Who is taking the umbrella? The mother has taken it (ihn). Is that woman honest?

Is that woman honest?
No, she has stolen a watch.

Have you recommended a new book to (Dat.) your pupil?
No, I recommended him (ihm)

a German newspaper.
When will our advocate come?

He promised to be here the day after to-morrow.

War das Wetter gestern schöner als beute?

Gestern war es schöner, aber vorgestern war es am schönften.

Ist meine Taffe größer als Ihr Glas?

Ihre Tasse ist ebenso groß als mein Glas.

Wie alt ist die älteste Schwester Ihrer Freundin?

Sie ist siebzehn Jahre alt.

Ging vorgestern ein kälterer Wind als heute?

Nein, der Wind ist heute ebenso kalt.

Was haben Sie zu Ihrem Freunde gesagt?

Ich versprach, in vierzehn Tagen seine Eltern zu besuchen. Wer nimmt den Regenschirm?

Die Mutter hat ihn genommen. Ist diese Frau ehrlich?

Nein, sie hat eine Uhr gestohlen. Haben Sie Ihrem Schüler ein neues Buch empfohlen?

Nein, ich empfahl ihm eine beutsche Zeitung.

Wann wird unser Advokat kom-

Er versprach übermorgen hier zu fein.

Reading Exercise No. 16.

Der berühmte Marschall von Sachsen war sehr stark. . saxony
Er machte einmal einen Ritt in der Umgebung von Met
und sah plöglich, daß sein Pferd ein Eisen verloren hatte iron (shoe) lost
Im nächsten Dorfe fragte er den Schmied, ob er das Pferd
beschlagen könne? Der Handwerker besahte dies. Als er shoo could . artisan affirmed this when .
beginnen wollte, nahm ihm der Marschall das Hufeisen begin . him . marshal . horse-shoe
aus der Hand und zerbrach es; ebenso die folgenden bis
er ungefähr ein halbes Dutzend zerbrochen hatte. Dann . about . half dozen
fand er eines, welches seiner Kraft widerstand. Dieses found . one which . strength resisted this-one
befahl er aufzulegen und warf nach beendigter Arbeit einen to be put on . threw . sinished work .
Thaler auf die Werkbank. Jeht kam die Reihe an den dollar working-table now . (was) the smith's
Schmied. Er nahm den Thaler und zerbrach ihn ebenfalls.
Der Marschall warf einen zweiten, britten, bis der Schmied
ebenso viele Thaler zerbrochen hatte, als sein Kunde Hufeisen. dollars horse-shoes
—Oh! Sie werden alle meine Gelbstücke zerbrechen,—rief —
auch dieses zu zerbrechen. Mit diesen Worten gab er ihm ein
. this one
gold-piece which . farrier probably

The Pronouns.

The Pronouns consist of Personal, Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, Relative and Indefinite pronouns.

The Personal Pronouns.

Nom.	Dat.	Acc.	Gen.(*)
id, I	mir	mid, me	meiner, of me
bu, thou	bir	bid, thee	beiner, of thee
er, he	ihm	ihn, him	feiner, of him
fie, she	ihr	fie, her	ihrer, of her
e3(**), it	ihm	es(**), it	beffen (feiner), of it
wir, we	uns	uns, us	uni(e)rer, of us
Sie or ihr you	Ihnen	Sie } you	Ihrer eu(e)rer of you
	euch		eu(e)rer } or you
fie, they	ihnen	fie, them	ihrer, of them

It is translated by er (Nom.) or ihn (Acc.), if referring to a masculine noun, and fie (Nom. or Acc.), if referring to a feminine-noun; as,—Bo if mein Bleistift?—Er ist auf bem Tische. Where is my

noun; as,—Wo ist mein Bleistist?—Er ist auf dem Tische. Where is my pencil?—It is on the table. Wer hat meinen Rod?—Rarl hat isn. Who has my coat?—Charles has it. Wo ist die Bürste?—Ist sie nicht auf dem Tische? Where is the brush?—Is it not on the table?

It and them if not referring to persons preceded by a preposition, governing the Dative or Accusative are generally translated by ba, the preposition being affixed to ba.—If the preposition commences with a vowel, bar is used; as,

bamit, with it (or with them)
bajür, for it (or for them)
baburd, through it (or through them)
baburd, through it (or through them)
baburd, through it (or upon them)

Note.—"It", not referring to persons, in the Genitive, has to be rendered by befien (or besielben); as,—manrend befien (or besielben), during it.

It, they, if subject of the verb to be and referring to a following noun (or pronoun) are translated by es and the verb agrees with the following noun (or pronoun) in number; as,

Es ist mein Bruder. It is my brother. Es waren Stubenten. They were students. Es sind Ihre Töchter. It is your daughters.

The following expressions are rendered thus:

ich bin eş, it is I
bu biff eş, it is you
er (fie) ift eş, it is he (she)
Bin ich eş? is it I? Zch war eş, it was I; etc.

Note.—Du (thou), Plural: ihr (you) are used for addressing near relations, intimate friends, children, and animals; they commence with capitals in correspondence only.—The usual form for you is Sie, which always be gins with a capital letter even in changing into 3hnen, 3hrer, in order to-distinguish them from the 3rd person plural.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: *fterben, to die treffen, to hit, to meet berberben, to spoil werfen, to throw.

^(*) The Genitive is seldom used now and is generally replaced by a preposition with the pronoun in the Dative or Accusative.—In poetry the abbreviated forms mein, bein fein, etc. often occur.

^(**) es is sometimes 's.

the boot, ber Stiefel ,, bottle, die Flasche ,, cap, die Müte (Kappe) ,, market, der Markt to meet, begegnen* (Dat.) the pair, bas Baar to pay, bezahlen (zahlen) to say, to tell, sagen(*) (Dat.)

the shoe, ber Schuh

Plur : bie Schube the shoemaker, ber Schubmacher

to show, zeigen the tailor, ber Schneiber ,, theatre, bas Theater ,, trousers, bie Hosen (Pl. f.)

the waist-coat, die Weste to want (wish), wünschen

the way, ber Beg ,, eleventh, ber elfte ,, twelfth, ber awölfte ,, thirteenth, ber brei-

zehnte " nineteenth, ber neunzehnte twentieth, ber aman.

aigste

Exercise No. 17.

1. I,—we,—thou,—vou,—he,—she,—it,—thev,—with me,—with us, -from thee, -from you, -after him, -after her, -after them, -for me, -for us, -without thee, --without you, -through him, -through her,—through them,—of me (Gen.),—of us (G.),—of thee (G.),—of vou (G,),—of him (G,),—of her (G,),—of it (G,),—of them (G,)— Where is the market? I cannot say where it is .- Did you see my cap? No, I have not seen it. - Do you want the gimlet? Yes, I want it. -Did the tailor send my waist-coat? Yes, it is on the chair.—Did the woman come with the children? Yes, she has come with them.—Here is a glass, don't step on it. —Did you eat with this spoon? Yes, I have eaten with it.—Will you have [some] of these apples? Yes, I will have [some] of them.—Are all (alle) these pears ripe? No, there (es) are unripe ones amongst them.—Is it your friend?—It was his teacher.— They are my shoes. - Were they soldiers? - Is it you? No. it is I. -Was it they? No, it was she.—It is we.—Was it he?

We die, -I am hitting, -thou spoilest, -do you throw? -he was dying,—they did not hit,—you spoiled,—thou threwest,—die (thou)/ -don't hit!-do (thou) not spoil!-throw!-they have died,-had she hit ?-I have not spoiled.-we had thrown.

2. Geben Sie mir eine Flasche (of) Bier. Was wünschen Sie von ihm? Können Sie uns den nächsten Weg in (to) das Theater zeigen? Ich kaufte ein Paar (of) Stiesel für Sie. Sind Sie den Matrosen begegnet(**)? Nein, ich bin ihnen nicht begegnet. Sind diese Hosen für mich? Kam der Schuhmacher mit meinen Schuhen? Ja, er tam bamit. Bas fagten Gie gu ihr?

Does that dog belong (Dat.) to you? No, it does not belong (Dat.) to me. Was it she? No, it was he. Where did you buy these boots, and what did you pay for them? Is your new umbrella as good as your old one? No. it is not so good. What did your waist-coat cost? It was very cheap. Who is it? It is I. Where will you meet(**) me? I shall meet you in the theatre. What did that lady say to us? What gentlemen are in the room? They are advocates.

(*) "To say to" may be translated by fagen zu, otherwise fagen governs the Dative.

^{(**) &}quot;To meet (to have a meeting)" is translated by treffen (Acc.), whilst "to meet (in passing by)" is translated by begegnen (Dat.). Treffen is conjugated by haben and begegnen by sein.

- 1. How is it, in the Nominative and Accusative, translated if referring to a masculine noun, and how if referring to a feminine noun?
- 2. How are it and them, if not referring to persons and preceded by a preposition governing the Dative or Accusative, rendered in German, and where is the preposition added?
- 3. What must be used, if the preposition commences with a vowel?
- 4. How is it rendered in the Genitive, if not referring to persons?
- 5. When are it and they, if subjects of the verb to be, rendered by es?
- 6. How are the expressions it is I, it is we, etc. rendered in German?
- 7. When are bu (thou) and ifr (you) used in German, and when only do they commence with capitals?
- 8. What is the usual form for translating you, and with what must it always begin?

Conversation.

What do you want?
Please (bitte), give me (Dat.) a
glass [of] wine.
Is this wine good?
Yes, it is very good.
Where (mohin) are you going?
I am going to (auf) the market.
What will you buy there (bort)?
I shall buy a pair [of] shoes.

Don't pay too much for them.
Who is coming?
It is I and my brother.
Where are you to meet your uncle?
I can be meet him at (out) the

I am to meet him at (auf) the station.

Please, show (Dat.) me the nearest way to (in) the theatre.

I cannot show it to you.

Did not your agent die a long time ago (idon lange)?

No, he is still alive; yesterday

I met him in (auf) the street.

I met him in (auf) the street. You will spoil this picture.

It is spoiled already.
Where is your mother?
She is in the garden. What do
you want with (bon) her?
I must tell her something.

Was wünschen Sie? Bitte, geben Sie mir ein Glas Wein.

Jit dieser Wein gut? Ja, er ist sehr gut. Wohin gehen Sie? Jch gehe auf den Warkt. Bas wollen Sie dort kausen? Jch werde ein Kaar Schuhe

kaufen. Zahlen Sie nicht zu viel dafür. Wer kommt?

Ich und mein Bruder sind es. Wo sollen Sie Ihren Ontel treffen?

Ich foll ihn auf dem Bahnhof treffen.

Bitte, zeigen Gie mir ben nachften Weg ins Theater:

Ich kann ihn Ihnen nicht zeigen. It Ihr Agent nicht schon lange gestorben?

Nein, er lebt noch; gestern begegnete ich ihm auf ber Straße. Sie werden biefes Gemalbe ver-

berben. Es ift ichon verdorben.

Wo ist Ihre Mutter? Sie ist im Garten. Was wünschen Sie von ihr?

Ich muß ihr etwas fagen.

Reading Exercise No. 17.

Ein enger und ein weiter Stiefel. (A small and a wide boot.)

Ein Herr brauchte ein Paar Stiefel. Er ging zu
einem Schuhmacher und sagte:—Machen Sie mir ein Paar
gute Stiefel. Aber ich muß Ihnen vorher etwas sagen before something
In meiner Jugend habe ich ein Bein gebrochen. Ein Fuß
ist daher dicker als der andere, und Sie müssen einen . therefore thicker other
Stiefel weiter als den andern machen.—Der Schuhmacher other make
versprach es und nahm das Maß. Nach drei Tagen
schickte er dem Herrn die fertigen Stiefel durch seinen
Lehrburschen. Als jener sie anprobirte, zog er den weiten apprentice when that one . tried put wide
Stiefel auf den dünnen Fuß, und der Fuß ging natürlich of course
leicht hinein. Dann versuchte er dem engen Stiefel auf easily in then tried small
den dicken Fuß anzuziehen. Es war nicht möglich. Aer= . thick foot to put on possible an-
gerlich sagte er zu dem Lehrburschen:—Dein Meister vergrily apprentice master
steht sein Handwerk nicht. Ich habe ihm gesagt, einen handwerk
Stiefel weiter als den andern zu machen. Er hat gerade vider other , make just das Gegentheil gethan und einen Stiefel enger als den
opposite done boot smaller andern gemacht.
other made

The Personal Pronouns (concluded).

REFLECTIVE FORM.

Accus.	Dat.		Accus. or Dat.
mich	mir, myself	1 /	one's self, himself,
dich	bir, thyself	22.26	herself, itself,
uns	uns, ourselves	fich .	yourself, yourselves,
euch	euch, yourselves	1	themselves.

The reflective form is used when myself, etc. is the object of the verb, indicating the same person or thing as the subject; as,

Ich wasche mich. I wash myself. Der Knabe hat sich nicht verlett. The boy has not hurt himself.

Reflective pronouns are generally in the Accusative, but sometimes in the Dative, according to the case which the verb governs(*); as,-3ch lobe mich. I praise myself. Ich fdmeichle (Dat.) mir. I flatter myself.

Note.—The verb in German is often reflective when it is not so in English, and the student must be careful not to omit the reflective pronoun in German; as,

sich benehmen, to behave. Die Kinder benahmen sich nicht sehr gut The children did not behave very well.

Muself, etc. is translated by felbst (or felber), if not reflective, and emphasising(**) a noun or another pronoun in the sentence; as,

Ach felbst (or selber) ging zu seinem Bater. I myself went to his father. Der Präsident ging selbst (or selber) zum König. The president went himself to the king. In ging zum König selbst (or selber). I went to the king himself.

Note.—In German selbst or selber can even emphasise:

a) a reflective pronoun; as,

Er lobte fich felbst (or felber). He praised himself.

b) Any other personal pronoun in the dative or accusative case, having then a meaning to the English me (myself), thee (thyself), him (himself), etc.; as,

I saw him (himself). Der Abvotat versprach es mir selbst (or selber). The advocate promised it to me

REMARK.—Personal pronouns if used without prepositions in German stand directly after the verb (or auxiliary), and therefore precede an adverb of time; as,

I have given the book to him to-day.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: bitten, to ask, to beg *jigen, to sit, to be seated gewinnen, to win, to gain *jigminmen, to swim.

^(*) This must be especially observed with mid, bid (Acc.), and mir, bir (Dat.) (**) Myself, etc. emphasises a noun or pronoun, if it follows the same immediately or can be placed after without altering the sense.

a little, ein wenig to accustom to, gewöhnen an (Acc.) to ask (a question), fragen to behave, sich benehmen

to comb, tammen early, früh to flatter, schmeicheln(Dat.)

to hurt, verleten late, spät to procure, verschaffen (Dat.)

to save, to rescue, retten sharp, idjarf to sit down, lidj fegen to trouble oneself, to endeavour, lidj bemuijen

true, wahr to wash, washen (irr.) why, warum to warm, warmen to wound, verbunden the twenty-first, ber einund, washengisse(%), etc. the thirtieth ber brei-

oflatter, schmeichelm(Dat.) | endeavour, sich bemühen | Bigste, etc.

(*) These numbers are formed from awanzig by adding ste instead of te.

Exercise No. 18.

1. I hurt (Pres.) myself,—we warm ourselves,—thou troublest thyself,—did you wound yourself (yourselves)?—he flattered(*) himself,—they have washed themselves,—have you saved yourselves? (2nd form)—I procured myself,—dost thou flatter(*) thyself?—sit down!—we behaved,—she endeavoured.—The lady herself combs her daughter's hair (Haar n.).—I myself came.—We were ourselves a little impolite.—The officer will say it to the soldiers themselves.—Will you go yourself?—Did you ask (a question) the duke himself?—I could not accustom myself(**) to it.—He wounded himself.—Did you give it to (Dat.) him (himself)?—I want to speak to (mit) her (herself).—Did you nota say soc yourselfb?—I forgot myself.—We recommended ourselves.

He asks (begs),—do they sit?—we possess,—I am beginning,—are you winning?—thou dost not swim,—did I ask (beg)?—we were sitting,—they possessed,—she began,—thou didst not gain,—were you swimming?—you have asked (begged),—hadst thou been sitting?—I have not possessed,—we had begun,—he has won,—had they swum?

2. Warum hat der Soldat sich verwundet? Die Matrosen retteten sich, aber es war zu spät das Schiff zu retten. Ich dar (may) mir schmeicheln, daß (that) ich bescheiden din. Wir müssen das kalte Wetter gewöhnen. Die Mädchen waschen sich selbst. Der Pfarrer kam selbst zu srüh. Warum haben Sie ihn nicht selbst gefragt? Wie benahmen die Kinder sich gestern?

Will (wollen) you not sit down? I shall accustom myself to it. We have not saved ourselves alone. I washed myself with warm water. Why did you wound yourself? The queen has visited my parents herselfa. The boys behaved very badly (schlecht). You trouble yourself too much. I procured myself a sharp knife. The garden belongs to him (himself). Is it true, your brother hurt himself? Yes, but he hurt himself a little onlya. He flatters himself(*), that (dass) he is (sei)b a great advocatea. He asked me (myself) for (um, Acc.) a better coat. She sent a letter to the president himself. I gave (Dat.) him (himself) the book the day before yesterday. Don't hurt yourself. I warmed myself at the fire (Feuer n.).

(*) Verbs in eln add the usual terminations after leaving off the n.

^{(&}quot;*) self printed in italics indicates in our exercises, that the reflective pronoun is to be emphasised by selfs.

- 1. When is myself, etc. translated by the reflective form !
- 2. In what case do reflective pronouns generally stand in German?
- 3. In what case do they sometimes stand, and when?
- 4. Are reflective pronouns used only when they are used in Euglish, and when must they be used in German?
- 5. When is myself, etc. translated by fethft (or fether)?
- 6. Can reflective pronouns be emphasised in German, and how?
- 7. What other pronouns can be be emphasised by fethit (or felber)?
- 8. Where are personal pronouns without prepositions put in German?
- 9. Do they precede an adverb of time?

Conversation.

Why do you not sit down?
I have no chair.
Please fetch one (einen) from (aus) the next room.
Are you sitting now (jett)?
Yes, I am (sitting).
For (um) what has the poor woman asked you?
She asked me for a little bread.

Did you swim yesterday?
No, the water was too cold.
Did you win something (etwos)?
Yes, I have won a horse and a carriage.
Who possessed this garden be-

fore (por Dat.) you? A manufacturer.

Did you ask the shoemaker himself after my boots?

Yes, he has forgotten to send them.

Have you accustomed yourself to the English beer now? No, I cannot accustom myself

to it.

You are early this evening. I did not wish to be too late. Better too early, than too late. I shall endeavour to be always early.

Will you wash yourself? Yes, but I have no water. Warum setzen Sie sich nicht? Ich habe keinen Stuhl. Bitte, holen Sie einen au

dem nächsten Zimmer.

Sigen Sie jest! Ja, (ich sige).

Um was hat die arme Fran Sie gebeten?

Sie bat mich um ein wenig

Sind Sie gestern geschwommen? Nein, das Wasser war zu kalk. Gewannen Sie etwas?

Ja, ich habe ein Pferd und einen Wagen gewonnen.

Wer besaß diesen Garten vor Ihnen?

Ein Fabrikant.

Fragten Sie den Schuhmacher selbst nach meinen Stiefeln?

Ja, er hat vergessen, sie zu schicken.

Haben Sie sich jest an das englische Bier gewöhnt?

Nein, ich kann mich nicht daran gewöhnen.

Sie fommen heute Abend früh. Ich wollte nicht zu spät kommen. Beffer zu früh, als zu spät.

Ich werde mich bemühen, immer früh zu kommen.

Wollen Sie sich waschen? Ja, aber ich habe kein Waffer.

Reading Exercise No. 18.

Ein alter Bauer wurde blind. Er war ganz genau exactly
mit seinem Dorfe bekannt und ging beshalb den ganzen whole
Tag ohne Führer darin umher. Eines Abends wurde became
feine Tochter, bei welcher er wohnte, plöglich frank, und
Niemand als der alte Mann war zu Hause. Er mußte nobody man . at home .
also selbst gehen, um Hülfe zu suchen. Was that er unter consequently in order assistance did
diesen Umständen? Er steakte ein brennendes Licht in eine circumstances . put . lighted candle .
Laterne, nahm sie in die Hand, und ging in das Dorf.
Auf der Straße begegnete er einem Bekannten, welcher ihn person acquainted with who
anhielt und sagte:—Ich habe Sie immer für einen verstopped
nünstigen Mann gehalten. Zetzt sehe ich, daß Sie schon now that
findisch werden. Obgleich Sie blind sind, tragen Sie doch childish become although . — yet
eine Laterne mit einem brennenden Lichte. Es kann Ihnen lighted candle
ja nichts nüten. Ht das nicht eine Thorheit?—Ich be sure nothing be useful . that . foolishness .
bin nicht so thöricht, wie Sie glauben, sagte ber Blinde foolish believe blind man
Ich trage das Licht nicht für mich. Ich trage es für Sie
und die andern Leute, damit Sie mich sehen und mir aus other in order that (out of
bem Wege gehen können.—

The Possessive Pronouns.

The possessive Pronouns are formed from possessive adjectives (vide page 52)(*) thus:

meiner or der meinige, mine deiner or der deinige, thine feiner or der seinige, his its(**) its(**) instantial meiner or der ihrige, hers

Meiner, etc. is declined like bieser (page 18), and ber meinige, etc. like an adjective preceded by the definite article; as,

etc.	nke an aujecur	e preceded by	the definite arti	icie; as,
S	ling. Masc.	Fem.	Neut. Pl	lur. of all Gen.
N.	meiner	meine	meines	meine
G.	meines	meiner	meines	meiner
D.	meinem	meiner	meinem	meinen
A.	meinen	meine	meines	meine
N.	ber meinige	die meinige	bas meinige	die meinigen
	des meinigen	der meinigen	des meinigen	der meinigen
	dem meinigen	der meinigen	dem meinigen	den meinigen
A.	den meinigen	die meinige	das meinige	die meinigen

Possessive pronouns take the gender and number of the noun for which they stand; as,

Welcher Hut?—Ihrer (or bet Ihrige). Which hat?—Yours. Welche Uhr?—Seine (or bie feinige). Which watch?—His. Ihr hous ober unfres (or bas unfrige? Your house or ours? Weine Febern ober ihre (or bie ihrigen)? My pens or theirs.

Note. 1.—Meiner, beiner, etc. are especially used in conversation.

2.—Der meinige, ber beinige, etc. are sometimes abbreviated into ber meine, ber beine, etc., which are declined the same, ig being omitted; as,

	Sing. Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Plur. of all Gen.
N.	ber meine	die meine	das meine	die meinen
G.	bes meinen	der meinen	bes meinen	der meinen
D.	bem meinen	der meinen	bem meinen	ben meinen
A.	ben meinen	die meine	das meine	die meinen

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: binden, to bind, to tie finden, to find fid befinden, to be (in health), to be (in a place) exfinden, to invent *verschwinden, to disappear, to vanish singen, to sing *springen, to spring *zerspringen, to burst trinken, to drink zwingen, to force, to compel.

^(*) All determinative adjectives become pronouns, if not connected with a noun.
(**) "Its" (either as adjective or pronoun) is rendered fein, feiner, etc. if referring to a masculine or neuter noun and ihr, ihrer, etc. if referring to a feminine noun.

the apartments, the re- to make, to do, maden sidence, die Wohnung " artisan, ber Sanb: merter clever, geschidt the floor, ber Stod, floor (of a room), der Fußboden Plur: die Fußböden the fortune, bas Bermögen to thank, banten

not yet, noch nicht now, jest (nun) the parasol, ber Sonnen-" penholder, ber Feber-Lhalter ready, fertig the task, the exercise, die Aufgabe

the work(*), the make. die Arbeit to work, arbeiten well (Adverb), gut 1, ein Halb 1, ein Biertel 1, drei Viertel 3, ein Drittel 3, zwei Drittel g, ein Sechstel, etc.

Exercise No. 19.

1. Your penholder and mine, -my apartments or thine?-her fortune and his, -our needles and hers, -the make of your tailor or the make of ours?—the parasol of my sister or the parasol of yours?—on account of our house or on account of theirs?—the teacher of your boys or the teacher of mine?-with my carriage and with thine,-from which task? From his, -out of which book? Out of hers, -with which overcoats? With ours,—for their artisan? No, for yours (2nd form), through our church? No, through theirs, -without your glass? Yes, without mine.—for their floors (of a room) or for ours?

You bind,—thou findest,—he is (in health),—they do not invent, -I disappear, -we are singing, -they spring, -it bursts, -we drink, -I do not force, -thou tiedst, -you were finding, -I was (in health), -we invented, -you did not vanish, -thou sangest, -she was jumping. -did they burst ?-thou drankest,-you were compelling,-I have bound, -we had found, -they have been (in health), -he had invented, -hast thou disappeared ?- you had sung, -they have sprung, -it had burst.—we have drunk.—I had forced.

2. Meine Wohnung ift (are) im (on the) ersten Stocke, wo ist (are) Ihre (or die Ihrige)? Der Schuhmacher hat Ihre Stiesel gemacht, aber meine (or die meinigen) sind noch nicht fertig-Friedrich hat meinen Regenschirm, ich werde jetzt seinen (or den seinigen) nehmen. Die Fußboden in Ihrem Hause sind nicht so alt als die (those) in unsrem (or im unsrigen). Arbeitet Ihr Schneider ebenso gut als meiner (or der meinige)? Ich habe mein Messer vergessen, können Sie mir Ihres (or das Ihrige) geben ! Ich danke Ihnen. Ift Ihr Schuhmacher einb ebenso geschicktera Handwerker als meiner (or der meinige)?

I am now doing my task and Charles his. I have my penholder. where is yours? Mine is on the table. His fortune is as large as hers. Your cousin's shoes are ready, but not yours. Our rooms are on (in) the second floor, where are theirs? You have done your work, but I could not yet do mine. I walked with my cousin (f.), and my friend with his. I cannot find my hat, may I take yours? Your house is not so nice as ours. Our residence has six rooms and yours only five. Who is [the] more clever, your tailor or mine?

^(*) The work is translated bas Werf when it means a book or if used in a figurative and poetical sense.

1. How are the possessive Pronouns mine, thine, etc. translated ir German?

2. How is metner, ctc. declined? 3. How is per meining, etc. declined?

What gender and number do possessive pronouns take in German?
 What form is especially used in Conversation?

6. How are ber meinige, ber beinige, etc. sometimes abbreviated, and how are they declined?

Conversation.

How do you do?(*) How are you? Thank you, very well; and how (do you do (and how are you)?

I am quite well, thank you.

How is your friend to-day?

Thank you, he is much better now.

Have you found our gloves?

No, I found only mine. Where are you living now? I am living at 13 ... Street.

On(in)which floor are you living? On the 3rd floor.

Have you nice (hubidh) apartments?

Yes, I have two large rooms and three smaller ones. What do you wish to drink?

A cup of tea, if you please.

We shall have (befommen) some rain to-day; have you not an (no) umbrella?

I have only a parasol; but can you not give (Dat.) me an umbrella

Wie geht es Ihnen? or Wie befinden Gie fich? (Ich) banke (Ihnen), fehr gut,

und wie geht es Ihnen? or und wie befinden Gie fich? Es geht mir fehr gut, (ich) dante

(Ihnen). or 3ch befinde mich gang wohl,

(ich) danke (Ihnen). Wie geht es heute Ihrem Freunde?

or Wie befindet sich Ihr Freund heute?

Danke, es geht ihm jett viel beffer.

or Danke, er befindet fich jest viel beffer.

haben Sie unsere handschuhe gefunden?

Nein, ich fand nur meine. Wo wohnen Sie jest?

Ich wohne in der ... Straße Rummer 13.

In welchem Stocke wohnen Sie? Im dritten Stode.

Haben Sie eine hübsche Wohnung?

Ja, ich habe zwei große Zimmer und brei fleinere.

Was wollen Sie trinken? Eine Taffe Thee, wenn es Ihnen gefällig ift (or wenn ich bitten barf).

Wir werden heute Regen befommen; haben Gie feinen Regenschirm?

Ich habe nur einen Connenschirm; aber fonnen Sie mir nicht einen Regenschirm geben?

^(*) Idiomatical expressions and phrases we shall print in italics.

Reading Exercise No. 19.

Bur Beit Cromwells lebten viele Janalider in Eng- at the time — fanaties
land. Sie verbrachten jeden Tag mehrere Stunden auf passed every . several
den Anieen und beteten. Das nannten sie den Herrn suchen. knees . prayed that called Lord .
Cromwell befolgte biesen Gebrauch während bes größten eustom
Theils seines Lebens und erwarb sich dadurch die Gunst part . life . acquired goodwill
der Fanaticker. Aur einmal in seinem Leben schien er sich fanatics once . life seemed .
bariiber lustig zu machen. Er war schon Protestor von
England und hatte eine große Gesellschaft zu Tische ge=
laben. Nun wollte er seinen Freunden ein gutes Glas
Wein geben. Er wünschte tie Flasche selbst zu öffnen
und verlangte daher einen Pfropfenzieher. Derselbe wurde . demanded therefore . corkscrew was
sogleich gebracht, aber der Prot e ttor benahm sich ungeschickt immediately brought awkwardly
und ließ ihn auf den Fußboden fallen. Er war nicht
sogleich zu finden, und die ganze Gesellschaft fiel beshald so immediately whole party fell therefore
fort auf die Aniee, um ihn zu suchen. Bei diesem Anblicke directly knees in order sight
lächelte Cromwell und sagte:—Gesett, Jemand öffne in smiled — supposed anybody open .
diesem Augenblicke die Thüre und sehe euch auf den Anicen,
was würde er benken? Er würde glauben, ihr suchet den would believe
Herrn, und ihr fucht boch nur einen Pfropfenzieher.—

Twentieth Lesson.

Zwanzigste Lektion.

The Demonstrative Pronouns.

The demonstrative Pronouns are the same as the demonstrative Adjectives (vide page 48); viz:

biefer, this (one)
jener, that (one)
ber, this (one), that (of)
folther, such (one)

berief
ber i
ber of
ber of

berjeise, that (of)
berjeise
ber nämliche
ber andere, the other

These words take the gender and number of the noun for which they stand, following in general the declensions and rules of the demonstrative adjectives with the following modifications and additions:

Der, die, etc. if pronoun, in the Genitive singular and plural and in the Dative plural are declined thus:

Gen. Masc. bessen Fem. beren Neut. bessen Gen. Plur. beren Dat. Plur. benen

Soldjer, foldje, etc. (either as pronoun or as adjective) may be *preceded* by ein, eine, etc. in the singular, being then declined like an adjective preceded by the indefinite article; as,

Ein solches Saus, such a house. Was für einen hut?-Ginen solchen. What hat?-Such a one.

Derjenige, berjelbe, ber nämliche, ber andere (either as pronouns or as adjectives) are declined thus:—jenige, jelbe, etc. like adjectives preceded by the definite article, and the article ber, die, etc. in the ordinary manner; as,

Masc. N. berjenige G. besjenigen D. bemjenigen A. benjenigen Plur. N. biejenigen G. berjenigen D. benjenigen A. biejenigen

This, these are translated by bies (or bieses) and that, those by bas (or jenes), if subject of the verb to be and referring to a following noun or pronoun, the verb agreeing with the following noun or pronoun in number; as,

Dies ist mein Bleistift. This is my pencil. Dies (bieses) ist mein hut, und das (jenes) ist Jurer. This is my hat and that is yours.

Note.—This and that used in a general sense are also translated bies and bas; as,—Dies ift nicht wahr. This is not true. Wer fagte bas?
Who said that?

Der, etc. or the stronger berjenige, etc. are especially the translation of that, if followed by a Genitive or by a preposition; as,

Hur meinen Hut und für den (or benjenigen) meines Freundes. For my hat and for that of my friend. Die Gemälbe in meinem Zimmer und die (or diejenigen) in Ihrem. The pictures in my room and those in yours.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: bieten, to bid verbieten, to forbid, to prohibit *fliegen, to fly ichießen,(**) to shoot ichließen,(**) to shut, to lock, to close beichließen,(**) to resolve.

on accompany, Begleiten ago, before, por (Dat. or Acc.) to bespeak, to order, beftellen the bird, ber Bogel Plur: bie Bögel ,, comb, ber Kamm the dress, bas Kleid Plur: die Kleider

the hotel, ber Gafthof, (bas Hotel) to knock, flopfen the looking glass, ber Spiegel the man, ber Mann Plur: bie Männer " physician, ber Arat " soap, bie Seife

to greet, to salute, grugen, the spectacles, bie Brille (sing.) suit of clothes, ber Anzug once, einmal twice, zweimal thrice, breimal four times, viermal five times, jünfmal

Exercise No. 20.

1. Which comb, this one or that one?—the dress of which ladv. of this one or of that one?—before (Dat.) which castle, before (Dat.) this one or before that one?-for which birds, for these or for those?with which physician? With that one,—in (Acc.) which hotel? In this one. —Is this your soap?—That was my looking-glass.—Are these your spectacles (singular) or mine? They are mine (singular).—Are those your brother's penholders?-Why do you say that?-This was very impolite. - Is that true? - When did you see that? - Which suit will (wollen) you buy? I shall buy that one (den). On account of that (dessen) Ib musta go?—I shall order such a parasol.—What apples did you take ?- I took such [apples].-Your friend and that of your brother.-The sons of these men or those of the women.-With the horses of your father and with those of your grandfather.—the tree in the yard and that in the garden,—the ink in this inkstand or that in the other one, -the same hat, -with the other pen, -for the other boy. -for what wine? For the same, -these pears? No, the others,

We bid, —I am forbidding, —you fly, —thou dost not shoot(*). we are shutting, -he resolves, -thou badest, -did you prohibit?-it. flew, -they shot, -I locked, -we were resolving, -I have bidden. -we had forbidden, -they have flown, -we had shot, -you have shut, thou hadst resolved.

2. Welcher Berr grußte Sie, dieser ober jener? Saben Sie Ihre Schwester oder die (or diejenige) Ihres Freundes (your friend's) begleitet? An welche Thure haben Sie geflopft? Ich flopfte an diese. Welcher Offizier ift Ihr Better? Es ist ber (or berjenige) mit der Brille. Ist dies Ihr Spiegel? Nein, es ist der (or derjenige) meiner Tante (my aunt's). Waren wir vor einem Jahre nicht in demselben (or in dem nämlichen) Gafthofe?

Is this looking-glass not larger than that (one)? I met (begegnen) him in the same street twob months agoa. Which gentleman is the physician, this one or that one? On which tree has your bird flown? It flew on that one in our yard. I shall prohibit them that. Did you show (Dat.) me this suit (of clothes)? Yes, I showed you the same. Will (wollen) you have this newspaper or the other? Did you order (bestellen) these men or those? I have said this already. These are my sisters and those are my brothers.

^(*) After hissing sounds like f, B, etc. an e is inserted when adding ft. German Grammar

1. What gender and number do demonstrative pronouns take?

2. What declensions and rules do they generally follow?

3. How is ber, etc. declined in the Genitive of masculine, feminine, neuter, and plural, and how in the Dative of the plural?

4. How is folder, etc. declined if preceded by ein?

- 5. How are berjenige, berfelbe, ber nämliche and ber andere declined?
- When are this, these translated by bies (or bieses) and that, those by bas (or jenes)?
- 7. When this and that are used in a general sense, how are they then translated?
- 8. When is that translated by ber, etc. or berjenige, etc.?

Conversation.

There is a knock.
Who knocks?
Who can it be?
Our cousin will come to-day.
Come in.
Which key will you have, mine
or my brother's?

Please, give (Dat.) me yours. Which dress will you buy? I shall buy that one. On which table are my books?

They are on that in the large room.
Who has forbidden that?
(The) father has forbidden it.
Are the windows shut?
Yes, I shut the windows in this room, also those in the other.

Who has shot this little bird?

A naughty boy shot it yesterday evening. Are these your letters? No, they are yours. Where (wohin) did you resolve to go? We have resolved to visit the

old castle.

It this the way to (auf) the station?

No, that one is (it).

Es klopft Jemand. Wer klopft?

Wer kann es sein? Unser Better wird heute kommen. Herein.

Welchen Schlüssel wollen Sie haben, meinen oder ben meines Brubers?

Bitte, geben Sie mir Ihren. Welches Aleid wollen Sie kaufen? Ich werde dieses kaufen. Auf welchem Tische sind meine

Bücher? Sie sind auf bem im großen Limmer.

Wer hat das verboten? Der Bater hat es verboten. Sind die Fenster geschlossen? Ja, ich schloß die Fenster in

biesem Zimmer, auch bie im ander(e)n. Ber hat diesen kleinen Bogel

geschossen? Ein unartiger Knabe schoß ihn

gestern Abend. Sind dies Ihre Briefe?

Nein, es sind Ihre.

Wohin beschlossen Sie zu gehen!

Wir haben beschlossen, bas alte Schloß zu besuchen.

Ist dies (or das) der Weg auf den Bahnhof? Nein, jener (or der) ist es.

Reading Exercise No. 20.

Georg ber Erfte, König von England, war Kurfürst von Hannover, ehe er den englischen Thron bestieg. Da before . ascended er sein Geburtsland sehr gern hatte, reifte er beinahe native country (was very fond of) jebes Jahr borthin. Seine Reise ging gewöhnlich burch . there journey Nächte in ben Gasthöfen zubrachte. Holland, wo er die Aber jeden Morgen hatte er so große Rechnungen zu every morning bezahlen, daß er es schließlich zu viel fand, obgleich finally that . although ber König bes reichen Englands war. Er beschloß daher, nie mehr in einem Gasthofe zu übernachten, sondern die . pass the night never again . . but Nächte durch zu fahren. Einmal war er die ganze Nacht ing the nights . drive whole gefahren und hielt um acht Uhr bes Morgens vor dem driven . stopped at . o'clock in the morning goldenen Löwen in Amersfort, um die Pferde zu wechseln. lion . — in order . . . Da er ein wenig Hunger hatte, bestellte er drei gesottene Als er sie mit gutem Appetit gegeffen hatte, fragte er den Wirth:-Bas kosten die Gier?-3weihundert Gulben, . . innkeeper sagte dieser.—Der König erwiederte erstaunt:—Zweihundert replied astonished Gulben für brei Gier! Sind benn die Gier hier fo felten? then : eggs -Die Eier sind gar nicht selten, sagte ber Wirth, . not at all scarce . innkeeper die Könige find fehr felten .-

Twenty-first Lesson.

Ginundzwanziafte Lektion.

The Interrogative Pronouns.

The Interrogative Pronouns are:

wer, who? was, what? welcher, which (one)?

was für einer, what kind? what sort?

Declension of mer? and mas?

N. wer, who?

N. mas, what?

G. wessen(*), whose? D. wem, (to) whom? A. wen, whom?

G. (weffen(*), of what?) D. was, (to) what?

A. mos. what?

Examples:—Wer kommt? Who is coming? Bessen Messer ist bies? Whose knife is this? Bem gaben Sie ben Bries? To (Dat.) whom did you give the letter? Wen hat Ihr Freund besucht? Whom did your friend visit? Bas ift bas? What is that? Auf mas sigen Sie? On what are

you sitting? Bas mollen Gie faufen? What will you buy?

Belcher? was für einer? take the gender of the nouns to which they refer. They are declined like biefer (vide page 18). but mas für einer is in the plural, and if referring to names of materials, only was für (vide page 56); thus:

Mase. was für einer? Fem. was für eine? Neut. mas für eines?

Mase. was für einer; Fem. was für einer; Reac was für etc.

Examples:—Belder von den Knaben kommt? Which of(**) the boys is coming? In a eine Zeitung.—Welde lasen Eie? I read a newspaper.—Which one did you read? Er war in einem Hause.—In was für einem? He was in a house.—In what kind? In kind is gif kustie zwei Büder.—Bas für sind es? I bought two books.—What kind are they? Bünschen Sie Butter?—Bas für haben Sie? Do you want femel better?—What sort have you? [some] butter?-What sort have you?

Which? if subject of the verb to be, and referring to a following noun or pronoun is translated welches; fein (to be) agreeing in number with the following noun or pronoun; as,

Beldes ift Ihr Feberhalter, und welches ift meiner? Which is your penholder, and which is mine? Welches find Ihre Febern? Which are your pens?

Note. — What? if preceded by a preposition governing the Dative or Accusative, is very often rendered by wo, the preposition being affixed to mo. - If the preposition begins with a vowel mor is used; as,

wovon, of what? womit, with what? woburth, through what?

woraus, out of what? moran, at what? morin, in what? etc.

These contractions are also equivalent to the English whereof? wherewith? etc.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: fieden, to boil verlieren, to lose wiegen, to weigh (to be of weight) ziehen, to draw, to pull *liegen, to lie, to be situated.

(*) wessen is sometimes abbreviated into wes (or wes).

^{(**) &}quot;Of" after an interrogative pronoun is better rendered by bon than by the Genitive.

the cloak, ber Mantel Plur: die Mäntel ,, collar, der Kragen Plur: die Krägen

,, fool-scap (writing)
paper, bas Kanzlets
papier
to hear, hören

to hear, hören the lamp, die Lambe ", laundress, die Wäscherin

" note-paper, bas Brief-

nothing, not anything, nitidis to observe, to perceive, to remark, bemerten the parcel, bas Radet pocket-book, biz

Brieftasche ,, post-man, ber Briefträger [Eing.) ,, seissors, die Schere

,, sheet, ber Bugea.
,, shirt, bas hemb
Plur: bie hemben

nothing, not anything, the thimble, ber Fingernichts

thread, ber Faben
Plur: bie Fäben
washing, bie Wäsche
workman, bet Arbeiter

workman, ber Aubeiter orefold, simple, eitsech tworold, sweifach double, boypett, threefold, breifach

fourfold (quadruple), vierfach fivefold, fünffach, etc.

Exercise No. 21.

1. Who is here!—Who is singing?—Whose shirt is this!—Whose works are you reading?—To (Dat.) whom does this pocket-book belong?
—With whom did you come?—To whom will (wollen) you go?—Whom have you seen!—Whom are you expecting?—For whom is that lamp?—What has the laundress in her basket?—What do you perceive?—Of (Gen.) what is this man accused (beschuldigt)?—Whatb (*) shall we speak ofa?—Upon what(*) are you standing?—With what(*) am I to eat?—What did you hear?—What did the laundress say?—Which of these collars?—With which of the bottles?—Have you the parcel? Which one?—Where are the cloaks? Which ones?—Here is a thimble. What kind is it?—They are workmen. What sort are they?—Give me a sheet [of] paper. What kind [of paper]?—I bought [some] thread. What kind? Which is our carpet?—Which are your scissors?—Which are my flowers?

We are boiling,—I lose,—it weighs,—they pull,—thou liest,—did you boil?—he was losing,—they weighed,—I pulled,—we lay,—thou hast boiled,—had you lost?—it has weighed,—they had pulled,—we have been lying,—I shall boil,—you will lose,—can he pull?

2. Wer hat geklopft? Es war der Briefträger. Was hatte er? Er hatte ein Packet. Für wen ist das Packet? Was ist in dieser Brieftasche? Ein Bogen Papier ist darin. Was für ist es? Es ist Kanzleipapier. Ich wünsche ein Neid. Was sür eines wünschen Sie? Was haben Sie gehört? Ich hörte nichts. Wem haben Sie den Brief gegeben? Welchen von den Brüdern sahen Sie? Womit (mit was) hat der Knabe sich verletzt? Welches ist Ihr Fingerhut? Von wem haben Sie diesen hut gekauft?

What are you looking for (seeking)? I have lost my pocket-book. What kind was it? To (mil) which of these officers have you spoken? Which are our collars? Whom did you greet? Who is knocking? It is the laundress. What does she want (will)? She wants (will) to fetch the washing. Whose washing? Which of these shirts belongs to (Dat.) me? I must have a hat; what kind shall I buy? With whom did you go? Upon what(*) were you sitting? I want [some] paper. What sort do you want, note-paper or foolscap paper?

^(*) Translate "what" by was as well as by wo (wovon etc.)

- 1. What is the translation of the interrogative pronouns who (Nom.), whose (Gen.), (to) whom (Dat.), and whom (Acc.)?
- 2. How is the interrogative pronoun what rendered in the Nominative. Countive, Dative and Accusative?
- 3. How are welcher and was für einer declined?
- 4. In what case is which rendered by welches?
- 5. With what word must sein (to be) agree in number?
- 6. When may what be rendered by wo?
- 7. When has wor to be used?

Conversation.

Who was here? The postman has been here.

What has he brought (gebracht)? He had a letter for you, and a parcel for me.

From whom is the parcel? It is from my tailor.

Has the laundress fetched my washing?

Yes, I gave her 3 shirts, 5 collars and 6 pocket-handkerchiefs.

Whom did you meet in (auf) the street?

It was my friend Charles.

What were you speaking of? We spoke of the new railway-

station.

Whom will you ask for (um) a pocket-book?

I shall ask my uncle for it; he promised to buy (Dat.) me one (eine).

What are you boiling here?

I am boiling potatoes.

What kind?

They are new ones.

Whose scissors are these? They are my sister's (those of my

s.); she lost them yesterday. What was the weight of this

meat?

It weighed 10 pounds (Pfund).

Wer war hier?

Der Briefträger ift hier gemeien.

Was hat er gebracht?

Er hatte einen Brief für Gie, und ein Badet für mich.

Von wem ift das Packet?

Es ist von meinem Schneider. Sat die Bascherin meine Basche

geholt?

Ja, ich gab ihr 3 hemden, 5 Krägen und 6 Taschen-

tücher.

Wen haben Sie auf der Strafe getroffen?

Es war mein Freund Karl.

Wovon sprachen Sie?

Wir sprachen von dem neuen

Bahnhof.

Ben wollen Gie um eine Brieftasche bitten?

Ich werde meinen Onkel darum bitten; er versprach mir eine zu faufen.

Was sieden Sie hier?

Ich siede Kartoffeln.

Was für?

Es sind neue.

Wessen Schere ist dies?

Es ist die meiner Schwester; sie verlor sie gestern.

Wieviel wog dieses Fleisch?

Es wog 10 Pfund.

Reading Exercise No. 21.

Karl der Zwölfte, König von Schweden, wurde in
Stralsund belagert. Während der Belagerung wurde eine besieged was .
große Anzahl Bomben in die Stadt geworfen. Eines number bombs
Tages faß der König in einem Zimmer im Erdgeschoß
eines zweistöckigen Hauses, wo er seinem Secretär Briefe.
dictirte. Plöglich fiel eine Bombe auf das Haus, schlug dictated suddenly sell . bomb broke
beide Stockwerke durch, und zerplatzte krachend in dem both stories burst crashingly
anstoßenden Zimmer. Ein Stück der Bombe slog bis contiguous
an' die Füße des Königs, was jedoch auf ihn so wenig
Eindruck machte, daß es schien, als ob er gar nicht impression . that . seemed as if . not at all
bemerkt hätte, was vorgefallen war. Sein Secretär aber had . happened . secretary however
wurde bleich und fiel auf die Lehne seines Stuhles zurück. became pale . sell back . back
Der König, welcher sogleich bemerkte, daß er nicht schrieb, who immediately that wrote
fragte:—Was fehlt Ihnen? Warum schreiben Sie nicht?— write
Der Secretär war so erschrocken, daß er kaum die Worte secretary frightened that . scarcely . words
her an sstottern konnte:—Die Bombe, Ew. Majestät!— Bas bring out stuttering . bomb your majesty
hat denn die Bombe mit dem Briefe zu thun, den Sie do which .
schreiben? sagte der König ganz gelassen. Schreiben Sie wrtte
both nur weiter.— go on writing

Twenty-second Lesson.

Zweiundzwanzigfte Lektion.

The Relative Pronouns.

The relative Pronouns(*) are:

ber or welcher, who, which, that(**).

Der is declined like the demonstrative pronoun (vide page 96), and welcher is declined like the interrogative pronoun (vide page 100), except in the Genitive, which is like that of relative ber; thus:

Sing. Masc. Plur, of all Gen. N. ber or welcher ! bie or welche ! bas or welches | bie or welche, who (which, G. bessen D. bem or welchem beren besien beren, whose | that) D. bem or welchen ber or welcher bem or welchem benen or welchen, (to) whom A. ben or welchen bie or welche bas or welches bie or welche, whom

They must agree in Gender and Number (but not in case) with the noun or pronoun to which they refer; as,

ber Solbat, ber (or weldher) ..., the soldier, who (that) ... bie Sehrerin, beren ..., the teacher (f.), whose ... bad Haud, aud bem (or weldhen) ..., the house, out of which ... unfere Baume, bie (or weldhe) ..., our trees, which (that) ...

Relative pronouns in German require the verb at the end of the sentence(†); as,

hier ist ber hut, ben (or welchen) Sie gestern in ber Stadt kauften. Here is the hat, which you bought in town yesterday.

In compound tenses the auxiliary verb is last; as, Sier ift ber but, ben Gie in ber Stabt gefauft haben.

Relative pronouns in German can never be omitted as sometimes is done in English; as,

Der Mann, ben (or welchen) ich fah. The man (whom) I saw. Das Glas, das (or welches) Sie zerbrochen haben. The glass (which) you have broken.

The Genitives beffen and beren must always precede the nouns by which they are governed, and the definite article is then not

Das Gebaube, beffen Fenfter geschloffen find. The building the windows of which are shut.

Note.—Der or welcher, etc. are used indifferently and their employment depends much on euphony; however in conversation generally ber, etc. is preferred.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: beißen, to bite (Dat.) to resemble, to be like vergleichen, to compare to grasp, to gripe begreifen, to comprehend, to understand greifen, to seize.

(**) For the relatives wer and was see the following lesson.

^(*) A relative pronoun refers to a noun or pronoun previously used, and commences the sentence which describes this noun or pronoun.—They must not be confounded with the interrogative pronouns which are used in direct or indirect questions, like: Wer ist hier? Who is here? Sagen Sie mir, mit wem er in bie Stadt gegangen ift. Tell me with whom he has gone to

^(†) This is also the case with interrogative pronouns used in indirect questions (see the last example in the above foot note (*).

the (travelling) bag, bie the butcher, ber Fleischer to revolt, to mutiny, sich

(Reise)tasche ,, baker, der Bäcker ,, ball, der Ball to be mistaken, sich irren the bill, bie Rechnung
,, box, bie Schachtel
,, brother-in-law, ber

Schwager Plur: bie Schwäger to dance, tanzen

(ber Metger) hat-box, bie Sut-

to hire, to rent, miethen the lock (castle), bas Schloß to look at, betrachten the match, bas Zündhölz-chen (bas Streichhölzchen)

the money, bas Gelb Plur: bie Gelber

empören

the shop-keeper (merchant), ber Raufmann Plur: bie Raufleute sister-in-law, Schwägerin

" trunk, ber Roffer one kind, einerlei two kinds, zweierlei three kinds, breierlei, etc.

Exercise No. 22.

1. My brother-in-law, who (that)...,—his sister-in-law, who (that)..., a girl, who (that)...,-Englishmen, who (that)...,-a shop-keeper, whose ..., -the lady, whose ..., -a child, whose ..., -the women, whose ... - my baker, with whom ... - her mother, of whom ... - the girl, after whom..., - the shop-keepers, from whom..., -our butcher, for whom ..., -your sister, without whom ..., -a child, through whom...-the pupils (f.), for whom...-their trunk, which...the travelling-bag, from which ..., -the money, with which ..., -the matches, for which ..., -the soldiers, who revolted yesterday .-- My tailor sent (Dat.) me a bill, which I paid (Dat.) him three months b agoa .- I showed him the house, in which I had lived with my parents. -Is that the hat-box you bought for me?-The gentleman you saw yesterday, ... - The lady I met (begegnen Dat.) to-day, ... - Are you looking at the looking-glass, the glass of which is smashed (zerbrochen)? -I saw a church, the towers of which are very high.

They bite, -she resembles, -I am comparing, -we do not grasp, do you comprehend?—thou seizest,—he bit,—they did not resemble, you compared, -wast thou grasping?-we comprehended, -I was seizing, -I have bitten, -we had resembled, -thou hast not compared, -had you grasped !- has he not comprehended !- they had seized.

2. Ift dies der Berr, beffen Saus Sie gemiethet haben? Der Raufmann, der (or welcher) mir diese Rechnung schickte, muß sich geirrt haben. Ich fah heute die Dame, mit der (or welcher) ich geftern Albend auf (at) dem Balle tanzte. Es war Ihr Schwager, den (or welchen) ich im Theater traf. Sie ging an (to) einen Spiegel, in welchem sie sich betrachtete. Er hatte einen Kosser, dessen Schloß zerbrochen war.

Where is the house which you have taken (hired)? It is the best coat that I have. Show (Dat.) me the hat-box in which my hat is. The shop-keeper sold (Dat.) me two boxes [of] matches which are spoiled. It was a German newspaper in which he was reading. That is the butcher from whom we buy the best meat. The flowers, you have sent (Dat.) me, are very nice. I took (hired) anartments (eine Wohnung, Sing.) the rooms of which are very large.

1. Like what pronoun is the relative pronoun der declined?

2. Like what pronoun is welcher declined?

3. What gender and number must relative pronouns take?

4. Do they agree in case with the words they refer to?

5. Where is the verb put, if used with a relative pronoun?

6. Where is the auxiliary placed in compound tenses?

- 7. If the relative pronoun is omitted in English, can this also be done in German?
- 8. Are the Genitives dessen and deren put before or after the nouns by which they are governed?

Conversation.

Have you your bag? No, it is still in my trunk, which is (steht) in the other room.

From whom is this bill? Our butcher has sent it.

Have you read the letter I received (erhielt) this evening?

Yes, I did (read it). Is that the dog which bit you yesterday?

No, this one has not bitten me.

Do you resemble your father? No, I resemble my mother. Can you comprehend what I tell you?

Yes, very well.

Have you compared your task with the key?

No, not yet.

Have the sailors mutinied?

Yes, but they soon (bald) fled (die Flucht ergreifen).

Why did you try (grasp) after the ball?

I wished to throw it over (über) the house.

Where were you yesterday evening?

I was at (auf) a ball. Did you dance much?

Not very much, I was not quite well (wohl).

Haben Sie Ihre Tasche? Rein, sie ist noch in meinem Roffer, ber im andern Zim-

mer steht.

Bon wem ift biefe Rechnung? Unser Fleischer hat sie geschickt. Haben Sie ben Brief gelesen,

den ich heute Abend erhielt? Ja, ich las ihn.

Ift das der Sund, der Sie geftern

Nein, dieser hat mich nicht gebiffen. Gleichen Sie Ihrem Bater?

Nein, ich gleiche meiner Mutter. Können Sie begreifen, was ich

Ihnen sage? Ja, sehr gut.

haben Sie Ihre Aufgabe mit bem Schlüffel verglichen?

Rein, noch nicht.

Baben die Matrofen fich emport? Ja, aber sie haben bald die Flucht ergriffen.

Warum griffen Sie nach dem Balle?

Ich wollte ihn über das Haus werfen.

Wo find Sie gestern Abend gemesen?

Ich war auf einem Balle. haben Sie viel getangt?

Nicht sehr viel, ich war nicht ganz wohl.

Reading Exercise No. 22.

Ludwig der Achtzehnte von Frankreich, der gegen das Lewis . France . towards .
Ende seines Lebens nicht mehr gehen konnte, wurde eines end . life . any more was .
Tages in einem Handwagen in den Schlofigarten von hand-carriage gardens of the palace .
St. Cloud spazieren gefahren. An einem Spalier sah er driven for pleasure
zwei Birnen; er befahl dem Gärtner fie zu brechen, und
ihm in ein Gartenhaus im Hintergrund des Gartens zu summer-house : back-ground
bringen. Der Gärtner hatte einen Sohn von sechs Jahren,
dem er auftrug, dem König die Birnen zu bringen. Der bring
König nahm eine, begann sie zu essen, und sagte zu dem
Knaben, die andere zu effen. Aber wie war er erstaunt,
als der kleine Mann ein Messer aus der Tasche zog und
die Birne damit schälte.—Was! sagte Ludwig zu ihm,—ich,
der König von Frankreich, esse die Birne ungeschält, und ber bei bei Birne ungeschält, und bei
bu, ber Sohn eines armen Gärtners, kannst nicht basselbe
thun wie ich?—Gewöhnlich, antwortete der Knabe, esse ich do answered
bas Obst auch mit der Haut aber dieses Mal thue ich es
nicht, weil mir unterwogs eine von den Birnen in einen because . on the way
Schmuthausen gerollt ist, und ich nun nicht mehr weiß, welche heap of dirt rolled any more know .
von den beiden es war.—

Twenty-third Lesson.

Dreiundzwanzigste Lektion.

The Relative Pronouns (concluded).

The personal pronouns he, she, they, etc. and the words that and those(*) are translated by the demonstratives berienige or ber, biejenige or bie, etc., if followed by a relative pronoun relating to them; as,

berjenige, welcher (ber) or ber, welcher (ber), he who (that)
biejenige, welche (bie) or bie, welche (bie), she who (that)
basjenige, welches (bas) or bas, welches (bas), that which
biejenigen, welche (bie) or bie, welche (bie), they who or those
berjenige, bessen or ber, bessen, he whose [who
mit bemjenigen, welcher (ber) or mit bem, welcher (ber), with him
who, etc.

REMARK.—Such combinations of relatives with any demonstrative pronoun are called *correlative pronouns*.

Note.—The Genitive plural of the demonstrative ber if followed by a relative is berer (not beren); as,

Erinnere bich berer, welche bir Sutes gethan haben. Remember (Gen.) them, who have done thee good.

Derjenige or ber, weldjer (ber), etc. (berjenige and weldjer, etc. being in the same case), if used in the sense of the English whoever, whose are generally replaced by wer, which is declined like the interrogative wer (see page 100).

Wer must always commence the first sentence and requires like other relatives the verb at the end of that sentence; as,

Wer das ist, mus stersen. He who (whoever) eats that, must die,

Note.—In case the second sentence is introduced by a personal pronoun (he, him, they, etc.), this pronoun must be rendered by the demonstrative ber, bem, etc. according to the case; as,

Wer das ist, der muß sterden. He who eats that, he must die. Wer dich haßt, den hasse nicht wieder. He who hateth thee, him hate not again.

The relative what (or whatever) is translated mas, and that which, if used in a general sense, is translated bas mas (or mas).

 $\mathfrak{Ba3}$ is declined like the interrogative $\mathfrak{ma3}$ (see page 100) and requires like the other relatives the verb at the end of its sentence; as,

Baš Sie mir sagten, ist nicht wahr. What you told me, is not true. Ich sage nur baš, was ich sagen barf. I only say that which I am allowed to say.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: leiben, to suffer pfeifen, to whistle reißen, to tear zerreißen, to rend, to tear (to pieces).

^{(*) &}quot;That" and "those" being in opposition to "this" and "these" are always translated by jcner, if followed by a relative; as,—\$\mathbb{G}\$ if nicht bieler, jondern jener, ber es au mir fagte. It is not this one, but that one who said it to me.

by, near, bet (Dat.)
content(ed), satisfied, zufrieden
the desk, bas Bult
Plur: bie Bulte
discontented, dissatisfied,
ungufrieden
the drawing, bie Zeichnung
,, egg, bas Ei
Plur: bie Eier

esteemed, geachtet to feel, fühlen happy, lucky, glüdlich hard, hert honest (true), rechtschaffen man (mankind), ber Wensch (see exceptions on p. 15.) the owner, ber Eigenthümer

to present (to give), identen the ring, ber Ming seldom, rare, setten sott, weich igfüdlich unhappy, unlucky, unfirstly, erstens secondly, ameitens thirdly, brittens fourthly, biertens, etc.

Exercise No. 23.

1. Which gentleman? He who*) was here yesterday.—Which lady? She whose daughter has died.—Which girl? That one with whom I came.—Which men (man-kind)? They who are happy.—From which officer? From him, who lives in your house.—With which lady? With her, whom you saw to-day.—Out of which house? Out of that, the windows of which are open.—After which children? After them who are in the garden.—For which ring? For that, which I have sold.—Without which bag? Without that in which my washing was.—Through which window? Through that which was shut.—For which matches? For those which I bought.—He who (or whoever) is content, is happy.—They who are (or whoever is) honest (true) are (is) esteemed.—What (or whatever) he said is true (wahr).—I will forget that which you said to me.

We suffer,—I do not whistle,—thou tearest,—you are tearing (to pieces),—they were suffering,—he whistled,—did you tear?—thou to rest (to pieces),—I have suffered,—we had not whistled,—has she been tearing?—you had torn (to pieces),—whistle!

2. In welchem Pulte ist das Briefpapier? Es ist in dem (or demjenigen), das im andern Zimmer steht. Ist dieser alte Herr der Eigenthümer des Pferdes? Nein, es ist jener, der bei dem Ontel steht. Wer nicht hören will, muß fühlen. Welche Eier sind hart? Die (or diejenigen), welche in der Schüssel sind, sind weich. Welche geichnung haben Sie gemacht? Ich machte die (or diejenige), welche auf dem Tische liegt. Was billig ist, ist selten gut. Diejenigen (or die) Menschen, die unzusrieden sind, sind ungläcklich.

Which ring did you lose? That, which my aunt gave (presented) (Dat.) me twob years agoa. With which lady will you dance? With her who danced with me the day before yesterday. That which is expensive, is generally good. Where did you find these violets? I found them near that tree which you showed (Dat.) me yesterday. He who (or whoever) said that, is a bad man (Mensch). Are these apples from a tree in the garden. No, they are from that one, which stands near the house. Those who are rich, are often (oft) (the) most discontented.

^(*) Before relative sentences a comma must always be used, in German, as well as after unless a full stop has to be used.

 How are he, she, they, etc. and that and those translated, if followed by a relative pronoun?

2. What is the Genitive plural of the demonstrative pronoun der, if followed by a relative pronoun?

 By what are derjenige, welcher etc. generally replaced, if used in the sense of whoever (whoso)?

4. How is wer declined?

5. What place does wer occupy, and where is the verb put?

6. How are he, him, they etc. rendered, if introducing the second sentence?

7. How is the relative what (whatever) translated, and how that which if used in a general sense?

8. How is was declined?

Conversation.

Are you satisfied with this drawing?

No, that which your cousin made, is better.

Which egg do you want?

I want that which is on the plate.

What gentleman was with (bei) you?

It was he who was with me yesterday.

Which of the women died?

She who was ill such a long time (so lange).

Has she suffered very much? Yes, she suffered very much. Who has whistled?

The same boy who always whistles before our house.

Who has torn this newspaper? I did not tear it.

Which curtains have you bought?

I bought those you showed me.

To (in) which theatre shall we

We will go to that in which we were once before (schon einmal). Sind Sie mit dieser Zeichnung zufrieden ?

Nein, die, welche Ihr Better machte, ist besser.

Welches Ei wünschen Sie? Ich wünsche das, welches auf

dem Teller ist. Was für ein Herr war bei Ihnen?

Was fur ein Herr war bei Ihnens

Es war der, welcher gestern bei mir war.

Welche von den Frauen ist gestorben?

Die, welche so lange frank war.

Hat sie sehr [viel] gelitten? Ja, sie litt sehr [viel].

Wer hat gepfiffen? Derfelbe Knabe, der immer vor unserem Hause pfeift.

Wer hat diese Zeitung zerrissen?

Ich zerriß sie nicht.

Welche Vorhänge haben Sie gefauft?

Ich kaufte bie, welche Sie mir zeigten.

In welches Theater sollen wir gehen ?

Wir wollen in das gehen, in dem wir schon einmal waren.

Reading Exercise No. 23.

Friedrich der Große und der Edelknabe.

(Frederick the great and the page.)

Ein berühmter preußischer General war in seiner
Jugend Ebelknabe an dem Hofe Friedrichs des Großen.
Er hatte keinen Bater mehr, und seine Mutter nährte sich
tümmerlich in ihrem Wittwenstande. Um sie unterstützen scantily . widowhood in order . support
zu können, übernahm er öfters die Nachtwachen seiner undertook . often . night-watches .
Kameraden, da jede Nacht ein Edelknabe vor dem Schlafscomrades as every page bed-
gemach bes Königs wachen mußte. Das Geld, welches er
dafür erhielt, sparte er zusammen und schiefte es seiner received saved together
Mutter. Einmal konnte der König nicht schlafen und wollte
fich etwas vorlesen lassen. Er klingelte, er rief; aber (to have read something to him) rang . called
Niemand kam. Endlich stand er auf und ging selbst in at last got
das Nebenzimmer, um zu sehen, ob kein Page da wäre. adjoining room in order whether . — there were
Hier fand er' den guten Jüngling, der die Wache über- youth watch un-
nommen hatte, am Tische sigen. Vor ihm lag ein ange- dertaken com-
fangener Brief an seine Mutter; aber er war über dem menced
Schreiben eingeschlafen. Der König schlich herbei und las writing fallen asleep stole near .
ben Anfang des Briefes, welcher so lautete:
(Schluß folgt conclusion following).

Twenty-fourth Lesson.

Vierundzwanzigste Lektion.

The Indefinite Pronouns.

The indefinite Pronouns are:

Sebermann, everybody, everyone Semant, somebody, someone, anybody

Miemand, nobody, not anybody man, one, they, people

einander, each other, one another felbst or selber, (my) self, etc. etwas, something, anything nichts, nothing, not anything

Jebermann, Jemand, Niemand take an inflection only in the Genitive by adding 3: as,

If Jemand im Jimmer? Is some one in the room? Niemand ist hier. Nobody is here. Ich höre Niemand. I do not hear anybody. Jebermanns Freund ist Niemands Freund. Everybody's friend is nobody's friend.

Note.—Jemand and Niemand are sometimes declined in the Dativeby adding ϵm or ϵn , and in the Accusative by adding ϵn ; as,

Dat: Jemandem or Jemanden: Acc: Niemanden.

Man can only be used in the Nominative singular case (as subject of the sentence), and it is in general the translation of one, and also of they or people(*), if no particular persons are meant; as,

Man sprict oft unuberlegt. One often speaks without reflection. Man gab ben Solbaten Brob und Bein. They (people) gave the soldiers [some] bread and wine.

Note.—The other cases of man are replaced by siner, etc. (vide indefinite numerals on page 126).

Einander (called also the reciprocal pronoun) is indeelinable; as,

Er und sein Freund helsen einander. He and his friend help one another.

Selbst, selber are indeclinable, and are explained with the reflective pronouns on page 88.

Etwas is indeclinable; as,

Ho gave me something. Did you hear anything? Er gab mir etwas.

Note.—Etwas in ordinary conversation is sometimes abbreviated intowas; as,—haben Sie was? Have you anything?

Nichts is invariable; as,

Er gab mir nichts. He gave me nothing. Ich tonnte nichts sehen. I was not able to see anything.

Note.—Jebermann, Jemand, Niemand begin now often with small letters; and etwas and nichts still often with capitals.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: *reiten, to ride, to go on horseback *fchleichen, to sneak, to steal (into) fchleifen, to sharpen, (to grind) fchneiben, to cut ftreiten, to dispute, to quarrel (to fight) *bleiben, to remain, to stay leihen, to lend meiben, vermeiben, to shun, to avoid(**).

^{(*) &}quot;The people, bic Leute" is translated bas Boll, if meaning the "nation".

(**) "To avoid" is translated by meiben if followed by a noun or pronoun in the Accusative denoting a person; otherwise generally by bermeiben.

to admire, bewunbern the avarice, ber Geiz ,, bedroom, bas Schlafjimmer detestable, verächtlich the enemy, der Feind ,, intelligence, die Nachricht

the news, bie Meuigfeit, the sitting-room, (sing.) ,, noise, ber garm over, about, über (Dat. or Acc.) the patience, die Gebulb unexpected, unerwartet to relate, erzählen such the voice, die Stimme the selfishness, die Gelbit-

bas Wohnzimmer " stone, ber Stein " story (history), Geschichte hier whole, gang

Exercise No. 24.

1. Everybody ought to be polite. He was every one's enemy. The king spoke to (mit) everybody.—Some one has taken my ball.— I heard somebody's voice.—Is somebody in the sitting-room?—No. nobody is there (dort).—She is nobody's friend (m.)—One must notb praise oneself (sicha selbst). - One ought never (nie) to talk (sprechen) too much.—They (people) helped (Dat.) the sick man.—They (people) sang in (auf) the street.—They (people) gave (Dat.) the poor boy nothing.—The advocates spoke to (mit) each other.—We saw oneanother threeb weeksc agoa .- I have thanked him (himself),-We ourselves admired her patience. - Have you something for me?-Were you able to hear anythingb during the noisea ?-No, I have not heard. anything.

They ride, -she is sneaking, -we do not sharpen, -I am cutting, -do you dispute?-thou remainest,-I lend,-we shun,-they did not ride, -thou sneakedst, -you sharpened, -we were cutting, -I quarrelled, -they stayed, -she lent, -you avoided, -have you ridden ?thou hadst sneaked, -we have sharpened, -I had cut, -he has disputed. -they had remained, -you have lent, -I have avoided.

2. Er sagte etwas, aber ich konnte ihn nicht verstehen. der Stein Jemand verlett? Er verlette Riemand. (ought) den Tag nicht vor dem Abend loben. Konnten Sie einander feben? Jedermann bewunderte das ichone Gemalbe. ist verächtlicher als [der] Geiz und [die] Selbstuckt. Sehört dieser Hund Jemand im Hause? Man sprach über diese unerwartete Nachricht in der ganzen (all over the) Stadt. Jedermann sprach von der Neuigkeit. In Ihrem Schlafzimmere warb Niemand." Man ist glücklich, wenn (is) man zusriedend ist." Jemand hat mir vor zwei Jahren diese Geschichte erzählt.

I heard somebody knock at the door. I have spoken to (mit) nobody. One is unhappy, if (wenn) one isb discontenteda. Everybody admired my friend's fine horse. Are you expecting anybody? There (es) is something in this basket. I cannot see anything. Some one in the village related that story to (Dat.) me. We forgot one another. To (Dat.) everybody the intelligenceb camea unexpected(ly). The noise was too great, we could not hear anything. They (or people). spoke about it. I cannot see anybody. The whole town esteems (achtet) his uncle.

- 1. How are Jedermann, Jemand, Niemand declined?
- 2. How are Jedermann and Niemand in the Dative and Accusative sometimes declined?
- 3. In which case can man only be used?
- 4. When are one, they, people translated by man?
- 5. Is einander declined?
- 6. Are etwas and nichts declinable?

Conversation.

From whom did you hear this news?

Everybody spoke about it.

Has anybody been in (hier), since I was away (fort)?

Somebody inquired for (fragen

nach) you.

Was it a gentlemen? No, it was a lady. Will she come again? Yes, she said so (es).

Where is your cousin to-day? He rode to (auf) the country.

How long will he stay there (dort)?

He did not tell me anything

about it.
Who stole into the house?

I have not seen anybody. Can you cut the paper with this

knife?
No, I have not yet sharpened it.

Did you not dispute about something, that you do not understand?

I understand it perfectly (sehr) well.

Did anything of his fortune remain to (Dat.) your friend? No, nothing remained to him.

Can anybody lend (Dat.) me a pencil?

I have lent mine to your brother.

Why does everybody avoid this man?

On account of his avarice.

Von wem hörten Sie diese Reuigkeit?

Jedermann sprach darüber. War Jemand hier, seit ich fort war?

Jemand fragte nach Ihnen.

War es ein Herr? Nein, es war eine Dame. Will sie wieder kommen? Ja, sie sagte es. Wo ist Ihr Vetter heute? Er ritt auf das Land. Wie lang(e) will er dort bleiben?

Er sagte mir nichts darüber.

Wer schlich in das Haus? Ich habe Niemand gesehen. Können Sie das Papier

diesem Messer schneiden? Nein, ich habe es noch nicht geichlissen.

Stritten Sie nicht über etwas, das Sie nicht verstehen?

Ich verstehe es sehr gut.

Blieb Ihrem Freunde etwas von seinem Vermögen?

Rein, nichts ist ihm geblieben. Kann mir Jemand einen Bleiftist leihen?

Ich habe meinen Ihrem Bruder geliehen.

Warum meidet Jedermann diefent

Wegen feines Beiges.

Reading Exercise No. 24.

Friedrich der Große und der Edelknabe.

"Meine beste, geliebte Mutter! Dieses ist schon bie beloved britte Nacht, daß ich für Gelb wache. Beinahe kann ich es nicht mehr aushalten. Indessen freue ich mich, daß ich . . . anymore endure however (I am glad) that . nun wieder gehn Thaler für Sie verdient habe, welche ich dollars . earned Ihnen hierbei schicke." herewith Gerührt über das gute Berz des Jünglings läßt der touched . . . heart . youth lets . König ihn schlafen, geht in sein Zimmer, holt zwei Rollen . sleep Dutaten, stedt ihm eine in jede Tasche, und legt sich wieder ducats puts . . . each schlafen. Als der Edelknabe erwachte und das Geld in seinen sleeping when . page awoke Taschen fand, konnte er wohl denken, woher es gekommen . . well think whence war. Er freute sich zwar sehr darüber, weil er nun seine he was rejoiced to be sure . . because . Mutter noch besser unterstiten konnte; aber er erschrak auch, . . was frightened support weil der König ihn schlafen gefunden hatte. Um Morgen . sleeping because . bat er den König um Verzeihung wegen seines Dienstfehlers . . . for pardon . fault of service und dankte für das gütige Geschenk. Der gute König lobte kind feine kindliche Liebe, ernannte ihn fogleich zum Offizier, und filial love appointed . immediately an officer schenkte ihm noch eine Summe Geld, um sich Alles anschaffen . . . sum . in order , all procure zu können, was er für feine neue Stellung brauchte. that position needed

Twenty-fifth Lesson.

Fünfundzwanzigste Lektion.

Remarks on Pronouns.

The personal pronouns of the third person (er, fie, ez, fie, etc.) in all their cases are often replaced by the demonstratives berjelbe, biefelbe, biefelben, etc. (also sometimes by biefer or ber).

This is principally done whenever a misunderstanding might arise, and to avoid a succession of pronouns sounding alike or nearly so, or also the frequent repetition of the same pronoun; as,

Mein Bruber sprach mit dem Agenten, aber derfelbe kaufte das Psetb dennoch (better than: aber er kauste). My brother spoke tothe agent, but he (the same) bought the horse nevertheless. Ich sha bie Königin, spen Sie diesetbe auch (better than: sahen Sie sie auch)? I saw the queen, did you see her also?

Note.—For the same reason to avoid a misunderstanding the possessive adjectives of the 3rd person jein and ihr are often replaced by beffen and beren or besjelben, berjelben; as follows:

Ihre Tante besuchte bie alte Dame, ehe sie zu beren Tochter ging (or ehe sie zu ber Tochter berselben ging). Your aunt visited the old lady before she went to her daughter.

Demonstrative and relative pronouns may be contracted with prepositions governing the Dative or Accusative, in the same manner as the personal and interrogative pronouns (see pages 84 & 100).

Thus the demonstrative pronouns this and that if used in a general sense are rendered by ba (bar), and the relatives which, that, what, if not referring to persons, by wo (wor), the preposition being affixed to these words; as,

damit, with this (that)
davon, of or from this (that)

baran, at this (that) baranf, upon this (that), etc. womit, with which (what, that)wovon, of or from which (what,

woran, at which (what, that)
woranf, upon which (what,
that), etc.

Notes 1.—"This" may also be rendered by his or hist, if corresponding: to the English "herewith, hereof," etc.; as,—hiemit or histmit, with this therewith, histmit, upon this (thereupon).

2.—If "this" or "that" is followed by a relative, no contraction with the preposition takes place; as,—Ich iprach bon bent, was Sie mir fagten. I spoke of that which you told me.

OBSERVATION 1.—The preposition office (without) can never becontracted, and we say generally office baseless (without it), office biefes, office welfes, etc.

2.—It and them preceded by a preposition, instead of being rendered by the contracted form may also be translated by berieffe, etc.; as,

Here is a stone, what will you do with it?

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: scheinen, to shine, to seem schreiben, to write schreien, to cry, to scream schweigen, to be silent verzeisen, to pardon beweisen, to prove heißen, to bid, to be called.

the cloud, bie Bolte to commit (a crime), begehen (in to count, zählen (irr.) the dagger, ber Dolch Plur: bie Dolche to excuse, entichulbigen

Plur: bie Irrihûmer , fault, the mistake, ber Fehler to glitter, glangen the moon, ber Mond Plur: die Monde .. murderer, ber Mörber

behind, hinter (Dat. or the error (mistake), ber the murder, ber Morb " revolver, ber Revolver(*) [High star star, der Stern sun, die Sonne [Simmel " translation, bie leber: fegung

Exercise No. 25.

1. Her aunt came and with her (the same) the four children .-The teacher gave his son the book, which he (the same) read .- I was in the room and saw the picture: it (the same) is very large.—The manufacturer praised the workman, he gave him (the same) something to drink.—His brothers came; did you see them (the same)?—Did the boys look for my watch, and did they find it (the same)?-I took (brachte) the dog to the agent and showed itb (the same) to (Dat.) hima .- We have spoken of that.-I cannot say anything about that (this). - I cannot excuse you for that. - The carriage, in which we were driving (fuhren), was very old .- That is the dagger with which the murderer committed the murder. - That is (it) of what we were speaking.

It shines,—they write,—do you cry?—thou art silent,—I do not pardon, -we prove, -do you bid !-thou seemedest, -we were writing. -I screamed, -they were silent, -did he pardon?-I proved, -we bade, -they have shone, -she had written, -you have not cried, -we had been silent.—I have pardoned.—they had proved.—he has bidden.

2. Ist dies die Uebersetzung, worin (there) so viele Fehler find? Sie sah die Sonne scheinen, aber bald verschwand dieselbe hinter den Wolken. Bald da(r)nach schien der Mond und die Sterne glängten am (in the) Simmel. Bir faben ben Revolver, womit ber Solbat nach (at) bem Prafibenten ichog. Bir gahlten bas Gelb' und vermiedenb baburcha einen Irrthum. Er wollte meinen Ring haben, aber ich gab ihm benselben nicht. Damit (by that) fonnen Sie nichts beweisen.

The desk, in which the money was, was not shut. I gave him no money, at (durch) which he seemed discontented. Have they (one) found the dagger with which the man wounded himself? dispute about that. By (mit) this Ib shalla excuse myself. Here is the stone upon which I sharpened my knife. I have the key with which I shall compare my translation. I made a mistake in that. Your cousin (f.) came to-day; did you see her (the same)? Did you show (Dat.) the gentlemen the dogs, and did they buy them (the same)? The boy saw the ball, took it, and threw it (the same) through the window.

^(*) Pronounced as in English.

1. By what words are the personal pronouns of the 3rd person er, sie, es, sie in all their cases often replaced?

2. When is this principally done?

- 3. By what words are for the same reason, the possessive adjectives sein and ihr replaced?
- 4. When and how in German may the demonstrative pronouns this and that and the relatives which, that, what be rendered and contracted with a preceding preposition governing the Dative or Accusative?

5. How and when may this be rendered equally well, if contracted?

6. If this or that is followed by a relative, can they also be contracted with a preposition?

7. Can the preposition ohne (without) ever be contracted with any

pronoun, and what is said instead?

8. How may it and them preceded by a preposition be translated instead of being rendered by the contracted form?

Conversation.

Where were you the day before yesterday?

I was with my cousin in (auf) the country.

Had you fine weather?

In the morning (Morgens) [there] were many clouds in the sky, but in the afternoon (Nachmittags) the sun was shining. Was the night also fine?

Yes, the moon shone, the stars glittered, and there was (es ging) a pleasant wind.

Have you been working much to-day?

Yes, I had to write many letters.

To (an) whom have you written them?

Most of them I wrote to my customers.

What is your name?

I am called (my name is) Frederick.
Be silent!
No. I must speak

No, I must speak.

Wo waren Sie vorgestern?

Ich war mit meinem Vetter auf bem Lande.

Satten Sie schönes Wetter? Worgens waren viele Wolfen am Himmel, aber Nachmittags schien die Sonne.

War die Nacht auch schön? Ja, der Mond schien, die Sterne glänzten und es ging ein angenehmer Wind.

Haben Sie heute viel gearbeitet?

Ja, ich hatte viele Briefe zu fchreiben.

An wen haben Sie dieselben (or sie) geschrieben?

Die meisten derselben (or davon) schrieb ich an meine Kunden.

Wie heißen Sie? (or Welches ist Ihr Name?)

Ich heiße (mein Rame ist) Friedrich.

Schweigen Sie!

Nein, ich muß sprechen.

Reading Exercise No. 25.

Dr. Hough, der verstorbene Bischof von Worcester,
zeichnete sich durch Sanftmuth des Characters sowohl, als
distinguished . gentleness . — as well as
durch jede andere christliche Tugend aus, wovon die folgende every . christian virtue — following
Geschichte einen Beweis liefert.—Ein junger Mann, bessen story
Familie gut mit dem Bischof bekannt gewesen war, machte, family
bevor er außer Landes ging, eine Reise durch England, before journey
und stattete Sr. Lordschaft einen Besuch ab, als er an bessen . paid his lordship . visit — when
Landsit vorbeitam. Zufällig war Essent und das country seat passed accidentally dinner time
Zimmer war voll von Gesellschaft. Indessen empfing ihn society however received .
der Bischof mit großer Freundlichkeit; aber als ihm der friendliness
Diener einen Stuhl reichte, warf er ein künstliches Barosservant gave artistic
meter herunter, welches zwanzig Guineen gekostet hatte.
Der Herr war außerordentlich bekümmert und bat um exceedingly sorry for
Entschuldigung, daß er die Veranlassung des Unfalls ge- pardon that mischance
wesen wäre, als der Bischof ihn gutmüthig unterbrach und good-tempered interrupted .
lächelnd fagte:— Seien Sie unbesorgt, benn ich bin Ihnen smilingty be quiet for
sehr verpflichtet. Wir haben einen sehr trocknen Sommer
gehabt, aber ich hoffe, daß wir nun Regen bekommen werden,
denn ich sach das Barometer nie in meinem Leben so fallen.— for never life . fall

Twenty-sixth Lesson A. Sechsundzwanzigste Lektion.

The Numerals.

	The Cardina	al Numbe	rs.
1	ein (ein, eine, ein)	24	vierundzwanzig
	zwei	25	fünfundzwanzig
	brei	26	sechsundzwanzia
4	vier	27	fiebenundzwanzig
5	fünf	28	achtundzwanzig
	fechs	29	neunundzwanzig
7	fieben	30	dreißig
	acht	40	vierzig
	neun	50	fünfzig
	zehn	60	sechzig .
11		70	siebzig (or siebenzig)
	zwölf	80	achtzig
13	dreizehn	90	neunzig
14	vierzehn		hundert
15	fünfzehn		hundertundeins
16	sechzehn	102	hundertundzwei
.17	fiebzehn (or fiebenzehn)		hundertundzehn
18	achtzehn de la		zweihundert
19	neunzehn	1,000	tausend
-20	amanaia .	1,001	tausendundeins
21	einundzwanzig	5,000	fünftausend
.22	zweiundzwanzia	100,000	hunderttausend
23	breiundzwanzig	1,000,000	eine Million

The Ordinal Numbers

are formed from the cardinal by adding te up to 19, and fte from 20 upwards; ber erste and ber britte are irregular and to acht e only is added; as,

the	1st der (die, das) erfte	the 18th der achtzehnte
,,	2nd ber zweite	" 19th der neunzehnte
22	3rd der britte	" 20th der zwanzigste
72	4th der vierte	" 21st ber einundzwanzigste
"	5th der fünfte	" 30th der dreißigste
. 19	6th der sechste	" 40th der vierzigste
- 99	7th der siebte (or siebente)	" 50th der fünfzigste
22	8th der achte	., 60th der sechzigste
. ,,	9th der neunte	" 70th der siebzigste (or sie-
22	10th der zehnte	" 80th der achtzigste [benzigste)
. 33	11th der elfte	" 90th der neunzigste
"	12th der zwölfte	" 100th der hundertste
"	13th der dreizehnte	" 101st der hundertunderste
- 22	14th der vierzehnte	" 102nd ber hundertundzweite
37	15th der fünfzehnte	" 200th der zweihundertste
- 99	16th der sechzehnte [zehnte)	" 1000th der tausendste
- 99	17th der siebzehnte (or sieben-	" millionth der millionste

The Fractional Numbers

are formed as in English, but in German an I is added to the ordinal numbers, except ein Dalb(e3); as,

ein Halb(es), one half ein Drittel, one third zwei Drittel, two thirds ein Biertel, one quarter (fourth) ein Fünstel, one fifth ein Zwanzigstel, one twentieth, etc.

The Multiplicative Numbers

are formed by adding fach to the cardinal numbers; as, einfach, one-fold (simple) | breifach, (treble) threefold wierfach, twofold (or boppelt, double) | breifach, fourfold, etc.

The Iterative Numbers

are formed by adding mai to the cardinal numbers; as, einmai, once sweimai, twice breimai, thrice, three times, etc.

The Variative Numbers

are formed by adding erici to the cardinal numbers; as, einerici, one kind zweierici, two kinds breierici, three kinds, etc. Also: mancherici or vielerici, many kinds.

The Distinctive Numbers

are formed by adding m3 to the ordinal numbers; as, erstens, firstly americas, secondly brittens, thirdly, etc.

NOTE THE FOLLOWING EXPRESSIONS:

Bieviel Uhr (welche Beit)? what o'clock, what time? Es ist ein Uhr or es ist eins, it is one (o'clock) Es ist zwei Uhr or es ist zwei, it is two (o'clock) halb ein Uhr or halb eins, half past twelve halb zwei (Uhr), half past one halb brei (Uhr), half past two, etc. ein Biertel auf eins or ein Biertel nach(*) 3wolf, a quarter past, twelve ein Biertel auf zwei or ein Biertel nach eins, a quarter past one, etc. brei Biertel auf eins or ein Biertel vor(*) eins, a quarter to one brei Biertel auf zwei or ein Biertel vor zwei, a quarter to two, etc. fünf Minuten vor ein Uhr or eins, five minutes to one, etc. awanzig Minuten nach ein Uhr or eins, twenty minutes past one, etc. ein Uhr zehn, ein Uhr dreißig, \ 1.10, 1.30, 1.55 (railway time) ein Uhr fünfundfünfzig Um wieviel Uhr (um welche Reit)? (at) what time? um (or am) ein Uhr, at one o'clock, etc. Der wievielte ift heute? or Den wievielten haben wir? What is the date?

or Wir haben ben erften (Januar) It is the first (of January) London, ben Iten Juni 1881 London, June 1st 1881

Wann find Sie geboren? When were you born?

Ich bin am britten August 1860 geboren. I was born on the third of August 1860. Wie aft find Sie? How old are you? What is your age?

Id bin zwanzig Jahre alt. I am twenty years old. I am twenty years of age. Im Rahre 1882. In 1882.

Ginipännig, with one horse, etc. aweispännig, with two horses, with a pair, etc. sechsspännig, six in hand, in a carriage and six.

^(*) Instead of nach: über, and instead of vor: bis or zu may be used.

Twenty-sixth Lesson B. Sechsundamangiafte Lektion.

Remarks on the Numerals.

The cardinal Numbers are indeclinable, except the following: Gin (eine, ein) is used if followed by a noun. It is declined like the indefinite article, from which it differs by having the full stress in pronunciation: as.

ein hund, one dog mit einem Meffer, with one knife

Ein takes the termination of biefer if referring to a noun, viz: ciner, eine, ein(e)3; as,

haben Sie einen ober zwei hunde?-Ich habe nur einen. Have you one or two dogs?-I have only one.

Gins is only used in counting, if not followed by another number; as,

Einmal eins ift eins. One time one is one.

OBSERVATION .- Gin preceded by an article or substitute is declined like an adjective and must be considered an indefinite numeral.

Notes.—1. For expressing the Genitive of a cardinal number, "of" is usually translated by bon and the numeral is not inflected; as,

Die Einwohner von zwei Städten. The inhabitants of two towns. Ein Bater von fünf Kindern. A father of five children.

2. However awei and brei followed by a noun and not preceded by an article or preposition may form the Genitives by adding er, and also the Datives by adding en; as,

Die Einwohner zweier Städte. The inhabitants of two towns. Bweien Herren dienen. To serve (Dat.) two masters.

All numbers from swei to hunbert may take en in the Dative, if not used with a noun; as,

mit tieren, von fünfen, etc.

The ordinal Numbers are declined like adjectives; as,

bas erste Mal, the first time mit bem zweiten Ruge, with the second train.

Ordinal numbers used in apposition, like adjectives, must agree in gender, case and number with the noun, and must commence with a capital letter; as, - Rarl ber Erste (Rarl I), Charles the first (Charles I). Rarls bes Erften (Rarls I), of Charles the first (of Charles I).

The fractional Numbers are not declined, except halb, which with a noun is declined like an adjective, and must directly precede the noun; as,

Mit seinem halben Bermögen, with half his fortune. In ein undeiner halben Stunde, in one hour and a half.

All fractional numbers had better precede the noun in German; as, In brei und einem viertel Jahre. In three years and a quarter.

The multiplicative Numbers are declined like adjectives; as, ber einfache Betrag, the simple amount.

The iterative, variative and distinctive Numbers are indeclinable.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: *fahren, to drive, to go (or ride) in a vehicle or boat graben, to dig begraben, to bury.

broad, wide, breit the chest (box), die Rifte

coal, die Roble
,, death, der Lob
,, family, die Familie
,, foot, der Fuß
Plur: die Füße Lewis, Lubwig

the hundred-weight, ber Eentner the minute, die Minute the song, das Lieb Plur: die Lieder the minute, die Minute

nearly, beinahe the poet, ber Dichter " pound, bas Pfund Plur: bie Pfunde Prussia. Breußen n.

" success, ber Erfolg " sum, bie Summe " tame, bie Zeit, bas Mal, (in counting) to wait, marten

Exercise No. 26.

1. Three men are in the house.—She saw twenty one soldiers.— Five and six are eleven. - Four times eight are thirty two. - Thirty four from ninety six leave (bleiben) sixty two. - A year has three hundred and sixty five days. - Have you two books? I have only one. - One soldier stood in the garden and one before the house.—Have you one pen or two? I have only one. - One and one are two. - Here are the works of (von) two poets.—He is the owner of six houses.—London had in 1881 (see page 121) nearly four millions [of] inhabitants.—He is the seventh king of this family.-Are you hereb for (zu) the first timea ?—He will come on the twenty-fifth of March (März) (see page 121). She died in the seventh week.—Frederick the second of Prussia was a great king .- Who was king after the death of Lewis XVIII? His brother Charles X .- They remained half the day in the town .- She lost half her fortune. - One hundred weight and a half of coal (coals). -This small table is a foot and a (Acc.) half high.—I want three quarters [of a] pound [of] coffee. — The parcel weighs seven pounds(*) and a half. -He had a threefold success.-I paid him thea sume tenfoldb -- The young lady sang six or seven times. - She sang many kinds [of] songs. -They have two kinds [of] chairs. -Firstly Ib dida not say it, secondly itb isa not true.

We drive, —I am digging, —they do not bury, —was he driving! you digged, -thou buriedst, -she has driven, -they had digged, -I have buried, -vou must drive, -we shall dig, -I cannot bury.

2. Sie (they) famen zweimal; einmal am ersten Mai (May), bas andere Mal am neunten. Es war am 18ten Juni im Jahre 1815. Wir lesen auf ber fünfundsiebenzigsten Seite (page). Ludwig der Vierzehnte war kein guter König. Ich war um drei Biertel auf acht dort (there). Der Fluß ist 150 Fuß(*) breit. Es ift jest beinahe zwölf Uhr.

What o'clock is it I have been waiting more than half an hour. (see page 121)? It is five minutes to eleven. When was your brother born (see page 121)? He was born on the 5th of July (Juli m.) 1860. You will reach the town in two hours and a half. In this chest [there] are fifteen pounds(*) [of] tea. At what time do you expect me?

^(*) Masculine and neuter nouns expressing number and weight, when preceded by a numeral and followed by a noun (also understood) are indeclinable and only used in the singular.

- 1. Are cardinal Numbers in general declinable?
- 2. When is ein (eine, ein) used, and how is it declined?
- 3. How is ein declined, if referring to a noun?
- 4. When is eins used?
- 5. How is of before a number usually translated for rendering the Genitive, and is the number inflected?
- 6. How are ordinal Numbers declined?
- 7. What is to be observed with these numbers if in apposition?
- 8. Are fractional Numbers declined?
- 9. How is halb declined, and where is it placed?
- 10. What place do fractional Numbers take in German?
- 11. How are multiplicative Numbers declined?
- 12. Are iterative, variative and distinctive Numbers declinable?

Conversation.

What o'clock is it?
It is three o'clock.
At what time (at what o'clock)
are you coming?
I shall come at 1/4 to four.

By (mit) which train (Zug m.) will you go?
By the train at 5.25.

What is the date? To-day is the thirteenth. How old are you? I am eighteen years old. When were you born? I was born on the 18th of December 1863. In what year did your father die? In 1867. When did your friend die? On last Monday. Is he buried yet? Yes, they buried him on Thursday. Where (wohin) has your cousin driven [to]? He has driven to (in the) town. Did he drive a pair?

No, he drove only one.

Wie viel Uhr ist es? Es ist drei Uhr. Um wieviel Uhr kommen Sie? Ich werde um 3/4 auf vier fommen. Mit welchem Zuge wollen Sie gehen (reisen)? Mit dem Buge um fünf Uhr fünfundzwanzig. Der wievielte ist heute? Seute ift der dreizehnte. Wie alt sind Sie? Ich bin achtzehn Jahre alt. Wann find Gie geboren? 3ch bin am 18 ten December 1863 geboren. In welchem Jahre ift Ihr Bater gestorben? Im Jahre 1867. Wann starb Ihr Freund? Um letten Montag. Ist er schon begraben? Ja, man begrub ihn am Donnerstag. Wohin ift Ihr Better gefahren?

Er ist in die Stadt gefahren. Suhr er zweispännig? Rein, er fuhr nur einspännig.

Reading Exercise No. 26.

Ein Graf in Paris befaß einen großen Garten vor
der Stadt, an dessen Thür er folgende Worte malen ließ:
—,,Wer vollkommen zufrieden ist, erhält diesen Garten zum
Geschenk." Viele Leute, welche die Aufschrift lasen, lachten inscription . laughed
darüber, denn sie wußten, daß der Graf ein Spaß= for . knew that . count . joker
vogel war. Nur ein Geizhals, der auch die Aufschrift
las, sagte zu sich selbst:—Das ist ja eine leichte Beise
viel Gelb ohne Mühe und Arbeit zu verdienen.—Er ging
zum Grafen und sagte:—Wer vollkommen zufrieden ist,
soll Ihren Garten zum Geschenk erhalten. Ich bin volls-
kommen zufrieden. Sie mussen mir daher Ihren Garten pletely
geben.—Sie sagen, Sie seien vollkommen zufrieden, erwiederte
ber Graf; aber angenommen, daß ich es nicht glaube, dann count . supposed that believe then
müssen Sie es erst beweisen. Wie können Sie dies thun? at first about do Das kann nicht bewiesen werden, antwortete der Geiz=
hals, das fühlt man im Herzen, aber das Herz kann man
Niemand zeigen.—Der Graf lächelte und sagte:—Ich sehe, daß
Sie nicht vollkommen zufrieden sind; benn wer das ist, wünscht
nichts, und ich barf Ihnen baher ben Garten nicht geben.
therefore

Twenty-seventh Lesson.

Siebenundzwanzigste Lektion.

The Indefinite Numerals.

The indefinite Numerals are:

caler, all (declined like biefer)
alless, everything (d. 1. biefes)
gans, whole (d. 1. an adjective)
genug, enough (not d.)
menig, little (generally not d.)
Plur menige, few (d. 1. biefe)
ein wenig, a little (not d.)
einiger, some (d. 1. biefer)
Plur: einige, some, a few (d. 1. biefe)
bief, much (generally not d.)
Plur: biefe, many (d. 1. biefe)
mehr, more (not d.)
ber meiffe, (the) most (d. 1. an adj.)

mehrer:e, several (d. l. bieje Plur.)
fein, (adj.) no, not a, not any(d.l.mein)
fein:er. (Prom.) none, not any, no
one (d. l. biejer)
beibe, both (see remarks)
jeber, (d. l. biejer) each, every, everyone (or ein jeber, d. l. an adj.)
mandjer, many a, many a man (d. l.
biejer)
Plur. mandjer, many, some (d. l. bieje)
ein:er, one (some-one) (d. l. biejer)
anber:er, other
ein anber:er, another
} (d. l. an adj.)

Note.—Most of these numerals are used either as adjectives or as pronouns, as in English.

Remarks.

The definite article following all is better not translated in German; as,

alles Gelb, all the money. alle Manner, all the men.

An article or substitute following both, in German has to precede beibe, which then takes π in all cases; as,

meine beiben Brüber, both my brothers in biesen beiben häusern, in both these houses.

The definite article after both is usually omitted in German, and beide is declined like biejer; as,

Beibe Schwestern (also: bie beiben Schwestern), both the sisters.

Some, referring to a noun in the singular, denoting material, is usually not expressed in German; as,

Ich habe Geld. I have some money. Nehmen Sie von dieser Butter. Take some of this dutter. Have you any wine? Yes, I have some.

Some, referring to any noun in the plural is generally rendered einige; as,

Here are some books. Have singe Buchern! Ja, hier find einige. Have you some pens? Yes, here are some,

Note.—Some referring to a plural noun may also be not rendered; as, Saben Sie Bögel? Sa, ich habe. Have you any birds? Yes, I have some.

Any in questions is not translated in German; as, Have you bought any apples?

Note.—Not any is always rendered by fein, frince, etc.

Observation.—All of the above declinable numerals, used substantively
(i.e. if having a general meaning and not referring to distinct persons or things)
commence with a capital letter.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: schlagen, to beat, to strike tragen, to carry, to wear waschen, to wash.

the candle, bie Rerze ,, care, bie Sorge " cheese, ber Ras (or Rase after the 2nd d.) the cigar, bie Cigarre " concert, bas Concert .. duty, bie Pflicht the gooseberry, bie Star, the oil, bas Del chelbeere home (adv.), nach Saufe (heim) at home, zu hause (bas heim) the hope, bie Soffnung

" raspberry, bie him. beere " salt, bas Salz Plur: bie Salze , strawberry, bie Erb:

Exercise No. 27.

1. He loses all hope. - I found all the money. - All the brothers are coming. - Everything is lost. - The whole house has not more than five rooms.—There (es) was nobody in (auf) the whole street.—Have you enough cheese? Yes, I have enough.—Give (Dat.) me some salt. Have you any beer? Yes, I have some.—Can you lend (Dat.) me some paper?-Send (Dat.) me some of (von) these candles.-I bought two pounds [of] strawberries; will (wollen) you have some? - Have you any oil? No, I have not any .- Will (wollen) you take any of these cherries !- I have drunk little milk to-day .- Only a few people were at (in) the concert.—He has much money, but his father has more.— (The) most of (von) these raspberries are spoiled. -The lady sang several songs. - He has no care (cares). - None of (von) the English poets writes so. - He sold both his dogs. - Both these cigars are good. - Both the boots are torn (zerreissen). - Each day has its duties. - Many a soldier died here.—Have you a good pencil? Yes, I have one.—He did not pay himself, others paid for him.

Do you beat?-thou carriest,-he washes,-they were beating,we did not carry, -I washed, -they have stricken, -had she worn !have you washed !- beat !- I shall carry, - they cannot wash.

2. Verlieren Sie nicht alle Hoffnung! Wir tranken einige Flaschen Bier und gingen bann (then) nach Hause. Ift einer von Ihren Brüdern zu Hause? Nein, keiner ist ba (there). Biel Gelb macht Einen nicht immer glücklich. Diese arme Familie hat fehr wenig Geld. Ich taufte Stachelbeeren, aber ich tonnte nicht alle Wir werden mehrere Monate in London bleiben. Rleider find für meine beiden Schwestern.

He lived some years later. He has less (weniger) money than I. Will (wollen) you eat a few apples? He was drinking (Acc.) the whole day. Several have made the same mistake. All the soldiers have drunk much, but none of (von) them paid. Many of (von) his friends have died. You will find many an old friend at (in) our house. Very few people had heard of it. I have eaten some fruit. You will lose too much time. Can you give me a little bread? Many a man is not that which he seemsb to bea. He had two sons, but both are dead now. I have lost one of (von) my pencils. Every window in the room is broken (to pieces). There (es) were only a few cigars in the box.

- 1. Is the definite article following all usually translated in German?
- 2. Where has an article or substitute, standing with both, to be put in German, and how is beide declined then?
- 3. What is usually done with the definite article after both in German, and how is beide declined in this case?
- 4. When is some usually not rendered in German?
- 5. How is some translated when referring to a noun in the plural?
- 6. Is any in questions usually translated?
- 7. How is not any rendered if an adjective (i. e. standing with a noun), and how if a pronoun? (See the list of indef. numerals.)

Conversation.

Is [there] still any wine in this bottle?

No, I have drunk all. Please, give me some cheese.

I have not any in the house. Have you perchance (vielleicht) some butter?

Yes, but only very little. Have you any strawberries? Here are a few in this basket. Do you want some salt?

No, thank (Dat.) you, I have enough.

May I give (Dat.) you some cigars?

Yes, please give me some. Is your father at home?

No, not yet; but he will come home in half an hour.

What o'clock is it? It has just (gerade) struck three.

How long did you wear this overcoat?

I wore it [for] several years.

Has the laundress washed my shirts?

She washed only one.

Where are your cousin and your sister?

Both are at (in) the concert.

Ist noch Wein in dieser Flasche?

Nein, ich habe allen getrunken. Bitte, geben Sie mir (etwas) Käse.

Ich habe keinen im Hause. Haben Sie vielleicht Butter?

Ja, aber nur sehr wenig. Haben Sie Erdbeeren?

Hier sind einige in diesem Korbe. Wünschen Sie Salz?

(Nein), ich danke (Ihnen), ich habe genug.

Darf ich Ihnen einige Cigarren geben?

Ja, bitte, geben Sie mir einige. Ift Ihr Vater zu Hause?

Mein, noch nicht; aber er wird in einer halben Stunde nach

Hause kommen. Wie viel Uhr ist es?

Es hat gerade drei (Uhr) geichlagen.

Wie lang(e) haben Sie diesen Ueberrock getragen ?

Ich habe ihn mehrere Jahre getragen.

hat die Wäscherin meine hemden gewaschen?

Sie wusch nur eines.

Wo sind Ihr Better und Ihre Schwester?

Beide find im Concert.

Reading Exercise No. 27.

Drei Raufleute, die mit einander reiften, fanden einen Schatz und theilten benfelben. Da ihre Lebensmittel aufdivided provisions gezehrt waren, kamen sie überein, einige in ber nächsten they agreed Stadt zu taufen. Der jüngste übernahm biefen Auftrag undertook . commission und ging fort. Unterwegs fagte er zu fich :- Ich würde on the way viel reiher fein, wenn ich allein den Schatz gefunden if . . treasure hätte. Wie könnte ich die Theile der andern bekommen? . could . . parts . had-Ach will die Lebensmittel vergiften und bei meiner . provisions poison Rückfehr sagen, daß ich schon zu Mittag gespeist habe. . . that . . . dined Meine Gefährten effen dann ohne Migtrauen davon und companions . then . mistrust muffen sterben. Auf diese Weise wurde der ganze Schat . . manner would . . treasure mein Eigenthum werden .- Indeffen fagten die beiden andern property become meanwhile . Reisenden zu einander:- Wenn dieser junge Mensch nicht mit if . . fellow uns gereist ware, hatten wir ben Schat nicht mit ihm had we should have treasure theilen müffen, wodurch wir fehr reich fein würden. Wir . 14 . . should haben gute Dolche; wenn er kommt, wollen wir ihn tödten. . when Der junge Mann tam mit vergifteten Lebensmitteln guriid. . poisoned provisions back Seine Gefährten ermordeten ihn; fie agen, fie ftarben, und companions murdered . der Schat gehörte Niemand. treasure

German Grammar.

Twenty-eighth Lesson.

Achtundzwanzigste Lektion.

THE VERBS.

Conjugation of Verbs.

The Moods are: 1 Indicative; 2 Subjunctive (or Conjunctive); 3 Conditional; 4 Imperative; 5 Infinitive; 6 Participle.

The Tenses are: 1 Present; 2 Imperfect (or Past); 3 Future(I): 4 Perfect; 5 Pluperfect; 6 Future Perfect (II).

The Numbers and Persons are: Singular and Plural 1st, 2nd and 3rd persons.

AUXILIARY VERBS.

1) haben, to have is used for forming the perfect tenses

2) scin, to be is sometimes used for forming the perfect tenses 3) werden, to become is used for forming the future tenses and the passive voice.

These verbs can also be used as principal verbs, being conjugated in the same manner (see our list of verbs).

However, the Past participle of werben if used as auxiliary is morden; if used as principal verb geworden.

The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood are:

1 müssen, (must) to be obliged 4 sollen, (shall, ought) to be to 2 können, (can) to be able wish 5 bürsen, to be allowed

3 mollen, (will) to be willing, to 6 migen, (may) to like

For their conjugation see list of verbs.

These verbs of mood can also be used as principal verbs.

There is another verb laffen, to let, to leave, sometimes used as an auxiliary of mood, the employment of which we shall explain in the 2nd part of our grammar.

Remarks.

The notes on the auxiliary verbs of mood, given in lessons 10, 11 and 12, we partly repeat here.

1. Auxiliary Verbs of mood require the following infinitive without zu; as,

Ich muß mein Pferd verkaufen. I am obliged to (or I must) sell my horse.

2. The infinitive form of an auxiliary verb of mood is used as past participle in the compound tenses; as,

Er hat fommen bürfen. He has been allowed to come.

Note.—The real past participle (geburft, gemußt, etc.) may be used, but only when the verb is no longer an auxiliary (i.e. when not fol lowed by another verb); as,

3d habe geburft, I have been allowed.

There are two conjugations of verbs in German: the regular and the irregular.

THE REGULAR VERBS.

All verbs not found among the list of irregular verbs or which are not compounds of them, are regular.

The greater part of the regular verbs end the Infinitive in en,

and a few in n (namely: ein and ern); as,

Toben, to praise taufen, to buy tabeln, to blame sittern, to tremble The Present (Indicative) is formed by taking the following terminations instead of the Infinitive terminations en or n:

Note.—In the Plural all persons terminate like the Infinitive (ex-

cept in the old form of the 2nd person plural (ihr)).

Verbs ending in cin (and sometimes those in crn) in the 1st person of the singular (ith) elide the c before I (or r); as, ith table, I blame ith sittere (or ith sittee), I tremble

The Imperfect (Indicative) is formed by taking the following terminations instead of en or n; as,

The Present Participle is formed by adding b to the Infinitive; as,

lobend, praising faufend, buying tabelnd, blaming zitternd, trembling

The Past Participle is formed by changing en or n into t and prefixing qe; as,

gelobt, praised gekauft, bought getabelt, blamed gezittert, trembled

Verbs commencing with unaccented prefixes (like: be, ge, er, ver, zer, emp, ent, miß, voll, wiber, hinter, etc.); and all verbs ending in iren and ieren(*) do not prefix ge; as,

Infinitive: behandeln, to treat
Past P.: behandelt, treated
Infinitive: flubier, to study
Past P.: flubirt, studied
entfdulbigen, to excuse

REMARK.—If the terminations commencing with t or ft cannot be easily sounded if added to a verb, an e must be inserted before ft or t. (i.e. in the Present, Imperfect and Past participle.) Thus:

Imperfect. Plur. Sing. Present. Plur. Sing. 1st p. ich-e 1st p. wir -en 1st p. ich-ete 1st p. wir-eten 2nd p. { Ste -et. Sie-eten 2nd p. ihr -ctet 2nd p. bu-eft 2nd p. bu-eteft 3rd p. fie -en 3rd p. er -et 3rd p. er-ete 3rd p. fie -cten Past participle: ge-ct.

^(*) Verbs in iren and ieren are all regular, and have the accent on the syllable containing i or it.

5*

Such verbs are those which have before the termination en one of the letters b, t, th and also m and n, if these latter two are preceded by another consonant but m, n, r, I, h; as,

baben, to bathe warten, to wait bürsten, to brush bermiethen, to let widmen, to dedicate athmen, to breathe öffnen, to open

begegnen, to meet.

Examples: Present.—bu babest, er wartet, ihr bürstet, etc. Impersect.—
ich bermiethete, du widmetest, etc. Past Participle.—geössnet, begegnet, etc.

Before it as well in the 2nd person singular of the present for the same reason an e is inserted with verbs ending in f, fth, 3; as, reisen, to travel, bu reisest schwaßen, to chatter, bu schwaßest. lauschen, to listen, bu lauschest

The Imperative in the 2nd person plural is formed by placing the pronoun Sie after the Infinitive; as,

loben Sie, praise (you) tabeln Sie, blame (you)

The other form for the 2nd person used in familiar conversation is effected by changing en into e for the singular, and into et for the plural; as, lobe, praise (thou) lobet, praise (you)

Note.—Verbs in ein, ern, in the singular leave out the e before I and r, and in the plural they add t only; as, table, tabelt, sittre, sittert.

The other persons of the Imperative are formed with the auxiliaries wollen (1st person plural) and follen (3rd person singular and plural) placing the Infinitive after; as, wir wollen loben, let us praise er foll loben, let him praise fie

follen loben, let them praise.

Note.—There are two other forms for the 1st person plural, viz: Ioben wir and lagt und loben.

The Future (I) (Indicative) of all verbs (regular and irregular) is formed by using the Present Indicative of werden as an auxiliary and placing the Infinitive after; as, ich werbe loben, I shall praise, etc.

The Conditional (I) of all verbs (regular and irregular) is formed by using the Imperfect Subjunctive of werden as an auxiliary and placing the Infinitive after; as, ich wurde loben, I should praise, etc.

The Perfect and Pluperfect (Indicative) of all verbs (regular and irregular) is generally formed as in English by using the Present and Imperfect (Indicative) of haben(*) as an auxiliary and placing the Past Participle after; as,

ich habe gelobt. I have praised ich hatte gelobt, I had praised

The Future perfect (II) (Indicative) and the Conditional perfect (II) of all verbs are generally formed by using the Future (I) (Indicative) and the Conditional (I) of haben(*) as an auxiliary. and placing the Past participle before haben; as,

ich werde gelöbt haben, I shall have praised, etc. ich würbe gelöbt haben, I should have praised, etc.

Note.—For expressing the Conditional of the auxiliary verbs of mood the Imperfect Subjunctive for the Conditional I, and the Pluperfect Subjunctive for the Conditional II are generally preferred to the regular forms (see List of Verbs).

^(*) Those verbs which are conjugated with fein instead of baben we shall continue to indicate till further explanations are given.

THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The different tenses of the Subjunctive of regular verbs are in general like the corresponding tenses of the Indicative, except in the following cases:

> Present: 2nd person Sing. (bu) ends in eft instead of ft 3rd ", ", (er) ", ", e ", ", t 2nd ", Plur. (ihr) ", ", et ", ", t (but v in eln and ern retain the t in the 2nd person plural). " t (but verbs

In the compound tenses the auxiliary verbs deviate from their Indicative tenses in the following cases:

Future: werben 2nd person Sing. (bu) is werbest instead of wirst and , , , (et), werbe , , wirb

2nd person Sing. (bu) is habeft instead of haft

3rd , , (et), habe , , hat

2nd , Plur. (fipr), habet , , haft

The root vowel a of all persons is modified; thus: Perfect: haben Pluperfect: haben ich hatte, bu hattest, etc.

The Subjunctive tenses of fein also differ very much from its Indicative tenses (see list of verbs).

Observation:—The use of the Subjunctive Mood will be explained in the 2nd part of our Grammar, and until then we shall always indicate its employment.

Remarks.

- 1. In German the different tenses can be used in one form only, therefore the English Progressive and Emphatic forms like: I am praising, I do praise, I was praising, I did praise, I have been praising, etc., must always take in translating the simple form of I praise, I praised, I have praised, etc.
- 2. The Negative Tenses are formed by placing the negation (not, nothing, never, etc.) after the verb or its auxiliary; as, ich lobe nicht, I do not praise ich lobte nicht, I did not praise ich hobe nicht gelobt, I have not praised ich werbe nicht loben, I shall

3. The Interrogative Tenses are formed by placing the pronoun after the verb or its auxiliary; as,

lobe ich? do I praise? lobte ich nicht? did I not praise? habe ich gelobt? have I praised? werbe ich nicht loben? shall I not praise?

4. In compound tenses the auxiliary verb occupies the same place as in English and the past participle and infinitive are put last in the sentence; as;

Ich habe den Knaben gelobt. I have praised the boy. Ich werd ben Anaben loben. I shall praise the boy. Ich werde ben Anaben

gelobt haben. I shall have praised the boy.

5. To occurring with an infinitive is generally translated by

zu, and both in an infinitive sentence are put last; as,
Er hat mich gebeten zu kommen. He has asked me to come. Ich habe vergessen, ihm bas Gelb zu schieden. I have forgotten to send (Dat.) him the money.

Note. -3u is not used after the auxiliary verbs of mood and some others.

to bathe, baben to believe, glauben even, sogar foolish, thöricht to fulfil, erfüllen to hope, hoffen if, wenn impatient, ungebulbig

to learn (to study) Iernen to spell, buchstabiren the luck, das Glück sudden(ly), plöglich the luck, bas Glück ,, name, ber Name never, nie to obey, gehorchen painful, schmerzlich quiet, ruhig sleepy, schläfrig

unquiet, restless, unruhig the word, bas Bort Plur: bie Börter or Worte (see page 17).

Exercise No. 28.

- 1. Have you a little time?—I have no money about (bei) me.— We have had no time.—He will have to fulfila a painful duty.—I should have more money, if I hadb (Subj.) more lucka .- He told me that (dass) he hasb (Subj.) nothing to losea. - Are you alone? No, my sister is with (bei) me. - Was the weather warm? - Have you been at (in) the concert?—I believed that (dass) he was (Subj.) in (the) towna .- Why has your friend been impatient?-Be quiet.-They would be more agreeable, if they were (Subj.) not impolited .- I am getting (becoming) sleepy. - Why did he become unquiet? - The duke has suddenly become ill.—She hopes he will (Subj.) not become foolish.—I could not believe that story. -Will you be able to be here this (heute) evening? No, I shall not be able. - Are you willing to see my brother? -May (dürfen) I ask you to repeat (wiederholen), what you said? Are you allowed to go to (in) the theatre ?- You will be obliged to obey.-I am to learn German.-He may come, if he likes (wollen).-I should not be able to come, even if I were willingb (to comea).-I should have learned French if I hade (Subj.) hadb [the] timea .-Where have you been bathing?-How long was he waiting?-Fetch a glass [of] water. - Why have you not spelt your name?
- 2. Warum konnen Sie nicht erfüllen, was Sie versprochen haben? Wir burfen heute (this) Abend auf (to) ben Ball gehen. Er will mir das Geld geben. Darf ich ins (to the) Concert gehen, oder muß ich beim (with) Ontel bleiben? würdest schläfrig werden. Was ist aus (of) dem Sohne bes Buchstabiren Sie das Wort "plöplich". Schneiders geworden? Seien Sie nicht ungeduldig, Jedermann muß gehorchen. Es ift thöricht von Ihnen, wenn Sie das hoffen. Ich könnte es nicht glauben, fogar wenn ich es hören würde.

Have you learned the poem? Why have the horses suddenly become restless? Don't hope, that (dass) he wille (Subj.) believeb thata. Men (die Menschen) are never perfectly (vollkommen) happy. It would be foolish, notb to avoid such mistakesa. We had much to learn. What was he saying to you? The gardener was working in his garden. The old man was thanking (Dat.) youb onlya. My brother became [a] soldier. The boys have had three lessons. How much did this tea cost? I do not flatter (Dat.) him very much. (dürfen) we hope, to see you to-morrow? You may (can) go now.

- When is the past participle of werden, geworden used, and when worden?
- 2. May the real past participles of the verbs of mood (gemusst, etc.) be used and when?
- 3. What do verbs in eln and sometimes those in ern in forming the 1st pers. singular of the present?
- 4. Which verbs in the past participle do not prefix ge?
- 5. What must be done if a termination commencing with a t or st cannot be easily sounded, when added to a verb?
- 6. What do verbs in eln and ern in the Imperative in forming the 2nd pers. singular and plural (familiar form)?
- 7. What tenses are generally used for the conditional form of the auxiliaries of mood?
- 8. Do the Subjunctive tenses of regular verbs differ much from those of the Indicative?
- 9. How does the Subjunctive differ in the present from the Indicative?
- 10. How does the auxiliary werden in the future of the Subjunctive deviate from the Indicative?
- 11. How does the auxiliary haben in the perfect and pluperfect of the Subjunctive deviate from the Indicative?
- 12. How is to occurring with an Infinitive usually translated, and where are both put in an infinitive sentence?

Conversation.

Shall we stay at home? No, let us go to the theatre.

But we must go soon (bald), if we wish to be there (dort) at the right time (rechtzeitig).
Tell your brother that (dass) I should like to see him.
When shall he come?
This evening if he can.
Will the weather be fine to-day?

Yes, it will be very pleasant.

Are you living in (auf) the country or in (the) town?

We have lived in the country these three years.

Have you bathed in our river yet (schon)?

No, not yet; the water was not warm enough.

Sollen wir zu Hause bleiben? Nein, wir wollen ins Theater gehen.

Aber wir muffen balb gehen, wenn wir rechtzeitig bort sein wollen.

Sagen Sie Ihrem Bruder, daß ich ihn sprechen möchte.

Wann soll er kommen? Heute Abend, wenn er kann. Wird das Wetter heute schön sein?

Ja, es wird sehr angenehm sein. Wohnen Sie auf bem Lande ober in ber Stadt?

Wir wohnen seit drei Jahren auf dem Lande.

Haben Sie schon in unserem Flusse gebadet?

Nein, noch nicht; das Wasser war nicht warm genug.

For (auf Acc.) whom have you been waiting?

I have been waiting for my cousin.

What has become of (aus) your cousin?

He has become [an] advocate.

It is growing dark; what o'clock is it then (denn)?

It is nearly half past eight.

Why has your sister gone to bed (Bett)?

She became suddenly sleepy; she was at (auf) the ball last night (gestern Abend).

Were you there as well (auch)? Yes, but I went home before my sister.

With whom did you dance?

I danced once with Mr. A. and twice with Mr. B.

Can I do something for you?

Yes, you might look for my pocket-book.

Why are you too late?

I believed, I had (Subj.) more time to spare (übrig).

Am I not right?

No, you are wrong.

May I read this book?

Yes, you may read it.

Could (Subj.) you go for me to Berlin?

Yes, I can (go), but not before to-morrow.

Do you know German? No, but I know French.

How is it, that (dass) you don't know both the languages (Sprache f.)?

I have had no time to learn German, and French I learned (already) at (in the) school.

Who has sent this workman? He will have to mend (machen) something.

Auf wen haben Sie gewartet?

Ich habe auf meinen Better gewartet.

Was ist aus Ihrem Better geworden?

Er ist Advokat geworden.

Es wird dunkel; wie viel Uhr ist es denn?

Es ist beinahe halb neun.

Warum ift Ihre Schwester zu Bett gegangen?

Sie ist plötlich schläfrig geworden; sie war gestern Abend auf dem Ball.

Waren Sie auch dort?

Ja, aber ich ging vor meiner Schwester nach Hause.

Mit wem haben Sie getanzt? Ich tanzte einmal mit Herrn A. und zweimal mit Herrn B.

Rann ich etwas für Sie thun? Ja, Sie könnten meine Brieftasche suchen.

Warum kommen Sie zu spät? Ich glaubte, ich hätte mehr Zeit übrig.

Habe ich nicht Recht? Nein, Sie haben Unrecht.

Darf ich dieses Buch lesen?

Ja, Sie können es lesen.

Könnten Sie für mich nach Berlin gehen?

Ja, ich kann gehen, aber nicht vor morgen.

Können Sie Deutsch?

Nein, aber ich kann Frangösisch. Wie kommt es, daß Sie nicht beide Sprachen können?

Ich hatte noch keine Beit, Deutsch zulernen, und Französisch lernte ich schon in der Schule.

Wer hat diesen Arbeiter geschickt? Er wird etwas zu machen haben.

Reading Exercise No. 28.

Georg ber Dritte, König von England, war ein freundlicher! Herr und unterhielt2 sich gern3 mit seinen Unterthanen4, sie mochten arm oder reich sein. Eines Morgens ritt⁵ er mit feinem Sohne, dem Prinzen⁷ von Wales, in der Umgegend⁸ von Windsor spazieren⁶. In einem Sohlwege9 ftiegen10 fie auf einen Bauer11, beffen Wagen mit einem Rade12 in ein tiefes Loch13 gerathen14 war, und der nicht mehr15 weiter16 konnte. Der Könia besann sich¹⁷ nicht lange, sprang vom Pferde, und der Kronpring18, auf ein Wort von ihm, ebenfall319. Sie banden die Pferde an einen Baum, griffen vereint20 mit dem Bauer¹¹ in die Speichen²¹ des Rades¹², und hoben²² den Wagen glücklich24 heraus23. Natürlich25 beschmutten26 sich die beiden Herren nicht wenig und waren bemüht27, ihre Aleider wieder in Ordnung28 zu bringen29. Als30 fie wieder ihre Pferde besteigen31 wollten, bat sie der erkennt= liche³² Bauer¹¹ dringend³³, mit ihm im nächsten Wirthshause³⁴ einen Krug35 Porter zu leeren36. Der König dankte lächelnd37 und sagte, daß seine Frau38 zu Hause auf ihn warte. Er bat den Bauer¹¹ zugleich³⁹, von ihm eine Kleinigkeit40 anzunehmen41, und drückte42 ihm einige Guineen in die Hand. Der Bauer¹¹ war stumm⁴³ vor Erstaunen⁴⁴, und als30 er sprechen wollte, waren der König und sein Sohn schon über alle Berge.

Er ging nun allein in das Wirthshaus34 und erzählte bei einem Krug35 Bier von seinen Helfern45 in der Noth⁴⁶ und ihrer Großmuth⁴⁷. Die anwesenden⁴⁸ Gäste⁴⁹ sagten ihm dann⁵⁰, daß es ohne Zweifel⁵¹ der König mit dem Kronprinzen¹⁸ gewesen sei.

1 friendly, 2-3 liked to converse, 4 subjects, 5 & 6 took a ride, 1 friendly, 2—3 liked to converse, 4 subjects, 5 & 6 took a ride, 7 prince, 8 environs, 9 defile, 10 came, 11 peasant, 12 wheel, 13 whole, 14 got, 15—16 any farther, 17 to reflect, sich besinnen, besann, besonnen, 18 crown-prince, 19 as well, 20 together, 21 spokes, 22 & 23 lifted out, 24 successfully, 25 of course, 26 to soil, beschmutzen, 27 endeavoured, 28 order, 29 put, 30 when, 31 to mount (a horse), besteigen, bestiege, bestiegen, 32 thankful, 33 urgently, 34 inn, 35 mug, 36 to empty, leeren, 37 smilingly, 38 wife, 39 at the same time, 40 trifle, 41 to accept, 42 to press, drücken, 43 dumb, 44 of astonishment, 45 helpers, 46 difficulty, 47 generosity, 48 present, 49 guests, 50 then, 51 doubt. Twenty-ninth Lesson.

Neunundzwanziaste Lektion.

THE IRREGULAR VERBS.

The Irregularity of these verbs consists mostly in changing the root vowel of the *Infinitive* to another vowel in the *Imperfect* and *Past Participle*, whilst the other tenses are formed regularly. Some also deviate otherwise as will be found in our list. (See the conjugation of geben, list page 27.)

Remarks.

From the 1st person singular of the Imperfect Indicative the other persons are formed thus:

Sing: 2nd person by adding ft (or eft)
, 3rd ,, is like the 1st person sing.

Plur: of all three persons by adding en (or n only when already ending in e)

" the 2nd person (ihr) by adding t (or et).

The Imperfect Subjunctive is formed from the Imperfect Indicative by adding an e to the 1st and 3rd persons singular when not already ending in e. The 2nd person singular (bu) and the 2nd person plural (ihr) must always end in eft and et, and the other persons of the plural are like those of the Indicative.

When the Imperfect has one of the vowels a, o, u, these vowels in all persons are modified in the Subjunctive (i.e. changed to ä, ö, ü). Thus:

IMPERFECT. Sing. Indicative. Plur. Sing. Subjunctive. Plur. 1st p. wir "-en 1st p. wir -en 1st p. id. -e 2nd p. {Sie-en ihr -t (et) 2nd p. {Sie -- en ihr -- er 2nd p. bu'-eft 2nd p. bu-ft (eft) 3rd p. fie 3rd p. er "-e 3rd p. fie "-en 3rd p. er--Ex.: Indicative. ich fang Subjunctive. ich fänge ich schoß I shot ich führe } I drove

Compound verbs follow the conjugation of their root verbs and as regards the prefixes in the past participle the rules of regular verbs are also applied to them; as,

geben, to give idh gebe idh gab gieb gegeben bu giebit vergeben, to forgive idh vergebe bu vergiebit vergeben er vergiebit

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: *fallen, to fall fangen, to catch empfangen, to receive halten, to hold behalten, to keep erhalten, to get, to receive laffen, to let(*), to leave, verlaffen, to leave, to quit rathen (Dat.), to advise errathen, to guess verrathen, to betray fahlafen, to sleep.

^(*) To let (a house, etc.) is translated bermiethen.

the anecdote, die Anetbote | the mouse, die Maus " bank-note, bie Bantnote

book-binder, ber Buchbinber book-seller, ber Buch:

händler easy, easily, seicht the exercise, die Uebung ,, hill, der Hügel Plur. die Mäuse music, die Musik

" (postage) stamp, bie (Brief=) Marte price, prize, der Preis rule, die Regel

" (maid-) servant, bas Dienstmädchen

the shop, ber Laben Plur. bie Läben " singer (f), bie Gange-

some time ago, por eini-

ger Beit the wood (forest), Walb, Plur. Wälber.

Exercise No. 29.

1. Where (wohin) has your (maid) servant gone ?—He stood upon a hill. - I have not understood the rule. - Have you read this anecdote ? Yes, some time ago, but I have forgotten it. - Who broke (to pieces) the looking-glass?-Why have you not taken the bank-note?-We spoke a very long time (sehr lange) to (mit) each other. - When did your grandfather die?-The music has notb begunc yeta.-Which horse has won the first prize?—What book was the bookbinder binding?—Where did you find my pocket-book?—The singer (f.) sang several songs.—What have you been drinking, wine or beer?—The soldiers fired (shot) at (auf) the sailors. - Are all the shops shut ?- Did you lose anything ?- I have not compared the exercises.—They comprehended easily what I said.— I did not tear (rend) the stamp. - The uncle has ridden in the wood.

You fall, -we catch, -I receive, -thou holdest, -you are keeping, -they get (receive), -he lets (leaves), -I leave (quit), -we advise, she guesses, - they betray, -dost thou sleep?-I fell, -you caught, -they received, -he held, -we kept, -I got (received), -you were letting (leaving), -thou leftest (quittedst), -she did not advise, -they were guessing, -I betrayed, -we slept, -they have fallen, -he has caught. -they had received, -we have held, -I had kept, -thou hast not got (received), -had you let (left) ?- they have left (quitted), -she had advised, -I have guessed, - we had betrayed, -they have slept.

2. Saben Sie mit (to) bem Buchbinder gesprochen? (your) hund hat unsere Rate gebissen. Der Bogel flog in ben Garten. Man ergriff ben armen Arbeiter. Mein Bruder hat ihm viel Geld geliehen und alles verloren. Warum mieben Sie mich? Von wem haben Sie diefes Geschenk erhalten? 3ch habe heute (last) Nacht gut geschlafen. Laffen Sie das Dienstmädchen nach Hause gehen.

The whole garden is spoilt. Who has seen my hat? That basket weighs eight pounds (Sing.) and a half. The cat has caught two mice. The boy threw the stone through the window. How much did you win? It is now striking half past twelve. My watch does not go. Why have you left your work at home? The man died vesterday, About what have you been disputing? How long did you stay vesterday at (auf) the ball? I have written to (an Acc.) the book-seller. Why did you beat your poor little dag?

- 1. From which person in the Imperfect Indicative are the other persons of an irregular verb formed?
- 2. How is the 2nd pers. singular formed, and how the 3rd pers. singular?
- 3. How are the three persons of the plural formed, and how the 2nd pers. plural (ihr)?
- 4. How are the 1st and 3rd pers. singular of the Imperfect Subjunctive formed?
- 5. What terminations must the 2nd pers. singular (du) and 2nd pers. plural (ihr) always have in the Imperfect Subjunctive?
- 6. Do the other persons of the plural differ from those of the Indicative?
- 7. When the Imperfect has one of the vowels α , o, u, what is done with these vowels in the Subjunctive?
- 8. How are compound verbs conjugated?
- 9. What rules are applied for the prefixes of such verbs in the past participle?

Conversation.

What shall I sing? Please, sing a German song.

Have I come too early? No, you come just in time. Which tailor can you recommend (Dat.) me? Go to mine, he is a clever work-

Have you not promised too

much?

No, (that) I have not.

What are you writing here? Iam writing to (an) my friend(f). Have you any stamps?

No, fetch me (Dat.) some please. Can you lend (Dat.) me this

book? Yes, but don't keep it too long.

When did you leave the concert? A few minutes after (nachdem) you hadb gonea.

Why did you leave the child alone at home?

I could not take it with [me]. Have you cut yourself?

Yes, I have cut my finger.

Was foll ich fingen?

Bitte, singen Gie ein beutsches Lied.

Bin ich zu früh gekommen? Mein, Sie kommen gerade recht. Welchen Schneider können Sie

mir empfehlen?

Beben Gie zu meinem, er ift ein geschickter Arbeiter.

Haben Sie nicht zu viel ver-

iprochen? Nein, das habe ich nicht.

Was schreiben Gie hier?

Ich schreibe an meine Freundin. Saben Sie Marken?

Dein, bitte holen Sie

einige. Rönnen Sie mir dieses Buch

leihen? Ja, aber behalten Sie es nicht

zu lang(e).

Wann verließen Gie bas Concert? Einige Minuten nachdem Gie gegangen waren.

Warum ließen Sie bas Rind

allein zu Haufe?

Ich konnte es nicht mitnehmen. haben Sie fich geschnitten?

Ja, ich habe mich in den Finger geschnitten.

Reading Exercise No. 29.

Friedrich der Große und der fächfischel Baner2 .

Friedrich der Große wurde3 nach der Schlacht4 bei Rokbach in einem fächsischen! Städtchen5 erwartet. Biele vornehme6 Leute der Stadt und Umgegend? hatten sich vor seinem Quartieres versammelt9, um10 ihn zu begrüßen11. Auch ein armer Bauer2 hatte sich unter die Vornehmen12 gemischt13. Als14 ber König mit seinen Generalen15 und Abiutanten16 ankam17, brangte18 er sich auch in bas Zimmer hinein19. Einige fächfischel Höflinge20 bemerkten ibn fo= gleich21 und wollten ihn hinausweisen22. Doch23 der König trat vor24 und fraate den Mann:-Was willst du denn25 hier?—Nichts weiter26, als was die Andern alle wollen; ich will den König sehen.—Das27 kann geschehen28, sagte der Monarch,—allein²⁹ umsonst³⁰ ist der Svak³¹ nicht. Die andern Gerren bezahlen dafür, und wenn du etwas dafür geben willst, so kann es dir Niemand vers bieten. Veur der Kassirer³² hat es umsonst³⁰. Nimm also beinen hut und sammle33 das Gelb ein33, dann25 brauchft34 du nichts zu gahlen.—Der Bauer2 ließ sich bas nicht zweimal sagen .- Du kannst bei mir beginnen .- sagte ber König und warf ein Goldstück35 in den Hut. Der Bauer2 machte36 die Runde37 und Reiner wagte38 sich auszu= schließen39. Nachdem40 das Geld eingesammelt41 war, er= kundigte42 er sich beim König, an wen er das Geld ab= liefern43 folle. Da klopfte ihm diefer auf die Schulter44 und sagte:- Nun weißt45 du, wie das zu verstehen ist, wenn man fagt, es kostet Geld, wo sich der König von Preußen sehen läßt. Aber für sich behält er es nicht, das merke46 dir.—Jett erst⁴⁷ verstand der verblüffte⁴⁸ Bauer², mas der König meinte⁴⁹. Doch²³ ehe⁵⁰ er danken konnte, war ber König in ein anderes Zimmer getreten.

¹ saxon, 2 peasant, 3 was, 4 battle, 5 small town, 6 distinguished, 7 environs, 8 quarter, 9 to assemble, sich versammeln, 10 in order (to), 11 to welcome, salute, begrüssen, 12 people of rank, 13 to mix, 14 when, 15 generals, 16 adjutants, 17 arrived, 18 & 19 squeezed (into), 20 courtiers, 21 immediately, 22 send away, 23 yet, 24 forward, 25 then, 26 nothing else, 27-28 that may be, 29 however, 30 for nothing, 31 joke, 32 cashier, 33 collect, 34 to need, want, brauchen, 35 piece of gold, 56 & 37 went the round, 38 to venture, wagen, 39 to exclude, 40 after, 41 collected, 42 to inquire, sich erkundigen, 43 deliver, 44 shoulder, 45 knowest, 46 to mind, remember, sich (Dat.) merken, 47 only, 48 startled, 49 to mean, meinen, 50 before

COMPOUND VERBS.

There are two kinds of compound verbs Inseparable and Separable verbs.

Inseparable verbs are those having a prefix which can never be separated. The most usual of them are those having the unaccented prefixes be, ge, er, ber, zer, emp, ent, mig, boll, wiber, hinter (see page 131).

The Separable Verbs.

Separable verbs are those the prefixes of which consist in general of prepositions or adverbs.

Such separable prefixes are: ab, an, auf, aus, bei, dar, ein, fort, her, heim, hin, los, mit, nach, nieder, vor, weg, zu, bevor, babon, empor, entgegen, vorbei, vorüber, zurud, zusammen, etc., and all those prefixes beginning with her and hin(*), like : herauf, binauf, herunter, hinunter, etc.

These verbs are conjugated like other verbs, except in the following cases:

1. The prefix is separable in the Present, Imperfect (Indic. and Subj.) and in the *Imperative* (see list of verbs page 21), and is placed quite at the *end* of the sentence, the root verb being conjugated as usual; as,

antommen, to arrive. abbeftellen, to countermand.

Ich fomme nicht mit meinem Freund an. I do not arrive with my friend. Ich bestellte ben Rod ab. I countermanded the coat. Bestellen Sie ben Rod ab. Countermand the coat.

2. In the past participle the prefix is put before the past participle of the root verb; as,

angefommen, arrived. abbeftellt, countermanded.

3. If the infinitive has an with it, an is inserted between the prefix and the verb; as,

Es war nicht möglich, rechtzeitig anzukommen. It was not possible to arrive in time.

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: * laufen, to run fchworen, to swear (to take an oath) rufen, to call sügen, to tell a lie anlügen or belügen, to belie betrügen, to cheat, to deceive brennen, to burn verbrennen, to burn (to ashes).

^(*) her and hin must always be added when the verb denotes a movement or direction from or to a place. her expresses the direction towards the place, and him the direction away from the place; as, Kommen Sie herein. Come in. Gehen Sie finein. Go in. Rehmen Sie es heraus. Take it out. Legen Sie es hinein. Put it in.

to arrive, *anfommen irr. , cease, auffören , comedownstairs, *ferunterfommen irr. , come upstairs, *ferauffommen irr. , commence, aufangen irr. , copy (by writing), abigireiben irr. , dress, anffeiben	,, go upstairs, *hinauf- gehen irr. ,, introduce, to present, voritellen , offer, andieten irr.	to prepare, vorbereiten , pronounce, aussprecher irr. , read to, vorsesen irr. , shut, jumachen , stay out, "ausbleiben irr. , throw away, wegwer fen irr. ,, try, versuchen
---	---	--

Exercise No. 30.

1. I cease,—he ceased,—cease!—we have ceased,—they ask(*) us to cease,—you will cease,—are you copying?—we went out,—shut!—I have preferred,—try to open!—he does not commence,—I was reading to (Dat.) him,—don't pronounce!—we have thrown it away,—she tried to pick it up,—I shall offer,—they are staying out,—when did you arrive?—he has prepared,—we forgot to introduce,—I cannot dress,—go upstairs!—come upstairs!—go downstairs!—come downstairs!—I have gone out,—we forgot to shut,—what do you prefer?—they have not commenced,—she has arrived,—I offered,—we were obliged to open,—you are not allowed to pick it up.

He runs,—they swear,—we call,—I tell a lie,—thou beliest,—you cheat,—they burn,—it burns (to ashes),—you were running,—thou didst not swear,—I called,—we told a lie,—you belied,—thou wast cheating,—he burned,—they burned (to ashes),—thou hast run,—had you sworn?—they have called,—she had told a lie,—I have belied,—we had cheated,—have you been burning?—he had burnt (to ashes).

2. Was schreiben Sie ab? Mit wen gingen Sie aus? Hat das Dienstmädchen die Thüre zugemacht? Ja, aber sie hat vergessen, die Fenster aufzumachen. Fangen Sie an zu lesen. Haben Sie ihm das Gelb augeboten? Ich werde nicht lang(e) ausbleiben. Bann ist Ihre Cousine augekommen? Ich stellte meinen neuen Freund meinen Eltern vor. Warum versuchten Sie nicht, sich anzustleiden? Ich dat ihn hinaufzugehen. Heben Sie die Nadel auf, die auf dem Fußboden liegt. Warum kommen Sie nicht herunter?

Have you copied all the letters? Do you prefer wine or beer? The boys did not cease from making a noise (zu lärmen). Don't go downstairs. Why have you come upstairs? You read this anecdote to (Dat.) me yesterday. It is better to throw away such bad butter. Please (bitte) introduce me to (Dat.) your cousin (f.). Have you dressed yourself now? Shut the window and open the door. How do you pronounce this word? You have been staying out too long. We are obliged to prepare our tasks. Pick up that stamp.

^(*) To ask (to beg) is translated bitten (irr.), to ask (a question) is fragen.

What do the prefixes of separable verbs mostly consist of?

2. When is the prefix separable?

3. Where is the prefix put in the past participle?4. When the infinitive has zu with it, where is zu placed then?

5. When must her and hin be added to the verb?

6. What direction expresses her and what direction hin?

Conversation.

Will you go out with me? No, I prefer to stay at home.

May I offer you some cheese and butter?

No, thank [you]; I cannot eat any more.

Why have you not prepared your exercise?

I had no time to prepare it.

Please, come upstairs [for] a minute.

What do you want from me? Take this letter and copy it.

Where (wohin) have the boys been running?

They have been running to

(auf) the street.

Has somebody called (Dat.) me? No, I did not hear anything. Is the fire (Feuer n.) burning? No, all the coals are burnt out. To (Dat.) whom have you introduced your friend?

I introduced him to Mr. X.

Would you be kind enough to read this intelligence to me? Yes, willingly (gerne). I commence at once (sofort)? Are you able to open the window?

I shall try to open it.

How longdo you intend (wollen) to stay out?

About (ungefähr) two hours and a half.

Wollen Sie mit mir ausgehen? Nein, ich ziehe vor zu hause zu bleiben.

Darf ich Ihnen Rase und Butter

anbieten?

Nein, danke; ich kann nichts mehr eisen.

Warum haben Sie Ihre Uebung nicht vorbereitet?

Ich hatte teine Zeit, sie vorzu-

bereiten. Bitte, tommen Sie eine Minute

herauf. Was wünschen Sie von mir? Nehmen Sie diesen Brief, und schreiben Sie ihn ab.

Wohin sind die Anaben gelaufen?

Sie find auf die Straße gelaufen.

Sat mir Jemand gerufen? Nein, ich habe nichts gehört. Brennt bas Feuer ?

Rein, alle Rohlen find verbrannt. Wem haben Gie Ihren Freund vorgestellt?

Ich stellte ihn (dem) Herrn X. bor.

Würden Sie so gut sein, mir diese Nachricht vorzulesen?

Soll ich sofort an-Ja, gerne. fangen !

Können Sie das Fenster aufmachen?

Ich werde versuchen, es aufzumachen.

Wie lange wollen Sie ausbleiben?

Ungefähr zwei und eine halbe Stunde.

Reading Exercise No. 30.

Rarl der Fünfte und die Ränber1 .

Alse Raiser Rarl ber Fünfte sich eines Tages auf der Jagd3 verirrt4 hatte, kam er an ein Haus, in welchen vier Männer waren, die sich stellten⁵, als⁶ ob⁷ sie schliefen. Plöplich stands einer von denfelben auf, und fagte zu dem Kaiser:—Ich habe geträumt¹⁰, ich musse deine Uhrnehmen.—Mit diesen Worten bemächtigte¹¹ er sich seiner Uhr. Darauf erhob12 sich der zweite und meinte13, daß er geträumt¹⁰ habe, der Oberrock¹⁴ des Fremden¹⁵ paffe¹⁶ ihm zum Entzücken¹⁷, und er nahm denfelben ohne¹⁸ weiteres19. Auf dieselbe Weise20 sette21 sich der drittein Besitz²² der Börse²³ des Fremdling3¹⁵. Endlich²⁴ näherte25 sich der vierte und sprach:- 3ch hoffe, es wird Euch nicht unangenehm26 sein, wenn ich Euch untersuche27. -Er that28 dies und sah am Halse29 des Raisers eine goldene36 Rette31, an welcher ein Pfeifchen32 befestigt33 war. Doch³⁴ der Kaiser sagte:—Mein Freund, ehe³⁵ Ihr mich dieses Kleinods³⁶ beraubt³⁷, muß ich Euch dessen Krast³⁸ lehren³⁹.—Ind**e**m⁴⁰ er dies sagte⁴¹, psiff er. Seine Leute, welche ihn suchten, eilten42 nach dem Hause, und der Kaiser, als² er sich außer⁴³ Gesahr⁴⁴ sah, sprach:—Hier sind Männer, die genau⁴⁵ träumten¹⁰, was sie wollten. Rett will ich aber³⁴ auch einmal träumen¹⁰.—Und nach= dem46 er einige Augenblicke47 in48 Gedanken vertieft49 da= gestanden 50 war, fuhr 51 er fort 52: - Sch habe geträumt 10, daß ihr alle vier verdient⁵³, gehenkt⁵⁴ zu werden⁵⁵.— Der Kaiser hatte diese Urtheil⁵⁶ kaum⁵⁷ ausgesprochen, als² es auch von seinen Dienern⁵⁸ im Walde ausgeführt⁵⁹ wurde⁶⁰

1 robbers, 2 when, 3 hunt, 4 to go astray, sich verirren, 5 to feint, sich stellen, 6 as, 7 if, 8 & 9 to rise, aufstehen, stand auf, aufgestanden, 10 to dream, träumen, 11 to take possession of, sich bemächtigen (Gen.), 12 to rise, sich erheben, erhob, erhoben, 13 to mean, meinen, 14 over-coat, 15 stranger, 16 to suit, passen, 17 wonderfully, 18 & 19 without ceremony, 20 manner, 21 to put, setzen, 22 possession, 23 purse, 24 at last, 25 to approach, sich nähern, (Dat.), 26 unpleasant, 27 examine, 28 to do, thun, that, gethan, 29 neck, 30 golden, 31 chain, 32 little whistle, 33 fastened, 34 however, 35 before, 36 treasure, 37 deprive, berauben, 38 power, 39 to teach, lehren, 40—41 in saying this, 42 to hasten, eilen, 43 out of, 44 danger, 45 exactly, 46 after, 47 moments, 48—49 musing, 50 stood there, 51 & 52 continue, fortfahren, fuhr fort, fortgefahren, 53 to deserve, verdienen. 54—55 to be hanged, 56 sentence, 57 hardly, 58 servants, 59 to execute, ausführen, 60 was.

Thirty-first Lesson,

Einundbreißigfte Lektion.

The Separable Verbs (continued).

Whenever the verb is removed to the end of the sentence, the prefix of a separable verb in the Present and Imperfect (Indicative and Subjunctive) is no longer separable.

Note.—Verbs are removed to the end of the sentence usually by relative pronouns or subordinative conjunctions; as,

Wo ift ber Mann, welcher den Knaben is lange aufhielt? Where is the man who detained the boy so long? Wolfen Sie den Brieflejen, welchen ich abichreibe? Will you read the letter, which I am copying? E3 ift nicht wahr, daß!*) er gestern Abend antam. It is not true that he arrived yesterday evening. Ich sann nicht sommen, weil(*) ich mich ankleide. I cannot come, because I am dressing myself.

Verbs which are sometimes Separable, sometimes Inseparable.

Verbs compounded with the four prepositions burth, um, über, unter are sometimes separable, sometimes inseparable, like in English to look over and to overlook.

When such a prefix is accentuated it is separable, and when the accent is on the verb the prefix is inseparable.

The preposition in general is separable when the verb has its literal meaning, and inseparable when the verb has a more figurative sense; as,

übersehen, to ferry over, übersehen, to translate, untersiehen (irr.), to stand under (shelter), untersiehen, to venture, to dare.

Where burth, unter, etc. are not separable, the verb of course does not prefix ge in the past participle, like all those with an unaccented prefix (be, ge, er, etc.); as,

überset, translated, unterstanden, ventured.

(For Exercises and continuation see Lesson 32.)

Learn by heart the irregular verbs: fennen, to know (by the appearance) wijjen, to know (to have knowledge of) fenden, to send wenden, to turn benfen, to think bringen, to bring berbringen (or zubringen), to spend, to pass (time) thun, to do.

1. To send is mostly translated schicken (reg.).

2. To think used in the sense of to suppose, to expect is generally translated by qiauben (reg.).

3. To do is very often translated by maden (to make), and to make by thun, as will be explained in the 2nd part.

^(*) Daß (that) and weil (because) as well as wenn (if) are subordinative conjunctions, and throw the verb at the end of the sentence.

to awake (intr.), aufwa-the bed, bas Bett Plur: bie Betten to blame, tabeln to fall asleep, *einichlafen

to get up, to rise, to stand up, *aufstehen irr. to invite, einlaben irr.

the afternoon, ber Nach to look to have the ap-mittaa [chen | pearance, aussehen irr.] to set out, to depart, to put on (a hat, etc.),

to return (something), to the train, ber Jug give back, jurid- to undress, austleiben geben irr.

the morning, ber Morgen the post, post-office, bie \$\mathref{post}\$ fiehen irr. to start, *afgehen irr. \$\mathref{post}\$ fiehen irr. to take off (clothes), austo put on (clot to take off (a hat, etc.), abnehmen irr.

Exercise No. 31.

1. The book which I am returning,—the hat which you put on yesterday,-I found that he was looking well.-He will blame me if I put on my new coat.—We are sleepy, because we sat up too long last night (gestern Abend) .- I took off my waist-coat .- The waist-coat which I took off.—He is taking off his hat.—This gentleman is impolite, because he does not take his hat off. - When did you get up this (heute) morning?-I heard that you got up very late this (heute) morning.-Who invited you?-The lady who invited you.-By (mit) which train will (wollen) you set out? · By the train which starts at nine o'clock this (heute) evening .- Undress the children, they must go to bed.

They know me, -he knows everything, -I am sending, -we turn, -dost thou think?-you bring,-we spend (time),-I am doing,you knew him, -thou knewest much, -she sent, -they were turning, -I was thinking, --we brought, --we passed (time), --you did, --we have known you, -I had known nothing, -he has sent, -they had turned, you have thought, -she had brought, -they have spent (time), -I had done.

2. Gehen Sie heute (this) Nachmittag aus? Ja, ich muß auf (to) die Post gehen. Warum standen Sie so spät auf? Weil auf (to) die post gegen. Wetenst stationer Ste zu hat auf? Wet ich sehr spät eingeschlasen din. Wer machte den Laden des Buchhändlers auf? Derselbe Mann, der ihn gestern aufmachte. If Ihr Bruder mit dem ersten Zug abgereist? Nein, er mußte mit dem zweiten Zug abreisen, weil er zu spät aufgewacht ist. Das Concert fängt um (at) bieselbe Zeit an, um (at) welche es gestern anfing. Warum blieben Sie gestern Abend (last night) so lange auf? Weil mein Better von London ankam.

Has the gentleman returned the umbrella which you lent (Dat.) him yesterday? The children cannot come yet, because they are not dressed. Pick up the (news) paper which that lady threw away. I prefer that bonnet (hat), which you offered (Dat.) me. He will (wollen) give (Dat.) me something if I copy this letter. You forgot to but on your hat. How did the gentleman look who went upstairs? You cannot blame anybody because the windows are not shut (zumachen). I have commenced to do (machen) my task.

- 1. When is the prefix of a separable verb in the present and imperfect no longer separable?
- 2. By what words are verbs usually removed to the end of the sentence?
- 3. Which verbs are sometimes separable, and sometimes inseparable?
- 4. Where is the accent, when these prefixes are separable, and where, when inseparable?
- 5. When is the preposition in general separable, and when not?
- 6. Does the verb in the past participle prefix ge, when durch, unter etc. are not separable?

Conversation.

When does the next train start to (nach) Berlin?

At 9.15.

When will you set out?

To-morrow with the earliest train.

Then (dann) don't sit up too long, that you may awake in time (rechtzeitig).

When do you generally get up? Generally at a quarter to six.

And when do you go to-bed? Generally at half past nine. Can you take this letter to (auf)

the post-office? Yes, but there (es) is no stamp on it.

Please, buy one. Do you know that gentleman?

Yes, I have known him these two years.

Do you know the news? No, I dont know it.

What are you thinking of (an Acc.)?

I thought of my nephew. Do you think that he will (Subj.) visit you very soon (bald)?

Yes, I have invited him, and I think he will arrive to-day.

Where will you spend your holidays (Feri-en)? I shall go into (auf) the country.

Wann geht der nächste Zug nach. Berlin ab? Um 9 Uhr fünfzehn.

Wann wollen Gie abreifen? Morgen mit dem ersten Zuge.

Dann bleiben Gie nicht zu lange auf, daß Gie rechtzeitig aufwachen.

Wann stehen Sie gewöhnlich auf? Gewöhnlich um drei Biertel auf jechs.

Und wann gehen Sie zu Bett? Gewöhnlich um halb zehn.

Ronnen Gie biefen Brief auf die Post tragen?

Ja, aber es ist keine Markedarauf.

Bitte, faufen Gie eine. Rennen Sie diesen Berrn? Ja, ich kenne ihn seit zwei:

Jahren. Wissen Sie die Neuigkeit?"

Rein, ich weiß fie nicht. An was (or woran) denken Sie?

Ich dachte an meinen Neffen. Glauben Sie, daß er Sie bald besuchen werde?

Ja, ich habe ihn eingeladen, und ich glaube, er wird heute ankommen.

Wo werden Sie Ihre Ferien zubringen (or verbringen)? Ich werde auf das Land gehen.

Reading Exercise No. 31.

Beftrafte1 Sabsucht2.

Eine berühmte3 Sangerin reifte von hauptstadt4 ju Hauptstadt4; sie fand überall5 großen Beifall6 und ber= diente⁷ viel Geld. In Folge⁸ ihrer großen Einnahmen⁹ wurde sie sehr reich und hatte einen eigenen 10 Kutscher 11, Wagen und Pferde. Einst¹², als¹³ sie durch eine bergige¹⁴ Gegend¹⁵ suhr, zerbrach die Achse¹⁶ an ihrem Wagen, was sie in große Verlegenheit17 brachte. Während sie so rath= log18 bei ihrem zerbrochenen19 Wagen auf der Landstrage20, stand, kam ein Herr auf einem schönen Rappen21 bes22 Weges²³ und sah ihre Noth²⁴. Es war ein reicher Guts-besitzer²⁵, der in²⁶ der Nähe²⁷ wohnte. Er lud die Dame ein, ihm in sein Haus zu folgen28, und bort so lange zu bleiben, bis29 der Schaden30 gut gemacht wäre. Die Sängerin nahm³¹ die Einladung³³ mit Freuden³⁴ an³², und der Gutsbesitger²⁵ schickte sogleich³⁵ zu dem Schmiede³⁶, um³⁷ nach dem Wagen zu sehen. Da³⁸ der Gutsherr³⁹ diesem Vorfalle⁴⁰ die Gelegenheit⁴¹ verdankte⁴², eine berühmte³ Sängerin zu bewirthen⁴³, so lud derselbe Abends⁴⁴ seine Freunde ein und bat die Sängerin, der Gesellschaft⁴⁵ einige Arien46 (A=ri=en) zu singen. Sie that dies und die Gesellschaft45 ging vergnügt auseinander47. Che48 am andern Morgen die Sängerin ihre Reise fortsette49, ersuchte⁵⁰ sie ihren gütigen⁵¹ Wirth⁵², ihr für das gestrige⁵³ Concert 300 Dukaten54 zu bezahlen. Der Herr, erstaunt55, bezahlte diese Summe; doch als13 die Sängerin abreisen wollte, forderte56 er für seine Bewirthung57 400 Dukaten54, von benen er 300 behielt und 100 dem Schmiede36 gab.

¹ punished, 2 covetousness, 3 celebrated, 4 capital, 5 everywhere, 6 applause, 7 to earn, verdienen, 8 in consequence of (Genit.), 9 receivings, 10 own, 11 coachman, 12 once, 13 when, 14 mountainous, 15 country, 16 axle, 17 embarrasment, 18 helpless, 19 broken, 20 highroad, 21 black horse, 22 & 23 on the road, 24 difficulty, 25 proprietor of an estate, 26—27 near, 28 to follow, folgen, (Dat.), 29 till, 30 damage, 31 & 32 to accept, annehmer, nahm an, angenommen, 33 invitation, 34 pleasure, 35 immediately, 36 (black-) smith, 37 in order (to), 38 as, 39 landlord, 40 accident, 41 opportunity, 42 to owe, to thank, verdanken, 43 to entertain, bewirthen, 44 in the evening, 45 society, 46 airs, 47 one from another, 48 before, 49 to continue (a way), fortsetzen, 50 to request, ersuchen, 51 kind, 52 host, 53 yesterday, 54 ducats, 55 astonished, 56 to ask, to demand, fordern, 57 entertainment.

Thirty-second Lesson.

Zweiunddreißigste Lektion.

The Separable Verbs (concluded).

Verbs with the prefixes burn and um are generally separable; except a few of which the following are the most used and which are inseparable:

burth is inseparable in

durchbohren, to pierce burchbringen irr., to penetrate burchreisen, to travel over burthforschen to examine thorburthsuch oughly, to search (through)

Note.—Durch is separable in burchbohren, to bore through *burch-bringen (irr.), to get through *burchreisen, to travel (pass) through.

um is inseparable in

nmarmen, to embrace umgeben irr.) to encircle, umringen) to surround umgehen irr., to avoid umfchiffen, to circumnavigate umidlingen irr., to entwine, to embrace umidreiben irr., to circumscribe, to paraphrase umitellen, to surround umwölfen, to cloud (over)

Note.—Um is separable in *umgehen (irr.), to haunt umidiffen, to transfer to another ship umidireiben, (irr.) to write over again umitellen, to transpose.

Verbs with the prefixes tiber and unter are generally inseparable; except a few of which the following are the most used and which are separable:

über is separable in

*übersahren irr. \ to ferry over *übersehen \ to cross übersühren, to convey over *fibergehen irr., to go over (to another party), to desert

*überlaufen irr., to flow over

Note.—Über is inseparable in übersahren (irr), to run over (by a vehicle) überschen, to translate übersühren, to convict übergehen (irr.), to overslip übersausen, to intrude upon.

unter is separable in

nuterbringen irr., to shelter *untergehen irr., to go down, to set, to sink

unterordnen, to subordinate
*unterstehen irr., to go or stand
under shelter

Note.—Unter is inseparable in unterstehen, to venture, to dare.

The prefix wieber (not wider) is inseparable in the verb wieberholen, to repeat.

Birberholen (separable) means ,, to fetch back (again)", but it is usually written in two separate words (wieder holen) like the other verbs occurring with wieder.

the coachman, ber Ruffcher | to look through or over, | to set (the sun, etc.) to converse, fich unter-halten irr.

to cross or strike through, to cancel, burchstreichen irr. ,, distinguish, unter= icheiben irr.

,, go through on over, burchgehen irr. sirr. ,, interrupt, unterbrechen

burchsehen irr. the matter, thing, bie Sache " number, figure, bie

Rahl " page, bie Seite ,, police, die Polizei to repeat, wiederholen ,, rise (the sun, etc.), *aufgehen irr.

*untergehen irr. ,, search (through), burth: fuchen " sign, to receipt, unterichreiben irr.

"think on, upon, to consider, überlegen "translate, überseten ", turn back, "umtehren ., upset, umwerfen irr.

Exercise No. 32.

- 1. Go through this exercise. I looked over the whole book. Our coachman has upset the carriage. They are turning back. He has thought upon the matter. - Do you translate your task ?- Do not interrupt me. - Did he distinguish the figures ?- Repeat, what I said. - The police are (is) searching (through) the whole house. - The sun sets at five o'clock, and the moon rises at nine o'clock.—Is this letter signed ?-With whom did you converse?-Cross the sixth word on the sixteenth page through. - Did you go over your translation ?- I considered it well .- The shopkeeper did not receipt the bill (Rechnung) .- Don't upset the lamp.—He interrupted me suddenly.—Have you looked over the newspaper?
- 2. Ift die Sonne ichon untergegangen? Mit mas für einer Dame unterhielten Sie sich? Ueberlegen Sie, was Sie thun wollen (intend). Ich rathe Ihnen, die ganze Seite durchzustreichen. Können Sie unterscheiden, was für eine Farbe der Teppich hat? Buchstabiren Sie das Wort, das Sie wiederholten. Warum sind Sie nicht früher umgekehrt? Wie viele Seiten haben Sie übersett? habe ich etwas zu unterschreiben? Ich habe bas Buch zweimal Warum hat (have) die Bolizei nicht ben Garten durchgegangen. durchsucht?

You have now three times interrupted me. Who has upset this bottle? Several figures were crossed through. Look over your exercise Which page are we to (sollen) translate? He never thought on what he spoke. When did the moon rise? He conversed with meb nearly every morninga. I cannot distinguish what bank-note Have you repeated all the rules? Please (Bitte), sign this that is. You turned back very early. Some time ago I upset all the glasses which stood on the table. Search (through) every room. have no time to go through your translation. All the stars have set. This colour looks very nice. Why have you taken off your cloak? Where did the coachman upset the carriage? It grows dark, let us turn back. Translate for (auf) the next time (Mal) page twenty-five.

- 1. Are verbs with the prefixes durch and um generally separable or inseparable?
- 2. Are verbs with prefixes \(\vec{v}\) ber and unter generally separable or inseparable?
- 3. In which verb is the prefix wieder inseparable?

Conversation.

When shall we turn back?

In a quarter of an hour.

Do you know the gentleman who is conversing with your brother?

Yes, it is Mr. H., a friend of my brother.

Who has upset the lamp?

Charles did it.

What poem have you read to (Dat.) your aunt?

It was a poem by (von) Gethe. Shall we stay a little longer?

No, I think it is better we should go home.

Let us wait till (bis) the music has finished (ceased).

No, I must go now, for my mother asked me not to stay out too long.

To what are you invited?

To 'a ball at (bei) the president's.

Why did you not offer a chair to (Dat.) the lady?

I did so (it), but she preferred to stand.

Have you translated your exercise?

Yes, [I have], the translation was very easy.

Where were you?

I took a letter to (auf) the postoffice.

Does the train to (nach) B. start

Not before three quarters of an hour.

Wann sollen wir umfehren? In einer Biertelftunde.

Rennen Gie den herrn, der fich mit Ihrem Bruder unterhält?

Ja, es ist herr H., ein Freund meines Bruders.

Wer hat die Lampe umgeworfen?

Karl that es.

Bas für ein Gedicht haben Sie Ihrer Tante vorgelesen?

Es war ein Gedicht von Göthe. Sollen wir ein wenig länger bleiben?

Mein, ich glaube es ist beffer, wenn wir nach Saufe geben. Wir wollen warten, bis die

Mufik aufgehört hat.

Mein, ich muß jest gehen, benn meine Mutter bat mich, nicht zu lange auszubleiben.

Bu was find Sie eingeladen? Bu einem Ball beim Prafidenten.

Warum boten Sie der Dame feinen Stuhl an?

Ich that es, aber sie zog vor zu stehen.

haben Sie Ihre Uebung überjest?

Ja, die Uebersetung war fehr leicht.

Wo waren Sie?

Ich habe einen Brief auf die Post getragen. Geht der Zug nach B. jest ab?

Nicht vor drei Biertelftunden.

Reading Exercise No. 32.

Der Irlander1 und die Schildfrote.2

Ein Frländer1, ber in Jamaica gewesen war, erzählte einmal in einer großen Gesellschaft3:—Bor zwei Jahren brachte man mir in Mentego Bai eines Morgens eine Schildkröte2, der ich sogleich den Kopf abhieb4. Den Ropf bewahrte⁵ ich auf, betrachtete ihn alle Tage und fand nach sechs Wochen, daß er sich noch bewegte⁶.—Die Gefellschaft³ schien ungläubig⁷, und viele Bemerkungen⁸ und Einwendungen⁹ wurden¹⁰ gemacht. Der Frländer¹ vertheidigte¹¹ sich Anfangs¹² so gut er konnte, aber man trieb13 ihn von allen Seiten14 so in15 die Enge16, daß er zulett¹⁷ unwillig¹⁸ wurde und sagte:—Aber ich sage Ihnen, meine Herren, daß ich es selbst gesehen habe. Ich werde daher demjenigen eine Rugel19 durch den Ropf jagen20, der daran zu zweifeln21 magt22.—Diese Worte hatten die ge= wünschte23 Wirkung24. Alle schwiegen, und fünf Minuten lang wurde25 fein Wort gesprochen. Dieses Schweigen26 war dem Frländer¹ noch unangenehmer²⁷, als es vorher²⁸ die Bemerkungen8 gewesen waren. Um es zu unter= brechen, wendete er sich zu seinem Nachbar29 und fagte: -Was halten30 Sie von der Sache?-Sein Nachbar29 der ein kluger³¹ Mann war, antwortete³²:—Ich werde es Ihnen sagen, aber Sie muffen mir zuvor33 eine Frage34 beantworten35.—Was wollen Sie wissen? fragte der Fr= länder1.—Würden Sie es glauben, wenn Sie es nicht felbst gesehen hätten?-Rein, gewiß36 nicht.-Danu37 muffen Sie mir erlauben38, sagte ber Andere, daß ich mir dasselbe Recht39 herausnehme40.-

¹ Irishman, 2 tortoise, 3 society, 4 to hew (or cut off), abhauen, hieb ab, abgehauen, 5 to preserve, to keep, aufbewahren, 6 to move. (sich) bewegen, 7 incredulous, 8 observations, 9 objections, 10 were 11 to defend, vertheidigen, 12 in the beginning, 13 to drive, treiben, trieb, getrieben, 14 flanks, 15—16 into straits, 17 at last, 18 irritated, 19 ball, 20 to drive (quickly), jagen, 21 to doubt, zweifeln, 22 to venture, wagen, 23 desired, 24 effect, 25 was, 26 silence, 27 more unpleasant, 28 before, 29 neighbour, 30 to think of, halten von, hielt, gehalten, 31 prudent, 32 to answer, (to give an answer), antworten, 33 at first, 34 question, 35 to answer (something), beantworten, 36 certainly, 37 then, 38 to allow erlanden, (Dat.), 39 right, 40 to arrogate to oneself, to claim for oneself, sich (Dat.) herausnehmen, nahm heraus, herausgenommen.

Thirty-third Lesson.

Dreiunddreißigste Leftion.

Classification of Verbs.

There are: I) Transitive (or Active), II) Passive, III) Reflective, IV) Intransitive (or Neuter), V) Impersonal Verbs.

I. Transitive Verbs.

Transitive verbs are those which require an object acted upon, and which have this object (noun or pronoun) in the Accusative case.

Transitive verbs form their perfect tenses with the auxiliary haben (see list of verbs page 17); as,

Ich habe einen Rod gekauft. I have bought a coat. Mein Freund hatte mich bejucht. My friend had visited me.

II. Passive Verbs.

A transitive verb becomes passive, if the subject suffers the action expressed by the past participle.

The Passive Voice is formed by using the verb werben as an auxiliary and the past participle of a transitive verb (see list of verbs p. 19).

For forming the passive voice in English the verb $to\ be$ is used as an auxiliary. Thus:

To be in its various tenses followed by a past participle is usually translated by merben, and if in English to be in addition is accompanied by being in German merben stands for both; as,

Es ift herbst, und die Trauben werden gelesen. It is autumn and the grapes are being gathered. Der Knabe wurde von seinem Lehrer getabelt. The boy was blamed by his teacher. Diese Fische sind in der Themse gefangen worden. These sishes have been caught in the Thames. Bir werden nicht gelobt werden. We shall not de praised

To be however followed by a past participle is translated by jein, when the participle expresses a state or condition of the subject, in which case it is considered an adjective.

Examples: (a) Die Thüre tit geichlossen. The door is shut (i. e. it is a shut door). (b) Die Thüre wird jeden Abend um sechs uhr geichlossen. The door is shut every evening at six o'clock (i. e. people shut the door).

(a) 3th fam zu îpāt, baš haus war verfauft. I came too late, the house was sold (i. e. the sale was over and it was a sold house). (b) Das haus murbe verfauft, als id antiam. The house was (being) sold, when I arrived (i. e. the sale was going on).

(a) Die Thüre wird geschsossen sein, wenn Sie nach Kause Tommen. The door will be shut, when you arrive at home (i. e. you will find a shut door). (b) Die Thüre wird geschsossen werden, wenn Sie ins Kaus gesen wollen. The door will be shut, when you wish to go into the house (i. e. people will shut the door).

REMARK.—The past participle expresses the passive voice if a person present at a certain time could see an action going on, which the subject is suffering (see sentences marked (b).

The past participle is merely an adjective, if a person present at a certain time, could not see an action going on, but simply see the accomplished state or condition in which the subject is (see sentences marked (a).

to alter, änbern America, Amerika the bank, die Bank ,, behaviour, das Betra-,, bell, die Cloke igen

,, bell, die Glode [gen ,, bill (of exchange), ber Wechsel [irr. ,, break out, ausbrechen to build, bauen the business, bas Geschäft to change, to give change, wechseln

" clean, reinigen " esteem, achten " fire, bas Feuer " gas, bas Gas just (Adv.), eben (gerabe) to light, anzünben ,, neglect, versäumen

the opportunity, die Gelegenheit "receipt, die Quittung to ring, läuten "weep, to cry, weinen

Exercise No. 33.

1. His father is esteemed by(*) everybody —Your room is being cleaned.—Our house was built six years agoa.—The windows were being shut (zumachen), when (als) I enteredb (see page 72) the housea. -The bill (of exchange) will be paid to-morrow. - His behaviour will not be forgotten. - I should be invited if I were here. - His business has been sold.—This opportunity has been neglected.—I have been asked (a question). - The child would have cried (went) if it had (Subi.) been beaten. - The gas is lit. - The gas is lit every (Acc.) evening at (um) seven o'clock.—The children are dressed now.—The children are just being dressed.—The post-office was shut (schliessen), and nobody was in the house -The post-office was [being] shut, just when (als) the bell struckb eight o'clocka .- I wished (wollen) to buy some presents, but all the shops were shut (schliessen). - All the shops were being shut, when (als)(**) the great fire broke out. - The receipt will be already written, when (wenn) you comeb to (auf) the banka .—The receipt will be written as soon as (sobald) you arriveb (kommen) at (auf Acc.) the banka.

2. Ich wurde in (to) die Stadt geschickt. Das Zimmer ist geändert worden. Sind Sie geschen worden? Sie würden getadelt worden sein, wenn Sie nicht gekommen wären. Auf (at) der Poste würde sein Gelda gewechselt. Ist das Feuer angezündet? Es wird eben angezündet. Wann ist Amerika entdekt (discovered) worden? Warum werden die Gloden gesäutet? Dieser Soldat ist verwundet. Von wen wurde Ihre Coussine nach Haufe begleitet? War dieses Glas school zerbrochen, als (when) Sie ins Zimmer traten? Nein, es wurde nachher (afterwards) zerbrochen.

By(*) whom has that hat been ordered (bestellen)? When was this castle built? The desk was opened (aufmachen) when (als) I saw^b it^a. My desk has been opened by(*) somebody. Has the water been fetched? I think (glauben) all the apples will be eaten. He was compelled to leave the town. When was your house let? This intelligence is invented. His behaviour is (being) praised by(*) everybody. My horses will be sold at (auf) the market. The murder was committed when (als) the sun had^b set^a. The same story was (being) related to (Dat.) us twice. When was your watch stolen? The children have been rescued.

^{(*) &}quot;To be" with a past participle accompanied by the preposition "by" and a noun or pronoun denotes always the passive voice and "by" is rendered non in German.

^(**) Mis is here a subordinative conjunction (see page 146).

- 1. With which auxiliary do transitive verbs form their perfect tenses?
- 2. How is the Passive Voice formed in German?
- How is to be in its various tenses followed by a past participle usually translated?
- 4. When to be in addition is accompanied by being, what stands for both in German?
- 5. When is to be rendered by sein?

Conversation.

Must not this rule be altered?

Yes, it must (be altered). Why is this business being sold?

The owner of it is dead.

Shall we go into the sitting-room?

Yes, as soon as (sobald) the gas is lit.

Will the fire be lit as well (auch)?

No, it is not cold.

Have my clothes (Kleider) been cleaned?

Your coat is not cleaned yet.

When was the new theatre built?

Three years ago.

I have not yet been there (dort). You should not neglect this opportunity.

Can you give me change for this

No I have not

No, I have not any change (kleines Geld) about (bei) me.

Is it time for (in die) church? Yes, the bells are just being rung.

I thought, this book had been (Perf. subj.) returned.

No, we have not finished (auslesen) it yet.

Why are these pears being thrown away?

They are all unripe.

Muß diese Regel nicht geändert werden?

Ja, [sie muß geändert werden]. Warum wird dieses Geschäft verkauft?

Der Eigenthümer davon ist todt. Sollen wir ins Wohnzimmer gehen?

Ja, fobald das Gas angezündet ift.

Wird das Feuer auch angezündet werden?

Mein, es ist nicht falt.

Sind meine Kleider gereinigt worden?

Ihr Rock ist noch nicht gereinigt.

Wann wurde das neue Theater gebaut?

Vor drei Jahren.

Ich bin noch nicht bort gewesen. Gie sollten biese Gelegenheit nicht versäumen.

Können Sie mir diesen Sovereign wechseln?

Nein, ich habe kein kleines Geld bei mir.

Ift es Beit in die Rirche?

Sa, die Glocken werden eben geläutet.

Ich glaubte, dieses Buch fei zuruckgegeben worden.

Nein, wir haben es noch nicht ausgelesen.

Warum werden diese Birnen weggeworfen?

Gie find alle unreif.

Reading Exercise No. 33.

Die richtige1 Sparfamfeit.2

Von einem überaus3 reichen Manne im schweizer4 Canton Neufchatel, der außer großen Summen, die er bei seinem Tode an milde⁶ Stiftungen⁷ vermachte⁸, seinen Kindern noch vierzig Millionen Franken⁹ hinterließ¹⁰, wird Folgendes11 erzählt:-Als12 er eines Abends in feine Wohnung kam, fand er im Vorzimmer¹³ einige Mönche¹⁴ von dem St. (Sanct) Bernhard-Aloster¹⁵, welche ihn erwarteten, um auf ihrer, zur Einsammlung¹⁶ von milden⁶ Gaben¹⁷ bestimmten¹⁸ Reise¹⁹, auch ihn um²⁰ ein Geldgesschent²¹ für ihr Kloster¹⁴ anzusprechen²². Der Herr führte²³ fie in fein Zimmer und rief24, da26 es bereits27 dunkel war, das Dienstmädchen zum Anzünden²⁸ eines Lichtes²⁹ herbei²⁵. Diese erschien³⁰ und warf, als sie die Kerze²⁹ anzündete, ein Zündhölzchen, das an den Rohlen nicht fogleich³¹ hatte brennen wollen, hinweg. Als¹² ber Herr dasselbe liegen sah, hob er es auf, und sagte in einem ftrengen³² Tone³³ zu dem Mädchen:—Wie verschwenderisch³⁴ du bift! Das andere Ende³⁵ des Hölzchens ift ja³⁶ noch brauchbar³⁷.—Man kann sich benken, daß die Mönche¹⁴, als12 fie dies hörten, nichts oder wenig von der Frei= gebigkeit³⁸ des Mannes exwarteten; aber wie sehr wurden sie überr**a**scht³⁹, al3¹² derselbe aus seinem Geldschranke⁴⁰ ein Sadchen41 mit sechshundert Franken9 holte und ihnen dasselbe überreichte⁴².—Hier ist meine Gabe¹⁷ für das Hospitz⁴³, sagte er; und als¹² er ihre Verwunderung⁴⁴ ge wahr wurde⁴⁵, fuhr⁴⁶ er fort⁴⁷:—Aha, ich verstehe, ih seid über meine Sparsamkeit² an dem Zündhölzchen er staunt⁴⁸. Aber eben durch eine solche Sparsamkeit² kann ich euch heute dieses Geld für euer Rloster14 geben.

1 proper, 2 economy, 3 exceedingly, 4 swiss, 5 besides (Dat.), 6 mild, charitable, 7 institutions, 8 to bequeath, vermachen, 9 francs, 10 to leave as an inheritance, hinterlassen, 1er hinterlasst), hinterlassen, 11 the following, 12 when, 18 anti-room, 14 monks, 15 cloister, 16 collection, 17 the gift, die Gabe, 18 destined, 19 journey, 20 for, 21 gratuity, 22 to beg of, ansprechen, (er spricht an), sprach an, angesprochen, 23 to conduct, führen, 24 & 25 to call (to a place), herbeirufen, riefherbei, herbeirufen, 26 as, 27 already, 28 kindling, 29 candle, 30 to appear, erscheinen, erschienen, 31 immediately, 32 strict, sharp, 33 voice, 34 prodigal, 35 end, 36 as you see, 37 fit for use, 38 generosity, 39 to surprise, überraschen, 40 money-chest, 41 small bag, 42 to hand over, überreichen, 43 hospice, 44 astonishment, 45 to perceive, gewahr werden-(irr.), 46 & 47 to continue, fortfahren, (er fährt fort), fuhr fort, fortgefahren, 48 as tonished.

Thirty-fourth Lesson.

Bierunddreißigste Leftion.

III. Reflective Verbs.

When the object of a verb is the same person or thing as the subject, the verb is called reflective and the object takes the form of the reflective pronoun (see reflective pronouns on page 88).

Reflective Verbs are conjugated with haben (see list of verbs page 24).

Various verbs are reflective in German and not in English where they are used without the reflective pronoun; as,

Ich erkundigte mich nach ihm. I inquired for him.

Many verbs can be used reflectively by taking the reflective pronoun; as,

Ich wasche mich. I wash myself. Er verwundete sich. He wounded

Some verbs however can be used only reflectively, as they have no meaning at all without a reflective pronoun or else have a different meaning. Such are:

fich beeilen, to make haste fich befinden, irr. to be (in health) fich beklagen über (Acc.), to complain of fich bemühen, to endeavour, to trouble fich benehmen, irr. } to behave sich empören, to revolt fich entichließen, irr. to make up one's mind fich erbarmen Genit, or über (Acc.), to have mercy on

fich erinnern Genit. or an (Acc.), to remember

fich erfälten, to catch cold

jid erfundigen (nach), to inquire (for) fich freuen (über Acc.) to be glad (of) fich fürchten (vor), to be afraid (of) fich gewöhnen an (Acc.), to accustom

oneself to

fich irren, to be mistaken

fich schämen Genit. or über (Acc.). to be ashamed of

fich feten, to sit down

fich unterhalten, to converse fich verlassen auf (Acc.), irr. to rely

(depend) on fich weigern, to refuse, to be unwilling

Reflective Verbs require the reflective pronoun in the Accusative, except the following, which require the pronoun in the Dative, viz:

fich anmaßen, to usurp fich ausbitten, to request

fich einbilden, to imagine, to fancy fich die Freiheit nehmen, irr. to take the liberty

fich getrauen, to dare

fich bornehmen, irr. to take the reso-

fich vorstellen(*), to imagine fich zuziehen, to incur

ich getraue mir, I dare ete. bu getrauft bir er getraut sich

EXAMPLE: wir getrauen uns Sie getrauen fich or ihr getraut euch fie getrauen fich

The reflective pronoun in the Dative is of course also required by those verbs used reflectively, which have their object in the Dative; as, 36 helfe bem Manne. I help the man. 36 helfe mir. I help

myself.

^(*) Sid porfiellen, to introduce oneself, has the reflective pronoun in the Accusative.

the accusation, die Anklage to defend, vertheibigen against, gegen (Acc.)

to allow, to permit, er-"be ashamed of, sich schämen über (Acc.(*) "behave, sich betragen irr.

,, complain of, sich be-klagen über (Acc.(*)

entirely, ganglich to explain, erflären

" imagine, to fancy, sich (Dat.) einbilben " make haste, sich beeilen " make up one's mind,

fich entichließen irr. mistrust, mißtrauen (Dat.)

to refuse, to be unwil-ling, sich weigern ,, rely, to depend on, irr. sich verlassen auf (Acc.(*)

(Gen.)

unjust, ungerecht the volume, ber Banb

Exercise No. 34.

1. I am washing myself,—thou warmest thyself,—he offers himself,-we rescue ourselves,-you forget yourself,-they blame themselves, -I endeavoured, -thou wast mistaken, -she remembered, -we made haste,—vou behaved (betragen),—they were ashamed,—I have procured,—thou flatteredst thyself,—I shall imagine,—thou procurest, —I allow myself,—didst thou mistrust thyself?—sit (you) down!—have they made up their mind?—we shall complain,—I introduced myself. —he has excused himself.—let us refuse (be unwilling)!—do (thou) not rely on it,—they had defended themselves,—I have hurt myself,—many revolted, -can you accustom yourself to it?

2. Ich habe mich bemüht, es ihm zu erklären. sich gegen brei Feinde vertheibigen. Ich besinde mich heute viel (far) besser als gestern. Wir müssen uns beeilen, oder wir werden zu spät kommen (be). Ich erinnere mich der Musik, sie ist von (by) Weber. Sie haben sich in diesem Manne geirrt. trugen sich die Rinder geftern Abend? Sie follten fich über Ihr Betragen schämen. Es ist mahr, Sie können (may) sich barauf Ich mißtraute mir ganglich. Ronnen Sie fich nicht ben zweiten Band bieses Buches verschaffen? Mein Bater hat sich nun entschlossen, bas Saus und ben Garten zu taufen. Du bildeft dir ein, mich gefehen zu haben.

I have defended myself against this unjust accusation. I imagined that I could (Subj.) do it. How are you to-day? I made haste to tell (Dat.) him that his ship hadb (pres. subj.) arriveda. Remember me. I thought (glaubte) he would come, but I was mistaken. not been mistaken? He allowed himself too much [liberty]. ashamed. Why do you not rely on me? You must make up your mind, or it will be too late. I have endeavoured to do it. We have made up our mind to depart. Why have the soldiers revolted? must not complain of the weather. We shall refuse to receive them. I flattered myself to be more clever than you. You have not behaved (betragen) like (wie) a gentleman. Why did you not introduce yourself to (Dat.) the lady? Remember those who do (Dat.) thee good (Gutes). You may (können) rely on me, I shall help (Dat.) you.

^(*) The prepositions über and auf after these verbs always govern the Accusative.

1. When is a verb called reflective?

2. With which auxiliary are reflective verbs conjugated?

3. Are there verbs which are reflective in German and not in English?

4. How can many verbs be used reflectively?

5. Are there verbs which can only be used reflectively?

6. Why can they not be used without reflective pronouns?

7. In what case does the reflective pronoun usually stand?

8. In what other case is the reflective pronoun required by some verbs?

After what verbs must the reflective pronoun always stand in the Dative case?

Conversation.

Is this work in several volumes? Yes, it is in three.

Can you procure me the second?

I shall endeavour to get it for

Why do you refuse to pay the

Because the shopkeeper has been mistaken.

Will you depart to-day?

I have not yet made up my mind.

We must make haste or we shan't catch our train.

What time does it start? At 10 minutes to ten.

We have no time to lose then (dann).

You ought to behave better.

I hope you will not have to complain any more of me.

Why do you mistrust yourself? I imagine that I am not enough prepared yet.
Will you not sit down?

No, thanks; I prefer not to sit.

Do you still remember the rules I explained to (Dat.) you yesterday?
Yes, quite well.

Hat dieses Werk mehrere Bände? Ja, es hat drei.

Können Sie mir den zweiten verschaffen?

Ich werde mich bemühen, ihn für Sie zu erhalten.

Warum weigern Sie sich, die Rechnung zu bezahlen?

Weil der Kaufmann sich geirrt hat.

Wollen Sie heute abreisen? Ich habe mich noch nicht entichlossen.

Wir muffen uns beeilen, ober wir werden nicht [mehr] auf

den Zug kommen. Um wie viel Uhr geht er ab? Um zehn Minuten vor zehn.

Wir haben dann keine Zeit zu berlieren.

Sie sollten sich besser betragen. Ich hoffe, Sie werden sich nicht mehr über mich zu beklagen haben.

Warum mißtrauen Sie sich? Ich bilbe mir ein, daß ich noch nicht genug vorbereitet bin.

Wollen Sie sich nicht setzen? Nein, danke; ich ziehe vor nicht

zu sigen. Erinnern Sie sich noch ber Regeln, die ich Ihnen gestern

erklärte? Ja, ganz gut.

Reading Exercise No. 34.

Der große Reffel.1

Ein Reisender2, der beinahe3 die ganze Welt4 durch= reist⁵ hatte, erzählte⁶ unter Anderem in einer Gesellsschaft⁷:—Ich weiß nicht mehr genau⁸, wo es war; aber ich glaube, es war in Persien⁹, wo ich einen Kohlkopf¹⁰ von solch fabelhafter11 Größe12 sah, daß Sie sich eine richtige13 Vorstellung14 bavon erft15 bann16 machen können, wenn ich Ihnen fage, daß ich selbst gesehen habe, wie ein Regiment Reiterei17 unter einem Blatte Schwenkungen18 machte. Dabei 19 regnete 20 es sehr stark 21; doch 22 wurde Niemand naß.—Einer von der Gesellschaft, beschloß, den Lügner²³ in seiner eigenen²⁴ Münze²⁵ zu bezahlen und sagte:—Das war freilich²⁶ ein sehr großer Kohlkopf¹⁰; boch gebe²⁷ ich zu, daß es außergewöhnliche²⁸ Sachen auf der Welt⁴ giebt²⁹. Auch ich kann von einer solchen cr= zählen. Auf meinen vielen Keisen³⁰ kam ich auch nach Japan. Dort habe ich gesehen, wie ein Kessel¹ von gleich= fall331 fabelhafter11 Größe12 auf einer großen Cbene32 angefertigt33 wurde. An demselben grbeiteten hundert Rupfer= schmiede34; sie waren jedoch35 so weit36 von einander ent= fernt37, daß keiner die Hammerschläge38 des andern hören konnte. Können Sie sich vorstellen39, wie groß dieser Ressell war?—Der Lügner23 war betroffen40 und sagte:—Das muß ein sehr großer Kessell gewesen sein; aber sagen Sie auch, wozu er gebraucht⁴¹ werden sollte.—Ich weiß das nicht recht⁴², erwiederte⁴³ der Andere; doch glaube ich, daß man den Rohlkopf10 darin kochen44 wollte, den Sie in Berfien9 gesehen haben.

1 kettle, 2 traveller, 3 nearly, 4 world, 5 to travel over, durchreisen, 6 to relate. erzühlen, 7 society, 8 exactly, 9 Persia, 10 cabbage head, 11 fabulous, 12 seize, 13 correct, 14 idea, 15 only, 16 then, 17 cavalry, 18 evolutions, 19 at the same time, 20 to rain, regnen, 21 fast, 22 yet, 23 liar, 24 own, 25 coin, 26 indeed, 27 to permit, zugeben (frr.), 28 extraordinary, 29 there are, s giebt, 30 journeys, 31 likewise, 32 plain, 33 to make, to finish, anfertigen, 34 coppersmiths, 35 however, 36 far, 37 distant, away, 38 strokes of the hammer, 39 to imagine, sich vorstellen, 40 struck, 41 to use, brauchen, 42 exactly, 43 to reply, erwiedern, 44 to cook, kochen.

Thirty-fifth Lesson.

Fünfunddreißigfte Lettion.

IV. The INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

Intransitive Verbs are those which convey a full idea without requiring an object, or of which the object is not in the Accusative case: as,

ichlafen, to sleep; geben, to walk; helfen (Dat.) to help

They cannot have a passive voice, and form their perfect tenses with the auxiliary jein (see list of verbs page 22), but very often also with haben. Viz:

All intransitive verbs signifying change of place or of condition of the subject are conjugated with jein. Such are:

anfitehen irr., to get up anfineden, to awake begegnen (Dat.X*), to meet ciren, to hasten cindidien irr., to fall asleep ertheinen irr., to appear ertrinten irr., to be drowned, to drown fahren irr., to fall filegen irr., to fall filegen irr., to fly filehen irr., to floor follow gehen irr., to walk, to gogeneien irr., to recover

geichehen irr., to happen fommen irr., to come fanden, to land laufen irr., to run reiten, to travel reiten irr., to ride schleichen irr., to sneak schwimmen irr., to sink sterben irr., to die steigen irr., to mount stürzen irr., to rush, to fall verschwinden irr., to disappear machien irr., to disappear machien irr., to disappear machien irr., to disappear

Note.—Nearly all of these verbs compounded with prefixes are conjugated with fein, when they have an intransitive meaning; as, anigefien irr., to rise (the sun etc.) afterien, to set out entgefien irr., to escape

Sigen irr., to sit; stehen irr., to stand; siegen irr., to lie; bleiben irr., to remain, to stay, are likewise conjugated with sein (the first three also sometimes with haben).

The other intransitive verbs not following the above rule, are conjugated with haben. Such are:

antmorten, to answer arbeiten, to work bluten, to bleed burden, to listen laden, to laugh feben, to live fejen irr., to read ofcijen irr., to whistle cuben, to rest icheinen irr., to shine
ichialen irr., to sleep
ichrein irr., to scream
ichweigen irr., to be silent
ingen irr., to sing
iprechen irr., to speak
nachen, to be awake
weinen, to weep, to cry
wohnen, to reside, &c. &c.

Some of these verbs may also be used transitively.

^(*) Begegnen may also be conjugated with haben and has then the object in the Accusative.

to answer, antworten ,, be awake, machen ,, be drowned, trinken, irr.
,, be wrecked, *scheitern
the boat, das Boot the disease, illness, bie Aranfheit.

far, weit to follow, *folgen (Dat.) ,, grow, *wachen, irr. ,, hasten, *eilen last, lett adi.

the evening-party, die to listen, horden Abendgesellschaft to recover (from illness), *genesen irr.
the rock, ber Felsen
to sink, *sinten, irr.
the speech, die Rede
,, storm, der Sturm

Exercise No. 35.

- 1. He has hastened home.—Has somebody been drowned?—They will not b haved arrived veta .- I should have come, if I had (Subi.) known it. -The boat has sunk. -Has your sister recovered now !- We have swum very far.—During the last storm five shipsb have beena wrecked. - Where have you been sitting that I could not see you? -How long did you stay (translate: have you been staying) vesterday at (in) the evening-party? - I shall have got up by the time (wenn) you depart. - Why have you not answered !- I have helped (Dat.) them. - They were (translate: have been) awake during the thunderstorm.—Somebody has been listening at the door.—How these trees have grown !- Have you slept well ?- Have they fallen asleep ?- Have you heard who has been singinga?—We have been standing during his speech.
- 2. Wohin (where) ist Ihr Schwager gereift? Ich bin heute Ihrem Freunde begegnet. Wir waren noch nicht weit gefahren, als (when) der Sturm anfing. Alle seine Kinder sind an (of) derselben Krankheit gestorben. Warum sind Sie mir nicht gesolgt? Die Sonne wird untergegangen sein, ehe (before) wir nach Hause kommen. Das Schiff ist an (on) einem Felsen gescheitert. Warum sind alle Leute an (to) den Fluß gesausen? In welchem Wagen sind Sie nach Hause gesahren? Sie würden früher nach Hause gekommen fein, wenn Sie nicht fo weit geritten waren.

Of (an) what disease has your sister-in-law died? My father has gone out. Your cousin has ridden to (nach) B. What have you been doing? I have been reading. The train for (nach) L. has not b startedc veta. The bird has flown over (Acc.) the house. All the sailors have been drowned. Have you been whistling? They had already arrived, when (als) we cameb to (auf) the stationa. Why have you not gone to the evening-party? These cherries have been lying under When did you awake (translate: have you awaked) this the tree. Where (wohin) has the ball fallen? I hope, you (heute) morning? will soon (bald) have recovered. I have lived several years in this We were (translate: have been) awake during the storm. have been working a very long time (sehr lange). How many boats have been wrecked? What has he answered? Have you come alone?

- 1. What intransitive verbs are conjugated with sein?
- 2. When are such verbs, compounded with prefixes, conjugated with sein?
- 3. With which auxiliary are the verbs sitzen (to sit), stehen (to stand), liegen (to lie), bleiben (to remain, to stay) conjugated?
- 4. With which auxiliary are the other intransitive verbs, which do not follow the rule mentioned, conjugated?

Conversation.

Are you still sleeping? No, I awoke an hour ago.

Why have you not got up yet?

Because it is too early[for](Dat.)

Why are so many people running to (an) the river?

A man was drowned.

Could he not swim?

He had nearly swum to (an) the shore, when (als) he suddenly sank.

Has your father not recovered yet from his illness?

No, he is still very ill.

Did you hear the storm last (heute) night?

Yes, I was not asleep before one o'clock.

Four ships are said (sollen) to have been wrecked.

Has anyone been drowned?

No, all the people have been

No, all the people have been saved.

The train for (nach) L. will have started, before (ehe) we arrive.

No, it must wait for (auf) our train.

Do you think, we shall arrive very late?

Yes, we shall be half an hour late.

Why did you stay out so long?

I had to (musste) stay rather (ziemlich) lateat (im) business.

Schlafen Sie noch?

Nein, ich bin [schon] vor einer Stunde aufgewacht.

Warum sind Sie noch nicht aufgestanden?

Weil es mir noch zu früh ift.

Warum laufen so viele Leute an den Fluß?

Ein Mann ist ertrunken. Konnte er nicht schwimmen?

Er war beinahe ans Ufer geichwommen, als er plötlich fank.

Ist Ihr Later noch nicht von seiner Krankheit genesen?

Nein, er ist noch sehr krank. Haben Sie heute Nacht den

Sturm gehört? Ja, ich bin vor ein Uhr nicht

eingeschlafen. Bier Schiffe sollen gescheitert

Bier Schiffe sollen gescheiter fein.

Ist Jemand ertrunken?

Nein, alle Leute sind gerettet worden.

Der Zug nach L. wird abgegangen sein, ehe wirankommen.

Nein, er muß auf unsern Zug warten.

Glauben Sie, wie werden sehr spät ankommen?

Ja, wir werden eine halbe Stunde Verspätung haben.

Warum find Gie fo lange ausgeblieben?

Ich mußte ziemlich lange im Geschäft bleiben.

Reading Exercise No. 35.

Die Abrichtung1 von Sunden.

Ein Kaufmann in London kam durch Zufall' in den Besitz eines Hundes, welcher früher⁴ einem Diede⁵ gehört hatte und von demselben zum Stehlen⁶ abgerichtet⁷ worden war. Ohne von der Geschicklichkeit⁸ des Hundes etwas zu ahnen⁹, kam dieser eines Tages in seines neuen Herrn Comptoir¹⁰ gelausen und legte ihm die Borderbeine¹¹ auf den Schooß¹². Der Kaufmann bemerkte, daß er ein Packet in der Schauze¹³ hielt, nahm es ihm ab und sand, daß es eine Rolle¹⁴ Geld war. Er konnte nicht begreisen, wie der Hund dazu gekommen sei; jedval¹⁵ behielt er die Rolle, schrieb den Tag, an welchem der Hund sie gebracht hatte,

auf dieselbe und legte sie bei Seite16.

In der Folge¹⁷ machte es der Hund noch verschiedene¹⁸ Male so, und sein Herr hob¹⁹ das Geld mit der nämlichen Borsicht²⁰ auf. Endlich²¹ siel ihm ein²², der Hund müsse das Geld bei einem seiner Freunde stehlen, der ebenfalls²³ ein Kaufmann war, und den er oft besuchte, wobei²⁴ er gewöhnlich den Hund mitnahm²⁵. She²⁶ er aber wieder²⁷ zu seinem Freunde gehen und ihm seinen Urgwohn²⁸ mittheilen²⁹ konnte, kam dieser selbst zu ihm und erzählte, er werde seit einiger Zeit oft bestohlen³⁰ und wisse nicht, wie es zugehe³¹, da sein Geldkasten³² undeschädigt³³ bleibe, und außer³⁴ ihm Niemand in das Zimmer komme. Der Einzige³⁵, den er im Verdacht³⁶ haben könne, sei der Hund, der dann³⁷ und wann³⁸ in seinem Hause sich aufhalte³⁹; aber es scheine ihm unglaublich⁴⁰, daß ein Hund Geld wegenehmen⁴¹ sollte.

¹ teaching, 2 chance, 3 possession, 4 formerly, 5 thief, 6 stealing, 7 to teach, to train up, abrichten, 8 ability, 9 to perceive, to anticipate, ahnen, 10 office, (Pronounce: Kon-tor,) 11 fore-feet, 12 lap, 13 snout, 14 roll, 15 however, 16 aside, 17 subsequently, 18 various, 19 to lay away (to pick up), autheben (irr.), 20 precaution, 21 finally, 22 he remembered, 23 likewise, 24 whereby, 25 to take with (one), mitnehmen (irr.), 26 before, 27 again, 28 suspicion, 29 to communicate, mitheilen, 30 to rob, bestehlen (irr.), 31 happened, 32 money-box, 33 uninjured, 34 besides, 35 only one, 36 to suspect, im Verdacht haben, 37—38 now and then, 39 to stay, sich authalten (irr), 40 incredible, 41 to take away, wegnehmen (irr.).

Thirty-sixth Lesson.

Sechsunddreißigste Leftion.

V. The IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are used only in the 3rd person singular (e3). They are conjugated with the auxiliary haben (see list of verbs page 26). Such verbs are:

Infinitive.	Present.	Infinitive.	Present.
bligen, to lighten,	es bligt	regnen, to rain,	es regnet
geben irr., to be.	es donnert es giebt, there is,	frost.	es reifr
geneu ir., to no,	there are	ichneien, to snow,	es schneit es tagt
tem, to be	es find, there are	thauen, to thaw,	es thaut
gefrieren irr, to freeze, hageln, to hail,	, es gefriert es hagelt	sheet-lightning,	es wetter= leuchtet

Remarks.

There is, there are, are translated es giebt (there was, were, es gab, etc.), when they express the indefinite existence of a following noun or pronoun(*); as,

Es giebt viele Geschichten, die nicht wahr sind. There are many stories which are not true. Es gab früher eine gewisse Sorte Fische im Meere, die jest verschwunden ist. There was formerly a certain species of fish in the sea which has now disappeared. Gegen den Tob giebt es fein Mittel. Against death there is no remedy.

There is is translated es ift, and there are, es find (there was, es war; there were, es waren, etc.), when they express the definite existence of a following noun or pronoun(*) (mostly in a small place, distinctly pointed out); as,

Es ist ein herr im Jimmer. There is a gentleman in the room. Es waren Bücher auf dem Tische. There were books on the table. Es waren viele Kinder im Garten. There were many children in the garden.

Note.—Es (there) in es ift, es war, etc. (but not in es giebt, etc.) must be omitted, if it cannot commence the sentence in German and should be placed after the verb (i.e. in the interrogative and inverted form); as,

War ein herr im Zimmer? Was there a gentleman in the room? Auf diesem Tische sind teine Bücher. On this table there are no books.

Many other verbs may be used impersonally, sometimes governing a case; as,

- es icheint, it seems, it appears
- es betrifft, it concerns es genügt, it suffices es bedarf, it needs
- es ift (thut) mir leid, I am sorry
- es freut mich. I am glad
- es friert mid, (**) I am (feel) cold
- es ift mir warm, (**) I am (feel) warm
- es ift mir wohl, I feel well es gelingt mir, I succeed es perfeht lid, it is a matter of course
 - es fommt mir vor, it seems to me es ist mir recht, I agree to it
 - wie geht es Ihnen? how do you do,
 - how are you? es geht mir gut, I am well
- (*) E3 giebt, e3 gab, etc. require the following noun or pronoun in the Accusative, whilst es ift, es finb, etc. require it in the Nominative.

^(**) Instead of es friert mich also ich habe falt, ich friere, and instead of es ift mir warm also ich habe warm may be used, but the above forms are preferred.

mich(*)

I am glad, es freut mich

I am sorry, es ist mir leib I am warm, es ift mir I am well, es(*) geht (irr.) mir gut I feel well, es ift mir wohl

fast (of raining, etc.), start to freeze, gestieren (imp. " happen, *geschehen irr. how do you do \ wie geht how are you es Ihnen?

1 am cold, es friert (irr.) I succeed, es (*) gelingt to lighten. blighen (imp.) the lightning, ber Bligt am glad, es freut mich close (of air), schwill the rain, ber Regen , snow, idineten (imp.)
,, snow, idineten (imp.)
,, thaw, thanen (imp.)
the thunder, ber Donner
to thunder, donnern

Exercise No. 36.

- 1. It is snowing.—Did it lighten?—No, it thundered only.—Will it freeze to-night (heute Nacht)?-It has been raining.-There was no family, which was as (so) happy as (als) yours.—There is nothing more detestable (nichts Verächtlicheres) than avarice.—There are good and bad men (Menschen).—There will never again (nie wieder) be suchb aa poet.—There is a bird in the room.—There are some girls in your house.—There was nobody in (auf) the whole street. many soldiers in the fortress.—There has been a large fire in the town. -Is there a book on the table?-It is too warm.-What has happened? -I am sorry. -Are you glad ?-It is hot. -It snows very fast. -Were you warm?-How do you do?-I am well.-He does not feel well.-I shall succeed .- To-morrow it will thaw .- I was cold .- It is too early. -It has grown (werden) dark. -Did it snow ?-It lightens. -It is close. -Were you sorry ?-It happened.-We have been glad.-Was it raining fast?-It has been thundering.-You will be cold.-They succeeded.
 - 2. Glauben Sie, daß es morgen ichneien wird? Nein, es ist zu warm. Hat es geblist? Ja, ich habe den Blit gesehen. Es würde mich freuen, wenn der Regen aushörte (would cease). Es regnet; bitte (please), geben Sie mir einen Regenschirm. Es giebt nur einen Shakespeare. Es donnert; können Sie den Don-Es ist sehr schwül in diesem Zimmer. ner hören? Sie Ihren Mantel an, ober es wird Sie frieren. Ich wollte das Pferd taufen, aber es gelang mir nicht.

It has been thundering and lightening the whole night. Yesterday it rained; to-day it snows. It has been freezing to-night (heute Nacht). I am glad to see you. It is very close; we shall have (bekommen) a thunderstorm. Are you warm? We must make haste, it will rain very fast. There were four cigars on the table. It happened, when (als) I wasb illa. I am sorry to hear it. It will thaw this (heute) afternoon. There is no wine in the bottle. Do you feel well now? There are people, who talkb (sprechen) mucha and thinkb littlea.

^(*) Such impersonal verbs have es for the subject in German and their object, being the same person as the subject in English, must stand either in the Accusative or Dative case; as, thou wast cold, es fror bidj; he has been cold, es hat ihn gefrorer; the children were warm, es war ben Kinbern warm; are you warm? ift es Jhnen warm?

1. In which person only are Impersonal verbs used?

2. With which auxiliary are they conjugated?

3. When are there is, there are etc. translated by es giebt etc!

4. When is there is translated by es ist and there are by es sind etc.?

5. When is es (there) in es ist, es war etc. to be omitted?

Conversation.

Wie geht es Ihnen?

How do you do? Thanks, I am well; and how are you to-day? I don't feel quite well. I am sorry for it. Did it rain last (heute) night? No, it has been freezing and snowing. It is very close to-day. Yes, I think we shall have (bekommen) a thunder-storm. It just commences to lighten. And now it is thundering. How is the weather to-day? It is raining very fast. Are you obliged to go out? No, I shall stay at home. Do you feel cold? No, I am warm. Do you think you can let your house? I think I shall succeed. What is the news? There is no news. What is the matter? Nothing is the matter. What has happened? Somebody has been drowned. Who was it? I don't know. Is there any ink in the inkstand? Yes, there is some (in it). Is it time to go? No, it is still too early. I am glad to see you. So am I. Can you spare me a little time to accompany me? No, I am very sorry; I must go home now.

Danke, es geht mir gut; und wie geht es Ihnen heute? Es ist mir nicht gang wohl. Das ift mir leid. Hat es heute Nacht gereanet? Nein, es hat gefroren und geichneit. Es ist heute sehr schwül. Ja, ich glaube, wir werden ein Gewitter bekommen. Es fängt eben an zu bligen. Und jest donnert es. Bas für Wetter haben wir heute ? Es regnet jehr stark. Müffen Sie ausgehen? Rein, ich werde zu hause bleiben Friert es Gie? Nein, es ist mir warm. Glauben Gie, Gie fonnen Haus vermiethen? Ich glaube, es wird mir gelin Was giebt es Neues? Es giebt nichts Neues. Was giebt es? Es giebt nichts. Was ist geschehen? Remand ist ertrunken. Wer war es? Ich weiß [es] nicht. Ist Tinte im Tintenfaß? Ja, es ist darin. Ist es Zeit zu gehen? Rein, es ift noch zu früh. Es freut mich, Sie zu sehen. Mich ebenfalls. Haben Sie ein wenig Zeit, mich zu begleiten! Nein, es ift mir fehr leid; ich muß jest nach Hause gehen.

Reading Exercise No. 36.

Die Abrichtung von Hunden. (Schluß.)

—Itun¹, nun,—sagte der Andere,—man kann nicht wissen: mancher Hund ist sehr geschickt. Geben Sis doch² einmal genauer Acht³, wenn mein Hund wieder bei Ihnen ist!—Weiter⁴ sagte er zu seinem Freunde jetzt nichts. Der Hund sand⁵ sich bald wieder bei dem Kausmann

ein, wartete vor der Thure des Comptoirs bis diese aufging6 und legte sich bann, wie er immer zu thun pflegte7, an den Kamin8. Der Raufmann öffnete bald nachher9 seinen Geldkasten10, nahm11 einige Rollen heraus und legte sie auf einen Tisch; dann setzte er sich wieder an seinen Schreibtisch12 und arbeitete, boch13 fo, daß er in einem vor ihm hangenden14 Spiegel genau15 merkte16, was der Sund vornahm17 .- Dieser lag noch eine Beile18 ruhig an dem Ramin8; dann aber schlich er sich ganz leife19 nach dem Tische hin, nahm20 eine Rolle weg und legte sich ganz still²¹ wieder an seinen vorigen²² Plat²³. Der Mann stellte²⁴ sich, als hätte er nichts bemerkt; er pacte²⁵ die übrigen26 Rollen wieder in die Kiste27 und verschloß28 fie.—Nicht lange nachher9 kam29 ber Hund von dem Kamin8 hervor, ging an die Zimmerthüre und gab durch Bellen30 und Kragen31 zu verstehen, daß er hinau332 wolle. So= wie33 nun die Thure aufgemacht wurde, lief er nach Saufe und brachte die Rolle feinem Berrn.

Als³⁴ die beiden Freunde nun wieder mit einander sprachen, bekam³⁵ der Bestohlene³⁶ natürlich³⁷ sein Geld zurück.

1 why, 2 just, 3 to pay attention, Acht geben, 4 more, 5 to appear, sich einfinden (irr.), 6 opened, 7 to use, pflegen, 8 chimney, 9 afterwards, 10 money-box, 11 to take out, herausnehmen (irr.), 12 writing-desk, 13 yet, 14 hanging, 15 exactly, 16 to note, merken, 17 to undertake, vornehmen (irr.), 18 while, 19 softly, 20 to take away, wegnehmen (irr.), 21 calmly, 22 previous, 23 place, 24 to make as if, sich stellen als (ob), 25 to pack, packen, 26 left, 27 box, 28 to lock, verschliessen (irr.), 29 to come forward, hervorkommen (irr.), 30 barking, 31 scratching, 32 to go out, 33 as soon as, 34 when, 35 to receive back, zurückbekommen (irr.), 36 robbed one, 37 of course.

Thirty-seventh Lesson A. Siebenunddreifigite Lektion.

THE ADVERBS.

The following are lists for reference containing the greater part of German Adverbs and Adverbial expressions.

Adverbs of Place.

"wo? where? below below below below; whither, where below below; whither, where below; becauf up, upstairs because herüber, over (there). moher? whence, where hinunter) (...from)? (hinat) (down. .. hier, here hecunter downstairs hierher, hither, here (herab) oba, bort there, yonder the before, in born. (bajelbit) front thither, there "hinten, behind bahin · dorthin] (...to) aufwärts, upwards abwärts, downwards baher thence, from · borther there bormarts, forwards "barin, therein, in there rudwarts, backwards "außen, outside auswärts, outwards braußen, out (there), out rechts, to the right, on the nirgends, nowhere right (hand side) of doors hinaus outside, out links, to the left, on the umber, around, about left (hand side) "innen, within, inside

unten, below, downstairs gegenüber, opposite

geradeaus, straight on auf dieser Seite, diesseits, unterwegs, on the way on this side auf der andern Seite, jen- .. ju Saufe at home feits, on the other side baheim brüben, on that side

across baneben, close by (it), near by (it) nebenan, next door "andersmo, elsewhere. somewhere else anderswoher (or hin), from (or to) elsewhere "irgendmo, somewhere. anywhere irgendwoher (or hin), from

(or to) somewhere überall, everywhere ringsum (ber), all round rund herum, round about 'nach Sause, heim, home etc.

immer (allezeit), always

Adverbs of Time.

häufig, frequently wann? when? heute, to-day gestern, yesterday morgen, to-morrow übermorgen, the day after to-morrow porgeftern, the day before bamais, at that time, then yesterday ffündlich, hourly taglich, daily möchentlich, weekly monatlid, monthly jährlich, yearly jest, nun, now eben, gerade, just eben jett, just now gegenwärtig, at present augenblidlich, instantly ploglich, suddenly gleich, presently jogleich, sofort, directly, unlängst immediately by degrees, gradually oft (oftmals), often selten, seldom

"brinnen, within (there) · hinein, in (there)

"oben, above, upstairs [broben, (there) above]

· herein, in (here)

meistens, mostly bald, soon manchmal (zuweilen, bismeilen), sometimes bann, then bann und wann, now and then früher (fonit, ehedem, ehemals, pormals), formerly nachher Lafterwards, (hernach) after borher (zuvor), before einst (einstmals), once einmal, once upon a time, one day neulich, the other day füralich, lately, of late bor Rurzem) a little while ago, not long ago the future idon (bereita), already,

auf (or für) immer, for ever jemals, je, ever (before) nie (niemals) never wieder, again noch, still noth einmal, once again, once more noch nicht,(*) not yet, not ...yet noth nie, never before, never yet zuerst, first, at first anfangs, at firet zulett, last, at last enblich, at last, at length bis jest, till now, as yet bisher, hitherto, till now feither, since that time erft, only, not ... till einstweilen (unterbeffen), meanwhile nach und nach, allmälig, funftig (in Butunft), for lang(e), long, a long time gewöhnlich, usually, generally etc. etc.

ever

^{(*) &}quot;yet" occurring after "not" is translated noth nicht, and these can never be separated.

Adverbial Expressions of Time.

bes Morgens, Morgens, in the morn-

heute früh, heute Morgen, this(*) morn-

morgen früh, to-morrow morning gestern fruh, yesterday in the morning bes Bormittags, Bormittags, in the forenoon

heute Bormittag, this day before noon Mittags, um Mittag, at noon heute Mittag, to-day at noon

bes Nachmittags, Nachmittags, in the afternoon

heute Nachmittag, this(*) afternoon bes Abends, Abends, in the evening heute Abend, this(*) evening, to-night gestern Abend, yesterday evening, last night

porgestern Abend, the night before vesterday

des Nachts, Nachts, bei Nacht, by night heute Nacht, to night, last night (the whole night)

heut zu Tage, nowadays bei Tag, am Tag, by day eines Tages, one day eines Abends, one evening, etc. im Jahre, in the year

im Sommer, in summer, etc. im Januar, in January, etc. am ersten Januar, on the first of

January, etc. am Sonntag, on Sunday, etc. Sonntage, on Sundays, etc. um ein Uhr, at one o'clock, etc. gegen ein Uhr, about one o'clock, etc. bis ein Uhr, by one o'clock, etc. vor acht Tagen, a week ago por vierzehn Tagen, a fortnight ago in acht Tagen, in a week, etc. heute über acht Tage, this day week

(hence), etc. heute vor acht Tagen, this day week (back), etc.

nächster Tage, one of these days erst morgen, not till to-morrow, etc. vier Tage lang, for four days, etc. jeit brei Tagen (Wochen, etc.), these

three days (weeks, etc.) jeben Tag every day

ben ganzen Tag, all day Tag für Tag, day by day, etc. zweimal bes Tages (bie Woche, bes

Monats, bes Jahres), twice a day, (a week, a month, a year)

aur rechten Beit } in time, betimes (bei Beiten) sum ersten Mal (zum erstenmal), for

the first time, etc. aufs nächste Mal, for the next time zum letten Mal, for the last time gur Beit, in the time bis jest noch nicht, not as yet

auf einige Beit, for a while eine Beit lang, for a time; etc. etc.

3. Adverbs of Quality and Manner.

noch mehr,

wie? how? ungefähr, about wieviel? how much? noch, warum? why? weswegen } wherefore ? zu, too faum, scarcely, hardly siemlich, tolerably, pretty, rather vielmehr, eher, rather beinahe | nearly, almost (fast) jusammen } together allein, alone auseinander, asunder, apart fonft, else onit etwas, anything else fonft nichts, nothing else fo, ebenfo, so, as, thus genug, enough, sufficiently allerdings, certainly, inhinlanglich, sufficiently nur (blos), only, but

more, any more anders, otherwise sehr (recht), very, much bei weitem (um viel), by far ungern, unwillingly ganz, quite ganglid, wholly, entirely befonders, especially zufällig, by chance umfout, for nothing, gratis in ber That really, bergebeng, pergebild in ber That vergebens, vergeblich, um- ja (ja boch, boch), yes fonft, in vain schwerlich, hardly gerabe (eben), precisely, just ebenfalls } likewise jebenfalls, at all events theilweise, partly deed

solutely, by all means some burchaus nicht, feineswegs, by no means gern (gerne), willingly gewiß, surely, certainly sicherlich to be sure natürlich, of course in deed ia wohl, O yes, certainly nein, no nicht, not überhaupt, at all gar nicht, not at all fogar, felbst, even nicht einmal, not even im Gegentheil, on the contrary im Allgemeinen, in general

etc.

burchaus, throughout, ab-

^{(*) &}quot;This" standing with nouns expressing day-time (morning, afternoon, etc.) is usually translated heute; but diesen (Acc.) also may be used.

Thirty-seventh Lesson B. Siebenunddreißigste Lettion.

Remarks on the Adverbs.

There are three principal kinds of adverbs; viz: 1) Adverbs of Place, 2) Adverbs of Time, 3) Adverbs of Quality and Manner (see pages 170 & 171).

Adverbs of Manner consist of Adverbs of manner, quantity, affirmation, negation and doubt. For Adverbs of Quality see next lesson.

OBSERVATIONS.—Many adverbs of place if used with a verb indicating direction or movement towards or from a place must be accompanied by hin and her(*) (marked in our list with a :); whilst, when no such direction or movement is indicated, the ordinary or another form without hin and her must be used (marked in our list with ''); as,

Bohin gehen Sie? Where do you go (to)? Boher fommen Sie?

Where do you come (from)? Bo find Sie? Where are you?

Note.—The adverbs commencing with him and her like (himaus, heraus, etc.) are always used as prefixes of separable verbs.

The adverb together is translated beijammen when the verb denotes absolute rest; as,-beisammen siten, to sit together

Otherwise together is rendered zusammen; as,

Wir gingen zusammen nach Saufe. We went home together.

Only is translated erft, if denoting time; otherwise nur (or blos); as,—Ich kann erst in einer Stunde kommen. 1 can only come in an hour. Have sou only one horse?

Just is translated eben (or gerade) if an adverb, and gerecht if

an adjective (i.e. if qualifying a noun or pronoun); as, Er ist eben gekommen. He has just come. Er ist gerecht. He is just.

At all (überhaupt) if standing with negations is translated gar, which always precedes the negation; as,

gar nicht, not at all gar nichts, nothing at all gar keiner, none at all gar kein Brod, no bread at all gar Niemand, nobody at all gar nie, never at all, etc.

On the Position of Adverbs in a Sentence.

Adverbs usually occupy the same place as in English with the following principal exceptions:

Adverbs can never be placed between the subject and the Verb; as,—Ich schrieb nie an ihn. I never wrote to him. Wir konnten kaum bas Schiff sehen. We hardly could see the ship.

Adverbs of place always stand last in a sentence; as,

36 ging gestern mit 3hrem Bruber zusällig borthin. I went there by chance yesterday with your brother.

But if there be a past participle or another part of the verb, which must be at the end of the sentence, the adverb precedes such verb; as, Sind Sie gestern auch bort gewesen? Have you been there yesterday as welli For the place of Adverbs of time see pages 80 and 88.

Adverbial expressions are generally preceded by the true adverbs of the same kind; as,

Er tam gestern zum ersten Dlas. He came for the first time yesterday

^(*) The use of hin and her is explained on page 142.

about, ungefähr (Adv.)
again, wieder
at all, iberhaupt
at all events, jedenfalls
at present, gegenwärtig
above, upstairs, oben
below, downstairs, unten
first (adv.), at first, guerft
last (adv.), at last, gulegt
long, a long time, lange
not at all, gar nicht

nothing at all, gar nichts of course, natürfich on the way, unterwegs perhaps, vielleicht presently, gleich pretty (adv.), tolerably, rather, ziemlich scarcely, hardly, faum sometimes, manchmat soon, balb

straight on, geradeaus surely, certainly, gewiß the other day, neulich there, yonder, da, bort together, zusammen, beisammen

to the right, on the right (handside), rechts to the left, on the left (handside), lints

Exercise No. 37.

- 1. Where shall (sollen) we go (to) to-morrow?—Where do you come from?—Come here.—Your pencil is there.—Look there.—Do you come thence (s. p. 170)?—Is your brother upstairs? No, he is downstairs.—Go upstairs.—Go downstairs.—Come upstairs.—Come downstairs.—Go to the right.—Go to the left.—Is the church on the right handside? No, it is on the left.—Go straight on.—Let us walk together.—I saw him on the way.—They have no time at present.—I shall be there presently.—He will soon be here.—Sometimes I thought (glauben) it.—Who came first?—I came last—I know your father pretty well.—He would (wollen) scarcely believe it.—Can you write to (an Acc.) me in about a month ['s time]? Perhaps Ib cana (*) do it. At all events don't forget it. Certainly not. You should of course answer my (auf meinen) letter.—Has your friend been at (im) business at all?—This workman is not at all clever. They stood together a long time.
- 2. Können Sie mir den nächsten Weg auf (to) den Bahnhof zeigen? Gehen (take) Sie die erste Straße rechts und (gehen Sie) dann (then) geradeaus. Vitten Sie Jhren Großvater hierher zu kommen. Wir saßen noch lange beisammen. Es ist beinahe sechs Uhr; wir müssen uns beeilen, wenn wir zuerst dort sein wollen. Es ist mir heute gar nicht wohl. Ich werde vielleicht in einer Stunde zu Hauf sein. Ist Jemand oben? Gegenwärtig sind die Nächte kühler. Warum kommen (are) Sie immer so spät? Weil ich so lange (late) im (at) Geschäft bleiben muß.

At last he came himself. We were not at all polite. Your cousin has not come here yet (see Note (*) on page 170). The music will commence presently. I seldom conversed with her. At six o'clock we could see scarcely anything. We went together yesterday to my uncle(s). It is already evening. Of course I^b shalla (*) see you again. It will soon strike eight. He said nothing at all. At all events you willa (*) find (treffen) me at home to-morrow. He never wrote to (an Acc.) me. Who is going there? I did not meet (begegnen) anybody at all on the way. We were not long together. I had sometimes no money at all.

^(*) If the subject does not commence the sentence, it is placed after its verb or auxiliary.

What place do adverbs usually occupy?

2. Can adverbs be placed between the Subject and the Verbin German?

3. Where are adverbs of place put?

4. But if there be a past participle or another part of the verb which must be at the end of the sentence, where is the adverb then placed?

5. Where are adverbs of time placed ?

6. If there be a personal pronoun without a preposition in German, where is the adverb of time then placed?

7. If there is an adverbial expression and a true adverb of the same kind, what order has to be observed?

Conversation.

Where shall we go to-day? Let us go to (in) the theatre. Have you often been there (already)?

Yes, I go there twice a week.

Did you ask Mr. H. to come here?

Yes, he will be here presently. How far is it to (nach) (the) . . . street?

About half an hour's walk.
Which way must I take (go)?
Go straight on and then (dann
[take] the second street on
the left.

Did you come first? No, it was not I, for (denn) I

came last.
When will you come?

Perhaps at half past six; but at all events I shall be here at seven.

Will your brother come as well (auch)?

Certainly, he will [come].
What do you know of your friend, Mr. N.?

I saw him the other day; he is still in B.

Why will you depart so suddenly?

I am expected at home to-morrow afternoon.

Wohin sollen wir heute gehen! Wir wollen ins Theater gehen. Sind Sie schon oft da (or dort) gewesen?

Ja, ich gehe zweimal die Woche dahin (or dorthin).

Baten Sie Herrn H. hierher zu kommen?

Ja, er wird gleich hier sein. Wie weit ist es nach der . . .

Straße? Ungefähr eine halbe Stunde.

Welchen Weg muß ich gehen? Gehen Sie gerade aus und dann die zweite Straße links.

Kamen Sie zuerst?

Nein, ich war es nicht, denn ich kam zulett.

Wann werden Sie kommen? Bielleicht um halb sieben; aber jedenfalls werde ich um sieben hier sein.

Wird Ihr Bruder auch kommen?

Gewiß [wird er kommen]. Was wissen Sie von Ihrem Freunde, Herrn N.?

Ich sah ihn neulich; er ist noch in B.

Warum wollen Sie so plötslich abreisen?

Ich werde morgen Nachmittag zu Hause erwartet.

Reading Exercise No. 37.

Raifer Joseph II.

Gine arme Wittwe1 in Wien2 wurde fehr frant und schickte ihren kleinen Sohn nach einem Arzte. Der Rnabe lief zu verschiedenen3 Aerzten; aber jeder wollte erst4 einen Gulben⁵ haben, ehe⁶ er kommen könne. Der arme Kleine,⁷ der nichts als⁸ Thränen⁹ hatte, wollte traurig¹⁰ wieder nach Hause gehen, als¹¹ er unterwegs einem freundlich¹² aussehenden13 Herrn begegnete. In seiner Noth14 sagte er zu ihm:- Gnädiger Herr15, seien Sie fo barmberzig16 und schenken Sie mir einen Gulben.5 — Dieser fragte ihn :-Thut's benn¹⁷ nicht auch weniger?- Nein, antwortete ber Rnabe und gab18 ihm die Urfache19 an.—Nun20, wenn das so ift, fagte ber Berr, so will ich bir ben Gulbens geben: aber sage mir erst,4 wo beine Mutter wohnt.—Der Knabe theilte21 ihm die Adresse mit, erhielt das Geld und lief dann²² rasch²³ zum nächsten Arzte, während²⁴ der gutherzige²⁵ Mann zur franken Wittwel eilte. Auf seine Frage26, was ihr fehle27, erzählte ihm die Frau, welche ihn für einen Arat hielt28, von ihrer Krankheit und Armuth29. Hierauf verschrieb³⁰ er ihr eine Arzn**ei**³¹, welche sie holen lassen sollte. Kaum war er einige Minuten fort³², als¹¹ der Knabe mit dem wirklichen33 Arzte kam. Als11 er hörte, daß schon ein Arzt da gewesen sei und etwas verschrieben30 habe, las er das Recept34 und rief35 dann22 überrascht36 aus: — Mun²⁰, der kann freilich³⁷ bessere Recepte³⁴ schreiben als ich; er hat Euch fünfzig Dukaten38 beim kaiserlichen39 Bahlamt40 angewiesen41 und den Namen42 Joseph darunter geschrieben.-Bist Ihr jest, wer es war?-

1 widow, 2 Vienna, 3 various, 4 first, 5 florin, 6 before, 7 little boy, 8 but, 9 tears, 10 sorrowfully, 11 when, 12 friendly, 13 looking, 14 distress, 15 my lord, 16 merciful, 17 then, 18 to mention, angeben (irr.), 19 cause, 20 well, 21 to inform of, mittheilen, 22 then, 23 quickly, 24 whilst, 25 good-hearted, 26 question, 27 to ail, fehlen (Dat.), 18 to take for, halten (irr.) für, 29 poverty, 30 to prescribe, verschreiben (irr.), 31 medecine, 32 away, 33 real, 34 the receipt, prescription, das Recept, 35 to exclaim, ausrufen (irr.), 36 surprised, 37 to be sure, 38 ducats, 39 imperial, 40 treasury, 41 to assign, auweisen (irr.), 42 name.

Thirty-eighth Lesson.

Achtunddreißigste Lektion.

Remarks on the Adverbs (concluded).

Adverbs are indeclinable.

Most qualifying Adjectives can be used as adverbs without al-

tering their form, as,

Dieles Buch ift schlecht. This book is bad (Adj.). Lieles Buch ift schlecht gebunden. This book is bound badly (Adv.) Mein Meijer ift nicht gut. My knife is not good (Adj.). Wein Weijer ift nicht gut geschliffen. My knife is not well (Adv.) sharpened.

The comparative and superlative of Adverbs are formed like those of Adjectives; but in the superlative the one form with am must be always used (see page 76); as,

schliecht, bald schlechter, worse am schliechtessen, (the) worst warmly wärmer, more warmly am wärmsten, (the) most warmly

The following Adverbs form their degrees thus:

bald, soon früher (eher), sooner am früheften (am eheften), (the) gern(e), willingly, gladly lieber, better am liebsten, best soonest gut (wohl), well bester am besten, (the) best

Notes. 1.—There is another form, the absolute superlative, which expresses a very high degree without comparison.—It is formed from qualifying Adverbs by putting aufs (auf das) before the Adverb and adding ste (este) to the Adverb; or simply by adding st (est) without using aufs; as,

3d wurde aufs freundlichste empfangen or ich wurde freundlichste empfangen. I was most kindly received.

2.—A few adverbs form this superlative by adding (e)stens; thus:

wenigstens, at least the frühestens, at the earliest the street spätestens, at the latest the latest Also: ergebenst, most humbly

Observation.—Gern(e), lieber, am liebsten are generally used as the translation of the English to like, to like better, to like best, in the following manner:

Ich esse gern(e) Aepfel. I like to eat apples. Ich trinke gern(e) Bein. I like to drink wine. Ich spiele lieber. I like better to play. Ich würde (or möchte) am liebsten fingen. I should like best to sing.

When in English the second verb is only understood, in German it must be used; as,

Số chiếc gern(c) Fleifch. I like(*) meat (to eat). Số trinte fehr gern(c) Bier. I like beer very much (**) (to drink). Số gehe gern(c) inš Theater. I like the theatre (to go to the theatre). Số hộre nicht fehr gern(c) Mujit. I don't like music much (**) (to hear).

Gern(e) etc. is also used in the translation of to be fond of; like:

Haben Sie ihn gern(e)? Are you fond of him? Ich tanze lieber I am more fond of dancing.

^{(*) &}quot;To like" referring to taste may also be rendered by mögen; as, 3th mag Fleifth. Mögen Sie lieber Wein? etc.

(**) "Much" or "very much" in such cases is translated febt.

beautiful, ídiðn the birthday, ber Weburts. correct, richtig distinct, beutlich loud, aloud, laut to play, spielen to take a walk. *ibasieren gehen irr.
in the morning, Morgens this morning, heute früh

gen früh yesterday in the morning, geftern früh in the forenoon, Bormitat noon, Mittags to-day at noon, heute Mittag in the afternoon, Nach: mittaa3

to-morrow morning, more, in the evening, Abends this evening, to-night, heute Abend yesterday evening, last night, geftern Abend a week ago, bor 8 Tagen ic. in a week, in 8 Tagen ic. this day week (hence), heute über 8 Tage ic. this day week (back), heute bor 8 Tagen 2c. a fortnight, 14 Tage

Exercise No. 38.

- 1. This bird sings (pfeifen) beautifully.—My sister sang more beautifully than yours. - Your cousin (f.) sang most beautifully. - Which boy works must industriously?—I spoke to (mit) himb very politelya. -He read louder than you.-You ought to write more distinctly.-He pronounced the word the most correctly.-You did your work as badly as your brother.-Why have they not paid sooner ?-I shall be here soonest. -Do you like wine? No. I like beer better than wine. -My brother likes wine best.-We do not like to sing. -I should like best to read.—He never liked the theatre.—Do you like cherries? Yes, I like them very much.—Is your sister fond of you?—Children are very fond of playing.
- 2. Wo waren Sie heute früh? Ich gehe gewöhnlich Vormittags in die (to) Stadt. Gestern Abend war ich im (at the) Concert, und heute Abend werde ich ins (to the) Theater gehen. Gehen. Sie heute Nachmittag spazieren. Herr X. ist nur Mittags zu Hause. Könnte ich ihn nicht morgen früh sprechen (see)? Das Wetter war vor 8 Tagen schöner als heute. Heute über 14 Tage werde ich nach (for) L. abreisen. Heute über 3 Wochen ist mein Geburtstag. Der Briefträger tommt immer Morgens und Abends. Glauben Sie, daß das Schiff in 14 Tagen hier sein werde?

What have you been doing the whole week? In the morning we staved at home, and in the afternoon we took a walk. Do you like walking (spazieren gehen)? This day week I was still very ill. What have you to do this afternoon? How long did your sister stay at (auf) the ball last night? The birthday of my mother is this day fortnight. Read aloud and distinctly. Do you think (glauben), your work will (Subj.) be ready in a week? Yes, this day week I shall have finished (done) it. We expected you yesterday in the morning. Send (schicken) (Dat.) me the parcel this morning. I shall be at home to-day at noon. We like music very much (to hear). The name was not written correctly. This day fortnight I was still in Paris. What shall (sollen) we do to-night?

- 1. How can most qualifying adjectives be used as adverbs?
- 2. How are the comparative and superlative of adverbs formed!
- 3. What adverbs form their degrees irregularly?
- 4. When is the absolute superlative used?
- 5. How is the absolute superlative formed?
- 6. How is this superlative formed by a few adverbs!
- 7. When are gern(e), lieber, am liebsten generally used!
- 8. When the second verb in English is only understood, must it be expressed in German?
- 9. In translation of what expression can gern(e), etc. also be used?

Conversation.

Do you like cigars?

Yes, I like them very much.

Does your sister like dancing? Yes, she likes dancing and sing-

ing.

What do you like best, tea, coffee or wine?

I like tea better than coffee or wine.

Where is your father? I should like to see him?

He will come home this even-

He will come home this evening.

Do you like roses?

Yes, I am very fond of flowers. Should you like to go to (in) the theatre?

Yes, if we can go together.

Which would you like better, to stay at home or to go out? I should rather go out.

When did you write to (an Acc.) your friend (f.)?

I wrote to her a week ago.

Has she (already) answered (auf Acc.) your letter?

No, not yet; I do not think that she will answer before a fortnight. Mauchen Sie gern(e) Cigarren? Ja, [ich rauche sie] sehr gern(e). Tanzt Ihre Schwester gern(e)? Ja, sie tanzt und singt gern(e).

Was trinken Sie am liebsten, Thee, Kaffee oder Wein?

Ich trinke Thee lieber als Kaffee oder Wein.

Wo ist Ihr Vater? Ich möchte ihn gern(e) sprechen.

Er wird heute Abend nach Hause kommen.

Haben Sie Rosen gern(e)?

Ja, ich habe Blumen sehr gern(e). Würden (or möchten) Sie gern(e) ins Theater gehen?

Ja, wenn wir zusammen gehen können.

Was würden Sie lieber thun, zu Haufe bleiben, oder ausgehen? Ich würde (or möchte) lieber

ausgehen.

Wann schrieben Sie an Ihre Freundin!

Ich schrieb vor 8 Tagen an sie. Hat sie schon auf Ihren Brief geantwortet?

Nein, noch nicht; ich glaube nicht, daß sie vor 14 Tagen antworten wird

Reading Exercise No. 38.

Gin fluger! Sund.

Gin Berr in Brighton hatte einen Sund, ber jeden Morgen mit einem Benny im Maul2 zum Fleischer lief und sich felbst sein Frühstucks taufte. Gines Morgens fand er den Laden des Fleischers, bei dem er gewöhnlich sein Fleisch holte, geschlossen. Da4 er Hunger⁵ hatte, wollte er nicht warten, bis⁶ der Laden aufgemacht wurde, und lief daher? zu einem andern Fleischer, der nicht weit8 davon wohnte. Bei feiner Ankunft9 leate er den Benny auf den Block und beroch10 nach11 seiner Gewohnheit12 die Waare¹³ des Fleischers. Dieser machte mit dem neuen Runden wenig Umstände14, nahm ben Benny und jagte15 den hund mit einem Stocke16 aus dem Laden. Gine folche Ungerechtigfeit17 mußte dem Thiere fehr mißfallen18; allein19 es konnte nichts machen und blieb einen Tag ohne Früh= stück.3 Am andern Morgen, als der Hund von seinem Berrn seinen Benny erhalten hatte, ging er wieder zum nämlichen Fleischer, der ihn gestern so schlecht20 behandelte. Er legte seine Rupfermunge21 wieder auf den Blod, sette22 aber dieses Mal knurrend²³ seine Pfote²⁴ darauf. Der Fleischer wagte²⁵ unter solchen Umständen¹⁴ keinen neuen Streich²⁶, schnitt²⁷ ein Stück²⁸ Fleisch ab, gab es bem Hunde, und wollte sich nun bezahlt machen. Ehe29 er aber dieses thun konnte, hatte das kluge! Thier sein Fleisch ver= schlungen30 und den Penny vom Blocke genommen, wo= mit er aus dem Laden zum andern Fleischer rannte31, der ihn immer ehrlich³² bedient³³ hatte. Dort kaufte er noch ein Stück28 Fleisch, um34 sich für den gestrigen35 Fasttag36 au entschädigen37.

1 prudent, 2 mouth (of a beast), 3 breakfast, 4 as, 5 hunger, 6 till, 7 therefore, 8 far, 9 arrival, 10 to smell at, beriechen (irr.), 11 according to, 12 habit, 13 wares, 14 circumstances, 15 to chase, jagen, 16 stick, 17 injustice, 18 to displease, missfallen (irr.), 19 but, however, 20 to treat, behandeln, 21 copper-coin, 22 put, 23 growling, 24 paw, 25 to venture, wagen, 26 trick, 27 to cut off, abschneiden (irr.), 28 piece, 29 before, 30 to devour, verschlingen (irr.), 31 to run, rennen (irr.), 32 honestly, 33 to serve, bedienen, 34 in order (to), 35 yesterday, 36 fasting-day, 37 to indemnify, entschädigen.

Thirty-ninth Lesson.

Neununddreißigste Lektion.

The Prepositions.

Prepositions are invariable.—They require the following declinable word in either the Genitive, Dative, or Accusative, according to the case they govern.

Prepositions governing the Genitive are:

angefichts, in the face of anitatt (or ftatt), instead of außerhalb, outside, without (a place) innerhalb, within oberhalb, above unterhalb, below biesseits (or biesseit), on this side of jenieits (or jenieit), on the other side of inmitten, in the midst of läng3,(1) along behuf3, in behalf of binfictlich, with regard to

mittelit (or vermittelit), by means of feitens, on the part of tros,(1) in spite of um . . . willen (. . . halber, halben(:1), for the sake of unbeschabet, without prejudice ungeachtet.(2) nothwithstanding unweit (or unfern), not far from bermöge (or frait), by virtue of mährenb.(1) during megen, (2, 3) on account of sufplac (2) (or laut), according to

EXAMPLES:

Ich ging troz bes Regen (or bem Regen) aus. I went out in spite of the rain. Anstatt bes Baters tam ber Sohn. Instead of the father the son came Das Schiff lag diesseits des Flusses. The ship lay on this side of the river. Das haus steht außerhalb ber Stabt. The house stands outside the town. Sie wurden wegen eines Streites (or eines Streites wegen) Feinde. They became enemies on account of a quarrel.

- 1. Längs, tros, während are also used with the Dative after.
- 2. Begen, zufolge, ungentitet may also follow the word they govern, but then sufolge requires the Dative.
- 3. The word governed is placed between um and millen, and before halber.

With the genitives of personal pronouns the following contractions of um . . . willen, halben, wegen take place:

Um meinetwillen (or meinethalben), for my sake, um beinetwillen (or beinethalben), for thy sake, meinetwegen, on my account, beinetwegen, on thy account etc.

Prepositions governing the Dative are:

aus, out of, from außer, except, besides bei, near, with, by, at binnen, within (for time) entgegen(4)in oppositionto gegenüber (4), opposite

gemäß (or sufolge (4), acliammt, together with mit, with Lording to left, since for nad, after to according to lon, from, of, by nächt (or sunächt), next to bon...an, from, since

nebit, together with, besides jumiber (4), contrary to

EXAMPLES:

I came out of the house. Er ftand bei mir. He stood near me. Wir kennen ihn seit lehtem Jahre. We have known him since last year. Diefes Geschent erhielt ich bon meinem Ontes. This present I got from my uncle. Ich erwartete das nicht bon ihm. I did not expect that of him.

4. Enigegen, gegenüber, gemäß, zuwider better follow the word they govern .- For sufolge, if governing the Dative, see above the prepositions governing the Genitive.

Prepositions governing the Accusative are:

biš (1), as far as, till, to, up to burch, through, by entlang (2), along für, for genen (3), towards, against mitten burch, right through ohne, without um, round, at wider, against (with hostility only)

EXAMPLES:

Wir wollen durch den Garten gehen. Let us go through the garden. Ich habe etwas für Sie. I have something for you. Sie kamen ohne Ihren Hund. You came without your dog.

1. Bis is usually accompanied by another preposition; like:

bis an die Bant, as far as the bank bis auf den Bahnhof, as far as the station bis nach Berlin, as far as Berlin bis auf diesen Tag, up to this day bis um vier Uhr, till four o'clock.

However bis is often also used alone if the noun is without an article or substitute: as.

bis Berlin, bis vier Uhr

- Entiang generally follows the word it governs (see also langs, along with the Genitive).
- 3. Gegen has also the old form gen in the expression:
 gen Simmel, up to heaven

Prepositions governing the Dative or Accusative are:

an, at, on auf, upon, on hinter, behind in, in, into neben, by the side of, beside, close iber, above, over, about unter, under, below, among, beneath vor, before, in front of, . . . ago awijden, between

REMARK.— The Dative usually follows these prepositions; but the Accusative is used if the sentence expresses a movement or a direction towards the object after the preposition, thus answering the question whither? or where to?

The Dative usually implies rest or presence in something and then answers to the question where?

EXAMPLES:

Etanben Sie hinter mir? Did you stand behind me? Stellen Sie sich hinter mich. Place yourself behind me. Liegt ber Rall in bem Garten? Is the ball lying in the garden? 3ch hobe ben Ball in ben Garten geworsen. I have thrown the ball into the garden (See also page 40).

Note:—Some of the above prepositions sometimes govern the Accusative, when the rule mentioned cannot strictly be applied. This is especially the case after certain verbs which require to be followed by one of these prepositions. A list of these verbs will be given in our second part.

List of prepositions contracted with the definite article.

am	for an bem	beim for bei bem	aufs for auf bas
aus	for an bas	bom for bon bem	durchs for durch das
int	for in bem	gunt for zu bem	pors for bor bas
ins	for in bas	aur for au ber	"übers for über das

The prepositions taking an 8 are also often written with an '\$; like:—an'\$, in'\$, etc.

Remarks on Prepositions:

In the following we give those explanations on the translation of prepositions, which will be at present most useful. In our 2nd part we shall enter further into the subject.

at, (an), to, (311)

At and to are translated in if meaning to be inside or to go inside of a (common) place; as,

im Gasthof, at the hotel im Theater, at the theatre

in ben Gaîthof, to the hotel ins Theater, to the theatre

Note also :- In London, at London etc. im Geschäft, at business in ber Schule, at school in der Rirche, at church

ins Geschäft, to business in die Schule, to school in die Kirche, to church

At and to are translated auf, if meaning to be inside or to go inside of a place higher up than the speaker is; as,

auf ber Sternwarte, at the observatory auf die Sternwarte, to the observatory

At and to are translated and as well in the following expressions:

auf ber Bost, at the post(-office) auf bem Bahnhof, at the (railway-) station auf bem Martte, at the market auf bem Balle, at the ball auf bem Rirchhof, at the cemetery auf ber Jagb, at the chase (out-hunting) auf bem Bimmer, at the room auf bem Contor, at the office

auf ben Martt, to the market auf ben Ball, to the ball auf ben Kirchhof, to the cemetery auf die Jagd, (to go) hunting auf das Zimmer, to the room auf das Contor, to the office

auf die Post, to the post-(office)

auf ben Bahnhof, to the station

At is translated um (or am), when denoting the time; as, um (or am) zwei Uhr, at two o'clock

At is translated bei, and to, zu, when they mean to be at or to go to somebody or somebody's place; as,

bei seinem Onkel, at his uncle's beim Bäcker, at the baker's bei mir, at my house bei Jhrem Baker, at your father's house du Jhrem Baker, at your father's house

To is translated with the Dative, when standing after a verb etc. governing the Dative in German; as,

Er gab es mir. He gave it to me. Das Haus gehört seinem Bater. The house belongs to his father.

To is translated nath, if denoting direction to a place (proper name of a town, village, etc.) or country; as,

nach Berlin, to Berlin nach Deutschland, to Germany nach ber Schweiz, to Switzerland

Note: With feminine names of countries (always used with the article in German) ,,to" may also be translated by in; thus: in bie Edimeia, to Switzerland

To is translated an if denoting direction to a (common) place, when not into is meant; as an ben Fluß gehen, to go to the river an die Thure gehen, to go to the door

acording to, (Dat.) ... zu | the difference, ber Unter | the office,(") bas Contor as far as, big (s. p. 181)
behind, hinten (D. or A.)
besides, except, anger (D.)
by the side of, beside,
neben (D. or A.) between, zwischen (D.orA.) the cemetery, church-yard, ber Kirchhof

,, entreaty, request, bie for the sake of, um (Gen.) ...willen in spite of, trop (Gen.) instead of, antiatt (Gen.) the lake, ber See Plur: die Seen

(or Comptoir), bas Bü-reau, bie Kanzlei opposite, (Dat.)... gegenoutside, without, außer-halb (Gen.) present, anwesend to punish, bestrafen Turkey, die Türkei

Exercise No. 39.

- 1. She brought the bottle instead of the glass.—He stood outside his house. —In spite of my entreaties theyb refuseda to come. —The boy was being punished on account of his bad behaviour. - Do not go out this afternoon during the great heat.—I pardoned (Dat.) him for the sake of his mother. —According to (an) intelligence the shipb has been a wrecked.—Besides your nephew nobodyb wasa present.—You sat opposite me.—I have known (translate: I know) him these (seit) seven years.—We went as far as the church.—They rode along the river. - He sat behind me on a chair. - Go behind the house. - The girl stood by the side of her father.—The boy threw the stone beside our table.—Between you and him [there] is not much difference.—He intended (wollen) to step between you and me.—Is your cousin (f.) at the concert?-No, she has gone to the theatre.- Let us go to the castle. -Who is going to the post-office?-Your father is selling his dogs at the market. -The ladies were at the cemetery. -Has your cousin gone to his (the) office?—No, he is still at his room.—Can you be here at a quarter to six?-Who is at your aunt's?-Do you go to the tailor's.-Go to his house.—They live at their grandfather's house.—All the money belongs (Dat.) to you now. - Do you go to Paris this year? - No, I shall go to Turkey.—All the people are running to the lake.
 - 2. Ift Ihr Bater im Geschäft? Rein, er ift zu meinem Ontel gegangen. Wann wollen Sie zu mir tommen? Ich werde um ein Biertel auf 3 Uhr fommen. Gehen Sie morgen auf den Ball bei Herrn X? Nein, ich muß nach B. gehen. Vergessen Sie nicht, morgen Abend an den Fluß zu kommen.

I should like to go to the market. Who gave this present to (Dat.) you? Do you go to Switzerland or to Germany this (Acc.) summer? Go to the butcher's and fetch some meat. How many ladies were at the ball last night? Will (wollen) you not come to my house from time to time? I stood often before the picture. We are living outside the village. Shall (sollen) I sit behind you? Be here at half past five. Is your brother at his (the) office? We were at the post.

^(*) Only a mercantile office is called Contor (or Comptoir), otherwise usually Bureau (pronounce Bu-ro) or Ranglei.

- 1. When are at and to translated in?
- 2. When are they translated auf?
- 3. When is at translated um?
- 4. How are at and to translated when they mean to be at or to go to some-body or somebody's house?
- 5. How is to translated after a verb, etc. governing the dative in German?
- 6. When is to translated nach?
- 7. How can to also be translated if standing with feminine names of countries?
- 8. When is to translated an?

Conversation.

Will you take (tragen) this parcel to the post?

Certainly; shall I pay the pos-

tage (das Porto)? Yes, if you will be kind enough.

You are very late to-night.

I did not catch my train.

Why did you miss your train?

I had to (musste) stay too long at business.

When do you generally go to your (the) office?

Generally at 9 o'clock in the morning.

And when do you leave it?
At half past six in the evening.
Shall I come to your house?
No, please wait for me at the station.

Where are you going?
I am going to my uncle's.
Have you ever (schon) been at
the castle?

No, never yet; but to-morrow morning I shall go there.

Did you see me yesterday at the concert?

Yes [I did], you were sitting near the door.

Wollen Sie dieses Packet auf die Post tragen?

Gewiß; soll ich das Porto bezahlen?

Ja, wenn Sie so gut sein wollen.

Sie kommen heute Abend fehr

Ich bin nicht auf ben Zug gekommen (Ich verfehlte den Zug).

Warum sind Sie nicht auf den Zug gekommen? (Warum verfehlten Sie den Zug?)

Ich mußte zu lange im Geschäft bleiben.

Wann gehen Sie gewöhnlich aufs Comptoir (or ins Geschäft)? Gewöhnlich Morgens um 9 Uhr.

Und wann gehen Sie weg? Abends um halb sieben. Soll ich zu Ihnen kommen? Nein, bitte warten Sie auf mich auf dem Bahnhof.

Wohin gehen Sie? Ich gehe zu meinem Onkel. Sind Sie schon auf dem Schlosse

gewesen? Nein, noch nie; aber morgen

früh werde ich hinaufgehen. Haben Sie mich gestern im

Concert gesehen? Ja, Sie sind bei der Thüre ge-

fessen.

Reading Exercise No. 39.

Betrug1 fclägt seinen eigenen2 Berrn.

Im Jahre 1794 sah sich ein französischer Emigrant genöthigt,³ um⁴ sein Geld auf seiner weiten⁵ Reise⁶ zu Kathe⁷ zu halten, während des Winters in einem kleinen Dorfe in Westsahlen zu bleiben. Da⁸ es ihm gänzlich an Holz sehlte,⁹ so ries¹⁰ er einem Bauer, der mit einem Wagen voll¹¹ vorübersuhr¹², zu, was das Holz¹³ koste.—Der Bauer, welcher an dem gebrochenen¹⁴ Deutsch des Franzosen merkte,¹⁵ daß er einen Ausländer¹⁶ vor sich habe, dachte, er könne ihn leicht übervortheilen¹⁷, und verlangte¹⁸ daher drei Louisd'or. Der Franzose sing an zu handeln¹⁹, aber ohne Ersolg²⁰, so daß er den verlangten¹⁸ Preis schließlich²¹ zahlen mußte.

Der Bauer, vergnügt über seinen guten Handel²², suhr, nachdem²³ er abgeladen²⁴ hatte, nach dem nahen Wirthß-hause und ließ²⁵ sich ein Frühstück geben.²⁶ Während²⁷ er dieses behaglich²⁸ verzehrte²⁹, rühmte³⁰ er sich, wie er den Franzosen übers³¹ Ohr gehauen³² habe; denn³³ er habe ihm einen kleinen Wagen Holz¹³, der höchstens³⁴ zwei

Thaler35 werth36 sei, für drei Louisd'or verkauft.

Der Wirth, ein braver³⁷ Mann, schüttelte³⁸ bei dieser Erzählung³⁹ den Kopf⁴⁰ und sagte, der Bauer solle sich schämen, einen Fremden⁴¹ so schändlich⁴² betrogen zu haben.

Ei was!—versetzte⁴³ der Bauer—das Holz¹³ gehörte mir; ich konnte dafür verlangen¹⁸, so viel ich wollte, ohne daß ein Dritter sich darüber aufhalten⁴⁴ dark.

(Fortsetzung folgt.)

1 deceit, 2 own, 3 to compel, to oblige, nöthigen, 4 in order (to), 5 far, 6 journey, 7 together, 8 as, 9 he was in need (of), 10 to call to, zurufen (irr.), 11 full, 12 to drive by, vorüberfahren (irr.), 13 wood, 14 broken, 15 to perceive, merken, 16 foreigner, 17 to take in, übervortheilen, 18 to ask, to demand, verlangen, 19 to bargain, handeln, 20 success, 21 at last, 22 bargain, 23 after, 24 to unload, abladen, (irr.), 25 & 26 had given, 27 while, 28 comfortably, 29 to consume, to eat, verzehren, 30 to boast, sich rühmen, 31—32 overcharged, 33 for, 34 at the most, 35 dollars, 36 worth, 37 honest, 38 to shake, schütteln, 39 account, 40 head, 41 stranger, 42 shamefully, 43 to reply, versetzen, 44 to criticise, sich auf halten (irr.) über.

Fortieth Lesson.

Bierzigste Lettion.

Remarks on Prepositions (concluded).

On (auf) is translated an:

1. If meaning at or near; as,

an ber Band, on the wall Frankfurt a. Main (am Main), Frankfort on the Maine an Ihrem Rode, on your coat

2. If denoting date or if standing with days of the week, being contracted with the article bem into am (see page 171); as,

am 3ten Mai, on the 3rd of May am Montag, on Monday

With (mit) is translated usually bei, if standing with names of persons; but if the verb denotes movement, the translation remains mit; as,

Er ist bei seiner Tochter. He is with his daughter. Wer wohnt bei Ihnen? Who lives with you? Ich habe kein Geid bei mir. I have no money with (or about) me. —But:—Er kam mit seiner Tochter. He came with his daughter. Ich kann nicht mit Ihnen gehen. I cannot go with you.

By (burd) is translated **von** when the verb is in the Passive voice : as,

Unfere Solbaten wurden vom Feinde geschlagen. Our soldiers were

beaten by the enemy.

When the passive voice is understood only, still non must be used; as,

Diese Musik ist von Weber. This music is by Weber. Ist bas Gebicht von Schiller? Is the poem by Schiller?

By is translated mit, when it means to travel, to go, to send, etc. by means of something; as,

mit der Eisenbahn, dy (the) railway mit dem Dampsboot, dy (the) steamboat mit der Post, dy (the) post

By is translated bei, (or neben) when meaning close to a place; as, bei ber Kirche, by the church

From (von) is usually translated aus, when standing with an abstract noun; as,

aus Leichtsinn, from thoughtlessness aus Erfahrung, from experience

For (für) is translated auf, if denoting time; as,

auf bas nächste Mal, for (the) next time auf morgen, for to-morrow auf wie lange? for how long?

In is translated auf in:

aufs Land gehen, etc., to go, etc. into (or to) the country auf bem Lande sein, etc. to be, etc. in the country auf Deutsch, auf Englisch, in German, in Englisch, etc. auf diese Weise, in this manner.

OBSERVATION:—In German prepositions must always precede the word they govern (except those on page 180) which can be placed directly after; as,

Bon mas (wovon) spreden Sie? What are you speaking of? Dies if bie Dame, mit ber er ging. That is the lady (whom) he was going with.

the experience, **bie** Cr-fahrung
to hang, hangen irr. intr.
the kindness, bie Güte
,, railway, bie Eisenbahn
round (prep.), um (Acc.)
the steamboat, das Dampfboot
boot
the Articles " tramway, die Pferde-

bahn

January, Januar m. February, Februar m.

March, März m. April, April m. May, Mai m. June, Juni m. July, Juli m. August, August m. September, September m. October, October m. November, November m. December, December m

Exercise No. 40.

- 1. What have you on your coat?—All the hats hang on the wall. -Hamburgh (Hamburg) lies on the Elbe (f.).—On what (which) lake lies Geneva (Genf)?—Will your aunt come on Tuesday?—No, she will come on Friday. -My brother-in-law arrived on the 18th of July and set out on the 30th of August .- With whom did you come? - We were travelling with an old gentleman. - Was somebody with you? - I sat with my uncle in the garden.-You are being looked for by your sister. -The letter was being written by me. -By whom has the fire been lit? -Are these poems by Schiller ?-That picture is by Holbein. -By which steamboat did you come ?-Send (schicken) the parcel by (the) post.-They stood by their house.—The building lies by the station.—He did it from kindness. - I know that from experience. - What shall (sollen) we prepare for next week?—Order (bestellen) the wine for this evening. -Do you go into the country in a fortnight?-We live in the country. —Tell me that in German.—Whom are you writing to (an Acc.)?
- 2. Wollen Sie nicht bei mir bleiben? Wir gingen mit unserer Mutter spazieren. Diese Musik ift von Sandn. Das konnen Sie nur durch lange Erfahrung lernen. Wir wohnen beim Bahn-hof. Außer Ihnen und mir wird Niemand anwesend sein. Ich werde Sie nicht vor 8 Tagen erwarten. Das lette Mal waren Er schrieb den Brief am 22sten Sie an einem Sonntag hier. Er schrieb den Brief am 22sten März. Wir wollen mit der Pferdebahn fahren (go). Ich sprach vor drei Wochen mit (to) ihm darüber.

When will (wollen) you come, on Wednesday or on Thursday? I cannot come before Saturday. Is your family living in the country? The ship arrived on the 16th of June. Why were you not at the ball yesterday? The door was shut (zumachen) by the servant. (For) how long may (dürfen) I keep this book? Is somebody with your cousin in his room? All the children sat round the table. Is that letter for The concert will commence at six o'clock. Let us go to our hotel. From avarice heb dida not eat enough. My brother has gone to (the) business. I shall travel by the railway.

- 1. When is on translated an?
- 2. How is with usually translated if standing with names of persons?
- 3. But how is it translated if the verb denotes movement?
- 4. When is by translated von?
- 5. When is it translated mit, and when bei (or neben)?
- 6. When is from usually translated aus?
- 7. When is for translated auf?
- 8. Where are prepositions placed in German!

Conversation.

How long have you been waiting for (auf Acc.) me? Above twenty minutes. Can you pay this small bill

for me? No. I have no money about

Let us take a walk. Where shall we go? Let us go to the wood. Who is going with us?

Your brother and your cousin will go with us.

Were you alone in (the) town yesterday?

No, my friend was with me. Did you come by the railway (by rail)?

No, I came by the tram (-way).

You ought to know from ex-

perience, what man he is. I thought he would behave better this time.

For what time have you ordered the workmen?

I ordered them for 8 o'clock to-morrow morning.

By whom were you accompanied home last night?

My cousin accompanied me. Since when have you lived in the country?

I have lived there these two years.

Wie lange haben Sie auf mich gewartet?

Ueber zwanzig Minuten.

Rönnen Gie diese kleine Rechnung für mich bezahlen? Rein, ich habe kein Geld bei

Wir wollen spazieren gehen. Wohin sollen wir gehen?

Wir wollen in den Wald gehen. Wer geht mit suns? Ihr Bruder und Ihr Better

wollen mit [uns] gehen.

Waren Sie gestern allein in der Stadt?

Nein, mein Freund war bei mir Ramen Sie mit der Gisenbahn (mit der Bahn)?

Nein, ich kam mit der Bferdebahn.

Sie jollten aus Erfahrung wiffen, was für ein Mann er ist.

Ich glaubte, er würde sich dieses Mal beffer betragen.

Auf wieviel Uhr haben Sie die Arbeiter bestellt?

Ich bestellte sie auf morgen früh 8 Uhr.

Von wem wurden Gie gestern Abend nach Sause begleitet?

Mein Better begleitete mich. Seit wann wohnen Sie auf dem Lande?

Ich wohne seit zwei Jahren da (or dort).

Reading Exercise No. 40.

Betrug schlägt seinen eigenen Herrn.

(Forsetung, continuation.)

Der Wirth schwieg. Der Bauer hatte sein Frühstück verzehrt und fragte nun:—Was bin ich schuldig?

-Drei Louisd'or!-verfette ber Wirth.

—Was! Drei Louisd'or für ein Stück² Brod mit Käse und zwei Gläschen³ Schnapps?⁴ —schrie der Bauer.

Ja, allerdings,⁵ — entgegnete⁶ der Wirth eben so gelassen⁷ wie zuvor;⁸ — Brod, Käse, Schnapps⁴ gehören mir; ich kann dafür so viel verlangen, als ich will, und wenn Ihr mir die drei Louisd'or nicht bezahlt, so nehme⁹ ich Eure Pferde und Euren Wagen so lange in Beschlag, bis¹⁰ ich mein Geld habe. Wenn Ihr glaubt, daß Euch Unrecht geschieht¹¹, so verklagt¹² mich beim Amtmann¹³!—

Der Bauer ließ¹⁴ sich das nicht zweimal sagen¹⁵; er eilte zu dem Letzteren¹⁶ und brachte¹⁷ seine Beschwerde¹⁸ an. Der Amtmann¹³ ließ¹⁹ den Wirth sogleich²⁰ zu sich rusen, und der Empfang²¹ war nicht der freundlichste²². Der Wirth erzählte ganz ruhig, was ihn zu einer solch auffallenden²³ Forderung²⁴ veranlaßt²⁶, und er wolle an dem Bauer nur das Recht²⁶ der Wiedervergeltung²⁷ außeiben²⁸.

Unter solchen Umftänden²⁹,—sagte der Amtmann¹³, kann ich dem Wirthe nicht Unrecht³⁰ geben,—und er ent= schied³¹, daß der Bauer ihm drei Louisd'or zahlen solle.

Der Bauer, sich verbrießlich³² am Kopse krahenb³³, zog die Goldstücke³⁴ langsam³⁵ aus der Tasche und legte sie mit verbissener³⁶ Wuth³⁷ auf den Tisch.

(Schluß folgt.)

1 to pay, 2 piece, 3 little glasses, 4 dram, 5 certainly, 6 to reply, entgegnen, 7 calmly, 8 before, 9 to confiscate, in Beschlag nehmen (irr.), 10 till, 11 to be done wrong, Unrecht geschehen (irr. Dat.), 12 to summon, verklagen, 13 bailiff, 14 & 15 had said, 16 latter, 17 to put forth, anbringen (irr.), 18 complaint, 19 had called, 20 immediately, 21 reception, 22 most friendly, 23 striking, 24 claim, 25 to induce, veranlassen, 26 law, 27 retaliation, 28 to exercise, ausüben, 29 circumstances, 30 to do injustice, Unrecht geben, 31 to decide, entscheiden (irr.), 32 irksomely, 33 to scratch, kratzen, 34 gold-pieces, 35 slowly, 36 suppressed, 37 rage.

The Conjunctions.

Conjunctions are invariable, and there are two kinds: 1) Coordinative 2) Sub-ordinative.

1) Co-ordinative Conjunctions.

also, so, thus, consequently aud, also, too, as well augerben, besides bann, ba, then baster (bespals) beswegen, barum), therefore, on that account bemund, nevertheless besselsen ungeachtet, notwithstanding besto (or umio), (so much) the [with a comparative after] bodh, yet, still

jebod (gleidjuoh), however, still
entweber...(ober),(*) either...(or)
jolglid (mithin), consequently
indefien (unterdefien), meanwhile
nod (audj...nidjt), nor
fo, thus, so
theils...theils, partly...partly
inderdies, moreover
meder...nod, neither...nor
awar, indeed, it is true
etc. etc.

When co-ordinative conjunctions begin a sentence, the subject is placed after the verb or auxiliary; as,

In was ill; therefore I could not come. In bezahlte die Rechnung; bennoch war der Kaufmann nicht zufrieden. I paid the bill; nevertheless the shop keeper was not contented.

NOTE.—When such a conjunction does not commence the sentence the subject keeps its usual place, and the conjunction is generally placed after the verb or after a personal pronoun without preposition; as,

Der Arzt ist hier; ich habe ihn jeboch noch nicht gesehen. The physician is here; I, however, have not seen him yet.

Many adverbs may be used as co-ordinative conjunctions and then belong to this class.

The following seven co-ordinatives are exceptions to the above rule, and do not alter the position of the subject, if directly preceding it; viz:

und, and aber (allein), but, however benn, for (because) ober, or fondern, but (on the contrary) fowohl...als auch, both...and, as well as

Examples:—Sowohl sein Bater, als auch seine Mutter tamen; aber er war icon tobt. Both his father and his mother came, but he was already dead.

not only-but also

In nicht nur...fondern auch (nicht allein or nicht blos...fondern auch), not only...but (also), fondern auch usually leaves the order unaltered, but then auch is placed after the verb or after a personal pronoun without preposition; as,

Mein Bruder war nicht nur zu Hause, sondern er war auch in seinem Rimmer. My brother was not only at home, but he was in his room.

If there is only one verb, sonbern auch remain unseparated; as, Nicht nur sein Bater, sonbern auch seine Mutter kam. Not only his father, but also his mother came.

^(*) After ober the position of the subject better remains unaltered.

besides (conj.), außerbem | impossible, unmöglich both...and, fowohi... as well as als auch the debt, die Schulb either ... (or), entweber ... for (conj.), benn ((ober) the furniture, bas Möbel , husband, ber Mann (ber Gemahl)

to insure, berficern meanwhile, indeffen neither...nor, weber...noch not only...but (also), nicht nur...sonbern auch partly...partly, theils theils ... possible, möglich

to surprise, überraichen (so much) the | with a comparative after], befto then, bann therefore, baher (beshalb) waiting-room, ber Wartefaal wife, bie Frau (bie Gemahlin)

Exercise No. 41.

- 1. I shall visit you and your brother; Ic shallb alsoa visit your cousin.—He is not willing to pay the money, besides it is not possible [for] him (Dat).—Be at my house at half past nine, then I will show (Dat.) you the things.—He was not at home, therefore the door was locked (schliessen).—Either your son must come himself, or he must send somebody.-I knew it already and was therefore not surprised by the news: the more surprised were those who did not know it. - Neither the house nor the furniture was insured.—The money belonged partly to (Dat.) the wife, partly to the husband.—We were conversing in the waiting-room, meanwhile the train started.—He sold his horse last week, and his brother bought it again. - I wished (wollen) to sleep, but it was impossible.—We must go, or the church will be (Passive) shut (zumachen).—Light the gas, for it grows (werden) dark.—Both the uncle and the aunt are coming.—His house, as well as his garden, have been sold.—He not only had no money, but he was also in (had also) debt (n/ur.).—Not only the glass, but the bottle also was broken.
- 2. Mein Schwager ist ausgegangen; Sie können ihn baber nicht sprechen (see). Die Dame sang weber gut, noch richtig. Geben Sie ins Theater, bann werden Sie Ihren Freund treffen. Das Möbel war theils versichert, theils nicht. Ich bin noch nicht fertig; baher muffen Sie allein geben. Wir konnten nicht ins Saus gehen, denn die Thure war geschlossen. Sowohl die Soldaten, als auch die Matrosen empörten sich. Er hat eine reiche (wealthy) Frau; außerdem hat er felbft ein großes Bermogen.
- I went into the house, but I did not see him. Both my brother and his daughter saw you. He was too sleepy, therefore he would (wollen) not remain. You must either sing or dance. Neither his uncle nor his cousin was present. You must wait, or I cannot help (Dat.) We could not depart, meanwhile it became colder. not believe it, for it was not possible. -The ladies were sitting, and the gentlemen were standing. Her children, as well as her husband, have died. The woman is not only poor, but also very ill. At first he was surprised, then he became quiet.

- When co-ordinative conjunctions begin a sentence where is the subject then placed?
- 2. When such a conjunction does not commence the sentence, how are the subject and the conjunction placed?
- 3. Which conjunctions do not alter the position of the subject, if directly preceding it?
- 4. Does sondern auch in nicht nur, etc....sondern auch usually alter the position of the subject?
- 5. Where in this case is auch placed?
- 6. If there is only one verb, is sondern auch then separated?

Conversation.

Mr. X. is not in yet; you therefore must wait a little.

Do you expect him soon? Yes, in about five minutes.

We have a very cold winter this year.

I think summer will be all the warmer.

Did you find Mr. N. at home? No, I found neither him nor his wife.

Can you recommend (Dat.) me these shirts and collars?

Yes, they are both cheap and good.

Why did you not come last night?

I had to work late in (the) business, and meanwhile the last train had started.

You must not go there, for you will find nobody at home today.

Very well, then I shall go tomorrow.

Perhaps it will not be possible for me to go with you tomorrow.

Either you must make up your mind now, or I must set out alone. Herr X. ist noch nicht hier; Sie mussen beshalb ein wenig warten.

Erwarten Sie ihn bald?

Ja, ungefähr in fünf Minuten. Wir haben bieses Jahr einen sehr kalten Winter.

Ich glaube, der Sommer wird desto wärmer sein.

Trasen Sie Herrn N. zu Hause! Nein, ich tras weder ihn, noch seine Frau.

Können Sie mir diese Hemden und Krägen empfehlen?

Ja, sie sind sowohl billig als auch gut.

Warum sind Sie gestern Abend nicht gekommen?

Ich hatte sehr viel im Geschäft zu thun, und indessen wa der letzte Zug abgegangen.

Sie mussen nicht borthin gehen, benn Sie werben Niemand heute zu Hause tressen.

Gut, dann werde ich morgen gehen.

Bielleicht wird es mir nicht möglich sein, morgen mit Ihnen zu gehen.

Entweder muffen Sie sich jett entschließen, oder ich muß allein abreisen.

Reading Exercise No. 41.

Betrug schlägt seinen eigenen Herrn. (Schluß)

Ich will das Geld nicht für mich,—sagte hierauf der Wirth,—das können Sie sich wohl'd denken, Herr Amtmann! Haben Sie die Güte² und wechseln Sie einen Louisdor; der Bauer hat das Wägelchen³ Holz selbst auf zwei Thalergeschäht;⁴ diese bitte ich ihm zu bezahlen und das Uebrige⁵ dem armen Franzosen zustellen⁶ zu lassen. Für das Frühstück verlange ich nichts.—Der Amtmann wurde durch diese Gutmüthigkeit⁸ freudig⁹ überrascht¹⁰. Er zahlte die zwei. Thaler an den Bauer und entließ¹¹ ihn; dem Emigranten wurde der Rest¹² zurückgegeben.

Der Vorfall¹³ wurde indessen in kurzer¹⁴ Zeit nicht nur in dem Dorfe, sondern auch in der Nachbarschaft¹⁵ bekannt¹⁶. Man sprach mit Lob¹⁷ von dem Wirthe, aber mit desto größerem Unwillen¹⁸ von dem Bauern, der sich indessen damit tröstete¹⁹, daß er wenigsten³²⁰ sein Holz.

bezahlt und ein Frühftuck umfonft21 erhalten hatte.

Bufällig²² erfuhr²³ auch ein benachbarter²⁴ Förster²⁵ etwas davon, und da in dieser Zeit viele Holzdiebstähle²⁶ verübt²⁷ worden waren, deren Thäter²⁸ er nicht auf die Spur²⁹ hatte kommen können: so erkundigte³⁰ er sich dei dem Amtmann nach dem Bauern. Durch ihn brachte³¹ er sowohl den Holzverkäuser³² als auch den Käuser³³ in Ersfahrung, und bei der weitern³⁴ Untersuchung³⁵ ergab³⁶ essich, daß der Bauer das Wägelchen³ Holz gestohlen hatte. Er wurde daher für diesen Frevel³⁷ nach den bestehenden³⁸, nicht gelinden³⁹ Gesehen⁴⁰ gehörig⁴¹ bestraft.

1 I am sure, 2 goodness, 3 little cart, 4 to value, schätzen, 5 balance, 6—7 to have transmitted to, 8 kindness, 9 agreeably, 10 to surprise, überraschen, 11 to discharge, entlassen (irr.), 12 remainder, 13 occurrence, 14 short, 15 neighbourhood, 16 known, 17 praise, 18 indignation, 19 to console, trösten, 20 at least, 21 for nothing, 22 by chance, 23 to hear, erfahren (irr.), 24 neighbouring, 25 forester, 26 thefts of wood, 27 to commit, verüben, 28 perpetrators, 29 track, 30 to inquire, sich erkundigen, 31 to ascertain, in Erfahrung bringen (irr.), 32 seller of the wood, 33 buyer, 34 further, 35 inquest, 36 to prove, sich ergeben (irr.), 37 transgression, 38 existing, 39 mild, 40 laws, 41 rightly.

Forty-second Lesson.

Zweiundvierzigste Leftion.

2) Subordinative Conjunctions.

als, when, as, than, bevor, eye, before bis, until, till ba, as, since (reason) bas, that bamit, in order that falls, im Falle [bas], in case [that] inbem, while, in [with a present par ticiple following] nachbem, after ob, whether, if

obgleid (obidion, obwohl), although, though lett, (letibem), since [that] ibbalb [als](*), as soon as folange [als](*), as often as ungeaditet, notwithstanding magnenb, while, whilst wenn, if, when weil, because wie, as, how

Compound Subordinative Conjunctions.

alš biš, until
alš ob
alš (or wie) wenn } as if (the verb in
alš (or wie) wenn } the Imp. Subj.)
alš baš, but that, but
anilati baš, instead of (with a present
participle following)
baburd, baš, by (with a present participle following)
bamit...nidjt (Subj.), lest

gleich wie, just as
one baß, without (with a present
participle following)
fo baß, so that
wenn...nicht (wofern...nicht), unless
fo...auch (wie...auch), however
bransgefeßt, baß, provided that, supposing
um...du, in order to;
—and some more.—

Subordinative Conjunctions make the clause which they introduce dependent, and so throw the verb to the end (like the relative pronouns on page 104); as,

Ich ging zu ihm, sobalb er nach Haus fam. (**) I went to him as soon as he came home.

Note.—In compound tenses the auxiliary verb must be last in a dependent clause, the order of verbs being thus the reverse of the English; as,

Bissen Sie, daß Ihr Ontel morgen sein haus vertauste haben wirb?a Do you know that your uncle willa have solde his house to-morrow?

But in the compound tenses of an auxiliary verb of mood, standing with another verb, the verbs are placed at the end in their usual order; as,

Er blieb zu Hause, weil er nicht hats ausgehen (***) tönnend. He remained at home, because he hass not been abled to go outs. Glauben Sie, daß Sie allein werbens tommend dürfens? Do you think that you wills be allowedd to comes alone?

If the dependent clause precedes the main clause, the subject of the main clause is placed after its verb or auxiliary; as,

Sobalb er nach Sause tam, ging ich zu ihm. As soon as he came home I went to him.

^(*) Als usually is omitted. But it must be put, if foodb als, etc. are no longer conjunctions, but adverbs (i.e. if not introducing a dependent clause); as, Rommen Sie fo oft als möglich. Come as often as possible.

^(**) A dependent clause is separated from its main clause by a comma in German.
(***) See remark on separable verbs, if removed to the end of the sentence (p. 146).

although, though, ob: | in order that, bamit gleich as long as, folange [als] as often as, fo oft [als] as soon as, jobalb [als] in case [that], falls notwithstanding, ungeachtet

provided that, supposing, porausgejest, baß till, until, bis while, whilst, währenb the answer, bie Antwort " chimney, ber Ramin cross, boje

the dentist, ber Bahnarzt to extract, ausziehen irr. the loss, ber Berluft Plur: bie Verlufte necessary, nothig the opera, die Oper the ticket, das Billet(*) :, tooth, der Jahn

(*) Pronounce: Bill-jett.

Exercise No. 42.

- 1. It is not necessary that you should come (trans: that you come) this evening.—Go to the dentist, in order that he may extract (Subj.) your bad tooth.-He paid all the bills, notwithstanding he had had a great loss.—She is very cross because she cannot go to the opera.—Stay here till the rain has ceased.—Can you fetch some stamps while I am writing this letter? I will try it, although the post-office is closed (schliessen).—Your sister will take a ticket for you, in case you should come too late. - I will repeat it, provided that you will not interrupt me.—We have visited him as often as we were (trans: have been) able to go to him.—He may (können) have come because perhaps hea has been obliged to come.—Although there was a chimney in the room one could not light a(†) fire. -- As soon as the shoemaker has made the shoes he will send them. -In case you don't give better answers I shall not ask you fanyl more. - Come here as soon as you can .- I called the servant that she may light (Subj.) the gas.
- 2. Sie muffen sich nicht beklagen, daß ber Buchbinder das Buch nicht geschickt hat. Bitte warten Sie, bis ich die Quittung geschrieben habe. So lange er in der Stadt wohnte, bilbete er jich ein, daß er krank sei (was). Ich habe gesprochen, weil ich habe sprechen mussen. Sie verließen das Haus, sobald ihr Bruder ankam. Schreiben Sie sobald als möglich (possible), bamit er den Brief noch heute erhalte. Ich will es Ihnen sagen, vorausgesett, daß Sie mich nicht verrathen. Während ich unsere Billete nahm, ging bas Dampfboot ab.

I believe that he is very ill. Although he is ill, he is willing to come. They were playing while I was in the garden. As often as she sang he began to speak. You are a good man, but you have no patience. I have a bad tooth, therefore I must have it extracted (ausziehen lassen). I will do it for you, provided that you cannot come yourself. He could take the letters because my desk was open. We staved with them until it became dark. In case you wish (wollen) to hear the singer (f.) you must go to the opera this evening. As soon as the dentist is at home I shall go to him.

^(†) Observe that "not a, not any" are generally translated fein.

- 1. What is a clause, introduced by a subordinative conjunction, called?
- 2. What is done with the verb in a dependent clause?
- 3. If there is a compound tense where must the auxiliary verb be in such a clause?
- 4. But what is done with the verbs if the compound tense of an auxiliary verb of mood is standing with another verb?
- 5. What is to be observed, if the dependent clause precedes the main clause?

Conversation.

Do you think, that your cousin (f.) will come to-day? Yes, I am certain of it. Can you wait till I have dressed

myself?

Certainly I can (wait). Think upon the matter once more (noch einmal), whilst I am writing this letter.

No. I know what I want, it therefore will not be necessary. Although I have a ticket, I shall not go to the opera.

Why do you not go? Because I don't feel well. I hope that you will feel better to-morrow.

I hope so too. Has the physician come yet? Yes, he came whilst you were

in your room.

In case you wish to catch your train, you must make haste.

I have still five minutes to spare.

As long as the bad weather continues (anhalten), we shall not be able to go out.

No, we must stay at home.

Do you know that your friend will not be able to come tonight? Yes, I know it.

Glauben Sie, daß Ihre Coufine heute kommen wird?

Ja, ich weiß es gewiß. Können Sie warten, bis

ich mich angefleidet habe? Gewiß [fann ich warten].

Ueberlegen Sie sich die Sache einmal, während noch diefen Brief ichreibe.

Nein, ich weiß, was ich will; es wird daher nicht nöthig fein. Obgleich ich ein Billet habe.

werde ich nicht in die Oper gehen.

Warum gehen Sie nicht? Weil es mir nicht wohl ist.

Ich hoffe, daß es Ihnen morgen beffer fein wird.

Ich hoffe es auch.

Ist der Argt ichon gekommen? Ja, er kam, während Sie in Ihrem Zimmer waren.

Falls Sie [noch] auf den Zug kommen wollen, muffen Sie fich beeilen.

Ich habe noch fünf Minuten Beit.

So lange das schlechte Wetter anhält, werden wir nicht ausgehen können.

Rein, wir muffen zu Saufe bleiben.

Wissen Sie, daß Ihr Freund heute Abend nicht wird tommen fonnen?

Ja, ich weiß es.

Reading Exercise No. 42.

Der große Lügner.1

Zwei Matrofen, ein Frländer und ein Engländer, die auf demselben Schiffe dienten,2 machten3 zusammen aus, gegenseitig4 für einander zu forgen,5 falls einer in dem beginnenden Kampfes verwundet werden sollte. Nach eini= gen Minuten, während die erften Schuffe? gewechselt wurden, riße eine Kanonenkugel9 dem Engländer ein Bein10 weg, so daß er auf das Verdeck11 niederfiel12. Er bat nun seinen Freund, ihn zum Arzte zu tragen, was dieser auch bereitwillig¹³ that. Kaum aber hatte er seinen Gefährten¹⁴ auf dem Rücken¹⁵, als¹⁶ eine zweite Kugel¹⁷ bem armen Teufel¹⁸ den Kopf¹⁹ wegriß.⁸ In dem Getofe20 und dem Gewirre21 der Schlacht22 hatte der Gr= länder jedoch das lette Unglück23 seines Rameraden24 nicht bemerkt und fette25 feinen Weg zum Chirurgen fort. Gin Offizier sah ihn mit dem kopflosen26 Körper27 und fragte ihn:-Bohin willft bu?-Bum Doktor, fagte ber Frländer. -Rum Doktor?-erwiederte der Offizier;-bu Dummkopf28, der Mann hat ja29 seinen Kopf19 verloren!—Als der Matrose dies hörte, warf er den Körper²⁷ von seinen Schultern30, betrachtete ihn aufmerksam und rief:- Meiner Seel31! er fagte mir, es ware sein Bein13; aber ich war dumm³², daß ich ihm glaubte; denn er war immer ein großer Lügner.1

¹ liar, 2 to serve, dienen, 3 to arrange, ausmachen, 4 mutually, 5 to take care of, sorgen, 6 combat, 7 shots, 8 to tear away, wegreissen (irr.) 9 cannon-ball, 10 leg, 11 deck, 12 to fall down, *niederfallen (irr.), 13 readily, 14 companion, 15 back, 16 when, 17 ball, 18 devil (fellow), 19 head, 20 bustle, 21 confusion, 22 battle, 23 misfortune, 24 comrade, 25 to continue, fortsetzen, 26 headless, 27 body, 28 blockhead, 29 can't you see it, 30 shoulders, 31 heaven knows, 32 stupid.

Forty-third Lesson.

Dreiundvierziaste Lektion.

The Subordinative Conjunctions (concluded).

Observation:—Adverbs of interrogation if not used in direct questions(*) have a relative meaning; they therefore make the clause they introduce dependent and throw the verb to the end. Such are:

wann, when warum, why weshalb, wherefore wieviel, how much wie lange, how long mo, where moher, where (from)

mobin, where (to) modurch, whereby worin, wherein womit, wherewith; etc.

Examples.—Sagen Sie mir, wann Sie heute Abend fommen wollen. Tell me when you wish to come this evening. Sagte er Ihnen, wohin er gehen will? Did he tell you where he will go? Warum Sie nicht eingesaben worben waren, wuhte ich nicht. Why you had not been invited I did not know.

Remarks on Conjunctions (Adverbs & Prepositions).

But is generally translated aber (or allein).

Mber instead of introducing the sentence, may be placed after the verb.—If the verb is followed by a personal pronoun without

preposition, aber is placed after such pronoun; as,

Mein Ontel hat ein Pierb, aber er hat keinen Wagen or er hat
aber keinen Wagen. My uncle has a horse, but he has no carriage.
Ich konnte Eie sehen, aber mein Freund bemerkte Eie nicht or mein
Freund bemerkte Sie aber nicht. I could see you, but my friend did not perceive you.

Note. - More may also be placed between the subject and the verb, if the subject is another person or thing than the subject of the first

sentence; as, 3ch tonnte Sie sehen, mein Freund aber bemerkte Sie nicht.

But is translated forbern, if occurring after the negation not (nicht) and having a contradictory meaning.—This is usually the case, if not and but have one verb or one auxiliary; as,

Er ist nicht zu hause, sondern in der Stadt. He is not at home, but in town. Richt ich, sondern mein Bruder war dort. Not I, dut my brother was there. Ich habe die Reuigkeit nicht gelesen, sondern gehört. I have not read dut heard the news.

However but after not is translated aber if not contradictory (i. e. usually if not and but each has its own verb); as,

Er ift noch nicht zu Saufe, aber er wird balb tommen. He is not at home yet, but he soon will come.

But after a negation (not excepted) in the same sentence, is

translated als (or auger); as, Die Kinder hatten nichts als Brod. The children had nothing but bread. Ich Alemand als Ihren Bruder. I saw no one but your brother. Er hatte kein Gelb als das, welches Sie ihm gaben. He had no money but what you gave him.

But being an adverb and meaning only is translated nur or erit

(s. p. 172); as, Id habe nur einen Bruber. I have but one brother. Es schrich mir erst gestern. He wrote to me but yesterday.

^(°) In direct questions the subject always follows the verb; as,—Wann for men Sie? When do you come?—If there is no direct question, the subject always precedes the verb (for examples see above).

to accept, annehmen irr.
the arm, ber Urm
Plur: bie Urme
the company, party, society, bie Gefelligiaft
,, confidence, baš Bertranen
,, cook (f.), bie Ködhin
,, danger, bie Gefahr
dangerous, gefährlich
to detect, to discover,
entbeden

difficult, schwer
to fear, sürchten
to grant, bewilligen
the hand, die Hand
Plur: die Hände
, journey, die Reise
, leg, das Bein
, misfortune, das Unglick
the printer, der Buchbruder

to print, bruden
the proposal, der Borichlag
to propose, vorschlagen
irr.
to telegraph, telegraphiren
(Dat.)
the thief, der Tieb
wherefore, weshalb
to write down, aufscheiben, irr.

Exercise No. 43.

1. Do you know wherefore we have lost their confidence?-I cannot understand (begreifen) where the cook (f.) has gone.—Tell (Dat.) me why you make us such a proposal.—Explain to (Dat.) me how the thief could be (Passive) detected .- Did you write down how much you have paid for your suit of clothes? - Ask your mother when the party will be here. - It is difficult to say how long the storm will continue (anhalten).—I proposed it to (Dat.) him, but he did not accept my proposal. —He tried everything, butb he hada no luck. —The printer has printed the books, but the bookbinder has not yet bound them.— I should like (s. p. 176) to accompany you but the journey is too dangerous.—He has nota broken (brechen) his (the) legb, but his (the) arm .- Not he, but his wife received me. - He will not write, but telegraph. - I did not fear the danger, but I wished (wollen) to avoid it .-She has not read the book, but she has looked it through. - We had nothing but misfortune. - I cannot find any other hat but yours. - Nobody but the police was present.—The poor man has but one hand.— You have but to come and you will get your money. - Your son was with me but an hour ago.

2. Wer weiß, wann der Briefträger diesen Brief gebracht hat? Er versuchte eine Rede zu halten (make), aber der Lärm war zu groß (much). Das Gedicht war nicht gedruckt, sondern geschrieben. Ich kann Ihre Bitte nicht bewilligen, aber ich will Sie einem von meinen Freunden empfehlen. Erzählen Sie mir, wie der Mord begangen wurde. Ich wollte mit ihm sprechen, er war aber nicht mehr (no longer) im Gasthose. Ich kan nicht mit der Eisendahn, sondern mit der Pferdebahn. Haben Sie keinen andern leberrock als den, welchen Sie anhaben (have on you)?

It was not his business, but he had much experience in such things. Can you remember where you have lost your gloves? Where have you lost your pocket-book? We did not knock at the door, but at the window. It was but a mistake (Irrthum m.), that I sent (Dat.) you the same bill twice. I did not b find your parasola, but your umbrella. During our journey to Germany we bhad nothing but rain. We were waiting for (auf Acc.) you a long time in the waiting-room, but you did not come.

Questions on Grammar.

1. What is done with the verb, if the clause is introduced by an adverb of interrogation and there is no direct question?

2. How is but generally translated?

- 3. What other place, besides at the beginning of a sentence, can aber take?
- 4. But where is aber placed if the verb is followed by a personal pronoun without a preposition?
- 5. When may aber also be put between the subject and the verb?

6. When is but translated sondern?

7. When has it usually a contradictory meaning?

8. When is but after not translated aber?

- 9. How is but translated after a negation (not excepted) in the same sentence?
- 10. When is but translated nur and erst?

Conversation.

Tell me why your hands are not clean?

Because I have been working

in the garden.

Why did you not clean them? I have not had the time yet to do so.

Could (Subj.) I see you to-mor-

row morning?

Yes, but when would you like to come?

At half past nine if it is convenient to (Dat.) you.

Very well, I shall expect you at that time.

Do you know when the steamboat will arrive?

I think at seven o'clock.
Do you expect somebody?

Yes, my brother telegraphed me, that he will (Subj.) come by the steamboat this evening. Why does he not take the rail-

way?

He always prefers travelling by water.

But now with this fog it is rather dangerous.

My brother does not care much about that.

Sagen Sie mir, warum Ihre Sände nicht rein sind?

Weil ich im Garten gearbeitet habe.

Warum reinigten Sie sie nicht? Ich habe noch keine Zeit gehabt, es zu thun.

Könnte ich Sie morgen früh sprechen?

Ja, aber wann würden Sie gerne kommen?

Um halb zehn, wenn es Ihnen angenehm ist.

Gut, ich werde Sie um diese Zeit erwarten.

Wissen Sie, wann das Dampfboot ankommen wird?

Ich glaube um sieben Uhr. Erwarten Sie Jemand?

Ja, mein Bruder telegraphirte mir, daß er heute Abend mit dem Dampsbootkommen werde.

Warum kommt er nicht mit der Eisenbahn?

Er zieht immer den Wasserweg

Aber jest bei biesem Rebel ist es ziemlich gefährlich.

Mein Bruder macht sich nicht viel baraus.

Reading Exercise No. 43.

Der Weinhändler1 Georgs I.

Ein Weinhändler,1 Hoflieferant2 Georgs I. von England, war ein Günftling3 desselben und pflegte4 zu den königlichen⁵ Sagden⁶ zugelassen⁷ zu werden. Bei der Rückfehr8 von der Jagde unterhielt sich der König eines Tages sehr leutselig9 mit ihm und ritt eine beträchtliche10 Strecke Weges11 an seiner Seite. Der dienstthuende12 Lord flüsterte13, als des Königs Aufmerksamkeit14 durch einige vorisbergehende15 Leute abgelenkt16 wurde, dem Weinhändler etwas ins Ohr¹⁷. Der Monarch, dem das nicht entging18, fragte seinen Lieferanten19 in auter Laune20: —Was hat der Lord zu Ihnen gesagt?—Der Weinhändler1 antwortete:—Sire, ich habe mich unabsichtlich21 gegen Ew. Majestät unehrbietig22 betragen. Mylord sagte mir, daß ich meinen Sut abnehmen muffe, wenn Ew. Majestät mit mir sprechen. Allein haben Em. Majestät die Gnade23 zu bedenken²⁴, daß mein Hut, wenn ich auf der Jagd? bin, an meiner Perricke25 befestigt26 ist, und meine Perricke25 an meinem Kopfe27. Ich felbst aber befinde mich auf dem Rücken²⁸ eines muthigen²⁹ Rosses³⁰, so daß, wenn ein Ding31 herunter32 kommt, wir alle zusammen herunter32 müssen.—Der König lachte33 herzlich34 über diese drollige35 Entschuldigung36 und erlaubte ihm gern, den Sut auf dem Ropfe²⁷ zu behalten, wenn er auf der Sagd6 mit ihm spreche.

1 wine merchant, 2 purveyor to the court, 3 favourite, 4 to use, pflegen, 5 royal, 6 the hunt, die Jagd, 7 to admit, zulassen (irr.), 8 return, 9 affably, 10—11 considerable way, 12 attending, 13 to whisper, flüstern, 14 attention, 15 passing, 16 to divert, ablenken, 17 ear, 18 to escape, *entgehen (irr.), 19 purveyor, 20 good humoured, 21 unintentionally, 22 disrespectfully, 23 grace, kindness, 24 to consider, to observe, bedenken (irr.), 25 wig, 26 to fasten, befestigen, 27 head, 28 back, 29 mettlesome, 30 horse, 31 thing, 32 down, 33 to laugh at, lachen über, 34 heartily, 35 droll, 36 excuse.

Forty-fourth Lesson.

Bierundvierzigste Lektion.

Remarks on Conjunctions (Adverbs & Prepositions)

For, if a conjunction (i. e. in the meaning of because), is always translated benn: as,

3ch kann nicht bezahlen, benn ich habe kein Geld bei mir. I cannot pay, for I have no money with me.

For, if a preposition, see pages 181 & 186.

And is the translation of the English also, too, as well.

Too, if not having the meaning of as well, is an adverb and translated zn, being then found before adjectives and adverbs; as, Diefer out ift zu groß. This hat is too large.

Besides, if a conjunction (i. e. in the meaning of moreover), is translated auterbem; as,

Es war falt; außerbem ichneite es. It was cold; besides it snowed.

Besides, if a preposition, is translated auger: as:

Außer Ihrem Bater konnte auch Ihr Bruber helsen. Besides your father, your brother was also able to help.

Yet, still, if conjunctions (i.e. in the meaning of nevertheless, however), are translated body; as,

Er war hier, boch sah ich ihn nicht. He was here, yet I did not see him.

Still, if adverb, and yet, with a negation, are translated noch; as, If In Bater noch zu Hause? Is your father still at home? Er ift noch nicht ausgegangen. He has not gone out yet.

Then(*), is translated bann, either as a conjunction or as an adverb, if having the meaning of afterwards, thereupon or in that case; as,

Buerst ging er nach Hause, bann sam er zu uns. At sirst he went home, then he came to our house.

Then, as an adverb having no particular meaning and used in direct or indirect questions as a kind of exclamation, is translated benn; as,

Bas fagte er benn? Then what did he say? Fragen Sie ihn, warum er es benn nicht thun will. Ask him why he will not do it then.

When, if a conjunction, is generally translated wenn; except when not meaning as or after; as,

Rommen Sie, wenn ich ju Saufe bin. Come when I am at home.

Note.—In this case also sometimes wann instead of wenn is used if distinctly referring to time.

When, if a conjunction, and meaning as or after is translated als (the verb being then either in the Imperfect or Pluperfect tense); as,

Als er mich 1ah, sprach er mit mir. When he saw me, he spoke to me. Ihr Bruber tam, als Sie ansgegangen waren. Your brother came when you had gone out.

When, as an adverb of interrogation (in direct or indirect questions), is always wonn: as,

Bann erhielten Sie meinen Brief? When did you receive my letter? Bissen Sie, wann er tommen wird? Do you know when he will come?

^{(* &}quot;Then" meaning "at that time" is translated bamale.

the caution, die Vorsicht | the eye, das Auge cautious, porsichtia the darkness, bie Dunfelheit

" ear, bas Ohr Plur: die Ohren " ebb(-tide), bie Ebbe everywhere, überall

Plur: Die Augen " flood, die Fluth

" fog, mist, ber Nebel " grammar, bie Gram-" gun, rifle, bas Gewehr punctual, pünktlich

the progress, ber Forte ichritt to recognize, erkennen irr. the smoke, der Rauch to smoke, rauchen unpunetual, unpunitiich visible, sichtbar welcome, willfommen

Exercise No. 44.

- 1. We must make haste, for the flood is coming.-What did you pay for this grammar ?- I can lend (Dat.) you my gun for a week.-Man (der Mensch) has two ears; he also has two eyes.—Will my friend be welcome as well? Yes, he toob willa be welcome. - You are too cautious. Better too much than too little. - Your task is done (made) unpunctually, besides it is written badly.—Besides the darkness [there] was (herrschen) a heavy (stark) fog.—One could not see the fire, yet the smoke was visible everywhere. - I have many and good cigars, still I do not like to smoke. -Are you still the same punctual man? -(The) ebb-tide has not yet arrived (*eintreten irr.). Then we must wait still longer.—It lightened and thundered for some time (eine Zeitlang). then it rained. —Why will you sell your houseb thena? —Come when I am not at (the) work. - When the weather is finer we shall go out. - I recognized him when he had told (Dat.) me his name.—The fire broke out when all were sleeping.—When can you grant my request?—Don't ask me when I can do that.
- 2. Die Krankheit der armen Frau war nicht gefährlich. doch konnte fie nicht arbeiten. Ich weiß nicht, wann ich die Rechnung bezahlt habe; außerdem habe ich auch die Quittung verloren. verließen den Gafthof, als die Sonne aufging. Man konnte nicht unterscheiben, was für ein Schiff es war, denn es ist noch zu duntel gewesen. Bas, Sie sind noch im Bett! Zuerst gab er mir feine Antwort, dann fagte er mir Alles. Sagen Sie mir, wann ber Zahnarzt meinen Bahn ausziehen fann. Warum sind Sie benn hier? Diese Aufgabe ift nicht ju schwer. Besuchen Gie mich, wenn ich zu Sause bin. Werde ich Ihnen dann willkommen sein? Sie jollten auf einige Wochen in die Schweiz geben.

When the whole party is present, he will make (halten) his speech. At first I looked for you everywhere, then I went home. time was it when you spoke to (mit) the gentleman? gun each manb hada a revolver. We came to the river when the steamboat had already started. I offered him the money three times and still he would (wollen) not accept it. One could see the smoke when it became daylight (Tag). He was drinking very much wine, besides, he was also smoking too much. When did the party set out? Is the dentist still at home? Yes, he has not gone out yet. Knock at the door when you find it shut (schliessen), and I will then open it to (Dat.) you. I work very much, yet I do not make any progress.

Questions on Grammar.

1. How is for translated if a conjunction, and how if a preposition?

2. What is the translation of auch in English?

- 3. How is too rendered, if being an adverb and not having the meaning of as well?
- 4. How is besides translated, if a conjunction, and how if a preposition?
- 5. When are yet and still rendered doch, and when noch?
- 6. When is then translated dann, when denn, and when damals?
- 7. How is when generally translated if a conjunction?

8. How is it translated if meaning as or after?

9. How is when translated if an adverb of interrogation?

Conversation.

Why are you always so unpunctual?

I always go to-bed too late, and therefore I cannot get up in time (bei Zeiten).

Then you ought to go to-bed earlier.

I shall do so as often as possible.

Will you pay me a visit (Besuch m.) when you come to N.?

Yes, I shall come and see you (or call on you).

I cannot remember, when we saw one another last.

I also cannot remember (it).

Is it not five months since?

It may be as long as that.
Do you like smoking?
Yes, I am very fond of it.
Are you smoking tobacco?
No, I like cigars much better.

What cigars have you? Partly German, partly Havanah cigars Warum kommen Sie immer so unpünktlich?

Ich gehe immer zu spät zu Bett, und baher kann ich nicht bei Beiten aufstehen.

Dann sollten Sie früher zu Bett geben.

Ich werde es so oft als möglich thun.

Werden Sie mir einen Besuch machen, wenn Sie nach N. kommen?

Ja, ich werde Sie besuchen (or bei Ihnen vorsprechen).

Ich kann mich nicht erinnern, wann wir einander zuletzt gesehen haben.

Auch ich kann mich bessen nicht erinnern.

Sind es nicht schon fünf Monate?

Es kann ichon fo lange ber fein. Rauchen Sie gern?

Ja, ich rauche sehr gern.

Rauchen Sie Tabak?

Nein, ich rauche viel lieber Ci-

Was für Cigarren haben Sie? Theils beutsche, theils Habana-Cigarren.

Reading Exercise No. 44.

Dechant1 Swift und fein Diener.2

Als der verstorbene3 Dechant1 Swift, von einem Diener2 begleitet, einst eine Reise machte, kehrten4 sie in einem Wirthshauses ein und blieben dort über Nacht.6 Um nächsten Morgen verlangte? ber Dechant seine Stiefel, worauf der Diener2 sie ihm ungeputt8 brachte. Sein Herr bemerkte es und sagte: Was ist das, Thomas? -Da9 Sie reiten wollen und es heute regnet,-antwortete dieser,—so glaubte ich, sie würden bald wieder schmutig10 werben .- Gut, -- fagte ber Dechant, 1 -- geh' und mach' bie Pferde fertig!-Mittlerweile¹¹ gab er dem Wirthe¹² den Auftrag13, seinem Diener2 kein Früstück14 zu geben. Als15 Thomas zurudkehrte16 und meldete17, daß die Bferde fertig seien, befahl ihm der Dechant dieselben vorzuführen18.-Aber Herr Dechant1 ich habe mein Frühstück14 noch nicht gehabt,- fagte Thomas.- Thut nichts19,- fagte der Dechant1, -bu würdest boch bald wieder hungrig20 werden.-Sie faßen21 auf und ritten22 fort; der Dechant1 zog ein Buch aus der Tasche und fing an zu lesen. Unterwegs begegnete ihnen ein Herr. Als er den Doktor lesen sah, wollte er ihn nicht stören23, ritt vorbei24 und redete25 den Diener2 an:-Wer ist dieser Fremde26?-Mein Herr,-antwortete Thomas.—Das fann ich mir denken, dummer27 Mensch; aber wohin reitet ihr?-In den himmel!- Warum fagft bu das?—Weil ich faste28, und mein Herr betet29.—

1 dean, 2 servant, 3 deceased, 4 to put up, *einkehren, 5 inn, 6 to pass the night, *über Nacht bleiben (irr.), 7 to want, verlangen, 8 uncleaned, 9 as, 10 dirty, 11 in the mean-time, 12 innkeeper, 13 order, 14 breakfast, 15 when, 16 to return, *zurückkehren, 17 to announce, melden, 18 to bring to the door, vorführen, 19 never mind, 20 hungry, 21 to mount (a horse), *aufsitzen (irr.), 22 to ride away, *fortreiten (irr.), 23 to disturb, stören, 24 to ride by, *vorbeireiten (irr.), 25 to address, anreden, 26 stranger, 27 silly, 28 to fast, fasten, 29 to pray, beten.

Forty-fifth Lesson.

Fünfundvierzigste Lettion.

Remarks on Conjunctions (Adverbs & Prepositions) (continued).

As, introducing a dependent clause, is translated als, ba, or wie, as follows:

- It is translated all, if denoting time, and then meaning when; as,
 All id nad Sanfe tam, fand id Hire Thure offen. As I came home, I found your door open.
- 2. It is translated ba, if denoting reason, and then meaning since (*); as, 3d muß es glauben, da Sie es felbst versidern. I must believe it, as you assert it yourself.
- It is translated wie, in most other cases, not meaning when or since then; as,—Sie sind nicht gesommen, wie Sie versprochen haben. You did not come as you promised.

In comparisons, not so...as, is translated night io...als (or wie) and as...as by even on...als (or wie) (see page 80).

If there is no comparison as...as is rendered by ip...ais (or vie) (see also foot-note (*) on page 194); as,

Machen Sie die Uebersehung so gut als möglich. Do the translation as well as possible.

Before, if a conjunction, (i. e. if introducing a dependent clause), is translated ene (or bevor); as,

I sold my horse before it became too old.

Before, if an adverb (of time), is translated worker; as,

Waren Sie vorher bort? Were you there before? Bir famen fünf Minuten vorher. We came five minutes before.

Before, if a preposition (i.e. if preceding its noun or pronoun), is translated vor: as,

I was there before you. Bir famen fünf Minuten vor der Gesellichaft. We came five minutes before the party.

If, denoting condition, is translated wenn; as,

Ich werde morgen abreisen, wenn ich keinen Brief von Ihnen erhalte. I shall depart to-morrow, if I do not receive a letter from you.

NOTE.—When after if (menn) the verb is in the Imperfect or Pluperfect tense, the subjunctive mood must be used; as,

Ich würde Ihnen ein Messer geben, wenn ich eines hätte. I should give you a knife if I had one.

If, in the meaning of whether, is translated ob: as,

Ican write.

Note. — Though, although, are translated obgleich (obligion or obwohl).

Db. gleich, etc. are found sometimes separated; as,

Obgleich ich Sie nicht fand or Ob ich Sie gleich nicht fand. Although I did not find you.

^{(*) &}quot;Since," referring to time, is translated feit (or feithem) if a conjunction; feither (or feithem) if an adverb, and feit if a preposition.

the advice, ber Nath Plur: see page 17 afterwards, nadher the alteration, bie Menberung back, quriid to follow (to observe, to obey), befolgen (traps) the hair, bas Haar Plur: die Haare " head, der Kopf

haber

", head, der Kopf
", health, die Gesindheit
", novel, der Roman
", offer, das Anerbieten
", partner, der Theils

the permission, bie Er' laubniß
to presume, vermuthen
the promise, bas Ber.
sprechen
quiek, ichnell
slow, langfam

Exercise No. 45.

1. As (when) the clock struck eleven, I went out.—I was present, as (when) he made (Dat.) you that offer.—You ought to stay at home, as (since) your health is still rather indifferent (schwach).—As (since) I gave you (the) permission, you may (können) do it.—It happened as I presumed.—My hair is not so black as yours.—The head of this dog is as big as that of that dog.—Walk as quickly as possible.—Write as distinctly as you can.—Before I can give you such ar promise I must speak to (mit) my partner.—Do it, before it will be too late.—Why did you not make this alteration before?—Your brother-in-law should follow my advice before and not afterwards.—I saw him before his last illness.—You will arrive before me.—If you walk so slowly, you will find (treffen) nobody at home when you arrive.—Would you be glad (s. p. 167) if he came alone?—If you had not listened you would not know that.—Ask him if (whether) he has received my letter.—I shall try if (whether) I can buy the second volume of this novel.

Es war gerade halb acht, als wir die Stadt erreichten. Wenn Sie nicht sleißiger sind, werden Sie keinen Fortschritt machen. Wie waren schon vor sieben Uhr im Theater. Schreiben Sie den Brief ab, ehe Sie ihn auf die Post tragen (bring). Da Sie jeht genesen sind, sollten Sie aufs Land gehen. Könnten Sie nicht einige Minuten vorher kommen? Ich weiß nicht, ob eis möglich sein wird. Ich verstehe das, ob ich gleich nicht so viel Erfahrung habe als Sie. Es würde mir leid sein, wenn Sie das Geld nicht empfängen. Sie müssen wie Ihr Bater gelebt hat. Ich spreche nicht so gut Deutsch als Sie. Wir werden jedenfalls vor Ihnen im Theater sein.

I will relate it as I have heard it myself. Would you buy this garden, if you had more money? As (when) you entered the room I was conversing with no one. Please tell (Dat.) me if (whether) that is your over-coat or mine. The ship sank before the crew (Mannschaft f.) could be (Passive) rescued. We could not buy any gloves, as (since) all the shops were closed (schliessen). My cousin has been (trans: is) ill, since he has been (is) in London. I do not know whether I can compel her husband to pay the bill of exchange. Do you think, that they will be back before half an hour? Perhaps they will be here a few minutes before. You could (Subj.) make (Dat.) him no other offer if he did not accept that.

Questions on Grammar.

- When is as introducing a dependent clause, translated by als, when by da, and when by wie?
- 2. In comparisons how is not so...as translated and how as...as?

3. How is as...as translated, if there is no comparison?

4. How is before translated if a conjunction, how if an adverb, and how if a preposition?

5. How is if translated if denoting condition?

6. In which mood must the Imperfect or Pluperfect be after if (wenn)?

7. How is if translated if meaning whether?

 Are ob and gleich, etc. in obgleich, obschon, obwohl, sometimes separated?

Conversation.

As you don't follow my advice, I can't grant your request.

It is impossible for me to follow it.

If you do not keep your promise, he will refuse to keep his.

That he can do as he likes?
Ask your father, if he has given (Dat.) the workman (the) permission to go.

I know my father has not given it, but perhaps my brother (has).

What kind of book is that? It is a German novel.

Are you allowed to read novels? Yes, as it is a German one, I

am allowed to do so.

Had you not better read other

German books as well?

I do that as often as possible.

1 do that as often as possible.

I should like to accept your offer if I could.

Why can you not accept it?

Because my partner does not like it.

Were you there when the party set out?

No, I was at my cousin's.

Da Sie meinen Rath nicht befolgen, kann ich Ihre Bitte nicht bewilligen.

Es ist mir unmöglich, ihn zu

befolgen.

Benn Sie Ihr Bersprechen nicht halten, wird er sich weigern seines zu halten.

Das kann er machen, wie er will. Fragen Sie Ihren Bater, ob er dem Arbeiter die Erlaubniß gegeben hat zu gehen.

Ich weiß, mein Later hat sie nicht gegeben, aber vielleicht

mein Bruder.

Was für ein Buch ist das? Es ist ein deutscher Roman. Dürfen Sie Romane lesen?

Ja, da es ein deutscher ist, darf

ich es thun.

Sollten Sie nicht lieber auch andere deutsche Bücher lesen? Ich thue das so oft als mög-

Ich würde Ihr Anerbieten gerne annehmen, wenn ich könnte.

Warum können Sie es nicht annehmen?

Weil mein Theilhaber es nicht wünscht.

Waren Sie da, als die Gefellschaft abreifte?

Nein, ich war bei meinem Better.

Reading Exercise No. 45.

Der schlaue! Pferdedieb.

Der reiche Graf? L... in Florenz hatte ein junges Pferd von großer Schönheit3 gekauft, welches er auf eines von seinen Landgütern4 schickte. Das Landaut4 lag in einer abgelegenen⁵ Gegend mehr als zwanzig Meilen⁶ von der Stadt entfernt,7 und der Graf2 kam nicht oft und nur zu gewissen Zeiten im Jahre dahin. — Ein sehr schlauer Dieb, der dies Alles in Erfahrung gebrachts hatte, glaubte. daß es ihm gelingen könnte das Pferd auf folgende Beise in seine Gewalt9 zu bekommen: - Er schaffte sich eine Livree10 an, wie die Diener des Grafen2 fie trugen, und suchte Kenntniß11 über die Feldarbeiten12 auf dem Landgut4 zu erhalten. Dann erschien er eines Tages in der Livree10 und zu Pferde13 auf demfelben und gab vor14, daß der Graf2 ihn geschickt hatte, um einige Befehle15, welche auf die Feldarbeiten12 Bezug16 haben, zu überbringen17. Nach fünf Tagen kam der Dieb wieder und überbrachte17 neue Befehle15. Während dieser zwei Besuche18 hatte er sich überzengt, daß es ganz unmöglich war, das Pferd, welches immer scharf bewacht20 wurde, auf gewöhnlichem Wege zu stehlen. Daher änderte er seinen Plan dahin21, daß er acht Tage später zum dritten Male mit einigen Befehlen15 erschien und zugleich22 sagte, der Graf2 hätte ihm befohlen, das Pferd nach Florenz zu bringen, weil es zugeritten23 werden follte.

(Fortfetung folgt.)

1 cunning, 2 count, 3 beauty, 4 the country-estate, das Landgut, 5 out of the way, 6 leagues, 7 distant, 8 to learn, in Erfahrung bringen, 9 possession, 10 livery, 11 knowledge, 12 labours in the field, 13 on horse-back, 14 to pretend, vorgeben (irr.), 15 orders, 16 to refer, Bezug haben, 17 to deliver, überbringen (irr.), 18 visits, 19 to convince, überzeugen, 20 to guard, bewachen, 21 to that, 22 at the same time, 23 to break in (a horse), zureiten (irr.).

Forty-sixth Lesson.

Sechsundvierzigste Leftion.

Remarks on Conjunctions (Adverbs & Prepositions) (continued).

After is translated nadbem, if a conjunction (i. e. if introducing a dependent clause); as,

Er tam, nachbem Sie bas haus verlassen hatten. He came after you had left the house.

After, being a preposition, is translated near (s. p. 180), and by nather, if an adverb, meaning afterwards then (s. p. 170).

That, if a conjunction, is translated bağ (s. p. 194).—If a demonstrative adjective or pronoun and a relative pronoun (see pages 48, 96 & 104).

The...the..., if followed by a comparative each, are translated by je...defto (or umip).—Je, being subordinative throws the verb to the end, whilst befto (or umip), being co-ordinative (s. p. 190) removes the subject after its verb; as,

Se länger ich ihn ansah, besto mehr lachte er. The longer I looked at him, the more he laughed.

3nbcm is generally used, if *while* or *in* precede a present participle which is the verb of a dependent clause, or can precede it without altering the sense.

In German the present participle cannot be used, and the verb with the proper subject must be in the same tense as that of the main clause (mostly in the imperfect); as,

Er sah zurüd, indem er ind Haus trat. He looked back, (while) entering the house. Indem er vom Fenster herabsprang, verlette er sich. (In) jumping from the window, he hurt himself.

Office daß (without) and badurd, daß (by) are used, when in English a present participle is the verb of a dependent clause and it is preceded by without or by.

In German no present participle can be used and the verb with the proper subject is usually in the same tense as that of the main clause; as,

Er kan, ohne daß er mich fragte. He came without asking(*) me. Ich that daß, ohne daß er es wußte. I did that without his knowing it. Ich that daß, ohne daß ber Onlel es wußte. I did that without the uncle's knowing it. Ich erhielt die Stelle dadurch, daß ich zum Präsibenten ging. I got the situation by going to the president.

Um...zu is translated in order to.—Um is introducing the clause, whilst zu with the infinitive after, is put last; as,

Wir gingen in die Stadt, um den König zu sehen. We went to town in order to see the king.

Um...zu must also be used in translation of to, if to is employed in the sense of in order to; as,

Der Arbeiter wurde geschickt, um nach den Fenstern zu sehen. The workman was sent to look after the windows.

^(*) If the participle directly follows "without," it may also be rendered by the infinitive with zu; thus: Er kam ohne mich zu fragen.

the attack, ber Angriff to alight, to get out, *aus-

fteigen irr.
the battle, die Schlacht
,, consent, die Einwilligung the courage, ber Muth to deserve, to earn, ber-

bienen excited, aufgeregt the fare, bas Fahrgelb to frighten, erighteten to graway, *fortgehen irr. to hesitate, zögern to inform, benachrichtigen to insult, offend, belei-

bigen

the intention, die Absicht ,, language, die Sprache

to laugh at, lacen über (Acc.) (auslacen) the pane (of a window), bie Scheibe (Fen=

ftericheibe) to retire, sich zurückziehen the seat, der Sitz irr. " sofa, das Sopha " telegram, das Tele-

gramm

Exercise No. 46.

- 1. After I had learned the French language, I commenced to learn German.-My father preferred to live in the country after he had retired from (the) business .- On the day after the battle the enemy made another (noch einen) attack .- It is true that I had not the courage for (zu) it.—It was the same gentleman that insulted me.—The more excited you [will] become, the quieter I shall be. - The longer we are hesitating the more difficult it will be to get a good seat in the theatre. -I paid the fare while getting out. -In endeavouring to swim across (über) the river he was drowned.—Knocking at the door he called my name. - Why did you come without informing me of your intention? -The boy was (being) punished without his deserving it. - I cannot look at that man without laughing at him. - We got the money by selling our sofa. —I shall give my consent in order to please (qefälliq zu sein) your partner.—In order not to frighten you I did not send (Dat.) you a telegram.—To be able to retire he gave (übergeben) his (the) business to (Dat.) his son.
- 2. Je langfamer Sie fprechen, defto beffer kann ich Sie Er tam mit seinem Sohn ins Zimmer, indem er mit verstehen. ihm lachte und sprach (talked). Wir reisten nach Paris, ohne daß unsere Eltern es wußten. Wir beeilten uns, um nicht zu ivät zu kommen (be). Ich reiste sogleich (directly) ab, nachdem ich Ihr Telegramm empfangen hatte. Er verfaufte das Bferd. ohne daß er mich um (my) Erlaubniß fragte. Um nicht entdeckt zu werden, gundeten wir fein Feuer an. Der Dieb öffnete bas Fenfter dadurch, daß er eine Scheibe gerbrach.

The children went away without my remarking it .- The earlier you come the better it will be. After I had read the book, I read it once more (noch einmal). We were silent in order not to offend them. While putting on his hat he left the room. Why did you come after me? In shutting (zumachen) the windows I broke a pane. The physician was called after the workman was already dead. He went to America (in order) to earn more money. You have made him your (ihn sich zum) enemy by having offended him. I came at a quarter past nine and my friend half an hour after (afterwards). The more industrious you are the more money you will earn. Our soldiers gained the battle after they had taken (fassen) fresh courage.

Questions on Grammar.

1. How is after translated if a conjunction, how if a preposition, and how if an adverb?

2. How is that translated if a conjunction?

How are the...the..., followed by a comparative each, translated?
 What kind of conjunctions are je and desto (or umso)?

5. When is indem generally used?6. When are ohne dass and dadurch, dass used?

7. Of what is um...zu the translation, and where is each placed in the sentence?

8. When must um...zu be used in translation of to?

Conversation.

How long will you sit up tonight?

Till half past ten.

Then most likely I shall go tobed after you.

You should not read so long or you will spoil your eyesight.

After I have commenced reading I cannot leave off (aufhören).

What are you reading then? It is the *latest* novel by H.

Is it very interesting (interessant)?

Yes, very interesting; he knows how to write novels.

Is this the only (einzige) volume? No, there are two more.

The bill of exchange will not be paid without your signing it.

Where am I to put my name?

On the back (Rückseite f.), below the other names.

Will that do now? Yes, that will do.

Could (Subj.) you lend (Dat.) me some sheets of note-paper?

Yes, I can; how many do you want?

As many as you can spare (entbehren).

Wie lange wollen Sie heute Abend aufbleiben?

Bis halb elf.

Dann werde ich wahrscheinlich nach Ihnen zu Bett gehen.

Sie sollten nicht fo lange lesen, ober Sie werden Ihre Augen berderben.

Nachdem ich angefangen habe zu lesen, kann ich nicht aufhören.

Bas lefen Sie benn?

Es ist der neueste Roman von

Sit er fehr intereffant?

Ja, sehr interessant; er weiß, wie man Romane schreibt.

Ist dies der einzige Band? Nein, es sind noch zwei da.

Der Wechsel wird nicht bezahlt werden, ohne daß Sie ihn unterschreiben.

Wohin soll ich meinen Namen schreiben?

Auf die Rückseite, unter die andern Namen.

Genügt das jett? Ja, das genügt.

Rönnten Gie mir einige Bogen Briefpapier leihen?

Ja, das kann ich; wie viele wünschen Sie?

So viele Sie entbehren können.

Reading Exercise No. 46.

Der fchlane Pferdedieb (Fortfetung).

Da der Verwalter! nicht den geringsten Verdacht schöpfte,2 so zögerte er nicht, ihm das Pferd mitzugeben.3 —Der Dieb ritt4 damit auf der Straße nach Florenz ab. Er schlugs aber bald einen andern Weg ein, und nachdem er etwa zwanzig Meilen ziemlich schnell geritten war, ftiege er vor dem erften Wirthshause ab, welches er an ber Straße fand. hier brachte er das Pferd in ben Stall,7 wo er sich umfleibete.8 Während er in die Schenkeg ging, fah er einen Wagen vor dem Wirthshause anhalten10, aus welchem zu feinem nicht geringen11 Er= staunen12 und Schrecken13 der Eigenthümer des Pferdes ausstieg14. Des Diebes erster Gedanke15 war, daß der Graf sogleich, nachdem er abgeritten,4 auf das Landgut gekommen ware und fich felbst zu seiner Berfolgung16 auf= gemacht17 hätte. Sedoch erkannte18 er bald, daß dies ein Frrthum war, da weder der Graf noch einer von feinen beiben Leuten nach ihm ober bem Pferde fragte. Nun aber stellte¹⁹ sich eine andere Furcht²⁰ bei ihm ein. Er war überzeugt21, daß wenn entweder der Rutscher oder ber Diener des Grafen in den Stall' ging, fie fogleich das Pferd erkennen18 würden. Aus dieser Noth22 half er sich durch eine fühne23 List24.—Er that, als ob er den Grafen gar nicht kenne und fragte den Diener, wer es wäre. (Schluß folgt.)

1 steward, 2 to conceive a suspicion, Verdacht schöpfen, 3 to deliver up, mitgeben (irr.), 4 to start (on horseback), *abreiten (irr.), 5 to take (a way), einschlagen (irr.), 6 to alight (from a horse), *absteigen (irr.), 7 stable, 8 to change clothes, sich umkleiden, 9 tavern, 10 to stop, anhalten (irr.), 11 slight, 12 astonishment, 13 terror, 14 to alight (from a vehicle), *aussteigen (irr.), 15 idea, 16 pursuit, 17 to set out, sich aufmachen, 18 to perceive, recognise, erkennen (irr.), 19 to come, sich einstellen, 20 fear, 21 to convince, überzeugen, 22 difficulty, 23 bold. 24 cunning.

Forty-seventh Lesson.

Siebenundvierzigfte Lettion.

Remarks on Conjunctions (Adverbs & Prepositions) (concluded).

So...auf, (or wie auf.) are the translation of however if an adjective or adverb is between however and the subject.—So or wie is introducing the clause, and auf. is generally placed after the subject, in its usual place; as,

Id fann bas Pferb nicht kaufen, so billig es auch sein mag. I cannot buy the horse, however cheap it may be. Sie können ihn nicht mehr sehen, so oft Sie auch kommen. You cannot see him any more, however often you come.

In damit...nicht, lest, wenn...nicht (or wofern...nicht), unless, --bamit and wenn or wofern introduce the clause, and nicht is put in its usual place.

After damit...night the verb is in the subjunctive mood.

Ex.: Sagen Sie es zu ihm, bamit er es nicht vergesse. Say it to him lest he forget it. Ich werde morgen zu Ihnen fommen, wenn Sie mir nicht vorher schreiben. I shall come to you to-morrow, unless you write to me before.

Note.—So (so, thus) is often employed in German for introducing the main clause, when the dependent clause stands first and is beginning with ba, wenn, obgleich (or objeton, obwohl), jo...auch (or wie...auch); as,

Obgleich ich nicht bort war, so weiß ich boch Alles. Although I was not there, yet I know everything.

So is not translated in English and has usually a meaning corresponding to then.—In German it may be used or not.

The Interjections.

The Interjections are invariable, and are used as in English.

—The most usual are:—

ah, ah!
ad, alas!
oh, o, ok!
o wehe, O dear, alas!
pfui, fie!
halt, halt, stop!
holla, holla, hollo!
jachte, gently!
ei, why!
nun, how, well, why!
gut benn, well then!
fort, be gone, be off!
it, fill, hush, hist!

leiber, unhappily!
heifa, huzza!
hurra, hurrah!
hm, hem!
jo, indeed!
Uchtung, take care!
Seil, hail!
wehe, woe!
Feuer, fire!
Gottlob, God be praised!
zu Hüffe, help!
Mord, murder!
Diebe, thieves!

the amount, ber Betrag angry, zornig beneficial, zuträglich beneficial, zuträglich busy, beichäftigt to call for, atholen to catch cold, fich erfälten dirty, schmutig the distress, need, bie Noth to disturb, fören

excellent, vortrefflich to fall down, *her or hinunterfallen (irr.) famous, berühmt frequent, häufig in future, in Bulunft the insult, offence, die Beleibigung to kill, tödten the medicine, die Argenet

to murder, ermorben to pain, idmerzen the pardon, bie Berzeißung the stairs, bie Treppe(sing) the stove, ber Dien Plur: bie Defen to use, to-need, brauden the wound, bie Wunde

Exercise No. 47.

- 1. I cannot take (einnehmen irr.) the medicine however beneficial it may be.—We shall go out however dirty the street may be.—I shall not go with you to the theatre however frequently you go there.—Let us go, lest we disturb you.—Telegraph to (Dat.) your friend lest he come.—He will not forget this insult unless you beg his (ihn um) pardon.—I shall not accompany you unless you call for me.—Alas! how my wound pains me.—Ah! is that the famous poet N.?—Hurrah! the battle is won.—God be praised! all distress is over (vorüber).—Help! thieves, thieves!—Well! are you still angry?—Be gone! nobody is allowed to stay here.—Woe! they (one) are killing our friends.—Fire! the whole house is burning.
- 2. Er soll Handschuhe anziehen, damit er seine Hände nicht schmutzig mache. Ich kann den Dsen nicht brauchen, so vortresselich er auch sein mag. Psiui! wer hat dies gethan? Halt! es ist zu spät. In Zukunst muß ich ohne Sie gehen, wenn Sie nicht früher kommen. Still! das Kind schläst. Uchtung, der Stein fällt! Da Sie nicht in die Oper gehen wollten, so nahm ich nur ein Billet. Wenn mein Buchdrucker dieses Vuch nicht drucken kann, so muß ich zu einem andern gehen. Gottlob, Alle sind gerettet! So viel Sie auch darüber lachen, so ist es doch wahr. Sie werden den Betrag des Wechsels vergessen, wenn Sie ihn nicht ausschen. Obgleich er gefährlich verwundet ist, so ist doch nicht alle Hossmung verloren, daß er genesen werde. Gehen Sie langsamer, damit Sie nicht die Treppe hinuntersallen.

Oh! why have you done that? I cannot understand you unless you read to (Dat.) me louder. Stop! you have lost something. You must inform him of this loss, however great it may be. The thief murdered the (maid) servant, lest she [should] betray him. Hem! that may (kann) be. How, you are still here! You must not speak, unless you are (being) asked. Gently! don't break the looking-glass. Huzza how our horses are running! He will not understand you however slowly you speak. He will not go away unless we go first. Put on your hat lest you catch cold. I shall call for you at all events this avening, however busy I may be. Take care, lest you hurt yourself! Unless you call: "stop," the boat will not wait. I burned the newspaper lest he [should] read the telegram.

Questions on Grammar.

- 1. When is however translated by so...auch (or wie...auch)?
- 2. What place do so or wie occupy and where is auch placed generally?
- Where in damit...nicht and wenn...nicht (or wofern...nicht) are these words placed?
- 4. In which mood is the verb after damit ... nicht?
- 5. When is so often employed in German for introducing the main clause?
- 6. Is so translated in English, and is it necessary to use it in German?
- 7. Are Interjections variable?
- 8. How are they used?

Conversation.

Have you had your hair cut?

Yes, I had it cut yesterday.

Why did you not have it shorter?

I like to wear my hair long in winter lest I catch cold.

Don't you wish to buy this horse?

No, I shall not buy it, however excellent it may be.

Did you bring (the) to-day's newspaper?

Oh! I have forgotten it.

How could you forget that? I met a friend on the way, and while talking with him, I did not think of it [any] more.

Be quick now and fetch one.

Holla! is there nobody at home? Who is there? I want to see Mr. N.

He is not in just now.

Well! then I shall call again to-morrow.

May I ask you for (um Acc.)
your name?

Here is my card (Karte f.).

haben Sie sich das haar schneiben lassen?

Ja, ich ließ es mir gestern schneiben.

Warum ließen Sie es sich nicht fürzer schneiben?

Ich trage im Winter das Haar gerne lang, damit ich mich nicht erkälte.

Wollen Sie dieses Pferd nicht kaufen?

Nein, ich werbe es nicht kaufen, so vortrefslich es auch sein mag.

Brachten Sie die heutige Zeitung?

Dh! ich habe sie vergessen.

Wie konnten Sie das vergessen? Ich traf einen Freund unterwegs, und indem ich mit ihm sprach, dachte ich nicht mehr daran.

Gehen Sie jest schnell, und holen Sie eine.

Holla! ist Niemand zu Hause? Wer ist da?

Ich wünsche Herrn N. zu sprechen. Er ist augenblicklich nicht hier.

Gut! dann werde ich morgen wieder vorsprechen.

Darf ich um Ihren Namen bitten?

Sier ift meine Rarte.

Reading Exercise No. 47.

Der schlaue Pferdedieb. (Schluß)

Dann ging er zu ihm und fagte: "Wie ich bore, find Sie ber Graf Q ... aus Floreng!-Ich bin einer von ben Leuten bes Pferdehandlers1 Bandinelli, bon bem Ihre Gnaben2 fo manches Bferd gekauft haben. Er hat mich jett mit einem fehr schönen Pferde zu Ihnen geschickt, weil er glaubt, daß es Ihnen fehr gut gefallen3 werbe."- "Wo ist das Pferd?" fragte der Graf. "Es ist im Stalle; ich werbe es Ihnen gleich vorführen."4 - Sobald ber Graf und feine Leute dasselbe faben, erklärten5 fie einstimmig,6 daß biefes Pferd ganz bemjenigen gliche, welches ber Graf auf dem Landgut hatte. Der Graf, der nie gehofft hatte, ein gleiches? Pferd von so großer Schönheit⁸ zu finden, war höchst⁹ erfreut¹⁰ darüber, und sein Verlangen¹¹ es zu besithen, zeigte sich in seinen Mienen12 und Worten. Der Dieb ließ sich bas nicht entgehen, und als der Graf nach dem Preise fragte, forderte13 er 200 Zechinen. Zulet war er mit 180 Zechinen und einem guten Trinkgelb14 zu= frieden.—Da der Graf nun weder seinen Diener noch seinen Kutscher auf der weiten Reise, die er vorhatte15, entbehren16 mochte, um einen derfelben mit dem Pferde zurückzuschicken17: so fragte er den Dieb, ob er das Pferd für ihn nach Florenz bringen könnte. Derfelbe verstand18 fich dazu gegen eine geringe Belohnung¹⁹, und der Graf fuhr weiter20. Nach einer Viertelstunde ritt auch der Dieb ab, schlug aber gleich wieder einen andern Weg ein und brachte das Pferd nach Benedig, wo er es für 150 Be= chinen verkaufte.

1 horse-dealer, 2 honour, 8 to please, gefallen (irr. Dat.), 4 to bring before, vorführen, 5 to declare, erklären, 6 unanimously, 7 alike, 8 beauty, 9 most, 10 to rejoice, erfreuen, 11 desire, 12 features, 13 to ask, demand, fordern, 14 gratification, 15 to have before one, vorhaben (irr.), 16 to miss, entbehren, 17 to send back, zurückschicken, 18 to accede to, sich verstehen zu (irr.), 19 payment, 20 to drive on, *weiterfahren (irr.).

As appendix to the First Part of our Grammar we shall now give some rules for ascertaining the gender of nouns and for the formation of certain nouns ;-hints for the purpose of recognising regular verbs, -and also rules for the division of nouns into syllables.

As we think it superfluous to give exercises on these rules we advise the student to read them over carefully from time to time, which will suffice.

Although we have given in our vocabularies the most important exceptions in the declension of nouns it is now necessary that the student should go over all of them (on pages 13-17) in his spare time, so as to make himself thoroughly acquainted with the declension of German substantives. - However in the 2nd Part of our Grammar we shall continue to point out irregular declensions.

On the Gender of Nouns.

Every noun in the German language is either masculine, feminine or neuter.

Of the masculine gender are:

1. All names of males; as,

ber Mann, the man ber Arat, the physician ber Lome, the lion EXCEPTIONS: - The diminutives in then and lein (s. p. 219).

2. The names of mountains, winds, stones, seasons, months, and days; as,

ber Bejub, Vesuvius ber Oftwind, the eastwind ber Diamant, the diamond ber Frühling, spring ber Januar, January ber Montag, Monday

Remark.—Das Frühjahr, spring, and das Spätjahr, autumn being compound words, take the gender of their last component. But the masculine forms of these words (der Frühling, der Herbit) are very often preferred.

3. Nouns ending in all, en (not chen), ich, ig, ing and ling; as,

ber Stall, the stable ber Wagen, the carriage ber Teppich, the carpet Exceptions:

ber Honig, the honey ber haring, the herring ber Sperling, the sparrow

bas Metall, the metal das Meffing, the brass bas Beden, the basin bas Kissen, the cushion

bas Ding, the thing

bas Bappen, the coat of arms

and Infinitives used substantively; as,

bas Geben, walking bas Effen, eating

Of the feminine gender are:

1. All names of females; as,

bie Frau, the woman bie Löwin, the lioness

a.) Diminutives in then and lein (s. p. 219) and bas Mabthen, the girl; bas Fraulein, the young-lady.

b.) Das Menich, the wench; bas Beis, the woman, wife; and the compound word bas Frauenzimmer, the woman, female.

2. Most names of rivers; as,

bie Elbe, the Elbe bie Mer, the Iller

bie Donau, the Danube bie Weser, the Weser

Exceptions:

a.) ber Rhein, the Rhine ber Nectar, the Neckar ber Main, the Main

b.) Most names of rivers of foreign countries not ending in a and e, which are masculine; as,

ber Mil, the Nile ber Bo, the Po

3. Nouns of more than one syllable ending in e; as,

bie Birne, the pear bie Tinte, the ink

bie Sonne, the sun bie Rache, the revenge

Exceptions:-a) Der Friede, the peace; der Funte, the spark; der Glaube, the faith; der haufe, the heap; der Name, the name; der Raje, the cheese. b) Abstract substantives formed from adjectives, which are neuter; as,

bas Bute, the good bas Boje, the bad, etc.

c) Das Auge, the eye; bas Enbe, the end; bas Erbe, the inheritance, and the few neuter nouns with the prefixes Ge; like: bas Gemalbe, etc.

4. Most derivative words in ei, heit, feit, schaft, muth, ung and the foreign nouns in it, tat, ion; as,

die Arzenet, the medicine die Freiheit, the liberty die Festigseit, the firmness die Freundschaft, the friendship

bie Armuth, the poorness

bie Holfnung, the hope bie Bolitif, the politics bie Universität, the university

bie Mation, the nation

Exceptions:-Das Geichrei, the clamour; bas Petichaft, the seal; ber Bermuth, the wormwood.

Of the neuter gender are:

1. The letters of the alphabet; bas A, bas B, bas C, etc., the A, the B, the C, etc.

2. All non-substantive words used substantively, i.e. infinitives, adjectives, etc. when used substantively; as,

bas Singen, the singing bas Grün, the green

bas Ja, the yes, the aye bas Biertel, the fourth

3. All diminutives in then and lein, even those denoting males or females (s. p. 222); as,

bas Männchen, the little man bas Händchen, the little hand

bas Anäblein, the little boy bas Blumlein, the little flower

4. Names of metals, countries, towns, villages; as,

bas Golb, gold bas Silber, silver

Exceptions:

ber Robalt, cobalt ber Stahl, steel

ber Tomback, pinchbeck ber Wismuth, bismuth

bie or bas Platina, platina

bas grüne Fr'and, green Ireland(*)
bas lebhafte Paris, lively Paris

bie Schweiz, Switzerland(**) bie Bfalz, the Palatinate die Lausit, Lusatia

bie Rrimm, the Crimea bie Molbau, Moldavia

Also names of countries in et, which are feminine; as, bie Türfei, Turkey: bie Balachei, Wallachia

^(*) Names of countries, towns and villages which are neuter are culy used with the article if preceded by an adjective.

^(**) Names of countries which are feminine always take the article.

5. Most nouns beginning with the unaccented prefix Ge; as, bas Gebaube, the building bas Gebet, the prayer bas Gebuse, the chain of mountains Exceptions:

ber Gebrauch, the use
ber Gebarle, the thought
ber Gebarle, the thought
ber Gefallen, the pleasure
ber Geruch, the enjoyment
ber Geruch, the smell
ber Gefang, the singing
ber Gefang, the staste
ber Gefang, the staste
ber Gefant, the stench
ber Geminn, the gain

bie Gebult, the patience
bie Gefalt, the danger
bie Gemeinde, the parish
bie Gefalt, the story
bie Geflatt, the shape
bie Gewalt, the power

and all those which according to their termination (except in e) are feminine, like:—bie Gelegenheit, the opportunity

6. Most nouns ending in fal, fel, thum; as,

bas Schickal, destiny bas Räthsel, the riddle bas Alterthum, antiquity

Exceptions: bie Drangial, the oppression bie Mühial, the difficulty bie Trübjal, the trouble

ber Stöpfel, the stopper ber Arrthum, the error ber Reichthum, the riches

Many nouns ending in πίβ (or πίβ); as,
 bas βειgπίβ, the evidence; bas ઉεδάφτηϊβ, the memory

There are however, nearly as many that are feminine, of which the following are the principal:

bie Bedrängniß, the pressure
bie Betrübniß, the grief
bie Empfängniß, the conception
bie Erlenntniß, the perception
bie Erlenntniß, the perception

bie Erlaubniß, the permission bie Finsterniß, the darkness bie Kenntniß, the knowledge bie Wildniß, the wilderness

Compound Nouns.

Compound nouns take the gender of their last component; for instance:

masculine are:

ber Obsibaum, the fruit-tree | ber Kirchhof, the churchyard

feminine are:

bie Zimmerthure, the room-door | bie hofpartei, the court-party

neuter are:

bas Halsband, the collar, the necklace | bas Tijchtuch, the table-cloth

Exceptions:

ber Abideu, the abhorrence | bas Gegentheil, the contrary

and the words compounded with muth, the first component of which is no substantive, which are feminine; as,

bie Großmuth, the generosity | bie Schwermuth, the melancholy

Words having a double Gender.

To indicate their double meaning, the following nouns have a double gender(*):

a double gender(").

ber Banb, the volume, binding

ber Bauer(†), the peasant

ber Efper, the chorus

ber Gift, the present

bie Saft, the arrest

ber Hinbe, the customer

ber Runbe, the customer

ber Beiter, the conductor

ber Wange(f) the want

ber Mangel(†), the want bie Mark, {the mark (coin) the boundary mark

ber Menscht), man ber Messer, the measurer ber Schild, the shield ber See(†), the lake ber Sprosse, the descendant bie Steuer, the tax ber Strift, the pencil

ber Thor(†), the fool ber Berdienst, the gain, profit bie Wehr, the defence

bas Banb, the ribbon, tie(†)

bas Batto, the ribbon, tiet bas Batter, the cage bas Chor(†), the choir bas Ether, the inheritance bas Gift, the poison bas haft, the clasp, rivet bie heit, the guard, care bie Aunbe, the knowledge bie Letter, the ladder bie Mangel the mangel

bie Mangel, the mangle

bas Mart, the marrow

bas Menich(†), the wench bas Messer, the knife bas Schilb(†), the sign-board

bie See, the sea bie Sprosse, the step of a ladder bas Steuer, the steerage

bas Stift(†), the ecclesiastical foundation

bas Thor(†), the gate bas Berbienst, the merit bas Wehr, the wear, dam

Formation of Nouns by Derivation. Masculine Nouns.

1. Masculine nouns can generally be derived from verbs by changing the final en or n into er, verbs in ein dropping the e before I.—The radical vowel of substantives thus formed from verbs in en is frequently modified; as,

VERB:

lehren, to teach tangen, to dance erobern, to conquer heucheln, to play the hypocrite Noun:

ber Lehrer, the teacher ber Tänzer, the dancer ber Eroberer, the conqueror ber Heuchler, the hypocrite

2. From names of towns and villages names of males can be derived by adding er; as,

Bien, Vienna Frankfurt, Frankfort

ber Wiener, the native of Vienna ber Frankfurter, the native of Frankfort

In the same manner such names can very often be derived from names of countries:

bie Schweiz, Switzerland America, America England, England

ber Schweizer, the Swiss ber Americaner, the American ber Englänber, the Englishman

^(*) These nouns of course are declined according to their gender and termination.

^(†) Nouns marked with a (†) have an irregular declension.

Feminine Nouns.

1. Feminine nouns can generally be derived from verbs either by changing the final en or n of the infinitive into ung or nung, or by changing the final n into rei; as,

Verb:

milden, to mix

boffen, to hope

fiden, to embroider

Noun:

Noun

2. Feminine nouns are very often derived from adjectives by adding heit(*) or feit (or iqfeit); as,

Adjective: Noun:
flug, prudent bie Klugheit, the prudence
dantbar, thankful bie Dantbarfeit, the thankfulness
jüß, sweet bie Sißigfeit, the sweetness

 Feminine nouns are also derived from other nouns by adding iduft, which is somewhat corresponding to the English ship; as,

Noun: Fem. Noun: bie Freund, the friend bie Freundschip der Bürger, the citizen bie Bürgerschaft, the citizenship

4. Names of females are generally formed from the corresponding names of males by adding in to the latter;—but if the masculine ends in e this letter is dropped in the feminine; as,

der Lehrer, the (gentleman) teacher der König, the king der Rachbar, the neighbour der Wiener, the native of Vienua der Wiener, the native of Vienua

ber Tiger, the tiger
ber Gatte, the husband
ber Time, the lion
ber Time, the lion

of Vienna
bie Tigerin, the tigress
bie Gattin, the wife
bie Time, the lioness

In monosyllabic names the vowel is modified; as,

ber Rod, the cook
ber Narr, the fool
ber Narr, the fool
ber Dunb, the dog
ber Dunb, the dog

The vowel is also modified in : bie Französen, the Frenchlady

Neuter Nouns.

FORMATION OF DIMINUTIVES.

Most German Nouns denoting persons, animals or things can be made diminutive by adding then (or Icin) and generally modifying the vowel; as,

Noun:

DIMINUTIVE:

ber Mann, the man
bet Baum, the tree
ber Hund, the dog
bie Stabt, the town
bas Doul, the village
bas Bjerb, the horse

DIMINUTIVE:

bas Männchen (or Männlein), the little man
bas Münnchen (or Hännlein), the little dog
bas Städtchen (or Städtlein), the small town
bas Doul, the village
bas Bjerb, the horse

Nouns ending in e drop the same before adding then (or lein);

as,

Noun: Diminutive:

ber Knabe, the boy ber Hafe, the hare bie Flajde, the bottle bie Ente, the duck

bas Knäbden (or Knäbletn), the little boy bas Häjdden (or Häjdden), the little hare bas Entiphen (or Kläjdden), the small bottle bas Entiphen (or Cnifein), the little duck

Note.—then and fein may be used when in English the adjectives little or small are employed.—But little and small can also be translated by fitin instead of forming a diminutive, and Foreigners had better avoid the use of diminutives unless very well up in German, as they are only occasionally used.

On the Regular Verbs.

To the regular conjugation of verbs belong the following:

1. All those verbs having one of the vowels v, u or eu; as, wohnen, to dwell; judjen, to seek; benten, to interpret

Exceptions:

fommen, to come; rufen, to call, and stosen, to push, which are irregular.

 All those verbs having one of the modified vowels ä, ü, ü or äu; as,

mählen, to choose; hören, to hear; fühlen, to feel; träumen, to dream

Exceptions:

gähren, to ferment; gebären, to bring forth; erlöschen, to extinguish; ichwören, to swear; betrügen or trügen, to deceive, and lügen, to tell a lie, which are irregular.

3. All those verbs ending in ein, ern, igen, iren, ieren, chten, -den, ften, ften, fchen, zen; as,

tabeln, to blame; attlern, to tremble; befestigen, to fortify; stubiren, to study; regieren, to reign; richten, to judge; haden, to chop; hesten, to six; husten, to cough; lausaen, to listen; tangen, to dance Exceptions:

flechten, to plait; sechten, to fight; erschrechen, to be terrified; backen, to bake; walchen, to wash; bersten, to burst; schmelzen, to smelt, and siten, to sit, which are irregular.

 All those verbs ending in men and nen (but not mmen or nnen); as,

athmen, to breathe; regnen, to rain

Exceptions:

nehmen, to take, and icheinen, to shine, which are irregular.

OBSERVATION.—The regular or irregular conjugations of many verbs cannot be ascertained by their form; principally not of those with the vowels a, e, i, ie, ei, if they have not one of the above terminations, and the safest plan for distinguishing regular and irregular verbs, is to learn the usual irregular verbs by heart.

Division of Words into Syllables.

All syllables following the first syllable are commenced by a consonant if possible; as,

a.ber(*), ta.beln, Ba.be

If there be more than one consonant, the last consonant only commences the new syllable, while the others remain with the preceding syllable; as,

Ram-mer, fürch-ten, wib-men

The compound consonants th, qu, ph, sth, sr considered as one consonant and therefore not divided; as,

be-quem, herr-schen, Bu-ther

The compound consonants of and \$, are divided into f-f and t-3; as,

(fteden) ftel-ten, (Rage) Rat-ze

Note.—The compound consonants $\mathfrak{ng},\ \mathfrak{pf}$ and \mathfrak{ft} (not $\mathfrak{s}\mathfrak{t})$ may be divided or not; as,

fing en or fin gen, Tropfen or Tropfen, Burfte or Burfte

A consonant belonging to a prefix must remain with the prefix; as,

ver-achten, ent-außern

Compound words are divided as they are compounded; as,

A mute h after a vowel remains with the vowel; as, Seh-enswürbigleit, Höh-ensug

When two vowels (simple or compound vowels) are in sequence, they are separated; as,

^(*) Note that the hyphen in German consists of two lines (.).

THE SYNTAX.

Forty-eighth Lesson.

Achtundvierzigste Lektion.

The Article and the Noun.

The Definite Article is used:

1.) before abstract nouns, names of material, and plural nouns when they speak of the whole of the idea or class they signify; as,

Die Milbthätigkeit ist eine schöne Tugend. Charity is a fine virtue. Die Karbe der Unschuld. The colour of innocence. Das Gold ist ein ebles Metall. Gold is a precious metal. Die Pferbe sind nügliche Thiere. Horses are useful animals.

2.) before collective nouns, names of mountains, seasons, months, days and parts of the day: as.

bie Regierung, government ber Abel, nobility, nobles ber Montblane, Montblane ber Frühling, spring ber Januar, January ber Sonntag, Sunday bie Nacht, night bie Dammerung, twilight.

3.) before proper names preceded by an adjective; as, ber fleine Rarl, little Charles bas icone Bien, beautiful Vienna.

Note.-Names of persons are not declined then, and names of places and countries in \$, r, 3 do not take \$ in the Genitive.

4.) before names of countries which are feminine, and also before the few which are masculine; as, bie Türkei, Turkey ber Saag, the Hague.

5.) in expressions of price and time when the indefinite article is employed in English; as,

awei Mart das Fund, two marks a pound awei Meilen ben Tag(^a), two miles a day breimal die Woche, three times a week.

The Article in German is invariably placed before adjectives and adverbs preceding the noun; as,

ber boppelte Betrag, double the amount ein gang alter Berr, quite an old gentleman.

The article is generally repeated before each noun in sequence, and is only omitted when several nouns with the same article follow each other, and if all of them are of the same case and gender or number, and refer or belong to the same person or thing; as,

ber Bater und Ernährer biefer Kinber, the father and nourisher of these children bie Zimmer, Thuren und Fenster bes Haufes, the rooms, doors, and windows of the house bas Kleib gehört einer Schauspielerin und Sangerin, the dress belongs to an actress and songstress.

Masculine and neuter nouns expressing measure, number and weight are not declined and only used in the singular if preceded by a numeral and followed by a noun or adjective whether expressed or understood; as,

Feben Pfund Kaffee, seven pounds of coffee ein Glas Bier, a glass of beer viele Mann Reiterei, many horse (soldiers) sechs Boll breit, six inches broad.

Note.-"Of" with those nouns (also with feminine) is not expressed and the two nouns agree in case.

A noun in apposition with another noun or with a pronoun must be in the same case; as,

mit feinem Better, bem hauptmann n., with his coucin, captain N. er, ber beste Schuze ber Stadt, he, the best marksman of the town.

^(*) Nouns denoting definite time must be in the accusative, if not the subject of the sentence.

the blessing, ber Segen Plur: die Segnungen f brave, gallant, tapfer costly, valuable, werthool to dawn, dämmern the degree, der Grade Plur: die Grade the dozen, das Dugend ", elephant, der Siephant (Plur: see page 14)

the gold, bas Gotb
,, heart, bas Herz
(Decl. see page 16)
,, iron, bas Eifen
lively, lebhaft
the metal, bas Metall
,, mutton, bas Hammelfleifd
,, pork, bas Schweinefleifth

the rat, bie Ratte to rejoice, erfreuen the rest, bie Ruse ,, riches, ber Reichtsum Plur: bie Reichtsum , silver, bas Eiber ,, stick, ber Stod troublesome, tästig ugly, hästig the war, ber Arieg

Exercise No. 48.

- 1. Avarice and selfishness are two ugly passions (Leidenschaften). Hope is one of the greatest blessings. Iron is the most useful and gold the most valuable of (von)all metals. The nutritive properties (Nahrhaftigkeit f. sing.) of mutton are (is) greater than those (that) of pork. Mice and rats are troublesome little animals. Nobles (Adel m. sing.) are (is) considered (betrachtet als) the support (Stütze f.) of monarchies (Monarchie f.). Have you ever (schon) been on the Righi (Rigi m.)? In summer I prefer beer to (Dat.) wine. Sunday is the day of rest. Morning was dawning when we left the ball. Brave Admiral (Admiral) Nelson will never be forgotten by the English people. A war between Turkey and Russia (Russland n.) was unavoidable (unvermeidlich). The pens cost one mark (Mark f.) a dozen. The postman comes four times a I have as costly a watch as you. Quite an old lady travelled with me. Here are your brother's hat and stick. Give (Dat.) me three pounds of tea. The table is three feet high. To-day we have ten degrees [of] cold (Kälte f.). I am the friend of his cousin, the advocate N. I conversed with Mr. X., the famous poet.
- 2. Der Wein erfreut des Menschen Herz. Wieviel Glas Wein haben wir getrunken? Die Nacht brach herein (came on), ehe wir die Stadt erreichten. Dieser Stod ist nicht mehr als vier Fuß lang. Sie gaben mir eine ganz gute Antwort. Der Kasser köstet eine Mark das Pfund. Das Gold ist theurer als das Silber.

History repeats itself. He gave (Dat.) me double the sum. July is generally the hottest month in the year, and January the coldest. The tusks (Zähne) of elephants are valuable. I prefer lively Paris to (Dat.) busy (geschäftig) London. Health is a greater blessing than riches (sing.). Winter is a cold season. The cheese and butter you bought are not good. You are too good a father to (gegen) your children. I was introduced to (Dat.) his cousin (f.), the most beautiful lady in the town. She writes to (an Acc.) me twice a month. How long were you in Switzerland? A telegram to E. costs twenty pfennigs (Pfennig m.) a word.

Conversational and Idiomatic Phrases.

Gefpräche und Rebensarten.

Is breakfast—dinner—supper—ready?

Breakfast (etc.) is preparing.

When do you generally breakfast?

When do you dine-sup?

Come to breakfast (etc.).

After breakfast (etc.).

At breakfast (etc.).

For breakfast (etc.).

At what time is the dinnerhour?

Will you dine at the table d'hôte?

I must go and have my dinner.

Is the cloth laid?

Dinner is served.

Bring me the bill of fare—the wine card.

wine card.
What will you have (take), some tea or coffee?

A cup of tea if you please.

Will you have (take) some eggs?
May I trouble you for the mustard?

Will you pass me the salt,

please? Help yourself!

You are not eating.

I have had enough.

Will you not take some more meat?

No, thank you, I am amply provided.

What do you want (wish for)?

I want some chocolate.

At what price?

At about three marks a pound.

This, here, is a very nice sort. How much is it a pound?

Three marks 50 pfennigs.

Ist das Frühltud—das Mittagessen—das Abendessen—fertig?

Das Frühstück (etc.) wird eben gemacht.

Wann frühstücken Sie gewöhn-

Wann effen Sie zu Mittag-zu Abend?

Rommen Sie zum Frühstück (etc.).

Nach dem Frühstück (etc.).

Beim Frühstück (etc).

Zum Frühstück (etc.).

Wann wird zu Mittag gegessen?

Wollen Sie an der table d'hôte effen?

Ich muß zum Mittagessen (zu

Tisch) gehen. Ist der Tisch gedeckt?

Das Mittagessen ist aufgetragen. Bringen Sie mir die Speise-

farte—bie Weinkarte. Bas wollen Sie trinken, Thee

oder Kaffee? Eine Tasse Thee, wenn ich bitten

barf. Wollen Sie einige Eier essen? Darf ich Sie um den Senf

bitten? Mollen Sie wir gefälligst bas

Wollen Sie mir gefälligst das Salz geben?

Bedienen Sie sich! Sie essen ja nichts.

Ich bin satt.

Wollen Sie sich nicht noch etwas Fleisch nehmen?

Danke, ich bin noch reichlich verseben.

Was wünschen Sie? Ich wünsche Chocolade

Ich muniche Chocolade. Bu welchem Preis?

Ungefähr drei Mark das Pfund. Dies hier ist eine sehr gute Sorte. Wieviel kostet das Psund davon?

Drei Mark fünfzig.

Reading Exercise No. 48.

Reden1 ift Silber, Schweigen2 ift Gold.

Ein indischer3 Raufmann brachte einen Elephanten zu Markte. Raum war er angekommen, als er einen Guropäer4 bemerkte, der, ohne ein Wort zu sagen, um den Elephanten herumging5 und benfelben von allen Seiten6 aufmerkfam befah.7 Der Raufmann richtete8 verschiebene9 Fragen¹⁰ an ihn, konnte ihm aber keine Antwort ent= locken¹¹. Als sich dann ein Käufer¹² nahte¹³, wandte sich ber Raufmann an ben Europäer und flüsterte14 ihm ins Dhr: "Sagen Sie nicht ein Wort, bis ich ben Elephanten verkauft habe, ich werde Ihnen ein hübsches15 Geschenk machen." Der Fremde16 nickte17 zustimmend18, blieb aber stumm¹⁹ wie zubor²⁰. Als ber Handel²¹ abgeschlossen²² und das Geld bezahlt war, händigte23 ihm der Kaufmann zehn Prozent24 des Kaufgeldes25 ein und sprach zu dem geheimnisvollen²⁶ Fremden: "Jett dürfen Sie reden, ich bin neugierig²⁷ zu erfahren²⁸, wie Sie den Fehler an dem linken29 Bein meines Elephanten entdeckt haben, ben ich boch so geschickt glaubte verborgen30 zu haben." "Einen Fehler?" entgegnete31 ber Schweigsame32. "Ich habe nichts entdeckt; es ist das erste Mal in meinem Leben33, daß ich überhaupt einen Elephanten zu Gesicht34 bekommen35, ich habe ihn deshalb aus bloker36 Neugier37 so genau besehen.

Franzose oder Deutscher.— Dame: Das Kind ist ein kleiner Franzose, nicht wahr³⁸?"—Kindsmädchen³⁹: "Ich weiß selbst nicht, wie man sagen soll; seine Mutter ist eine Französin, sein Vater aber ein Deutscher."—Dame: "Uch da nuß man eben warten, bis es sprechen kann, dann wird man es gleich wissen!"

¹ to speak, 2 to be silent, 3 Indian, 4 European, 5 to walk round, *herumgehen (irr.), 6 sides, 7 to view, beschen (irr.), 8 put, 9 various, different, 10 questions, 11 to elicit, entlocken, 12 buyer, 13 to approach, sich nahen (nähern), 14 to whisper, flüstern, 15 pretty, nice, 16 stranger, 17 to nod, nicken, 18 assent, 19 dumb, silent, 20 before, 21 bargain, 22 to conclude, abschliessen, (irr.), 23 to hand, einhändigen, 24 per cent, 25 purchase-money, 26 mysterious, 27 curious, 28 to learn, hear, erfahren (irr.), 29 left, 30 to hide, verbergen (irr.), 31 to reply, entgegnen, 32 the silent man, 33 life, 34 before my eyes, 35 had, 36 mere, 37 curiosity 38 is it not? 39 nurse-maid.

Forty-ninth Lesson,

Neunundvierzigste Lektion.

The Qualifying Adjective.

Adjectives as a rule precede the noun in German; as, am letten Montag, on Monday last.

Participles, as in English, are often used as adjectives and follow throughout the rules for adjectives; as,

ber verlaufte Garten, the sold garden bie singenbe Dame, the singing lady.

Adjectives and participles used as nouns are nevertheless declined like adjectives (the termination varying according to an article, etc., preceding or not); as,

Adj.: beutsch, German verlobt, betrothed Maso.: ber Deutsche mein Berlobter ein Bittender eine Betrlobte Neut.: das Deutsche Plural: die Deutschen alse Berlobte Bittende

ural: die Deutschen alle Bersobte Bittende

Such words are: der Beamte, the official; der Bediente, the servant, footman; der Befannte, the acquaintance; der Gefangene, the prisoner; der Gefitsliche, the clergyman; der Gefandte, the ambassador; der Reisende, the traveller; der Berwandte, the relation, etc.

The words man, woman, person, following an adjective are frequently not expressed in German, the adjective then becoming a noun; as,

ber Blinde, the blind man bie Alte, the old woman bie Aranfen, the sick persons.

In the same manner adjectives followed by one and having a more general meaning are used as nouns; as,

bie Rleinen, the little ones.

Adjectives used substantively and signifying a whole class of persons, must take the plural termination; as,

bie Armen von London, the poer of London.

Adjectives denoting nations and used substantively must be rendered by the corresponding plural noun in German; as,

bie Franzosen, the French bie Englander, the English.

Note.—The corresponding noun must also be used in phrases like the following used in ordinary English:

Sind Sie ein Englander. Rein, ich bin ein Deutscher. Are you English. No, I am German.

The simple adjective is used (after sein, to be) in phrases like:

3st bas Messer gut? Is the knife a good one? Ber ist größer,
Sie ober ich? Who is the taller, you or I?

Adjectives being in apposition with a proper name agree with it in case, gender and number; as,

N. Karl ber Große, Charles the Great G. Karls bes Großen, of Charles the Great D. Karl bem Großen A. Karl ben Großen.

Note.—Those names of persons which ought to take ns or ens in the Genitive (see p. 42) are not inflected if followed by an apposition; as, Das Leben Franz bes Sweiten, the life of Francis the second.

blind, blind bold, fühn firr. to catch, capture, fangen the colours (ensign), die Fahne to conduct, lead, führen to confess, bekennen irr. (gestehen irr.) to conquer (some one),

bestegen the court, yard, ber hof ,, crime, bas Berbrechen

deaf, taub dumb, stumm

formerly, früher (ehemals) gallant (civil), artig to hide, verbergen irr.
the hospital, das Holpital
Plur: die Holpitaler
ignorant, unwissend
the institution, die An-

lame, lahm to liberate, befreien deaf and dumb, taub-fumm formerly, früher (ehemals) , police-court, das Po-

lizeigericht to rob (some one), berauben

the sentence, phrase, ber

" Swiss, ber Schweizer " throne, ber Thron

Exercise No. 49.

1. He had an old horse, blind and lame. The detected thief was captured. A commenced letter lay on the table. The queen visited the wounded soldiers in the hospital. The dying murderer confessed all the crimes he had committed. Translate the following sentences. He died with [a] smiling face (Mund m.). The soldiers marched (marschiren) with flying colours (plur.) through the town. This lady is a German. All the prisoners were being liberated. This gentleman is a traveller for (bei) Mr. X. I met several old acquaintances at my uncle's. The lame [man] sat on a chair. Do not make the little [man] angry. All the robbed were called to (auf Acc.) the police-court. This is an institution for the dumb. The strong ought to help (Dat.) the weak. Many ignorant [persons] hide their ignorance (Unwissenheit f.) behind impudence (Frechheit f.). The French were conquered by the Germans in 1870-71. Is this gentleman French? No, he is Is the river a deep one? Yes, it is in (an) many places above fifteen feet deep. Who is the more gallant, your cousin or mine? Voltaire was a long time at the court of Frederic the Great.

2. Der erwartete Bote ift noch nicht angekommen. Die Reichen sollten immer die Freunde der Armen sein. Der Blinde wurde von einem Madchen geführt. Unser Gesandter am russischen Hofe ist zurückerusen (recalled) worden. Der Reisende des Herrn A. ist hier gewesen. Welches waren die Besiegten in der Schlacht bei (of) Leipzig (Leipzic)? Wer folgte (succeeded) Alfred dem Großen auf den englischen Thron?

My cousin is an official at (bei) the post-office. Is your horse a young one? Have you read "(the) Paradise (Paradies n.) Lost" by Milton ? We looked at (betrachten) the setting sun. Which is the better, this book or that? The Swiss conquered Charles the Bold. While the hospital was burning all the sick were rescued. The man, poor and old, was also deaf and dumb. This is an institution both for the dumb and for the deaf. The sleeping [persons] were surprised by the fire. Can you come on Thursday next? This lady is an acquaintance of my sister-in-law.

Conversational and Idiomatic Phrases.

What is the price of this cigar? Twenty marks a hundred. How much do you charge for it? It is a very low charge.

Can you not take anything off?

That is the lowest.
I cannot sell it cheaper.
Give me a mark's worth of these grapes.
I want a pair of gloves.

What size do you take? Will you try this pair?

These will fit you.

Can you give change for this sovereign?

I have not any change with me.

Can you not get change for me?

You have not given me my change yet.
There is no change.
What is the matter with your watch?

watch?
Can you mend it?
When will it be done (finished)?
How soon can you mend it?
My watch is right—wrong.
My watch is fast—slow.
Wind up your watch.
I will put my watch right.
Put it by mine.
How is the weather to-day?

It is raining very fast.

Do you think the bad weather will continue?

The weather is very changeable —uncertain.

We shall have fine weather (etc.).

We had ten degrees of frost —heat.

Wieviel fostet biese Cigarre? Zwanzig Mark das Hundert. Wieviel verlangen Sie dafür? Es ist ein sehr billiger Preis. Können Sie nicht etwas nachlassen?

Das ift bas Billigfte.

Ich kann es nicht billiger geben. Geben Sie mir für eine Mark von diesen Trauben.

Ich brauche ein Paar Hand-

Welche Nummer haben Sie? Wollen Sie dieses Paar anprobiren?

Diese paffen Ihnen.

Können Sie biesen Sovereign wechseln?

Ich habe fein kleines Gelb bei mir.

Können Sie mir nicht wechseln lassen?

Sie haben mir noch nicht herausgegeben.

Das Geld ift gerade recht. Was fehlt an Ihrer Uhr?

Können Sie sie machen? Wann ist sie sertig? Vis wann können Sie sie machen? Meine Uhr geht recht—fassch. Weine Uhr geht vor—nach. Ziehen Sie Jhre Uhr auf. Ich will meine Uhr richten.

Richten Sie sie nach meiner. Was für Wetter ist heute (was für Wetter haben wir heute)?

Es regnet fehr ftark.

Glauben Sie, daß das schlechte Wetter anhält?

Das Wetter ist sehr veränderlich —unbeständig.

Wir werden schönes Wetter (etc.) bekommen.

Wir hatten zehn Grad Ralte - Wärme.

Reading Exercise No. 49.

Gine Saphir-Anekdote.

Ein ausländischer! Gesandter hatte in Wien mit Saphir eine Unterredung,2 bei welcher jener äußerte,3 die deutsche Sprache habe einen großen Reichthum an Wörtern und für manchen Begriss überslüssiges Worte. Saphir konnte der letzten Behauptungs nicht beistimmen7 und bat um Beispiele. Der Gesandte erwiederte: "Zwischen "heißen"9 und "nennen"10 ist doch11 kein Unterschied!" Saphir sagte: "D ja, ich kann meinen Diener wohl12 heißen,9 daß er etwas thue, aber nicht nennen10." Der Gesandte war noch nicht überzeugt13 und suhr!4 fort: "Speisen"15 und "essen"16 unterscheiden17 sich jedoch nicht!" Saphir entgegnete: "Uch ja, man kann wohl Arme speisen!5, aber nicht essen18 und sagte: "Zwischen "senden"19 und "schieden"19 wissen Seie doch keinen Unterschied!" Saphir antwortete: "Sie sind ein Gesandter²⁰, aber kein Geschickter²¹. Diese letzte Erklärung²² ließ²³ den Gesandten verstummen²⁴, und die Unterredung war plöhlich beendigt²⁵.

Eine Abfertigung²⁶.—Ein Engländer, der bei dem Fürsten²⁷ Kaunig zur Tasel²⁸ war, hatte das Unglück, ein Glas Wein umzuwersen. "Ist das so Gebrauch²⁹ in Engsland?" fragte der Fürst. Ohne im Mindesten³⁰ außer Fassung zu gerathen³¹, erwiederte der Engländer: "Das nicht, aber wenn es geschieht, so fragt wenigstens Niemand darnach."

1 foreign, 2 conversation. 3 to utter, remark, "ussern, 4 idea, expression, 5 superfluous, 6 declaration, 7 to consent, agree, beistimmen, 8 examples, 9 to call (to give a name), to bid, heissen (irr.), 10 to call (to give a name), to name, nennen (irr.), 11 to be sure, 12 certainly, 13 to convince, "iberzeugen, 14 to continue (in speaking), fortfahren, 15 to eat, to feed (to entertain at table), speisen, 16 to eat, essen (irr.), 17 to differ, sich unterscheiden (irr.), 18 to give way, yield, nachgeben (irr.), 19 to send, senden (irr.), schicken, 20 & 21 Gesandter (ambassador), is formed from the past participle of senden (to send), i.e. gesandt (sent), meaning one who is sent.—Geschickter is formed from the past participle of schicken (to send), i.e. geschickt (sent), meaning as well one who is sent, but which could not be applied to an ambassador. On the other hand geschickter can also be considered of being formed from the adjective geschickt (clever), meaning a clever one. 22 explanation, 23 made, 24 silent, 25 finished, 26 repartee, 27 prince, 28 at table, 29 custom, 30 in the least, 31 being put out of countenance.

The Qualifying Adjective (concluded).

Many adjectives, as in English, require for the completion of the sense a complement, and such complement, if a noun or pronoun, must be, in German, either in the Genitive or Dative case, or must be accompanied by a preposition.

An adjective requiring a noun or pronoun in the Genitive or Dative must be preceded by this noun or pronoun; as,

Diefer Mann ift bes Diebstahls verbächtig. This man is suspected of theft. Ift es Ihnen angenehm? Is it agreeable to you?

Some usual adjectives governing the Genitive are:

bewußt, conscious of gewiß, certain of os, rid of

I mube, tired of schuldig, guilty of ficher, sure of

perbactia, suspected of würdig, worthy of

Some usual adjectives governing the Dative are:

angenehm, agreeable to gleich, like, equal to befannt, known to bantbar, grateful to

gunftig, favourable to möglich, possible for

nahe, near to nüglich, useful to treu, faithful to willfommen, welcome to

And all those of the above with the prefix un having an opposite meaning; like:

ungewiß (Gen.), uncertain of; unmöglich (Dat.), impossible for.

An adjective requiring the noun or pronoun with a preposition is generally followed by this noun or pronoun, as in English; as, Sind Sie zufrieden mit meiner Aebersetzung? Are you satisfied with my translation? Ich bin stolz auf ihn. I am proud of him.

The adjective may, however, also be preceded, especially by a noun; as,-Sind Sie mit meiner Uebersethung gufrieben?

Some usual adjectives with Prepositions differing from the literal equivalent are:

arm an (Dat.), poor of eitel auf (Acc.), vain of ermudet bon, fatigued, tired with

freundlich gegen, kind to höslichgegen.civil, polite to froh über (Acc.), glad of gleichgültig gegen, indif-licher vor (Dat.), safe, seferent to

cure from

ahig zu, able, capable of | granfam gegen, cruel to | ftolz auf (Acc.), proud of And all those which with the prefix un have an opposite meaning, like: unfähig zu, unable, incapable of.

Such an adjective (or participle), if qualifying a noun, must always be preceded by its complement and be placed directly before that noun; as,

ein des Diebstahls verdächtiger Mann, a man suspected of thest eine mir unangenehme Sache, an affair disagreeable to me unsere an Gelb arme Stadt, our town poor in money.

The same takes place if the adjective is accompanied by any other word or words; as,

eine häufig portommende Rrantheit, a disease frequently occurring eine noch nie in Deutschland gesehene Raturericheinung, a phenomenon never seen before in Germany.

Note. —Instead of placing the adjective and complement, etc., before the noun, they may also be changed into a relative clause; like: ein Mann, ber bes Diebijahls verbächtig ist.

the arrival, die Antunft ,, benefactor, der Wohlthäter ,, beauty, die Schönheit ,, creditor, der Cläubiger disagreeable, unpleasant, unangenehm false, salid the fate, das Schickal " fish, der Fisch " knowledge, die Kenntniß Plur: die Kenntnisse " life, das Leben " play, game, das Spiel " reproach, der Bor-

to resist, widerstehen irr (Dat.)
the sea, daß Meer
unable, incapable, unfähig
ungrateful, undanstar
unkind, unsreundlich
unknown, unbekannt
unworthy, unwürdig

Exercise No. 50.

1. He had been a long time suspected of (the) false play. We could hardly get ride of him. The son will become like his father. It will be agreeable to me if you will still wait a little. Is it possible for you now to resist my entreaties? You should make yourself more useful to your father. As often as you come you will be welcome to your friends. This poem is unworthy of the great poet. It is impossible for him to pay all his creditors. You are not so poor in friends as you think. He was very indifferent to my reproaches. Here you are as afe from him. Be not so unkind to the poor child. A gentleman strange to me has left that here for you. He is a man vain of his knowledge (plur.). A man (mankind) tired of his life is to be pitied (zu bemitleiden).

2. Seib freundlich und höstlich gegen Jebermann. Ich bin [mir] keines Fehlers bewußt. Seid euern Wohlthätern nicht undankbar. Er stürzte sich auf (rusked at) mich einem Wüthenden (madman) gleich. Dies ist der von Ihrem Later unterschriebene Wechsel. Der Hund ist ein dem Menschen treues Thier. Wessen ist diese Frau schuldig? Wer grausam gegen Thiere ist, ist auch grausam gegen Menschen. Seien Sie dem Schickstal dankbar, daß Ihre Verluste nicht größer sind. Ich bin ermübet vom Arbeiten (working).

The sea is rich in fish (plur.). Is that lady known to you? She is too vain of her beauty. Are you certain of your cause (Sache f.)? He became very impolite to me. Only a few soldiers have remained faithful to the king. We are sure of his good behaviour. It was very disagreeable to Mr. N. that he did not find (treffen) you at home. Such words are not worthy of you. This street is strange to me. Germany is a country rich in songs. I am glad (froh) of your safe (glücklich) arrival. Remain near to me. Is that an anecdote unknown to you? I am quite proud of you. I was incapable of such a crime. That is a newspaper much read. All were kind to me. He is capable of everything. This intelligence was still unknown to him. Fate was favourable to me and gave (Dat.) me much riches (plur.). His creditors were tired of (the) long waiting (Warten n.).

A heavy rain—snowfall—fog—etc.

A heavy thunderstorm.
There is a strong wind.
It is raining in torrents.
It is leaving off raining.
The heat is abating.
The wind—storm—is abating.
The wind has changed.
The weather has changed dur-

ing the night.
A change in the weather.
It is rainy weather.
There was a snow storm.
It is only a shower.

It is only a shower.

Where will you spend (pass)
your holiday?

I shall stop in town (here). I shall go out of town. How did you spend (pass) your

holiday? Did you enjoy your holiday?

I have had my holiday. I am going to take my holiday. Are you going to the continent? When do you start? Which route will you take? I am going by Flushing. Had you a good sea-passage? No, the sea was rather rough.

I was very sea-sick.
We are coming now to the frontier station.
Will the luggage be examined?

Yes; have you anything to declare? As far as I know I have not. Where is the luggage-room? Did you weigh my luggage? Porter, take my luggage to the cab (waggon).

Ein starker Regen—Schneefall— Nebel, etc.. Ein starkes (schweres) Gewitter. Es geht ein starker Wind. Es regnet in Strömen.

Es regnet in Strömen. Es hört auf zu regnen. Die Hițe läßt nach.

Der Wind—Sturm—legt sich. Der Wind hat sich gedreht.

Das Wetter hat sich über Nacht geändert.

Ein Witterungswechsel. Es ist Regenwetter.

Es war ein Schneegestöber. Es ist nur ein Regenschauer.

Wohin gehen Sie über Ihre Ferien (über die Feiertage?(*) Ich werde hier bleiben.

Ich werde verreisen.

Was haben Sie über Ihre Ferien gethan?

Waren Sie vergnügt über Ihre Ferien (Hatten Sie vergnügte Ferien)?

Ich war in den Ferien.
Ich gehe in die Ferien.
Gehen Sie auf das Festland?
Wann reisen Sie ab?
Welchen Beg gehen Sie?
Ich gehe (reise) über Blissingen.
Hatten Sie eine gute Uebersahrt?
Nein, das Meer war ziemlich un-

ruhig. Ich war sehr seekrank. Wir kommen jett an die Grenz-

station. Wird das Gepäck untersucht (revidirt) werden?

Ja, haben Sie etwas zu verzollen?

So viel ich weiß, nicht. Bo ist das Gepäckimmer? Hoben Sie mein Gepäck gewogen? Gepäckträger, tragen Sie mein Gepäck in den Wagen.

^(*) Feiertage is the general term for Christmas, Easter, Whitsuntide, etc., holidays.

Reading Exercise No. 50.

Eine fehr unterhaltende Whistpartie.1

Als Washington Irving, Bancroft und Everett einst über diplomatische2 Erinnerungen3 plauderten,4 erzählte der Lettgenannte,5 daß, nachdem er und der neapolitanisches Gefandte Ihrer Majestät ber Ronigin Bittoria vorgestellt worden. Lord Melbourne ihnen ankündigte,7 sie würden zu einer Partie Bhist bei ber Berzogin8 von Rent erwartet. "Ich felbit." fagte Melbourne, "bin nur ein schwacher Spieler,9 ja, ich verstehe es taum, aber die Berzogin hat das Spiel sehr gern .- "Und ich," äußerte der Neapoli= taner10 zu Everett, bin ein sehr schlechter Spieler; sollte ich Ihrer Ercelleng11 Mitspieler12 werden, so bitte ich im Voraus13 um Ihre Nachsicht14, worauf ber amerikanische Gefandte entgegnete, daß er felbst sehr wenig in dem Spiel15 zu Saufe fei. Die brei vornehmen16, reich ge= fleideten17 Herren wurden darauf von der Herzogin emp= fangen und setten18 sich bann auf ihre Ginlabung19 gum Spiel nieder. Sobald gegeben20 war, stellte21 sich eine Hofbame22 hinter die Herzogin und die lettere sagte: "Die Ercellenzen¹¹ werden entschuldigen, wenn ich mich auf ben Rath meiner Freundin hier verlasse, benn ich muß bekennen, daß ich in der That23 eine fehr schlechte Spie= lerin9 bin." Dies war fast24 zu viel für Everetts ernste Haltung25, dem eine Partie Whist unter solchen Umständen26 unaussprechlich27 langweilig28 vorkam29. Dessenungeachtet30 versicherte31 jeder der drei Herren der Herzogin am Ende32 des Spiels, daß er es äußerst33 unterhaltend gefunden habe.

¹ whist-party, 2 diplomatic, 3 recollections, 4 to chat, talk, plaudern, 5 last named, 6 Neapolitan, 7 to announce, ankündigen, 8 duchess, 9 player, 10 Neapolitan, 11 Excellency, Excellenz f., 12 partner, 13 before hand, 14 indulgence, 15 game, 16 distinguished, 17 dressed, clad, 18 to sit down, sich niedersetzen (sich setzen), 19 invitation, 20 to deal (cards), geben (irr.), 21 to place oneself, sich stellen, 22 lady in waiting, 23 indeed, 24 almost, 25 gravity, 26 circumstances, 27 inexpressibly, 28 tedious, 29 appeared, 30 notwithstanding, 31 to assure, versichern, 32 end, 33 greatly.

Fifty-first Lesson.

Einundfünfzigfte Lettion.

The Pronouns and Determinative Adjectives.

The personal pronoun es is used for rendering so in expressions like:

ich hoffe es, I hope so ich glaube es, I think so, etc.

A personal or a reflective pronoun occurring after a preposition and denoting the same person as the subject must be rendered by the reflective form; as,

Saben Sie Gelb bei sich? Have you any money with you? Die Ossistere hatten Landkarten vor sich liegen. The officers had maps lying before them. Er kauste es für sich. He bought it for himself.

The reflective pronouns uns, euch, sich are sometimes used instead of einander, (each other, etc.), if no ambiguity can arise; as,

Bir haben uns (or einander) selten gesehen. We have seen one another seldom. Warum schrieben Sie sich (or einander) nicht? Why did you not write to each other?

The possessive adjectives (my, thy, etc.) are usually rendered by the definite article if there is no doubt that the object possessed (usually parts of the body or clothes, etc.) must belong to the subject; as,

Er icuttelte ben Ropf. He shook his head. Nehmen Gie ben but

ab. Take off your hat.

When the verb has a reflective meaning my, thy, etc., are usually rendered by reflective pronouns in the Dative and the article; as,

Das Mädchen hat sich das Gesicht nicht gewaschen. The girl has not washed her face. Ich habe mir das haar geschnitten. I have cut my hair.

When my, thy, etc. standing with such nouns do not refer to the subject, they are generally rendered by the personal pronoun in the Dative and the definite article; as,

Wer hat Ihnen bas haar geschnitten? Who has cut your hair?

REMARK.—In a similar manner also an English possessive is often rendered; as,

Der König stedte ben Offizieren die Orben an die Brust. The king placed the orders on the officers' breasts.

The possessive pronouns (mine, thine, etc.) after the verb to be referring to a noun which is the subject, are rendered by the personal pronoun in the Dative, and to be is translated by gehören; as,

Dieser Hut gehört mir. This hat is mine. Gehören das Haus und ber Garten Jhnen? Are the house and garden yours?

REMARK.—A possessive after to be, referring to a noun or pronoun as subject, is also rendered by the Dative and the verb by gehören; as Gehören diese Cigarren Ihrem Onfel? Nein, sie gehören meinem Bater. Are these cigars your uncle's? No, they are my father's,

Note.-However the words mein, bein, sein, unser, euer, can be used instead of meiner, etc. with the verb fein; as, - Diefer but ift mein. This hat is mine.

Of mine, of thine, etc., after a noun are rendered as follows: A friend of mine, ein Freund von mir. This friend of yours, biefer Freund von Ihnen (or biefer Ihr Freund).

Of his own, of her own, etc., are rendered as follows: He had a house of his own. Er hatte ein eigenes Saus. the breast, bie Bruft " bricklayer, ber Maudirectly, immediately, fogleich (sofort) the face, bas Gesicht to fear, apprehend, befürchten the finger, ber Finger

n in vain, bergebens (ber: | seldom, rare, felten geblich) often, pft the playthings, toys, bas Spielzeug (sing.)

,, policeman, ber Polizzeidiener (ber Schutz Plur : bie Schutleute)

to shake, ichütteln the snow-ball, ber Schneehall to stop (a tooth), plom: biren to thrust, push, ftogen irr. the wing, ber Mlügel

Exercise No. 51.

- 1. Can you come to me this evening? Yes, I hope so. I fear he has not received the letter, do you not fear so too? Have the children their playthings with them? Why did you take a revolver with you? You should not only think of (an) yourself but also of (an Acc.) your poor parents. Two policemen are there leading a man's between theme. We did not recognize each other (reft.) immediately. Why do you write [to] each other (reft.) so seldom? When I opened (aufschlug) my eyes I did not know where I was. Do not forget to wash your hands. Take off my boots. It has nearly cost (Dat.) me my life. Why have they (one) cut the poor bird's wings? Which cup is mine? Is this dog yours? No, it is my cousin's. Do you know this lady? Yes, she is an acquaintance of mine. A horse of ours has won the first prize. Has not the physiciana a carriage of his own?
- 2. Bergebens schüttelte ber Stumme ben Ropf, man glaubte ihm nicht. War es nicht ein hund von Ihnen, ber den Anaben gebissen hat? Sie (you) sollten sich nicht die Süte (each other's hat) nehmen. So lange es falt ift, muß ich die Brille abnehmen, wenn ich in ein warmes Zimmer trete. Ziehen Sie dem Kinde die Schuhe aus. Jeber Reiter (horseman) hatte einen Schützen (rifteman) hinter sich sitzen (sitting). Die Brüber hassen sich schoon (have hated) von Jugend auf (ever since their youth). Welcher Zahnarzt hat Ihnen die Rähne plombirt? Saben Sie nicht den Weg verloren?

The lady took (ziehen) a ring from her finger and gave (schenken) it to (Dat.) the sick man. He saw nothing but the sky above him. The murderer thrust the dagger into the president's breast. Have you not a coachman of your own? She held her hands before (Acc.) her face and wept. All these cherries are ours. A brother of his has lent Where did you burn (verbrennen refl.) your (Dat.) him the money. fingers? The enemy had the wind against him. Is not this house Do nota always put (stecken) your hands in your Mr. N's.? pockets. I have a room of my own. The boys threw snow-balls (mit Sch.)[at] each other (reft.). One must not speak too often of one'sself. Take off your glove, then you can write better. Which parcel is yours? Where did the bricklayer break his arm? You have saved my life. We related [to] each other (reft.) incidents (Erlebnisse) from our iourneys.

Please, get me my luggage; here is the receipt.

Where is the booking-office?

A first-second class ticket to

A single ticket?
No, a return ticket.
What is the first class fare to ...?

When does the train start for ...? The ordinary train? No, the express train. Which is the train for? Has the train for, started yet? No, it starts at 6.20.

What class are you going by?
I am going second class.
Must I change carriage?
Change for
We must get in.
Will you get out first?
Is this a through train—carriage?
Does this train stop at ...?
How long do we stop here?
Only two minutes, the train is late (behind its time).
Can I get anything to eat here?

Where is the refreshment room? May I open the window a little?

Do you feel any draught? Yes, there is a draught. Can I travel by the express train with this ticket to ...? No, you will have to pay excess

fare.
Which is the next station?
Do you want a non-smoking

compartment?

No, I want a compartment for ladies.

Bitte, holen Sie mir mein Gepäd; hier ist der Gepäckschein. Wo ist die Kasse — der Billetschalter?

Ein Billet erster-zweiter Rlasse

Ein einfaches Billet? Nein, ein Retour-Billet.

Wieviel kostet ein Billet erster . Rlasse nach ...?

Wann geht der Zug nach ...? Der gewöhnliche Zug? Nein, der Schnellzug.

Welches ist der Zug nach ...? Ist der Zug nach ... schon abgegangen?

Nein, er geht um 6 Uhr zwanzig ab.

In welcher Rlaffe fahren Sie? Ich fahre zweiter Rlaffe.

Muß ich umfteigen? Umsteigen (Wagenwechsel) nach ...

Wir muffen einsteigen. Wollen Sie zuerst aussteigen?

Tit dies ein durchgehender Zug.
—Wagen?
Hält dieser Zug in ...?

Wieviel Aufenthalt ist hier? Nur zwei Minuten, der Zug hat Verspätung.

Kann man hier etwas zu effen bekommen?

Wo ist die Restauration?

Darf ich das Fenster ein wenig öffnen?

Zieht es Ihnen? Ja, es zieht.

Kann ich mit diesem Billet den Schnellzug nach ... benüben?

Nein, Sie mussen ein Zuschlagbillet nehmen.

Welches ist die nächste Station? Wollen Sie ein Coupé für Nichtraucher?

Nein, ich will ein Damen-Coupé.

Reading Exercise No. 51.

Gine Duellgeschichte.1

Ein als schlagfertige bekannter Beamter fah sich ge= nöthigt.3 einem mit mehr Lärm als Erfolg auf politischem4 Gebietes auftretendens jungen Lieutenant a. D.7 eine ge= bührende8 Abfertigung9 zu Theil werden zu lassen10, worauf dieser erwiederte: "Mit der Feder sind Sie mir 3war11 überlegen12, aber ich habe zu hause verschiedene13 Säbel14, mit benen ich beffer zu schreiben verstehe!" Der Beamte faate: "Solch gefährliches Spielzeug follte man vor Rindern doch15 forgfältig16 verschließen17, daß dieselben damit fein Unglüct18 anrichten19 können." Der erboste20 Geaner21 forderte22 nun den Beamten auf Pistolen23. Ruhig sagte dieser: "Ich nehme die Forderung24 an, jedoch stelle25 ich eine Bedingung26. Sie wissen, ich habe Frau und Kinder, für welche ich sorgen²⁷ muß. Mein jährliches²⁸ Einkom= men²⁹ beträgt³⁰ 4500 Mark. Hinterl**e**gen³¹ Sie daher ein Kapit**a**l³², dessen Zinsen³³ meinem Einkommen ent= sprechen34, und welches, sollte ich im Duell fallen, meiner Familie ausgezahlt35 wird. Es wären also 90000 Mark erforderlich36." "Dazu bin ich außer Stande37," sagte fleinlaut38 der Duellsüchtige39; "benn ich besitze kein Ver= mögen." "Ja," antwortete der Geforderte²², "dann kann aus dem Duell leider40 nichts werden41. Wer nichts zu verlieren hat, der kann doch42 unmöglich verlangen43, daß ich mich von ihm soll niederschießen lassen44." Sprach345 und wandte dem verblüfften46 Duellonten47 den Rücken48.

¹ a story of a duel, 2 ready in reply, 3 obliged, 4 political, 5 arena, 6 appearing, 7 retired, a. D. (ausser Dienst), 8 deserved, 9 rebuke, 10 to give, 11 it is true, 12 superior, 13 various, 14 sabres, 15 better, 16 carefully, 17 to lock up, verschliessen (irr.), 18 mischief, 19 cause, 20 exasperated, 21 adversary, 22 to challenge, fordern, 23 pistols, 24 challenge, 25 make, 26 condition, 27 to provide, sorgen, 28 annual, 29 income, 30 to amount to, betragen (irr.), 31 to depose, hinterlegen, 32 sum, 33 interest, 34 to correspond to, entsprechen (irr. Dat.), 35 to pay over, auszahlen, 36 necessary, 37 unable, 38 baffled, 39 eager duellist, 40 unfortunately, 41 the duel cannot take place, 42 certainly, 43 ask, 44 that I am to allow myself to be shot, 45 thus speaking, 46 confounded, 47 duellist, 48 back.

Fifty-second Lesson.

Aweiundfünfziafte Lektion.

The Pronouns (concluded).

Possessives like: Did you sell your dog or your brother's? must be changed in translation into:

Did you sell your dog or that of your brother? Bertauften Sie Ihren hund ober ben Ihres Brubers?

Der or berienige are also the translation of the English the one followed by a Genitive, a preposition or a relative pronoun (see pages 96 & 108); as,

Mit welchem Berrn? Mit bem ber gestern bier war. With which

gentleman? With the one who was here yesterday.

The interrogative what standing with a noun is usually rendered welcher instead of was für, etc., if the person or thing spoken about is known or supposed to be known to the speaker; as,

Before Next if geforben? What physician (of those I know)
has died? Ich weiß noch nicht, welche Bicher ich verlaufen werbe(*).
I don't know yet what books I shall sell.

What a! or what! in exclamations is rendered by mas für

ein (plural: was für) or welcher, etc.; as,

Was für ein (or welcher) Mann! What a man! Was für eine
(or welche) Freude! What joy! Was für (or welche) Blumen Sie
gestern gesanst haben(*)! What slowers you bought yesterday!

Note.—In the singular also welch ein and, if followed by an adjective, even welch only for singular or plural can be used; as,—
Belch ein Mann! Belch guter Mann! Belch tapfere Männer!

The interrogative wer? (denoting a person only) may be used instead of welcher if followed by the preposition von (unter or aus); as,

Wer von Ihnen? Which of you? Wit wem von den Frauen? With which of the women?

One's, the possessive of the indefinite pronoun one, is rendered by the possessive adjective jein; as,

E3 ist nicht möglich, seinem Schickal zu entgeben. It is not possible to escape one's fate.

One'sself is rendered fich or fich felbst, according to the rules on page 88.

The Numerals.

The fractional numbers compounded with halb are often used thus (especially anderthalb):

anderthalb instead of ein und ein halb, one and a half britthalb instead of amei und ein halb, two and a half etc.

Anderthalb, britthalb etc., are not declined, but the following noun must be in the plural if not belonging to those on p. 226; as,

Anberthalb Pfund Raffee (or ein und ein halbes Pfund Raffee), one nd and a half of coffee. Dritthalb Stunden (or zwei und eine pound and a half of coffee. balbe Stunde), two hours and a half.

The last but one is rendered der (die, das) vorlette (or zweitlette)

drittlette " two " 22 22 22 22 ,, three ,, piertlette, etc. 22 22 22

^(*) Interrogative adjectives, if not used in direct questions, throw the verb to the end, like interrogative pronouns or adverbs of interrogation (see p. 104 & 198).

the book-case, ber Bücher- the landscape, country, to mean, meinen forant studies bie Lanbichaft own, eigen járant stüd breakfast, das Frühcharming, reizenb the departure, bie Abreise ,, expression, ber Aus

,, home, native country, bie Seimath

", lord-mayor, der Ober-bürgermeister

" magazine, periodical, bie Beitschrift the neighbour, ber Nach-bar Plur: bie Nachbarn (see p. 17)

the shop-window, bas Schaufenfter

splendid, prächtig Vienna, Wien the wedding, die Hochzeit " wine-merchant, Weinhänbler

Exercise No. 52.

1. Are you speaking of your cousin's wedding or of your friend's? I am speaking of my cousin's. With which lady did you dance? With the one to (Dat.) whom you introduced me yesterday. Do you mean this hat? No, I mean the one in the shop-window. On what river does Vienna stand (liegen)? Can you tell me what wine the winemerchant has last sent? Oh, look! what a charming landscape that is! Fie! what bad expressions this man uses! Which of your neighbours has said that? To (Dat.) which of the children will you bring these playthings? One should never rely too much on one's friends, but (sondern) more on one's own efforts (Kraft f. sing.). If one promises anything, one must keep (halten) one's promise. How much beer have we drunk? One bottle and a half. I was not able to drink more than a glass and a half of (von) this milk. In which house do you live? I live in the last but one on the right.

2. Welches Zimmer bewohnten (occupy) Sie, als Sie bas lette Mal hier waren? Man nuß nie zu viel sich selbst loben. Wir haben britthalb Stunden auf Sie gewartet, aber Sie kamen nicht. Was für einen prächtigen See Sie vor Ihrem Hause haben! Es ist unmöglich, seine Heimath zu vergessen. Wurden Sie in der letzten Woche vor meiner Abreise frank? Rein, in der vorlegten Woche. Ich weiß nicht, wer von meinen Freunden mir folch eine große Summe leihen fann.

What patience you have! Here is your breakfast. Thanks (danke). did you nota also bring Mr. B's. (des Herrn B.)? One must always do one's duty. Is your brother invited to (zu) the president's ball or to the lord-mayor's? As far as (so viel) I know to the president's. What rules have I not yet explained to (Dat.) you? What beautiful trees you have in your garden! It is (are) a year and a half since (that) I was in S. What magazine do you mean? The one in your Which of the gentlemen are you waiting for (auf book-case. Acc.)? I have forgotten my German Grammar. I will lend (Dat.) you my sister's. To (in) what towns of Germany have you been? Is it possible for you to be back in an hour or an hour and a half? Which of these two letters shall I take (tragen) to the post-office? The one on my desk. Do you know by what train he will go to-morrow morning? Yes, by the 9 o'clock train.

I did not catch my train (I missed my train).

To what hotel are you going?

To the hotel
Will you take a cab?

No, I shall walk.

And I am going by the hotel omnibus.

I want a room—bed-room.

I do not like this room, can I not have a better one?

Do you want a front room or a back room?

How much is the charge for a bed-room, breakfast, and attendance?

Is everything included? Will you show me to my room?

What is your number?
Do you wish to be called?
Have me called at six.
There is no towel.
Are my boots cleaned?
Waiter, bring me my bill.

You have made a mistake of two marks.

Which is the way to? Is this the way to Street, please?

No, you have taken the wrong

direction.

Take the first turning to the right—left.

Go straight on.

You cannot make a mistake. How long will it take me to ...? Is it far off?

It is about half an hour's walk.

Let us cross here.

Ich bin nicht (or zu spät) auf den Zug gekommen.
Ich versehlte meinen Zug.
In welchen Casthof—in welches Hotel—gehen Sie?
In den Gasthof—in das Hotel...
Nehmen Sie einen Wagen—eine Droschke—einen Fiacker?
Nein, ich gehe zu Fuß.
Und ich fahre mit dem Hotel-

Omnibus-Hotelwagen. Ich wünsche ein Zimmer-Schlaf-

Zimmer. Dieses Zimmer gefällt mir nicht.

fönnen Sie mir kein bessers geben?

Wollen Sie ein Zimmer nach vorn oder nach hinten?

Wieviel kostet ein Zimmer mit Frühstück und Bedienung?

Ift Alles mit einbegriffen? Wollen Sie mir mein Zimmer zeigen? Welche Nummer haben Sie? Wollen Sie geweckt werden? Lassen Sie mich um sechs wecken. Ich habe kein Handtuch. Sind meine Stiefel geputt? Rellner, bringen Sie mir meine

Rechnung. Sie haben sich um zwei Mark geirrt.

Welches ist der Weg nach ...? Bitte, ist dies der Weg nach der ... Straße?

Nein, Sie sind in der falschen Richtung.

Gehen Sie die erste Straße rechts-links.

Gehen Sie geradeaus. Sie können nicht fehlen.

Wie lange brauche ich nach ... ? Ist es weit von hier?

Es ist ungefähr eine halbe Stunde. Wir wollen hier hinübergeben.

Reading Exercise No. 52.

Ein guter Ramerad.1

Der Gigenthümer eines Gemufegartens? bemerkte, baß ein Rorb, der noch eben mit jungen3 Rüben4 gefüllt5 war, plötlich leerers wurde. Er befragte? ben Gartner: Diefer begriff die Sache gleichfalls nicht und schlug als sicheres Mittel¹⁰ zur Entdeckung¹¹ des Diebes vor, sich hinter einer nahen Heckel2 zu verstecken13. Gesagt, gethan14; nach einigen Minuten stießen15 sie einen Ruf16 der Über= raschung¹⁷ auß — sie sahen ben Haushund geradeswegs¹⁸ auf den Korb losgehen19, eine Rübe ins Maul20 nehmen und damit den Weg nach dem Pferdestall²¹ einschlagen²². — Die Hunde fressen23 keine roben24 Rüben. — Unsere Beobachter25 folgten daher dem Spithuben26 und entdeckten, daß er sich mit einem Pferde, seinem Schlafgenossen²⁷, zu schaffen²⁸ machte. Schweiswebelnb²⁹ überreichte³⁰ er ihm seinen Raub31, und das Pferd ließ sich natürlich nicht lange bitten, ihn anzunehmen. Der Gärtner griff ärgerlich³² nach einem Anüttel³³, um den Sünder³⁴ für seine allzu= große35 Kamerabschaftlichkeit36 zu züchtigen37, allein sein Berr hielt ihn gurud. Die Rüben gingen von der erften bis zur letten benselben Weg, die Szene wiederholte sich, bis der Vorrath38 vollständig39 erschöpft40 war. Der Hund hatte schon lange dieses Pferd zum Günftling erkoren41 während er ein zweites, das sich in demselben Stalle befand, keines Blickes42, geschweige43 einer Rübe würdigte44.

1 comrade, 2 vegetable-garden, 3 new, 4 the turnip, die Rübe, 5 to fill, füllen, 6 empty, leer, 7 asked, 8 likewise, 9 sure, 10 means, 11 discovery, 12 hedge, 13 to hide, verstecken, 14 no sooner said than done, 15 to utter, ausstossen (irr.), 16 exclamation, 17 surprise, 18 straight-ways, 19 go towards, 20 mouth (of an animal), 21 stable, 22 take, 23 to eat (of animals), fressen (irr.), 24 raw, 25 watchers, 26 rogue, 27 stable-mate, 28 to do, 29 wagging his tail, 30 gave, 31 plunder, 32 angrily, 33 knobbed stick, 34 sinner, 35 much too great, 36 devotedness to him, 37 to chastise, punish, züchtigen, 38 stock, 39 entirely, 40 exhausted, 41 made his favourite, 42 glance, 43 far less, 44 held worthy.

Fifty-third Lesson.

Dreiundfünfzigfte Lektion.

The Numerals (continued).

(The) half, not with a noun, in the sense of (the) half of it or of them is rendered die Halfte; as, Give me the half of it.

Half or the half of with names of places or names of countries is rendered simply halb, which is not declined if no article is used; as, halb England halb Baris, half (the half of) England halb Baris, half (the half of) Paris. But: die halbe Schweiz, half Switzerland.

The indefinite numeral (all) with the same nouns is rendered ganz, which, as well, is undeclined if without article; as,

ganz Deutschland, all Germany ganz London, all London. But: bas ganze schöne Paris, all fine Paris.

Note.—Ganz, in this application, corresponds also to the whole of, all over, or all through; as,
ganz Europa, the whole of Europe. It travelled all over England.

All, with other nouns in the singular (except names of material) in the sense of the whole, is also generally rendered ganz, which is declined and must be preceded by the definite article or any other determinative word; as,

bie ganze Familie, all the family mein ganzes Bermögen, all my fortune ben ganzen Tag(*), all day.

Every, followed by a cardinal number, is rendered by alle; as, alle sechs Wochen, every six weeks alle zwei Stunden, every two hours.

NOTE. - Mue may also be used if every or each is immediately followed by a noun expressing time; as,

alle Stunden (or jede Stunde), every (each) hour alle Tage (or jeben Tag(*), every (each) day.

Any, used in the sense of every, is rendered jeber(**); as, Sie fönnen in jebes Theater gehen. You may go to any theatre.

Some may be rendered by einiger, etc. (or etwas) with a name of material or an abstract noun, if a little is meant; as,

einiges (or etwas) Papier, some (a little) paper einige (or etwas) Spffnung, some (a little) hope.

Some of it, some of them (things only) are usually rendered baron, which is used even if of it or of them are understood only; as, Ich taufte eine Flasche Wein, wollen Sie bavon? I bought a bottle

Some or other, any whatever, any at all, are ren-

dered by irgend ein (ein being declined); as, irgend eine bittere Bemertung, some bitter remark or other irgend ein Fremder, some stranger or other ohne irgend einen Grund, without any reason whatever (or at all).

Some or any are rendered simply ein, if or other, whatever or at all are understood; as,

Ein herr fagte es. Some gentleman said so. Dhne einen Grund angugeben. Without giving any reason.

(**) There are two old forms of jeter, viz: (ein) jeglicher and jebweber.

^(*) Observe that nouns denoting definite time must be in the "accusative" if not the subject.

the article, ber Artifel Asia, Asien n. to conquer (a country or place), erobern to destroy, zersiören the disadvantage, harm, ber Nachtheil ... earthquake, bas Erb-

beben ,, flame, bie Flamme France, Frankreich n. full, voll the ham, ber Schinken Italy, Italien the leap-year, bas Schaltjahr left, remaining, übrig

to look at, aniehen irr.
(betrachten)
the love, bie Liebe
to mourn at, trauern
über (Acc.)

the painter, ber Maler to paint (to cover with colour), austreichen irr.

to paint (to represent by colours), malen to restore, replace, erfeten the soda-water, bas Sodawaller

Spain, Spanien the table-spoon, der Eß=

Whitsuntide, die Pfingsten (Plur.) the wish, desire, ber Wunsch

Exercise No. 53.

1. Have you eaten your cherries already? No, only (erst) the half of them. To whom does this house belong? One half belongs to me and the other half to my brother. Half of Moscow (Moskau) was destroyed by the flames. I have not seen more than half of Switzerland. When I had travelled through (durchreisen) the whole of Italy, I went to Spain and France. Where were you all the winter? I was not here Formerly you visited us every fortnight and now only every three weeks. You may (können) come to me every day. This article you willa get in any shop. If we have still some (a little) time left, we will look at the things in this shop-window. Here Ib havea some pounds of very fine strawberries. Oh, please give (Dat.) me some of them! What kind of book do you want? Please give (Dat.). me some one or other that is amusing (unterhaltend). If you have any wish whatever (so) tell it to me.

2. Sie sind jedem von meinen Berwandten unbekannt. Sein ganzer Reichthum konnte ihm seine verlorene Gesundheit nicht ersehn. Mit einiger (or etwas) Geduld nuß Ihnen diese Arbeit gelingen (you must succeed in ...). Geben Sie dem Kranken alle drei Stunden einen Eslössel voll von dieser Arzenei. Sie können dieses Bier ohne irgend einen Nachtheil für Ihre Gesundheit trinken. Sie haben zu viele Sigarren gekauft, wollen Sie mir nicht die Hälfte abtreten (let me have)?

All Prussia mourned at the death of its great king. What did you do all day? May I ask you for (um Acc.) some (a little) butter? He had already conquered half Asia when he died suddenly. His daughter possesses all his love. All the house has been newly (frisch) painted. I have bought a very good ham, will you [have] half of it? Every four years [there] is a leap-year. I will drink a bottle of sodawater, will you not also [have] some? I was out of town (verreist) all Whitsuntide. Some famous painter has painted this picture. All Lisbon (Lissabon) was destroyed by an earthquake. Newspapers are sold at any station. Some gentleman told me the other day that you sell such books. All Turkey would not be rich enough to pay such a large debt. I have read that news in some newspaper.

There is a knock.
Come in!
Does Mr. N. reside here?
No, he has left.
Where has he gone?

He lives on the first floor—on the ground floor.

Is he at home—in?

Will you step in (the speaker is inside)?

Will you step in (the speaker is outside)?

I will go before you. Is Doctor A. at home?

No, only Mrs. A. He will be here in a minute.

Give my regards (respects) to your father—mother—sister.

You will not find me at home.

I paid him a visit.

We have some visitors—a visitor.

When will you come and see me?

I shall go and see him.

Will you come to meet me?

Go to meet him.
Will you come with me into
the garden?
Will you come along with me

(us)? Take me along with you.

Yesterday I called on you (at your house).

I shall call on you. I shall call for you.

Shall I send for you?

You are sent for. You are wanted. Es klopft Jemand. Herein! Wohnt Herr N. hier? Nein, er ist ausgezogen.

Wohin ist er gezogen? Er wohnt im ersten Stod—im

Parterre. Ist er zu Hause? Wollen Sie hereinkommen?

Wollen Sie hineingehen ?

Ich will vorangehen. Ist der Herr(*) Doktor [A.] zu Hause ?

Nein, nur die Frau(*) Doktor. Er muß jeden Augenblick kom-

men.

Grüßen Sie Ihren Herrn(*) Bater—Ihre Frau Mutter— Ihre Fräulein Schwester—pon mir.

Sie werden mich nicht zu pause treffen.

Ich machte ihm einen Besuch. Wir haben Besuch-einen Besuch.

Wann wollen Sie mich befuchen?

Ich werde ihn besuchen. Wollen Sie mir entgegenkom-

men? Gehen Sie ihm entgegen. Wollen Sie mit mir in den

Garten gehen? Wollen Sie mitgehen?

Nehmen Sie mich mit. Gestern war ich bei Ihnen.

Ich werbe zu Ihnen kommen. Ich werbe Sie abholen. Soll ich Sie holen sassen? Sie werben geholt. Es wird nach Ihnen gefragt.

^(*) The words herr, Frau, Fraulein, are used in polite society in speaking of persons of rank, title, etc., and also of a person's relations.

Reading Exercise No. 53.

Betrügereil im Sandel2 mit Diamanten.3

Die Akademie der Wissenschaften4 in Baris hat sich neuerdings5 mit einer merkwürdigen6 Betrügerei, welche im Sandel mit Diamanten ausgeübt? wird, beschäftigt.8 Gin Bariser9 Händler10 kaufte vor einigen Wochen einen weißen11, hellen12 Diamanten,3 ben er mit 23,000 Franfen13 bezahlte. Eines Tages fiel es ihm ein14, den werth= vollen Stein mit Seifenwaffer15 zu waschen, worauf sich berselbe nach dem Waschen in einen gelben Diamanten verwandelte¹⁶, dessen Werth¹⁷ höchstens¹⁸ auf 4000 Franken geschätzt 19 werden konnte. Der weiße Diamant3 wird nämlich20 mit 2000 Franken der Karat21 bezahlt, während ber Karat des gelben Diamanten nur 250 Franken gilt22. Awei große Pariser Juweliere23, in deren Namen ein Chemiker²⁴ der Akademie ein Gutachten²⁵ überreichte²⁶, erklären den Schwindel²⁷ wie folgt:—Um den gelben Diamanten in einen weißen zu verwandeln, taucht28 man ihn in eine violette29 Anilinlösung30. Biolett29 und Gelb sind Complementärfarben31, d.h.32 Farben, welche sich gegenseitig³³ aufheben³⁴, woraus Farblosigkeit³⁵, d.h. Weiß¹¹ entsteht36. Der Diamant erscheint durch diese Behandlung37 vollständig38 weiß und büßt39 nicht das Mindeste40 von feinem Glanze41 ein39; allein die Täuschung42 hört sofort auf, sobald er gerieben43 oder gewaschen wird. Im Diamantenhandel wird man sich daher vor dieser neuen Betrügerei leicht zu schützen44 vermögen45.

1 fraud, 2 trade, 3 the diamond, der Diamant (Decl. see page 14, a), 4 science, 5 lately, 6 remarkable, 7 to practice, ausüben, 8 to occupy, beschäftigen, 9 Parisian, 10 dealer, 11 white, 12 light, 13 francs, 14 it occurred to him, 15 soap and water, 16 to change, (sich) verwandeln, 17 value, 18 at the utmost, 19 to estimate, schätzen, 20 namely, 21 carat, 22 to be worth, getten (irr.), 23 jewellers, 24 chemist, 25 result of his examination, 26 rendered, 27 swindle, 28 to dip, tauchen, 29 violet, 30 anilin-solution, 31 complementary colours, 32 i.e., d.h. (das heisst), 33 mutually, each other, 34 neutralise, 35 colourless condition, 36 is produced, 37 treatment, 38 perfectly, 39 suffers, 40 the least, 41 brillancy, 42 deception, 43 to rub, reiben (irr.), 44 to protect, schützen, 45 to be able, vernögen (irr.).

Fifty-fourth Lesson.

Vierundfünfzigste Lektion.

The Numerals (concluded).

Another, in the sense of a different one instead, is rendered ein anderer, and not ... another, fein anderer; as,

Diefes Glas ift nicht rein, geben Sie mir ein anderes. This glass is not clean, give me another. Ich kann Ihnen kein anderes Glasgeben. I cannot give you another glass,

Another, in the sense of one more of the same kind, is rendered noch ein, and not ... another, fein ... mehr; as,

Ihr Bier ift gut, geben Sie mir noch ein Glas (bavon). Your beer is good, givo me another glass (of it). Sie sollten fein Glas Bier mehr trinten. You should not drink another glass of beer.

More, standing with an adjective or an adverb, is rendered by the comparative (see pages 76 & 176);—however, if two adjectives or two adverbs are compared more is rendered by mehr; as.

Er ist mehr gutmuthig als bumm. He is more good natured than stupid. Sie lesen mehr unbeutlich als unrichtig. You read more in-

distinctly than incorrectly.

More, preceded by a numeral and not followed by than, is ren-

dered by noth, which is placed before the numeral; as,

Ich wünsche noch vier von diesen Krägen. I want four more of these collars. Wollen Sie noch ein wenig Fleisch? Ja, geben Sie mir noch. Do you wish for a little more meat? Yes, give me some more.

Any more, preceding a noun, is rendered noth mehr; as, haben Gie noch mehr Bucher? Have you any more books?

Any longer is rendered noth; as,

Wollen Sie die Reitung noch behalten? Will you keep the newspaper any longer?

No (or not any) more (a) no (or not any) longer (a), preceding a noun expressed or understood, are rendered by fein ... mehr, the latter word being placed after the noun; as,

Ich habe kein Geld mehr. I have no more money. Halten Sit kine hunde mehr? Rein, ich habe keine mehr. Do you no longer keep dogs? No, I have no longer any.

Note.—If not followed by a noun (expressed or understood), no (or not any) more, and no (or not any) longer are rendered night mehr; as,

I will see nicht mehr sehen. I will not see you any more. Das Fener will nicht mehr brennen. The fire will not burn any longer.

Either, in the sense of the one or the other, is rendered einer (bon beiden), and neither or not ... either, meaning not the one nor the other, is rendered feiner (von beiben); as,

Bon biesen (beiben) Messern können Sie eines nehmen. Of these (two) knives you may take either. Keiner von uns (beiben) war da. Neither (or "not either") of us was there.

Either meaning each is rendered jeder; as,

Man barf auf jeber Seite ber Brude gehen. People may go on either side of the bridge.

the button, ber Knopf ,, cough, ber Husten ,, drawer, die Schublade ,, fan, der Fächer in stock, auf Lager the invitation-card, die

Ginfabungsfarte to need, want, brauchen the light, candle, bas the shutter, ber Laben
Light
(Plur.: see p. 17 No. 5)
(Plur.: see p. 17 No. 5) Taschenmesser

pretty, hübsch ,, towel, bas Handtuch several times, mehreremal wet, nah

Exercise No. 54.

1. It is a very nice fan, but you have also another kind in stock. This cigar is not good, take another. This room is too small, have you not another to let? One plate is not enough, bring another. You should send (Dat.) him another invitation-card, perhaps heb hasa not received the first. I would (würde) also give (Dat.) the girl something, but I have not another penny (Penny m.) with me. The weather is more wet than cold. He works more industriously than accurately (pünktlich). Give (Dat.) me three more of these tickets. I can give you only two more. In that drawer youb willa find some more towels. Can you show (Dat.) me any more drawings? Do you see the ship any longer? Do not bring any more candles, I do not want (need) any more. Why do you no longer sell French books? If you do not wish to work any more (so) go to bed. I go no longer to that expensive hotel. Will you sell either of your horses? No, although I do not need two, I shall sell neither. You can buy a time-table at either station.

2. Sagen Sie die Regel noch einmal. Ich faufte neulich dieses Taschenmesser bei Ihnen (at your shop) und möchte gern noch eines für einen Freund von mir haben. Wir können auf jeder Seite des Wagens sihen. Wie viese Anöpfe wünschen Sie noch? Noch fünf, bitte. Ich bin bei (to) Ihren beiden Brüdern gewesen, aber keiner wollte mich begleiten. Ich ging noch mehreremal zu ihm, aber er war nie zu Hause. An (in) Ihrer Stelle wurde ich nicht mehr zu ihm gehen. Wenn eines bon ben beiden (two) Tenstern gerbrochen sein sollte, so machen Sie die Laden zu.

Will you not take (trinken) another cup of tea? No, thanks (danke), I never drink more than two cups. I do not know whether I shall buy either of these paintings. I should not buy either, because they are too expensive. Have you only this letter? I have many more. If you do not like to procure (besorgen) this article [for] (Dat.) me, I must go to another shop. When you have no longer a cough you may (dürfen) go out. This book is more pretty than useful. This letter is written very badly, write another. Shall I order another bottle of wine? Yes, of the same sort. Give (Dat.) me a few morematches.

Do you want to see me?

I want to see Mr. N.

I will see you home.

Did I keep you waiting?
Do not let me disturb you.
Now I must be off.
Will you excuse me one minute?

I beg your pardon!

I beg your pardon (what did you say?).

Will you be kind enough and give ... (so good as to give ...)?

Would you kindly ...? With pleasure.

With much pleasure.
Very much obliged to you.
Don't mention it.

Can you spare the book for a minute?

Have you not some stamps to spare?

I have not left any. I had nothing left.

Can you spare a little time to ..? We have still five minutes to

I have not the time to ...

You are just in time. We are behind our time. You are late—early.

Better late than never. You may come at any time.

I shall stay here for some time.

At the same time I should like to ...

By this time twelve months. In an hour's time.

It is more than time.

I stayed beyond my time.

Wollen Sie zu mir (Wollen Sie mich sprechen)?

Ich wünsche Herrn N. zu sprechen.

Ich will Sie nach Hause begleiten.

Habe ich Sie warten lassen? Lassen Sie sich nicht stören.

Jest muß ich fort.

Wollen Sie mich einen Augenblid entschuldigen.

Entschuldigen Sie—ich bitte um Verzeihung!

Wie? bitte.-Bitte, was sagten

Sie? Wollen Sie so gut sein und ... geben?

Würden Sie gefälligst ...? Mit Bergnügen

Mit dem größten Vergnügen. Sehr verbunden (Danke sehr). Bitte sehr.

Können Sie das Buch einen Augenblick entbehren?

Haben Sie nicht einige Marken übrig? Ich habe keine mehr übrig. Ich behielt nichts mehr übrig. Haben Sie ein wenig Zeit zu ...? Wir haben noch fünf Minuten

Beit. Ich habe keine Beit zu .. Sie kommen gerabe recht. Wir haben und versnötet

Wir haben uns verspätet. Sie kommen spät—früh. Besser spät als gar nicht.

Sie können zu jeder Zeit kommen. Ich werde eine Zeitlang hier bleiben.

Bugleich möchte ich

Heute über ein Jahr. In einer Stunde. Es ist die höchste Zeit.

Ich bin zu lange ausgeblieben.

Reading Exercise No. 54.

Die Parade in St. James's Park.

Die Königin von England hielt1 im November 1882 eine Musterung2 über die aus Egtipten3 zurückgekehrten4 Truppen⁵ ab, welche sich zu einem großartigen⁶ Schausviel⁷ gestaltete.8 Die Anzahl9 der an der Musterung theilneh= menden10 Truppen betrug11 ungefähr 9000 Mann, wor= unter sich 800 Mann Reiterei¹² befanden. Einzig¹³ in der Welt¹⁴ war die Zuschauerzahl¹⁵ von nahezu¹⁶ zwei Millionen Menschen; denn beinahe halb London betheiligte¹⁷ fich an bem Schauspiel, obgleich querft bichtefter18 grauer19 Nebel die Hauptstadt20 einhüllte21, so daß man kaum über die Straße sehen konnte. Die Temparatur war babei22 bitterfalt23. Die Königin nebst24 allen Mitaliedern25 bes Königshauses²⁶, darunter auch die deutsche Aronprinzessin²⁷ und der Großherzog²⁸ von Hessen²⁹, verließ um halb ein Uhr den Buckingham=Balast30 und fuhr zur Barade, welche auf dem offenen Plate31 hinter den "Horse Guards" im St. James's Bart ftattfanb22. Alle Truppen befilirten33 vor der Königin, welche von allen Generalen und dem ganzen Hofftaat84 umgeben35 war. Die Prinzen36 befanden fich unmittelbar37 neben der Königin, nur der Herzog von Conought ritt an der Spite38 der Garden39. Biel Aufsehen40 erregte41 die ausgewählte42 Abtheilung43 der in= bischen44 Armee, dreizehn Offiziere und neunzehn Mann stark. Nach der Musterung marschirten45 die Truppen, mit General Wolfelen an der Spite, durch die lebhaftesten46 Straffen bes Westenbes.

1 to hold, abhallen (irr.), 2 review, 3 Egypt, 4 to return, zurückkehren, 5 troops, 6 grand, 7 spectacle, 8 formed, 9 number, 10 participating, 11 to amount to, betragen (irr.), 12 cavalry, 13 unique, 14 world, 15 number of spectators, 16 nearly, 17 assisted, 18 thickest, 19 grey, 20 metropolis, 21 to envelop, einhallen, 22 also, 23 bitterly cold, 24 with, 25 members, 26 royal family, 27 crown-princess, 28 grand duke, 29 Hesse, 30 palace, 31 space, 32 to take place, stattfinden (irr.), 33 to defile, defiliren, 34 by the members of the court, 35 to surround, umgeben (irr.), 36 princes, 37 immediately, 38 head, 39 guards, 40 interest, 41 caused, 42 to select, auswählen, 43 detachment, 44 Indian, 45 to march, marschiren, 46 most frequented.

General Remarks on Determinative Adjectives. Pronouns and Numerals.

Determinative adjectives, as a rule, are repeated before every singular noun in sequence; -however, they are usually omitted after the first noun when all the nouns refer or belong to the same person or thing and are of the same case and gender or number; as,

Er ist mein Freund und Wohlthäter. He is my friend and bene-factor. Alle Fenster und Thüren des Hauses sind zerbrochen. All the windows and doors of the house are smashed.

Pronouns or determinative adjectives take the gender of the noun they refer to; -but if referring to a neuter noun of the male or female sex, they take in preference the gender of the sex instead of the neuter gender; as,

Wie alt ist Ihr Sonnen? Er (or es) ist 4 Jahre alt. How old is your little son? He is 4 years old. Das Madchen gleicht ihrer (or seiner) Mutter. The girl resembles her mother.

Note.—This is also the case with any adjective referring to such a noun; as, - Weldes ift bie idonfte (or bas idonfte) bon biefen Mädden? Which is the most beautiful of these girls?

The indefinite numerals all (aller) or both (beide) followed by a Genitive are rendered as follows:

1.) The noun or pronoun in the Genitive takes the case of after or beide which precedes the noun (see also page 126), but follows the pronoun; as,

Icannot help all of you. Wir waren in Icannot help all of you. Wir waren in Ihren beiben Garten. We were in both of your gardens. Sie gaben mir Bleistifte, welche alle schlecht sind. You gave me pencils,

all of which are bad.

2.) If aller and beibe are in the nominative case and occur with a noun or personal pronoun they are usually placed after the verb; as,

Der Wein ist aller getrunken (or aller Wein). All of the wine is nk. Wir haben beibe keinen Better (or wir beibe). Both of us

3.) After or beide, with a relative pronoun, is usually placed after a noun or personal pronoun (subject or object) without a preposition and occurring in the same sentence; as,

> Sie ichirten mir Sanbiduhe, welche mir alle gu groß find. sent me gloves, all of which are too large for me. Er unterscribe zwei Wechjel, welche sein Bater beibe für ihn bezahlen mußte. He signed two bills (of exchange) both of which his father had to pay

Any other numeral preceding a relative pronoun in the Genitive retains its case and follows the relative in German, which is rendered by von dem (or von welchem), etc.; as,

Es standen sechs Männer auf der Straße, von benen drei Süte trugen. There were six men in the street, three of whom were hats.

If the numeral is not the subject it is separated from the relative and takes its usual place; as, Er hatte Brob, bon bem er mir ein wenig gab. He had bread, a

little of which he gave me.

the chamber-maid, bas Stubenmädchen clean, pure, rein the drama, das Schauspiel to execute, to put to death, hinrichten

to assist, support, unters) to freeze, to be killed by [the quantity, bie Quantität the frost, *erfrieren interesting, interessant the little boy, bus Anabchen to pass (by), vorüber-gehen an (Dat.), etc. to please, gefallen irr.

(Menge) the ribbon, bas Banb ,, robber, ber Käuber to soil, beschmuten the sorrow, ber Rummer to wear, carry, tragen irr.

Exercise No. 55.

(Dat.)

1. He has sold his carriage and horses. Such a robber and murderer ought to be put to death. Each gentleman and lady wore a blue Where is the chamber-maid? I will call her directly. to invite all of you for this evening. I have spoken to (mit) all of your relations about it. You should sell both of your houses. I read two novels both of which are very interesting. All of the flowers in the garden have been killed by the frost. Both of the ladies ride very well. Was only a your brother ill? No. both of us were ill. I received a large quantity [of] tea all of which I can sell at (zu) a good price. The last ship brought many soldiers, several of whom are wounded. He had several dogs, none of which, howeverb, hea would (wollen) sell.

2. Es wird und alle freuen, wenn Sie bald wieder kommen werden. Das ist das arme Fräulein S., sie hat viel Kummer gehabt. Ich ging an Ihnen beiden vorüber, aber Sie sahen mich nicht. Ist nur einer von Ihren Stiefeln zerrissen? Rein, es find beibe zerriffen. Schenkten Sie bem Madchen bie(jenigen) Bander, von denen einige beschmutt find? Belcher von diesen Rnabchen ift der altere? Ihr Reffe zeigte mir feine zwei Zimmer, welche mir beide gut (much) gefielen. Es find Raufleute, welche beide fehr reich find.

I shall write to (an Acc.) all of you. These are the works of two poets, both of whom are already forgotten. Both of my parents are still living. Both my money and watch have (has) been stolen. You should not a drink all of the beer at once (auf einmal). He had two sons neither of whom could assist him in his business. They (one) have captured both of the thieves. He wrote many dramas, several of which were played all through (in the whole of) England. You sent (Dat.) me some note-paper all of which is soiled. All of us went to the station with him. He has two houses both of which are let. Did you see both of us? Both of you ought to be ashamed. All the cheese and butter are eaten. Her brother and sister will be here to-night. You will find similar (ähnlich) flowers in both of our gardens. Many persons (Leute), (the) most of whom were workmen, were waiting for (auf Acc.) the lord-mayor. Did you introduce that gentleman to (Dat.) the society? No, he introduced himself (selbst) to (Dat.) all of us. Bring another fork and spoon, these are not clean.

Have you any news from your brother?

I have not heard from him for a long time.

I shall not write to him for a

long time. It is a long time since.

It is a long time since I ...

It is a month since he came here.

It is a week since-since I ...

It is a week since he left. Have you ever been to Germany?

Have you been to the theatre yet?

Has the doctor come yet?

I have not seen him for three days.

I was in Germany for three months.

Can you lend me the book for a fortnight?

Can you stop for some hours?

I am going to France for the winter.

How long will it be before you come back?

It took me a long time before I could speak German. No longer ago than a week.

I saw him not long ago.

That was a long time ago (a great while ago). I shall come at once (directly). He ate the apples at once. All at once he disappeared. If we ever chance to meet each other.

Will you make a long stay here?

You had better come in the day time.

Haben Sie Nachrichten bon Ihrem Bruder?

Ich habe schon lange nichts von ihm gehört.

Ich werde lange nicht an ihn schreiben.

Es ift icon lange [her].

Es ift icon lange [her], daß ich

Er ist schon einen Monat hier (or er ift schon seit einem Monat hier).

Es ist schon eine Woche-baß ich .

Er ist icon eine Woche fort. Sind Sie schon in Deutschland gewesen?

Sind Sie schon im Theater gewesen?

Ist der Doktor icon gekommen? Ich habe ihn schon drei Tage [lang] nicht gesehen.

Ich war drei Monate [lang] in Deutschland.

Können Sie mir auf vierzehn Tage das Buch leihen?

Ronnen Sie einige Stunden bleiben?

Ich gehe über den Winter nach Frankreich. Wann werden Sie zurücktommen?

Ich brauchte fehr lange, bis ich Deutsch sprechen tonnte.

Erst vor acht Tagen.

Ich sah ihn erst vor Kurzem unlängst.

Das war ichon vor langer Zeit.

Ich werde gleich kommen. Er af die Alepfel auf einmal. Auf einmal verschwand er.

Wenn wir uns je [einmal] begegnen follten. Werden Sie sich lange hier auf-

halten?

Rommen Sie lieber bei Tag.

Reading Exercise No. 55.

Reiten und Fahren.

Im Mittelalter, 1 und zwar2 bis zum 13ten Jahr= hundert, 3 ritten die Frauen nach der Art4 der Männer. Dann wurde es Sitte,5 daß die Frau auf einem hinter dem Sattels befestigten? Riffens Plat nahm und den vor ihr sikenden Mann mit beiden Armen umschlang.9 Dies war uoch im 16ten Jahrhundert üblich¹⁰, und es giebt noch viele derartige¹¹ Abbildungen¹². Der Gebrauch¹³ der Wagen zur Personenbeförderung¹⁴ war im Mittelalter sehr beschränkt15, und es wurde von Fürsten16 und Obrigkeiten17 sehr dagegen geeifert18, weil das Fahren die männliche19 Rraft20 und Tapferkeit21 des Volkes beeinträchtige22. Die erste Karosse²³ kam 1533 aus Italien nach Baris und 1601 wurde durch die Infantin24 Marie von Spanien die erste derartige Rutsche²⁵ mit Glasfenstern nach Deutschland gebracht. Die ersten Miethkutschen²⁶ wurden 1615 in Baris eingeführt27. Nachdem es einmal aufgekommen28, artete29 an fürstlichen30 Söfen das Fahrwesen31 manchmal in Luxuş³² aus. So hielt Kurfürst³³ Sigismund 1594. seinen Einzug³⁴ in Warschau³⁵ mit 36 Kanonen³⁶, und der Brautwagen37 Kaiser Leopolds I wurde 1670 mit 38,000 Gulben38 bezahlt. Das Reisen zu Wagen war aber noch im 17ten Sahrhundert wegen ber schlechten Wegenicht angenehm; benn nicht felten mußten Leute neben bem Wagen gehen, um diesen mit Hebebäumen39 aus den Löchern40 und dem Schlamme41 der Straße zu heben42. Wer schnelle fortkommen43 wollte, mußte reiten.

1 middle-ages, 2 namely, 3 century, 4 manner, 5 custom, 6 saddle, 7 to fasten, befestigen, 8 pillion, 9 was holding on, 10 customary, 11 such, 12 pictures, 13 use, 14 transport of persons, 15 limited, 16 sovereigns, 17 government authorities, 18 inveighed, 19 manly, 20 vigour, 21 bravery, 22 deteriorated, 23 coach, 24 infanta, 25 coach, 26 hackney-coaches, 27 to introduce, einführen, 28 having come into use, 29 to degenerate, ausarten, 30 sovereign, 31 employment of vehicles, 32 luxury, 33 elector, 34 entry, 35 Warsaw, 36 cannons, 37 nuptial carriage, 38 florins, 39 levers, 40 holes, 41 mud, 42 to lift, heben (irr.), 43 to proceed.

Fifty-sixth Lesson.

Sechsundfünfzigste Lettion.

The Auxiliary Verbs of Mood.

An Auxiliary Verb of Mood in the Imperfect followed in English by the Infinitive perfect (i.e. by to have with a past participle) must be rendered in German as follows:

The Verb of Mood is changed into the Pluperfect Subjunctive (hatte ... fonnen, etc.) and the Past Participle of the principal verb is changed into the Infinitive; as,

Зф hätte Ihnen schreiben können. I might (could) have written to you. Sie hätten kommen sollen. You should have come.

This form is also commonly used for rendering the Conditional II. (see page 132); as,

Er hatte nicht kommen burfen. He would not have been allowed to come.

Müssen.

Müssen expresses a moral as well as a physical necessity and corresponds to the English must, to be obliged, to be compelled; as,

Er muß arbeiten. He must work. Ich mußte sliehen. I was compelled to slee. Warum haben Sie kommen musjen? Why have you been obliged to come?

It often corresponds also to to have to; as,

Ich muß nach Deutschland gehen. I have to go to Germany. Ich werde an ihn schreiben müssen. I shall have to write to him.

Note .- It may as well be said: 3ch habe nach Deutschland zu geben, etc.

I must not, etc. is rendered it barf night, etc.; but must I not? etc.. in the usual way muß ich nicht? etc.

Können.

Rönnen expresses a physical possibility and corresponds to the English can, could, to be able; as,

Der Mensch tann schwimmen. Man can (is able to) swim. Er tonnte nicht arbeiten. He could (was not able to) work.

It expresses also a possibility supposed by the speaker or a permission granted by another person to the subject of which the latter may take advantage or not, and is corresponding to may or might (Subjunctive); as,

Er kann mid vergessen haben. He may have (I think it possible that he has) forgotten me. Sie können mir helsen. You may assist me (if you like). Man könnte ihm nicht glauben. They might (I think it possible that they would) not believe him.

Note. In these cases also mogen is sometimes used; as, Er mag mich vergeffen haben.

REMARK. - To be able is occasionally rendered im Stanbe fein or vermögen (irr.)

Rönnen corresponds further to to understand or to know in the

sense of to understand something; as,

Können Sie Deutsch? Do you know German? Können Sie zeichnen? Do you understand drawing? Er kann Ales. He knows (understands) everything. Ich kann meine Aufgabe. I know my exercise.

Could, referring to the past (i.e. in the meaning of was able to) is rendered founte (Imperfect Indicative); as,

> Ich fonnte nicht arbeiten. I could not (I was not able to) work. Ronnten Sie schreiben? Could you (were you able to) write?

Could, denoting conditional (i.e. in the meaning of would be able to) is rendered founte (Imperfect Subjunctive); as,

Ich könnte nicht arbeiten. I could not (I should not be able to) work. Könnten Sie schreiben? Could you (would you be able to) write?

Note.—"I cannot help, forbear, avoid, withhold," are rendered: Ich fann nicht umbin (or ich fann mich nicht enthalten); as, Ich fann nicht umbin zu weinen. I cannot help weeping.

Wollen.

Wollen implies an inclination, intention, determination or desire, depending on the free will of the subject, and is corresponding to will (would), to be willing, to wish, to want, to like, to desire, to intent, to feel inclined, to be determined; as,

Bollen Sie mitgehen? Will you go with me? Er will nach Schweben reisen. He wishes to travel to Sweden. Er will nicht Iommen. He does not feel inclined (he does not like) to come. In would (I was determined to) do it. Jaiten Sie Iommen wollen? Had you intended to come? Wollen Sie das Buch? Do you wish (want) for the book?

Wollen signifies further somebody's assertion not altogether credited by him who repeats it; as,

Er will in Rugland gewesen sein. He pretends to have been in Russia.

It has also the meaning of to be about, to be going to do, or to be on the point of doing something; as,

3th wollte even ichreiben. I was just on the point of writing (I was just about to write, or, I was just going to write).

Note.—In this sense is also said : 3th war im Begriff zu schreiben.

Would, referring to the past (i.e. meaning was willing to, etc.) is rendered wollte (Imperfect Indicative); as,

3th woulte es thun, aber ith founte nicht. I would (was willing to) do it, but I could not. Er woulte nicht allein gehen. He would not (he did not intend to) go alone.

Would, denoting conditional (i.e. meaning would be willing, etc.) is rendered wire (Imperfect Subjunctive); as,

Wirben Sie allein gehen? Would you (would you be willing to) go alone? Er würbe kommen, wenn er könnte. He would come if

Bollen as auxiliary of the Imperative see page 132.

Sollen.

Sollen implies an obligation, the speaker is expected to comply with, and is corresponding to shall, should, ought to, am to, was to, etc.; as,

Du sollst nicht stehlen. Thou shalt not steal. Sie sollten das vergessen. You should (ought to) forget that. Ich soll bei Ihnen bleiben. I am to stay with you. Wer sollte Sie begleiten? Who was to accompany you?

Should after if (wenn) or in case (jalls, im Falle bah), these words being either expressed or understood, is rendered by folke (Imperfect); as,

Benn ich nicht ba sein sollte If I should not be there Falls wir ihm begegnen sollten In case we should meet him Sollte ein Brief für mich kommen Should a letter arrive for me

Note.—"I should, we should" in the other cases generally express the conditional and are rendered: id wurde, wir wurden; as,

3ch wurde bas nicht thun. I should not do that.

Sou, source (3rd person singular and plural) are also employed in the sense of the English is or are said, it is said, they or people say; as follows:

Er foll schr trant sein. He is said to be very ill. Die Bücher sollen berlauft worden sein. The books are said to have been sold. Sie soll sebr dumm sein. They (people) say (it is said) that she is very stupid.

Sollen is sometimes also used alone, the infinitive being understood;

Ras foll bas (heißen)? What does that mean? Was foll ich
(thun)? What am I to do here?

Collen as an auxiliary of the Imperative see page 132.

Dürfen.

Dürfen expresses a permission granted to the subject by law or by another person, and corresponds to the English to be allowed, to be permitted, may (in the sense of to be allowed), also to dare; as,

Niemand darf über die Biefe gehen. No one is allowed (permitted) to go across the meadow. Darf ich eintreten? May I step in? Die sinder dürfen im Garten ipielen. The children may (are allowed to) play in the garden. Sie dürfen ihm steinen solchen Brief schreiben. You dare not write to him such a letter.

Dürfte (Imperfect Subjunctive) is often used in the sense of what the speaker thinks possible, however, tonnen may also be used; as,

Er bürfte (or fönnte) bas (wohl) gesagt haben. He may (might) have said that.

Note. - In this case wohl usually accompanies the verb.

Mögen.

Mögen expresses a possibility supposed by the speaker; or a permission granted by another person, of which the person spoken of may take advantage or not; as,

Es mag (or kann) sein. It may be. Sie möchten (or könnten) sich irren. You might be mistaken.

Note.-In these cases usually fonnen is used (see page 258).

Mogen corresponds also to to like, to be fond of; as,

Mögen Sie englischen Käse? Do you like English cheese? Mögen Sie Ihren Better? Are you fond of your cousin?

May or might used for expressing a wish are rendered by möge (or mödite); as,

Möge er glüdlich wiederkehren! May he return safely! Er wünschte, daß Sie bald genesen möchten. He wished that you might recover soon. the artist, ber Rünstler to breakfast, frühstüden the communication, bie Mittheilung compensation, Bergütung considerable, beträchtlich (bebeutenb) the country-estate, bas Landgut the country-house, bas Landhaus the execution, (perform-ance), bie Ausführung

the guide, ber Führer hand-writing, bie Sanbschrift. to imitate, nachahmen to insist, *bestehen irr. Italian, italienisch the lesson (task), bie Let. to make inquiry about, sich erfundigen über(Acc.) the manner, die Weise (bie Art) the opinion, die Ansicht to be wanting, fehlen (Meinung)

the order, command, ber Befehl to play the piano, Kla-vier spielen to send off, abschiden the small-pox, bie Boden (Plural) to spend (money), aus-geben irr. tired, mübe unavoidable, unbermeib-

Exercise No. 56.

1. You should not have spoken in such a manner. They might have waited another quarter of an hour (Viertelstunde f.) He would been obliged to give (Dat.) you (a) compensation. I have been compelled to make inquiry about him. You will be obliged to alter your opinion. I had to insist upon the execution of my orders. They may not have known it. He might be at (auf) his country-estate. Do you know Italian as well as French? Does your sister understand playing (to play) the piano? No, she only understands singing (to sing). We could not work any more, because we were too tired. We could not work, even if you would pay us double the sum. Did you nota intend to buy a country-house near London? You may go if you like. He pretends to have seen you. He was going to send off the letter. He would try to imitate my handwriting, but he did not succeed. You would do the same in (an) my place. Do not wait for (auf Acc.) us if we should not have arrived. (The) war is said to be unavoidable. You dare not speak to him in this manner. May he be happy.

2. Sollte noch ein Glas fehlen, fo kaufen Sie eines. Pocken follen in London fein. Sätten Gie nicht mit dem nächsten Zug fahren (go) dürfen? Wir könnten es thun, wenn wir wollten. Sie wollen Ihre Uebersetzung allein gemacht haben! Darf ich Sie begleiten? Seine Mittheilung hatte Sie nicht erschrecken follen. Werben Sie nicht einen Führer nehmen mussen? Mögen alle Ihre Bunsche erfüllt werden! Er kann viel mehr (a great deal more) als Sie.

I am not permitted to go out. I could not go to church yesterday. Now we have to make haste. I would not have been able to do it myself. You might give (Dat.) me another cup of coffee. I am busy, could you not come another time? I did not want to spend too much money. In case I should see the artist I shall send him to (Dat.) you. I wished that he might succeed. We could not have been at your house sooner. His debts are said to be very considerable. I am about to breakfast. It may be a fortnight since (schon). None of (von) the boys knew his lesson.

What time do you leave business?

I met him the next day.

Every other day. The very same day.

Again and again.

As much again — as large again.

Half as much again—half as large again.

No sooner said than done. Are you in a hurry? I am in no hurry.

I passed my evening at the theatre.

Where will you pass the night?

I pass here every day.

I pass your house twice a day.

To pass on horseback, in a vehicle or boat.

To go pass (or by), to ride past (or by), to drive past (or by). We passed through a small village.

We passed over a bridge.

We passed under a bridge.

When we had passed the last house.

I saw while passing by.

How came it to pass?
I asked the price.
What did he ask for it?
Has anybody asked for me?
I shall ask—beg—him for the money.

Did you ask the shoemaker about my boots?

Have I been asked for ! Ask no questions!

Wann gehen Sie aus dem Geschäft?

Ich begegnete ihm den folgenden

Alle zwei Tage.

Un ebendemfelben Tag.

Immer wieder.

Noch einmal soviel—noch einmal so groß.

Halb joviel-halb fo groß.

Gesagt, gethan. Haben Sie Eile? Ich habe keine Eile.

Ich verbrachte den Abend im Theater (ich brachte ... zu).

Wo wollen Sie übernachten (über

Nacht bleiben)?

Ich gehe jeden Tag (or alle Tage) hier vorüber (or vorbei). Ich gehe zweimal den Tag an Ihrem Hause vorüber.

Vorüber (or vorbei) reiten, fahren.

Vorüber (or vorbei) gehen, reiten, fahren

Wir gingen (ritten, etc.) durch ein kleines Dorf.

Wir gingen (ritten, etc.) über eine Brücke.

Wir gingen (ritten, etc.) unter einer Brücke durch.

Als wir am letten Haus vorüber (or vorbei) waren.

Ich sah im Vorübergehen (im Vorbeigehen).

Wie ist es zugegangen? Ich fragte nach dem Preise.

Wieviel verlangte er dafür? Hat Jemand nach mir gefragt?

Ich werde ihn um das Geld bitten.

haben Sie den Schuhmachen nach meinen Stiefeln gefragt? Ist nach mir gefragt worden?

Fragen Sie nicht!

Reading Exercise 110. 56.

Die Beufdreden1 auf Cypern.2

Einem Bericht3 bes englischen Kommissars4 auf Cybern zufolge hat sich seit 1878 die Landplages der Seuschrecken auf der Insels vermehrt.7 Im letten Frühjahr und Sommer hat sie ganz erschreckliche Berhältnisse ange-nommen.8 Die Heuschrecke ist auf Chpern heimisch, und ihre Bervielfältigung10 ift großentheil811 ber Berftorung12 der Waldungen13 zuzuschreiben14. Der Boden15, auf welchem die Balder standen, eignet sich16 in den wenigsten Fällen17 zum Anbau18 und wird dadurch der Erzeumma19 diefer Infekten²⁰ günstig. Die englische Regierung²¹ hat versucht, der Plage²² Einhalt zu thun²³ und hat ziemlich bedeutende²⁴ Belohnungen²⁵ ausgesetzt²⁶, die nach und nach²⁷ verdreifacht28 worden sind. So unglaublich29 es scheinen mag, find vom Juli 1881 bis Anfang³⁰ Februar 1882 ungefähr 1300000 Kilo Heuschreckeneier an die Behör= den³¹ abgeliefert³² und zerstört worden. Die Statistifer³³ tönnten ohne Zweifel34 die fabelhafte35 Anzahl36 von Eiern ausrechnen37, welche dieses Gewicht38 darstellt39, aber die Einbildungskraft⁴⁰ hat Mühe⁴¹, fich dieselbe vorzustellen⁴². Andessen43 hat diese ungeheure44 Zerstörung das Berschwinden45 der Heuschrecken nicht herbeigeführt46. Das einzige Mittel47 muß in der Erhaltung48 und Ausdehnung39 der Waldungen gesucht werden, wie auch in der Bermehrung⁵⁰ der Bevölkerung⁵¹ und bes Anbaueg¹⁸. Wieder einer der zahlreichen52 Beweise53 gegen die übertriebene54 Ausrottung55 der Holzbestände56.

1 the locust, die Heuschrecke, 2 Cyprus, 3 report, 4 commissioner, 5 pest, 6 island, 7 to increase, vermehren, 8 assumed a terrible magnitude, 9 at home, 10 increase, 11 in a great measure, 12 destruction, 13 forests, 14 to ascribe, zuschreiben irr. (Dat.), 15 soil, 16 is fit, 17 cases, 18 cultivation, 19 generation, 20 insects, 21 government, 22 plague, 23 to arrest, 24 considerable, 25 rewards, 26 offered, 27 by degrees, 28 tripled, 29 incredible, 30 commencement, 31 authorities, 32 delivered, 33 statisticians, 34 no doubt, 35 fabulous, 36 number, 37 to calculate, ausrechnen, 33 weight, 39 represents, 40 imagination, 41 a difficulty, 42 to conceive, 43 however, 44 enormous, 45 disappearance, 46 effected, 47 remedy, 48 preservation, 49 extension, 50 increase, 51 population, 52 numerous, 53 proofs, 54 excessive, 55 extermination, 56 woods.

Fifty-seventh Lesson. Siebenundfünfzigste Lektion.

On Laisen.

Laffen (to let, to leave) used as an auxiliary of another verb follows the rules of an auxiliary verb of mood (see pages 130, 194 & 258).

To have, to get, with an Accusative object (noun or pronoun) followed by a Past participle, are rendered laffen, and the past participle becomes an infinitive in German; as,

Ich ließ einen Schreibtisch machen. I had (got) a writing desk made. Wo lassen Sie Ihr Bilb maten? Where do you have (get) your picture painted? Ich sabe an ihn schreiben lassen. I have had him written to.

To cause, to make, to suffer, to allow or permit, with an Accusative object followed by an Infinitive, have the same translation of laffen; as,

Er ließ mich einen andern Brief schreiben. He made me write another letter. Der König läßt seine Minister rusen. The king causes his ministers to de called. Wein Kopsweß hat mich nicht schreiben lassen. My headache has not sussered me to write. Er ließ sich übervortheisen. He allowed himself to de taken in.

Note.—Observe that the passive Infinitive is in German rendered by the active Infinitive after Iassen; thus "to be called" is rendered rusen, etc.

REMARK. —In the same manner laffer is sometimes the translation of to order (befehlen), to bid (heißen), to tell (jagen); however, these verbs can always be rendered literally; as,

Der Unführer ließ die Golbaten auf bas Bolt ichiegen (or befahl ben Solbaten auf bas Bolt zu ichießen). The commander ordered the soldiers to shoot at the people.

On To Like.

To like, to like better, to like best are corresponding to the German gern(e), lieber, am liebsten (see page 176), and these translations are used when the object spoken about is used in a general sense. - However, if the object (noun or pronoun) is pointed out, to like is usually rendered as follows:

If referring to the sense of taste the translation is schmeden

(Dat.); thus:

Bie schmedt Ihnen bieser Bein? How do you like this wine? Er schmedt mir sehr gut. I like it very much. Welches Brod schmedt Ihnen bester, das schwarze oder das weiße? Which bread do you like best, the brown or the white? Diese Eigarren schmeden mir am besten. I like these cigars best.

If referring to other things the translation is gefallen (Dat.

irr.); thus:

Gefällt Ihnen dieses Buch? Do you like this book? Es gefällt mir nicht gut. I do not like it much. Gesiel es Ihnen in Paris (also: waren Sie gerne in Paris)? Did you like Paris? Ja, aber in Bien gesiel es mir bester (also: in Bien war ich sieber). Ves, but I liked Vienna better. Eine solche Oper gesällt mir nicht. I do not like such an opera.

Note .- In all the cases mentioned the verb lieben (to love), and mogen are sometimes used for translating "to like;" thus:

Lieben Gie Musit? Do you like music?

to arrest, to apprehend, berhaften [(=Wein) the claret, ber Borbeaux " conversation, bie Unterhaltung " doctor, ber Dottor (Decl. see page 16 No. 1) to drop, to let fall, fallen conversation, bie

to furnish (a house, etc.),

lasien irr.

möbliren

Rheinwein " impudence, bie Unperschämtheit to leave (to bequeath), hinterlaffen irr. to leave (to commit to), überlaffen irr. the number (of a book), bie Lieferung

the hock (wine), ber | the passenger, ber Baffa to persuade, überreben to run in (a port, etc.), *einlaufen irr. sea-sick, feefrant to send - back, gurud. ichiden to send for, holen laffen the suffering, bas Leiben to suppose, permuthen

Exercise No. 57.

- 1. Let it not fall. He has the book printed in Germany. I had (Dat.) him telegraphed to yesterday. He will get all his house furnished. I have had a new coat made [for] me (Dat.) That makes me think of (an Acc.) your brother. Your confidence makes one to hope for (auf Acc.) better times. I shall cause the children to be taken (bringen) home. I do not allow myself to be sent back. The bad weather will not suffer the ships to run in. How do you like our tea? I do not like it so much as your coffee. I suppose you like coffee better than tea. Do you like these pears? I like this fish very much. How do you like our theatre? Do you like Mr N.? I do not like him so much as his brother. I like your streets much better than ours. Did you like the conversation of that gentleman? I never like to converse with him. I do not like this weather.
- 2. Der Sturm ließ alle Passagiere seekrank werden. Als er mich verließ, war er noch gang gefund (in good health). Diefer Rheinwein schmedt mir besser als jener Bordeaux. Ich hätte den Doktor holen laffen. Seine Beife zu fprechen (of speaking) ge-Wo haben Sie sich bas haar schneiden laffen? fällt mir nicht. Gefällt es Ihnen in Deutschland besser als in England? Seine Leiden ließen mich fein früheres ichlechtes Betragen vergeffen. Er überließ das Saus seiner Schwester.

You would not like (a) such impudence. Who has dropped this pocket-handkerchief? How many rooms can you let (see p. 138)? Let us (see p. 132) take a walk. How do you like London? He did not suffer himself to be persuaded. How much did his father leave him? I shall send for the next number of the magazine. If you drop anything you must pick it up. I got the thief arrested. How do you like the German language? Would you not like some more cherries? Leave it to (Dat.) me. Why did he no longer like his room? I do not like English cigars. Where did you have your boots made? What sort of beer do you like best? An uncle of hers left her a considerable fortune. All liked the dinner (see page 228) very much. I should like such a country-house as well. The guide did not allow me to go alone.

I thought of you.
I think he will come.
Do not think badly of me.

What do you think about it?
I do not know what to think—
to make—of it.
What do you think of him?

What do you think of him?
What do you think that this
gentleman is?

I think he is a doctor — I take him to be a doctor.

I thought you were ill.
I (mis)took him for a waiter.
He thinks himself a great actor.

Think it over.

I have thought better of it.

Upon second thoughts.
Thoughts are free.
Put the book on the table.

Put the inkstand here.

Put the knife in your pocket.

Put the ring on your finger.

Do not put the dog on the chair.
Put on your hat.
Put on your spectacles.
Put on your spectacles.
Put on this neckerchief.
Take off your things.
Take off your hat.
Take off your spectacles.
Take off your roat.
Take off your ring.
Take off your neckerchief.

Have you your overcoat on?

He has no coat on. He has no hat on. Ich bachte an Sie. Ich glaube, er wird kommen. Denken Sie nicht schlecht von mir.

Was halten Sie davon? Ich weiß nicht, was ich davon halten soll.

Was halten Sie von ihm? Für was halten Sie diesen Herrn?

Ich halte ihn für einen Doktor.

Ich hielt Sie für krank. Ich hielt ihn für einen Kellner. Er hält sich für einen großen Schanspieler.

Ueberlegen Sie es sich (Dat.). Ich habe mich eines Besseren besonnen.

Bei reiserer Ueberlegung. Gedanken sind zollfrei.

Legen Sie das Buch auf den Tisch.

Stellen Sie das Tintenfaß hierher.

Stecken Sie das Messer in die Tasche.

Steden Sie ben Ring an ben Finger.

Sepen Sie den Hund nicht auf den Stuhl.

Setzen Sie Ihren (ben) Hut auf. Setzen Sie Ihre (bie) Brille auf. Ziehen Sie Ihren (ben) Rod an. Ziehen Sie biefes Halstuch an.

Legen Sie ab.

Nohmen Sie Ihren (ben) Hut ab. Nehmen Sie Ihre (bie) Brille ab. Biehen Sie Ihren (ben) Nock aus. Biehen Sie Ihren (ben) Ning aus.

Ziehen Sie Ihr (das) Halstuch aus.

haben Sie Ihren (den) Ueberrod an?

Er hat keinen Rock an. Er hat keinen hut auf

Reading Exercise No. 57.

Entenfang1 durch elektrifches2 Licht.

Als ein Dampfer3 fürglich4 bei St. Louis Nachts ben Fluß hinauffuhr.5 wurden der Kavitan,6 die Baffagiere und die Schiffsmannschaft, durch ein eigenthümliches,8 rau= schendes9 Getofe10 erschreckt, das in der Luft11 gang in der nächsten Nähe12 des Dampfers hörbar13 war. Reiner wußte das Geräusch¹⁰ zu erklären¹⁴, der Eine deutete¹⁵ es so, der Andere wieder anders16, den Meisten erschien es aber unerklärlich17. Der Kavitan begab fich18 zu ber elektrischen Maschine19 und vermehrte das Licht um eine Lichtftärke21 von 800 Kerzen. In demfelben Augenblicke22 war der bisher23 im Nebel liegende Fluß hell24 erleuchtet25, und man sah nun, daß das Geräusch von einem unge= heuren²⁶ Schwarm²⁷ wilder²⁸ Enten herrührte²⁹, die nach Süden30 zogen31. Der blendende32 Schein33 fchrectte34 die Thiere, und in großen Massen35 flogen sie in das Licht hinein, so daß in zwanzig Minuten das Boot buchftäblich36 mit Enten bedeckt³⁷ war. Einige flogen gerade³⁸ gegen das Glas, in welchem das Licht brannte, und fielen betäubt39 aufs Ded, andere flogen den Passagieren an den Ropf und wurden niedergeschlagen40; im Ganzen41 wurden mehrere Hundert Enten erlegt42. Man fand 36 [Stud bei ber Landung43 in St. Louis in der Rajitte44 verstect45, an= bere im Ressel46=und Maschinenraum47. Die meisten Enten maren im Wasser als das Boot in den Schwarm hineinlief48, und durch das elektrische Licht irregeführt49, flogen fie gerade in dieses hinein.

¹ catching of wild ducks, 2 electric, 3 steamer, 4 the other day, 5 ascended, 6 captain, 7 crew, 8 peculiar, 9 rushing, 10 noise, 11 air, 12 proximity, 13 audible, 14 to account for, 15 explained, 16 otherwise, 17 inexplicable, 18 went, 19 machine, 20 to increase, vermehren, 21 power, 22 moment, 23 hitherto, 24 brilliantly, 25 lighted up, 26 immense, 27 flock, 28 wild, 29 proceeded, 30 South, 31 were moving, 32 dazzling, 33 brightness, 34 frightened, 35 masses, 36 literally, 37 to cover, bedecken, 38 directly, 39 stunned, 40 to strike down, niederschlagen irr., 41 altogether, 42 killed, 43 arrival, 44 cabin, 45 hidden, 46 boiler. 47 engine-room, 48 ran, 49 deceived.

Fifty-eighth Lesson.

Achtundfünfzigste Lektion.

On the Tenses and Moods of Verbs.

The Present tense is often used instead of the Future (I) when the verb is accompanied by an adverb or adverbial expression of time and the future is not too far off; as.

3ch reise morgen nach L. I shall go to L. to-morrow. Er kommt wieber in brei Wochen. He will come again in three weeks.

The Present tense is further used for the English Perfect tense when the latter occurs with an adverb or adverbial expression of time and is describing an action which has been going on for some time and is still going on; as,

Wie lange lind Sie ichon in London? How long have you been in London? Ich bin ichon 2 Jahre (or ichon ieit 2 Jahren) hier. I have been here for (these) two years. Rennen Sie biefen herem ichon lange? Have you known this gentleman for a long time? Rein, ich fenne ihn noch nicht lange. Rein, ich fenne ihn erft zwei Wonate. No, I have not known him long. No, I have known him for two months only.

Note.-The verb is usually accompanied by icon, or if the time is definite. also by feit. - If there is a negation and no question, noth is used with in-- definite time.

In the Perfect or Pluperfect tense of a dependent clause the auxiliary verb haben or fein is often omitted, especially for the sake of euphony, to avoid the repetition of the same word, and also in poetry; as,

3th bushe, baß er baß Gelb, welthes er erhalten (hatte), verspielt hatte. I knew that he had lost the money, which he had received, in play. Zeßt, ba eß ihm gelungen (ist), tit er jehr glüdlich barüber. Now, as he has succeeded, he is very happy about it.

The Subjunctive Mood is used in the oblique narration; as,

 Er sagte, daß er frant sei (or wäre). He said that he was ill.
 3d fragte ihn, ob er dort gewesen sei (or wäre). I asked him whether he had been there. — 3. Er schrieb mir, daß er außgehen merbe (or murbe). He wrote that he would go out.

Notes .- 1. The oblique narration occurs if the speaker relates what he or another person said, thought, wrote, etc., and he does not use the exact words of what was said, etc. — Thus the original words of the person spoken of were in sentence—1. I am ill, in—2. Have you been there? and in—3. I shall go out.

Instead of the Imperfect usually the Present (Subjunctive), instead of the Pluperfect usually the Perfect (Subjunctive), and instead of the Conditional usually

the Future (Subjunctive) is used in German.

3. Daß may also be omitted if the first sentence does not contain a negation; thus: Er fagte, er fei frant.

The verb is also in the subjunctive after the conjunctions bamit (in order that), bamit ... nicht (lest), als ob (als wenn or wie wenn) (as if), and after wenn (if), if with the latter the verb is in the Imperfect or Pluperfect; as, Schreiben Sie, bamit er tomme. Write, in order that he may

come. Wenn Sie zu Sause gewesen waren. If you had been at home.

Verbs signifying a wish, request, hope, fear, command, etc., are followed by bas with the verb in the subjunctive, if doubt or uncerstainty is implied; as,

Ich wunsche, baß er mich besuche. I wish him to visit me. fürchte, baß er sterbe. I fear lest he should die. 34

fichern the brothers and sisters

bie Geschwifter ,, cask, barrel, baš Faß ,, case, ber Fall to execute (an order),

ausführen the foreigner, ber Mus. [meise] glüdlicher. fortunately,

to assure, to insure, ber | to go out of town, "ber | the order (for goods), bear reifen the guest, ber Gaft

to inquire of, fich erfunbigen bei in time, rechtzeitig to lecture, die Borlefung the manager, ber Ge:

fdäftsführer to meet with an accident, *nerunglücken

Muftraa

porter (carrier), den. Gepäckträger

" service, ber Dienst " skill, bie Geichidliche

" south, ber Guben to storm (to attack), exftürmen

Exercise No. 58.

1. We shall go out of town to-morrow. They will be herepresently. I shall write to (an Acc.) you in a fortnight. Have you been long in England? No; I have been here for half-a-year only. Your brothers and sisters have been waiting for (auf Acc.) you for two hours. His wife has been dead for a long time. The song shehas sung has pleased us very [much]. The guests who had arrived first were foreigners. A porter told me that our train had alreadystarted. I asked him whether he could go with me to the lecture_ The doctor promised that he would call (come) once more this evening. Our friend informed us that he had not been able to depart because he had been ill several days. The manager inquired of me what kind of man he was. Do it in order that he [may] pardon (Dat.) you. You speak as if you could not rely on his skill. Do you not wish her tocome as soon as possible?

2. Ich telegraphirte ihm, daß ich ihm kein Faß Wein mehr schiden werbe, ehe er nicht für bas lette bezahlt habe. Ich erwarte Sie in einer Biertelftunde auf dem Bahnhof. Der General befiehlt, daß die Festung bei *(at)* Nacht erstürmt werde. Vie-lange haben Sie schon diesen Hund? Ich habe ihn schon ein Jahr. Sie glaubte, ihr Mann sei verunglückt, aber glücklicherweise war dies nicht der Fall. Er beeilte sich, damit er nicht zu spät ankomme (should arr.). Obgleich ich gut gegessen, hatte ich noch Sunger (was hungry).

I could have executed the order if you had sent it sooner. Did he not write that he was still in the South of Germany? You will not arrive in time. I hardly can hope that my health will improve (sich bessern) much. Have you not been living in this house for five years? I have been living there since I have been in London. He assured (Dat.) me he would never forget the great service I had rendered (leisten) him (Dat.). Do you fear that he will not pay the bill of exchange? I shall be with you presently. We heard that the doctor would not be in town (hier) to-day. How long has this house been let? I told her that I had sent for you. He thought you had gone out of town. You have been wearing your hat much longer than I [have] mine.

Conversational and Idiomatic Phrases.

Put it aside.
Put it into German.
Shall I put my name to it?
He put a question to me.
I cannot put it off any longer.

Did I put you to any inconvenience?
I shall put things right for you.

Take this letter to Mr...—to the post-office.

Take this letter to the letter-box

Will you take a walk—a ride—a drive?

Where does it take place? He took it away from me. I take you at your word.

It took no effect on me.

He was taken ill.
You were taken in.
Take pains.
I shall take pains.
Do you take snuff?
Go and bring me my umbrella.

Who dropped this glove? What do you wish for? I am in need—want of ... You need not do it.

A knife is wanting.
What is the news?
There is no news.
No matter for that.
What is the matter?
What is the matter with you?
—what ails you?
Nothing is the matter with me.
What is the matter with your eye?—what ails your eye?

Legen—stellen Sie es bei Seite. Ueberseten Sie es ins Deutsche. Soll ich es unterschreiben? Er stellte mir eine Frage. Ich kann es nicht mehr aufschieben. Machte ich Ihnen Umstände?

Ich werde die Sache für Sie in Ordnung bringen. Tragen Sie diesen Brief zu Herrn ... —auf die Post. Wersen Sie diesen Brief in den Briefkasten.

Wollen Sie spazieren gehen reiten,—fahren or wollen Sie einen Spaziergang — einen Spazierritt—eine Spaziersahrt —machen?

Wo findet es statt? Er nahm es mir weg. Ich nehme — halte — Sie beim Wort.

Es machte keinen Eindruck auf mich. Er wurde krank.

Sie sind angeführt worden. Geben Sie sich Mühe. Ich werde mir Mühe geben. Schnupfen Sie?

holen Sie mir meinen Regenichirm. Wer ließ diesen Handschuch sallen? Was wollen—wünschen—Sie?

Ich brauche ... Sie brauchen—müssen— es nicht thun.

Es fehlt ein Messer. Bas giebt es Neues? Es giebt nichts Neues. Das macht nichts. Bas giebt es? Bas fehlt Ihnen?

Es fehlt mir nichts. Was haben Sie am Auge?

Reading Exercise No. 58.

Borbereitungen 3ur Beobachtung2 bes Benus-Borübers gangs3 im December 1882.

Die sämmtlichen⁴ astronomischen⁵ Expeditionen⁶ Deutschlands, welche zur Beobachtung des Vorübergangs der Benus vor der Sonnenscheibe? ausgesandts wurden, find jest wohlbehalten9 an ihren Bestimmungsorten10 ober wenigstens in den nächst gelegenen11 Säfen12 angelangt13, und zwar14 die nach Bunta Arenas entsandte15 nach etwa16 fünfwöchentlicher17 Reise am 17. October, die nach Bahia Blanca bestimmte18 nach etwa vierwöchentlicher Reise am 22. October, und die beiden nach Nordamerika entfandten nach Seereisen19, welche 14, beziehungsweise 18 Tage ge= dauert20 haben, am 24. October und am 1. November. Die deutschen aftronomischen Expeditionen sind, wie wir schon früher erwähnten21, unter bestmöglicher22 Benutung23 der bei dem Benusdurchgange24 dieses Jahrhundert325 im Sahre 1874 gemachten26 Erfahrungen aufs Bollftändigste27 und Gleichartiaste²⁸ ausgerüftet²⁹ worden. Da überdies³⁰ die von ihnen nunmehr31 erreichten Stationen32, soweit dies nach den astronomischen Bedingungen33 zu erlangen34 war, so gelegen sind, daß sie alle Aussicht35 auf günstiges36 Wetter darbieten37, so ist zu hoffen, daß auch diesmal38, wie im Jahre 1874 der Erfolg³⁹ den diesseitigen⁴⁰ Erpe= ditionen nicht fehlen wird41, und daß die Beobachtungen von 1882 in Verstärfung42 der Ergebnisse43 von 1874 einen erheblichen44 Beitrag45 zur Lösung46 ber wiffenschaft= lichen47 Fragen48, um die es sich bei diesen Erpeditionen handelt49, liefern50 werden.

1 preparations, 2 the observation, die Beobachtung, 3 transit of Venus, 4 all, 5 astronomical, 6 expeditions, 7 sun's disk, 8 to send out, aussenden irr., 9 safely, 10 destinations, 11 situated, 12 ports, 13 arrived, 14 namely, 15 sent, 16 about, 17 five weeks', 18 destined, 19 sea voyages, 20 to last, dauern, 21 to mention, erwahnen, 22 best possible, 23 use, 24 transit of Venus, 25 century, 26 acquired, 27 in the most complete manner, 28 all alike, 29 to equip, ausristen, 30 moreover, 31 now, 32 stations, 33 conditions, 34 to be obtained, 35 prospect, 36 favourable, 37 offer, 38 this time, 39 success, 40 of this country, 41 be wanting, 42 corroboration, 43 results, 44 considerable, 45 addition, 46 solution, 47 scientific, 48 questions, 49 which are the objects of, 50 furnish.

Fifty-ninth Lesson.

Neunundfünfzigste Leftion.

The Infinitive and the Present Participle.

An Infinitive, generally with the neuter article may be used as a substantive, corresponding then to the English Present Participle; as,

Das Trinken ist nothig, aber zu viel Trinken ist ungesund. Drinking is necessary, but too much drinking is unwholesome. Sie ist müde vom Tanzen. She is tired with dancing.

The Infinitive without zu, after the auxiliary verbs of mood (see p. 130), is used besides, after the verbs laffen, to let, etc.; heißen, to bid; nennen, to call; helfen, to help; lehren, to teach; lernen, to learn, to study; machen, to make; fehen, to see; hören, to hear; fühlen, to feel; finden, to find; this infinitive corresponding sometimes to the English present participle; as,

Lassen Sie mich gehen. Let me go. Wer hilst mir die Kiste öffnen? Who helps me to open the box? Ich sand ihn schlasen. I sound

him sleeping.

Note.—Lasien, heißen, heißen, hören (sometimes also sehren and sernen), like the auxiliary verbs of mood, take their infinitive form as a past participle (see page 130), and if in a dependent clause the rule on compound tenses of verbs of mood (see page 194) applies to them; as,

3ch meine ben Bogel, ben ich auf bas Dach habe sliegen sehen. I mean the bird which I have seen flying on the roof.

The Infinitive without an occurs also with the verbs: liegen - figen or ftehen bleiben, to remain lying-sitting or standing ; fpazieren gehen-reiten fahren, to go walking, to take a walk-a ride-a drive, etc.; ichlaienbetteln, etc. gehen, to go to sleep, to go begging; ichlafen legen, to lay to sleep.

A Present participle with of, dependent on a preceding noun

must be rendered by the infinitive with au; as,

Die Gebulb zu warten. The patience of waiting. Die Ubsicht, Sie zu beseibigen. The intention of offending you.

A Present Participle, dependent on a preceding noun of which it gives a description, must be rendered by a relative clause, which might in such a case also be done in English; as,

Es ift eine Frau, die viele Fehler hat. It is a woman having (i.e.

who has) many faults.

A Present Participle, dependent on a preceding verb, is rendered by the infinitive with zu (the above verbs requiring the infinitive without an excepted); as,

Fahren Gie fort ju ergahlen. Continue relating.

A Present Participle, denoting time, cause, reason or manner must be rendered by a subordinative clause with a corresponding conjunction; as,

Nachbem ich ihm telegraphirt hatte, schrieb ich ihm. (After) having telegraphed to him, I wrote to him. Als ber Feind in die Festung fam, sand er sie verlassen. The enemy on arriving at the fortress, sound it deserted.

A Present Participle, following without or instead of, may be rendered by the infinitive with zu or by a clause with baß (see p. 210); as,

Er ichidte feinen Cohn, anftatt felbft gu tommen (or anftatt bag er

felbit fam). He sent his son instead of coming himself.

the apple-tree, ber Apfelbaum
to blush, *erröthen
celebrated, famous, ber
rühmt
the clerk, ber Commis
(ber Schreiber)
to contain, enthalten irr.
the count, ber Graf
(Decl. see page 15 c.)
the countryman, ber
Aanbämann
Plur.: bie Lanbsleute
to cut down, umbauen irr.
the duchess, bie Sergagin

fluent, geläusig
to gamble, to play,
pielen
the honour, die Ehre
, interpreter, der Dolmetidier
, judge, der Richter
, leave, der Abschieb
, malady, die Krantheit
, machine, die Maschier
only, sole (adj.), einzig
the pear-tree, der Birnbaum

the picture-gallery, bie Semälbe-Gallerie, pleasure, bas Bergnügen, purse, bie Börle to rest, ruhen to run away, *weg-lanfen irr.
Russia, Ruhland n. [irr. to scream, to cry, [dreien the secret, bas Geheimnig to sentence, verurtheilen the shoulder, bie Edulter, steamer, ber Dampfer unruly, ungeaggen.

Exercise No. 59.

1. Quick walking always makes me tired. We could hear the screaming of the poor child. I caused him to write to (an Acc.) you. I bade the gardener to cut down the old pear-tree. You make me blush. I know that some one has helped (Dat.) you to do (machen) your task. I felt his hand resting on my shoulder. Remain standing in this position (Stellung f.). My pleasure of meeting a countryman on the steamer was very great. His manner of speaking is very interesting. Here is an interpreter speaking English fluently. It has left off (ceased) raining. (After) having been to Germany, he went to Russia. (When) coming home, I found the door locked. Having (since he had) no more money with him, he left off (ceased) gambling. Knowing his secret, I avoided speaking to (with) him. He shook his head, saying (indem er) While waiting (while the boys waited) for (auf Acc.) the train, the boys (they) were very unruly.

2. Wollen Sie nicht mit mir spazieren gehen? Nein, ich ziehe vor spazieren zu reiten. Heißen Sie das arbeiten? Nachdem ich von allen meinen Freunden Abschied genommen hatte, reiste ich ab. hiermit (herewith) habe ich die Ehre, Sie zu benachrichtigen ... Er lehrte mich Hochdeutch (High German) sprechen. Er ist der einzige Commis, der eine schöne (round) Hand schreibt. Er zeigte mir eine kleine Maschine zum (for) Papierschneiden. Ich erinnere mich nicht, welches Lied ich sie habe singen hören.

The last prisoner (after) having been examined (verhören), the judge sentenced all the three prisoners to (zu) a year imprisonment (Gefängniss). He is learning to play the piano. The duchess took a drive in an open carriage. The count gave (Dat.) the sick [man] his purse, asking (indem er ...) him about (nach) his malady. Your singing does not disturb me at all. He has a picture-gallery containing paintings of most the celebrated painters. The guests having (since the g. have) arrived all, the dinner will be served (see p. 228) directly. I tried doing it myself. The gardener found the boys sitting in (auf, an apple-tree. Have you not seen him running away? That is no matter for (zum) laughing.

Conversational and Idiomatic Phrases.

I have a headache—a toothache—a cold in the head—a cough—a sore throat—a cold.

I have a bad headache—a bad cough, etc.

I have a sore finger—sore eyes, etc.

He has sprained his ankle.

I am in good health—in bad health. I am sick of it. Did you hurt yourself?

Have you good eyesight?

I am short-sighted — long-sighted.

I am right - handed — left-

handed.

You have lost much flesh during your illness.

He is confined to his room—bed.

He has indifferent health. I am hungry—thirsty—sleepy.

Take care of it.

I do not care.

What of that?
I do not mind it.
I have a great mind to do it.
He follows his own mind.
She alters her mind constantly.
He has a great mind.

Mind—take care—you do not fall.

It is a pity!—What a pity!

It answers its purpose.

I did it on purpose.

Ich habe Kopfweh (n.) (or Kopfichmerzen pl.)—Jahnweh (n.)
(or Jahnschmerzen pl.)—
Schnupfen (m.)—Hefter (m.)
—Halsweh (n.)—eine Erfältung.

Ich habe starkes Kopfweh-star-

fen Husten, etc.

Ich habe einen bofen Finger — boje Augen, etc.

Er hat sich (Dat.) den Fuß verrenkt.

Ich bin gesund-frank.

Es ist mir verleidet. Haben Sie sich (Dat.) wehe gethan?

Haben Sie gute Augen? Ich bin turzsichtig-fernsichtig.

Ich bin rechts -links.

Sie haben über Ihre Krankheit stark abgenommen.

Er muß bas Zimmer- Bett -

Er hat eine schwache Gesundheit. Ich habe Hunger—Durst—Schlaf also: ich bin hungrig—durstig

—fchläfrig. Berwahren Sie es — heben Sie es auf.

Ich frage nichts darnach — es liegt mir nichts daran.

Mas liegt baran?

Ich mache mir nichts baraus.

Ich habe große Luft, es zu thun. Er folgt seinem eigenen Canfo

Er folgt seinem eigenen Kopfe. Sie ändert immer ihren Sinn.

Er hat einen großen Geist—eine große Seele.

Geben Sie Acht, damit Sie nicht fallen.

Es ist Schabe!—Wie Schabe! Es entspricht seinem Zwecke. Ich that es absichtlich.

Reading Exercise No. 59.

Herzog Alba auf dem Schloffe zu Rudolftadt.

Eine beutsche Dame aus einem Sause, das schor ehedem1 durch Heldenmuth2 geglänzt3 und dem deutschen Reiche4 einen Raiser gegeben hat, war es, die den fürchter= lichen⁵ Herzog Alba durch ihr entschlossenes⁶ Betragen beinahe zum Zittern gebracht7 hätte. Als Raiser Rarl V. im Sabre 1547 nach ber Schlacht bei Mühlberg auf feinem Ruge8 nach Franken9 und Schwaben10 auch durch Thürin= gen11 fam, wirkte die verwittwete12 Gräfin13 Ratharina von Schwarzburg, eine geborne14 Fürstin15 von Henneberg, einen Schuthrief16 bei ihm aus, daß ihre Unterthanen17 von der durchziehenden 18 svanischen 19 Armee 20 nichts zu leiden haben sollten. Dagegen21 verband22 sie sich, Brod, Bier und andere Lebensmittel23 gegen billige24 Bezahlung25 aus Rudolstadt an die Saalbrücke26 schaffen27 zu lassen, um die spanischen Truppen28, die dort übersetzen29 würden, zu versorgen³⁰. Doch gebrauchte³¹ fie dabei die Vorsicht³², die Brücke³³, welche dicht³⁴ bei der Stadt war, in der Geschwindigkeit35 abbrechen36 und in einer größeren Ent= fernung³⁷ über das Wasser schlagen³⁸ zu lassen, damit die allzugroße39 Rähe40 der Stadt ihre raubluftigen41 Gäfte42 nicht in Versuchung43 führte. Zugleich44 wurde den Ein= wohnern aller Ortschaften45, durch welche der Zug ging, vergönnt46, ihre besten Habseligkeiten47 auf das Rudol= städter Schloß zu flüchten48.

(Fortsetzung folgt.)

¹ formerly, 2 heroism, 3 to shine, glünzen, 4 empire, 5 terrible, 6 resolute, 7 made tremble, 8 march, 9 Franconia, 10 Suabia, 11 Thuringia, 12 dowager, 13 countess, 14 born, 15 princess, 16 letter of protection, 17 subjects, 18 passing, 19 Spanish, 20 army, 21 on the other hand, 22 bound, 23 provisions, 24 equitable, 25 payment, 26 Saal-bridge, 27 to convey, 28 troops, 29 pass over, 30 to provide, 31 used, 32 precaution, 35 bridge, 34 close, 35 hurry, 36 to take down, 37 distance, 38 to erect, 39 too great, 40 proximity, 41 predatory, 42 guests, 43 temptation, 44 at the same time, 45 villages, 46 allowed, 47 possessions, 48 to shelter.

The Government of Verbs.

Many verbs want a complement for the completion of their idea.—This complement, if a noun or pronoun, is joined to the verb either in the Nominative, Genitive, Dative, or Accusative case, or by means of a preposition.

Note.—The complement in the Nominative is called the Predicate—the complement in the Accusative the Direct object—and the complement in the Genitive, Dative, or with a preposition the Indirect Object of the verb.

The following verbs require their complement in the Nominative if it denotes the same person or thing as the subject:

bleiben irr., to remain | science irr., to seem | werben irr., to become, beigen irr., to be called | sein irr., to be | to get

Examples.—Bleiben Sie mein Freund. Remain my friend. Dies ist Ihr Hut, und bas ist meiner. This is your hat and that is mine.

Some verbs, if followed by two objects, require the indirect object in the Genitive and the direct object (always the person) in the Accusative.—The most usual are:

anklagen, to accuse of berauben, to rob of berauben, to rob of berauben, to rob of berauben, to convict of entjehen, to discharge from

Example.—Er hat mich seines Wohlwollens versichert. He has assured me of his favour.

Some reflective verbs, besides having their reflective pronoun in the Accusative, require their indirect object in the Genitive.—
The most usual are:

fich bedienen, to make use of fich bemächtigen, to take possession of fich entledigen, to rid one's self of fid erinnern, to remember fid rühmen, to boast of fid schamen, to be ashamed of

Example.—Ein Seeräuber bemächtigte sich unseres Schiffes. A pirate took possession of our ship.

Some verbs require their object in the Dative. — The most usual are:

antmorten, to answer a person
*ausmeichen irr., to give way, to evade
befehlen irr., to command, to order
beitfimmen, to agree with
beimohnen, to be present at
*bieiben irr., to remain to
banten, to thank
brohen, to threaten
*entgehen irr., to escape from
*folgen, to follow
gefallen irr., to please

misfalen irr., to displease gehorden, to obey gehören, to belong to (a person)(°) genügen, to suffice for belfen irr., to help, to aid rathen irr., to advise (ver) rauen, to trust mistrauen, to mistrust idmeideln, to flatter trogen, to defy *miberfachen irr., to resist

Examples.—Barum haben Sie meinen Besehlen nicht gehorcht? Why have you not obeyed my orders? Folgen Sie mir. Follow me.

^{(*) &}quot;To belong to" having a thing as an object is rendered gehören zur thus:-Der Garten gehört zum haus. The garden belongs to the house.

the captain (in the army, except cavalry), ber Sauvtmann

Plur .: die Sauptleute " ceremony, die Feier: lichfeit " covetousness, bie Sab-

iucht " example, bas Beispiel " fraud, ber Betrug Synon. Plur.: bie Be-

trügereien

ichaft generous, großmüthig the high-treason, her Sochberrath

,, minister (of the crown), ber Minister ,, palace, ber Palast Plur.: bie Paläste

" personage, bie Berfönlichteit to protect, beschüßen

the friendship, die Freunds, the pursuer, ber Berfolger " remark, bie Bemerfung

rude, raw, roh the secretary, ber Get.

spendthrift, ber Berichwender

superior (in rank), ber Borgefette (decl. like an adjective) vanity, bie Citelfeit

Exercise No. 60.

1. He remains a spendthrift. The king was called the Generous. This building is the palace of the Duchess of N. Of what crime do you accuse this man? I assured him of my friendship. The enemy took possession of the fortress. I shall answer you as soon as possible. The captain commanded the soldiers to protect us. I thank you very Imuchl. Do you know what displeased him in (an) me? I cannot resist your kindness. To whom does this stick belong? You have advised me well. All the ministers will be present at the ceremony. Have you followed his example? A soldier must obey his superiors. Why do you not agree with me? Such a remark will flatter his vanity. I ought to be ashamed of you. This will not suffice for his covetousness.

2. Ich werde Ihnen vertrauen, vorausgesetzt, daß Sie mir nicht migtrauen. Man überführte Ihren Bruber bes Sochverraths. Ich brohte ihnen, daß ich Alles verrathen wurde. Er entledigte sich meiner. Der General war eine Zeitlang der erste Minister bes Ronigs. Es gelang ihm taum, feinen Berfolgern zu entgehen (in escaping). Der Prasident hat seinen Sekretär seines Amtes (office) entsett. Der Knabe wird ein geschickter Maler werden. Ich tann mich seines Namens nicht erinnern.

He defied all his enemies. By this act (Handlung f.) heb became a famous personage. He boasts of his knowledge (pl.). His manner of writing does not please me. I shall help nota only byouc, but also your friends. The robber has robbed me of my purse. His manager is a very rude man. I shall charge you with fraud. This stove does not belong to the room. You should not make use of such expressions. Nothing but a small house remained to him. The gentleman, to whom all the country-estate belongs, wrote to (an Acc.) me. Can you not remember any longer the words of which he made use? Nearly half N. was present at the opening (Eröffnung f.) of the new railway. He mistrusts everybody. We hardly escaped from (the) death. I must agree with your opinion. This is the first day on which I am allowed to go out. She has evaded my questions (Fragen). Do not thank me. You are accused of murder. This hand-writing displeases me. I advised her to learn to play the piano. He has been our doctor for six years.

Conversational and Idiomatic Phrases.

Do not take so much trouble.

Did I cause—give—you any trouble?
Don't trouble your head about it.
With no great trouble—ado.
With much trouble.
It is labour lost.
Send me word.

I shall keep word.

Make a note of it—take it down.

That will render you unhappy.

He rendered me a great service.

Render that into German.
Learn it by heart.
Look out the word in the dictionary.
Go on—continue!
It is my turn.

How are you getting on with your German?
Where do you come from?—where are you a native of?
I am a German by birth.
He is a native of England.
To the best of his remembrance.
I am inclined that way.
Are you serious—in earnest?
I wonder what he his doing.
I find no fault with it.

That is not my fault.

I cannot help it.
What was I going to say?
That does not signify.
God forbid!
No apologies!
No offence!
I don't mean to give you offence.

viel Mühe. Machte ich Ihnen Mühe? Wachen Sie sich (Dat.) keine Gebanken darüber. Mit leichter Mühe. Mit vieler Nühe.

Geben Sie sich (Dat.) nicht so

Mit vieler Mühe. Es ist verlorene Mühe. Benachrichtigen Sie nich—Lassen Sie es nir sagen. Ich werde Wort halten. Schreiben Sie es sich (Dat.) auf.

Das wird Sie unglücklich machen. Er leistete mir einen großen Dienst. Uebersehen Sie das ins Deutsche. Lernen Sie es auswendig. Schlagen Sie das Wort nach.

Beiter!
Es ist an mir — Die Reihe ist an mir.
Bas für Fortschritte machen Sie im Deutschen?
Woher sind Sie?

Ich bin von Geburt ein Deutscher. Er ist ein geborner Engländer. So viel er sich erinnert.

Ich bin bazu geneigt. Ift bas Ihr Ernst!
Ich möchte wissen, was er thut.
Ich habe nichts baran auszusehen.
Ich kann nichts bafür — Es ist nicht meine Schuld.
Ich kann es nicht ändern.
Was wollte ich [boch] sagen!
Das hat nichts zu sagen.
Icht behüte!
Reine Entschuldigung!
Richts für ungut!

Ich will Sie nicht beleidigen.

Reading Exercise No. 60.

Herzog Alba auf dem Schlosse zu Rudolstadt.

(Fortsetzung.)

Mittlerweile¹ näherte² sich ber spanische Gener**a**l vom Herzog Heinrich von Braunschweig³ und bessen Söhnen begleitet, der Stadt und bat⁴ sich durch einen Boten, den er voranschickte⁵ bei der Gräfin von Schwarzburg auf ein Morgenbrod⁶ zu Gaste.

Eine so bescheibene? Bitte, an der Spize⁸ eines Heeres⁹ gethan, konnte nicht wohl abgeschlagen¹⁰ werden. Man würde geben, was das Haus vermöchte,¹¹ war die Antwort; seine Excellenz möchte kommen und vorlieb nehmen¹². Bugleich unterließ¹³ man nicht, des Schutzbrieses noch einmal zu gedenken¹⁴ und dem spanischen General die gewissenhafte¹⁵ Beobachtung¹⁶ desselben ans Herz zu legen¹⁷. Ein freundlicher¹⁸ Empfang¹⁹ und eine gut besetze²⁰ Tasel²¹ erwarteten den Herzog auf dem Schlosse. Er muß gestehen, daß die thüringischen²² Damen ein sehr gute Küche²³ führen²⁴ und auf die Ehre des Gastrechts²⁵ halten²⁶. Noch hat man sich kaum niedergesetz²⁷, als ein Eilbote²⁸ die Gräfin aus dem Saale²⁹ ruft. Es wird ihr gemeldet³⁰, daß die spanischen Soldaten Gewalt³¹ gebraucht und den Bauern³² das Vieh³³ weggetrieben³⁴ hätten.

(Fortsetzung folgt.)

1 in the mean time, 2 to approach, sich nähern (Dat.), 3 Brunswick, 4 invited himself, 5 sent forward, 6 luncheon, 7 modest, 8 head, 9 army, 10 to refuse, abschlagen irr., 11 contained, 12 be considerate, 13 omitted, 14 to mention, 15 conscientious, 16 observation, 17 to urge upon, 18 friendly, 19 reception, 20 spread, 21 table, 22 Thuringian, 23 kitchen, 24 keep, 25 honour of the house, 26 uphold, 27 sat down, 28 courier, 29 hall, 30 she is informed, 31 force, 32 peasants, 33 cattle, 34 driven away.

The Government of Verbs (concluded).

All verbs, having two objects or which can have two objects, require the direct object (i.e. the object suffering the action) in the Accusative, and the indirect object (usually a person) in the Dative.—Such are:

antieten irr., to offer bringen irr., to bring emplehlen irr., to recommend erlanden, to allow, permit erzählen, to relate geben irr., to give bergeben irr., to forgive glanden, to believe leihen, to lend nehmen irr., to take from (a person)

fagen, to tell identen, to present with berbieten irr., to forbid, to prohibit berbreden irr., to promise berzeihen irr., to pardon borleien irr., to read to borlieden, to introduce bornerfen irr., to reproach with Jeigen, to show

Examples.—Ich bot ihm meine Dienste an. I offered him my services. Geben Sie bem Anaben einige Aepfel. Give the boy some apples.

Most other Verbs, not belonging to the groups mentioned,

require their object in the Accusative; as,

Ich habe einen Garten gefauft. I have bought a garden. Weschen Bleistist wollen Sie nehmen? Which pencil will you take? Wen sahen Sie? Whom did you see? Ich meine bensjenigen Brief, welchen ich Ihnen gestern schrieb. I mean that letter which I wrote to you yesterday.

Many Verbs take their object by means of a preposition.— The most usual, where the use of the preposition differs from the English equivalent, are:

*abreisen nach, to set out, to leave for abressiren an (Acc.), to direct (a let-

ter, etc.) to animorten auf (Acc.)(*), to answer,

to reply to side betlagen über (Acc.), to com-

plain of bestehen aus irr., to consist of bitten um (Acc.) irr., to ask (to beg)

for (something)
benfen an (Aec.) irr., to think of
erinnern an (Aec.), to remind of
iid erfundigen nad, to inquire (for)
ernennen gum m. (gur f.) irr., to ap-

point (a person) a eritaunen über (Acc.), to be aston-

ished at fragen nach, to ask about, for (a person)

hich freuen über (Acc.), to rejoice at hich fürchten vor (Dat.), to be afraid of glauben an (Acc.), to believe in

something)
boiler auf (Acc.), to hope for
taufen um (Acc.), to buy for (a price)
bertaufen um (Acc.), to sell for (a price)
lachen über (Acc.), to laugh at
machen aum m. (aur f.), to make (a

halten für irr., to consider, to think or

to take (a person or thing to be

person) a fididen (fenden irr.) an (Acc.)(**), to send to (a person) fidreiben an (Acc.) irr.(**), to write to

idreiben an (Acc.) irr.(**), to write to spielen um (Acc.), to play for (something)

potten über (Acc.), to mock at ipreden mit irr., to speak to *ferbra an (Dat.) irr., to die of telegraphiren an (Acc.)(**), to telegraph to tripten cus irr. to dripk from

trinten aus irr., to drink from warten auf (Acc.), to wait for *werben aus irr., to become of

Examples.—Ich halte biesen herrn für einen Offizier. I take this gentleman to be an officer. Auf wen warten Sie? For whom are you waiting? Er wurde zum General ernannt. He was appointed a general. Erstaunen Sie nicht barüber Do not be astonished at it.

(*) "To answer" (a person) is antworten with the dative, and "to answer (a letter, etc.)" is antworten auf, or beautworten.

(**) With ididen (jenben), idreiben and telegraphiren the Dative may be used instead of the preposition an.

the actress, bie Schaufpielerin.

" corner, die Ede " document, bas Dofu-

,, ear-ring, ber Ohrring " fairy-tale, bas Mähr

" goblet, ber Becher " general, ber General Plur .: Die Generale goods, die Waaren (Plur.) (die Güter)

God, Gott the heathen, ber Seibe ,, money - lender, ber

Gelbverleiher " narrative, bie Ergab: lung ,, negligence, die Nach-

läkiafeit " nurse (of children).

die Amme the pair, couple, bas

Baar " part, ber Theil to pluck, pflüden the reward, bie Belohnung savage, wild, wilb the security, bie Sicher:

beit sheep's skin, bas Schaffell

" spy, ber Spion " terms, conditions, bie

Bedingungen ,, truth, die Wahrheit ,, watch - maker, ber

Uhrmacher

Exercise No. 61.

1. He offered me a large reward. Shall I bring you anything? What kind of book have you recommended to your pupils for (zum) reading? To whom did you give the documents? You do not tell me the truth. Do not promise thema too much. What part of the newspaper shall I read to you? It is the same lady to whom I have been introduced Pardon him his faults. He reproached me with my negligence. his family has set out for Paris. He has not answered my last letter. Do you think sometimes of me. She inquired the terms. Did you ask the watchmaker about my watch? I think her an actress. Do not mock at old people. Heathens do not believe in God. He was appointed a general. All rejoiced at my arrival. Do not complain of it.

2. Er kaufte das Pferd um 1000 Mark und verkaufte es um 1200 Mark. Die Umme erzählte den Kindern Mährchen. schenkte jedem von den Kindern ein Paar Ohrringe. Die Kleidung (dress) bes Wilden bestand aus einem Schaffell. Der Geldverleiher wird Ihrem Freund folch eine große Summe nur gegen (on) gute Sicherheit leihen. Niemand glaubte dem Spion die Erzählung. Er ftarb an den Pocken. Erlauben Sie mir, Ihnen meinen Freund vorzustellen.

What has become of your cousin? Forgive me. It was nota this gentleman' to whom I showed my drawings. Is this parcel directed to you? They (people) took the child from the poor mother. Wait for me at the next corner. To whom shall I send the goods? May I ask you for a ticket? I wrote to you on the 6th of May. Will you remind me of it? Why have you prohibited the children to pluck any flowers? I was astonished at his courage. I shall speak to you about it afterwards. Be not afraid of him. He is laughing at everything. I never play for money. Let us hope for better times. Why did you not telegraph to us? He drank from a goblet. May I offer you a ticket for (in Acc.) the theatre? He presented me with a costly watch. We sold him our garden for 350 marks (Mark). I asked for you, but you were not at home. Shall I show you your room? My brothers and sisters have left for Germany yesterday. I take him to be an artist. The first letter I wrote to him, was lost (ging verloren). Why do vou not believe me?

Conversational and Idiomatic Phrases.

Do not take it amiss.
What would you be at?
I am aware of it.
That depends (upon circumstances).
Is he to depend upon?
That won't do—that will do.
I have had enough of it.
That is a matter of taste.
In my opinion—judgment.
He got me to do it.

As you like.

It is much the same thing.
It is all the same to me.
From my own knowledge.
I have no objection to it.
It struck me.
Set him right.
In your room—stead—place.
I say!
You don't say so!
It serves him right,
I lost sight of you.
At first sight.
I will stand to it.
He met with bad success.
I met with an accident.

Let us talk it over.
I was told so.
As I am informed.
What is the use of it?
I shall do my utmost.

It is not worth while.
I wish you well.
I would not for all the world.

I would not do it for anything.

A thing agreed on.
According to my apprehension.
What is his name?
How do you spell your name?
Are you sure of it?
He can do me no harm.

Nehmen Sie es [mir] nicht übel. Was hatten Sie vor? Ich weiß es. Das kommt darauf an.

Kann man sich auf ihn oerlassen? Das geht nicht-Das genügt. Ich habe es jatt. Das find Geschmadsfachen. Rach meiner Ansicht. Er brachte mich bazu, es zu Wie Sie wollen-Wie es Ihnen heliebt. Es ist ziemlich einerlei. Es ift mir einerlei. Aus eigener Erfahrung. Ich habe nichts dagegen. Es fiel mir auf. Weisen Sie ihn zurecht An Ihrer Stelle. Hören Sie einmal! Was Sie nicht jagen! Es geschieht ihm recht. Ich verlor Sie aus den Augen. Beim erften Unblid. Ich bleibe dabei. Er hatte Unglück. Es ist mir ein Unfall zugeitoken. Wir wollen es besprechen. Ich habe es gehört. Wie ich hörte. Was nütt es! Ich werde mein Möglichstes Es ist nicht ber Mühe werth. Ich meine es gut mit Ihnen. Ich möchte um Alles in der Welt nicht. Ich würde es um feinen Preis Eine abgemachte Sache. Wie ich mir die Sache vorstelle. Wie heißt er? Wie schreiben Sie fich? Wissen Sie es gewiß? Er fann mir nichts anhaben.

Reading Exercise No. 61.

Herzog Alba auf dem Schloffe zu Rudolftadt.

(Fortsetzung.)

Katharina war eine Mutter ihres Volkes—was dem ärmsten ihrer Unterthanen widersuhr,¹ war ihr selbst zu=gestoßen.² Auss Aeußerste³ über diese Wortbrüchigkeit⁴ entrüstet,⁵ doch von ihrer Geistesgegenwart6 nicht verlassen,7 besiehlt sie ihrer ganzen Dienerschaft,8 sich in aller Geschwindigkeit⁴ und Stille¹0 zu bewassenel¹1 und die Schloßspsorten¹² wohl zu verriegeln¹³; sie selbst begiebt sich¹⁴ wieder in den Saal, wo die Fürsten¹⁵ noch dei Tische sizen. Hier klagt sie ihnen in den bewegendsten¹6 Aus²drücken, was ihr eben hinterbracht¹7 worden, und wie schlecht man daß gegebene Kaiserwort¹8 gehalten. Man erwiederte ihr mit Lachen, daß dies nun einmal¹9 Kriegs²gebrauch²0 sei, und daß bei einem Durchmarsch²¹ von Solbaten dergleichen²² kleine Unfälle²³ nicht zu verhüten ständen²⁴.

"Das wollen wir doch sehen," autwortete sie aufgebracht²⁵. "Meinen armen Unterthanen muß das Jhrige²⁶ wieder werden²⁷, oder bei Gott!" indem sie drohend²⁸ ihre Stimme anstrengte²⁹,—"Fürstenblut für Ochsenblut³⁰!"—Mit dieser bündigen³¹ Erklärung³² verließ sie das Zimmer, das in wenigen Augenblicken³³ von Bewaffneten³⁴ erfüllt³⁵ war, die sich, das Schwert³⁶ in der Hand, doch mit vieler Ehrerbietung³⁷, hinter die Stühle der Fürsten pflanzten³⁸ und das Frühstück bedienten³⁹.

(Schluß folgt.)

1 befell, 2 happened, 3 at the utmost, 4 breach of faith, 5 irritated, 6 presence of mind, 7 abandoned, 8 servants, 9 swiftness, 10 silence, 11 to arm, bevaffnen, 12 castle-gates, 13 to bar, verriegeln, 14 betakes, 15 princess, 16 touching, 17 she had been reported, 18 emperor's word, 19 cannot be helped, 20 custom of war, 21 marching through, 22 such, 23 accidents, 24 were not to be prevented, 25 in a rage, 26 their property, 27 returned to (Dat.), 28 threatening, 29 raising, 30 princes' blood for oxen blood, 31 concise, 32 declaration, 33 moments, 34 armed men, 35 filled, 36 sword, 37 respectfulness, 38 planted, 39 served.

Sixty-second Lesson.

Bweiundsechzigste Lettion.

On the Passive Voice.

An Infinitive in the passive voice in English after the verb to be, must be in the active voice in German; as,

Dieses Saus ift zu vermiethen. This house is to be le:

An Infinitive in the passive voice dependent on a preceding substantive, is rendered in German, by the present participle with 31, which is declined and precedes the noun; as,

Die zu erwartenbe Ernte. The harvest to be expected.

Intransitive verbs (see p. 162) cannot have a passive voice.— However there is an impersonal passive form with the pronoun es as subject, corresponding to the English there with a tense of to be and a present participle of an intransitive verb following; as,

Es wird auf der Straße viel gesungen. There is much singing in the street.

In the same way the passive voice is formed of intransitive verbs requiring the object suffering the action in the Dative or with a preposition; as,

E3 wurde bem General befohlen. The general was ordered. E3 wird auf Sie gewartet. You are waited for.

Note 1.—Thus the English subject becomes a Dative or Accusative in German and is replaced by es with the verb in the singular.

2.—As in English the passive voice is often replaced by man (they, people); 4s,—§3 murbe granat or man tangte. There was dancing or they (people) danced.

On es, there.

As with es giebt, es ift, etc. (see p. 166) the subject is sometimes placed also after other verbs and is replaced by es, which usually corcesponds to there; as,

Es famen seine Bettern und seine Brüber. There came his cousins and his brothers. Es liegt etwas auf dem Fußboden. There is something lying on the floor.

However there as subject in the sense of here is rendered be and in the sense of yonder or in that place, it is bort; as,

Da ift Jemanb. There (here) is some one. Dort geht Herr X. There (yonder) walks Mr. X.

If there refers to a place mentioned before, ba or bort is placed at the end and es used as subject; as,

I was at the post-office, but there was no official.

REMARK.—Besides in the interrogative and inverted forms, es occurring in all the cases mentioned in this lesson (except in es giebt) is omitted in a dependent clause; as,

Bird ouf der Straße viel gefungen? Is there much singing in the street? Dem General wurde befohlen. The general was ordered. Er ift ein Mann, dem überall mißtraut wird. He is a man who is mistrusted everywhere. Ich ging fort, weil Niemand im Jimmer war. I went away because there was no one in the room. to apply, anwenden the arms, weapons, bie

Waffen Sing.: die Waffe to arise, *entstehen irr. to beckon, minten to bet, wetten the captain (of a ship),

ber Rapitan , cauliflower, ber Blumentohl

charitable, wohlthätig the cold (temperature), die Ralte " collection, die Samm-

Iuna

the condition, state, ber | the horse-race, bas Pferbe-Buftand

dilapidated, bermahrloft the eloquence, bie Bered: famteit

everywhere, überall the factory, die Fabrik ,, famine, der Hungers:

" fine, die Strafe " fire-engine, die Feuer-

iprite golden, golben the harvest, bie Ernte heartily, heralich

rennen

., ice, bas Eis " opera-glass, ber Overnguder , park, ber Park Plur : die Parke

,, remedy, means, bas. Mittel

to shoot at, schießen auf (Acc.) irr. to skate, Schlittschus

*laufen irr.
the target, die Scheibe
,, zoological gardens, ber Thiergarten

Exercise No. 62.

1. Is this garden to be sold? His arrival is (steht) to be expected to-morrow. The house to be sold is in a very dilapidated condition. There will be shooting at the target. You were advised badly. The artist is being flattered on (von) all sides. You are asked for. A good harvest is hoped for. You were not told everything. The girl was given a golden ring. I was written a long letter about (Acc.) himb. There were many people taking a walk in the parkb in spite of the intense (stark) colda. There arose a great famine. There is your opera-glass. There (yonder) is a gentleman' beckoning you'. I was at the market, but there was no cauliflower to be had. Was there much betting at (bei) the horse-race ? To-morrow all of you will be aided (helped). Ib alsoa have been spoken to about it. When I intended to visit the Zoological Gardens I was told that they (it) were (was) not open. He does not know yet that there will be no concert^b to-daya.

2. Es ift mir verboten worden, den Brief in Ihrem Beisein (presence) zu öffnen. Es giebt hier nichts zu sehen. Er war sehr arm, ehe ihm von seinen Freunden geholfen wurde. Es ging (was) die gange Nacht (all night long) ein Sturm. Seiner Beredsamteit konnte nicht widerstanden werden. Es ift eine Sammlung alter Wassen an ihn gesandt worden. Dort ist die Fabrik, welche ich Ihnen zeigen wollte. Es wird getanzt und gesungen. Es wird ihm überall mißtraut werden. Es wurde nicht mehr an mich gedacht.

The remedy to be applied will benefit (help) you. Have you been threatened with a fine as wella? There was much gambling. Are these rooms to be let? Were you on the ice? Yes, and there were a great many (sehr viele) people. There was no one rescued but the captain of the ship. Have I been asked for? There (yonder) is a fire-engine standing. I have been helped by charitable people. I heard that there had not been much skating yesterday. The cheated [persons] were laughed at heartily. Is this the horse which you had been offered?

Conversational and Idiomatic Phrases.

Wine does not agree with me. Well, and what of all this?

Willing or unwilling you must do it.

Do you think to come off so easily?

It would be of no advantage to

It would be of no use for me. I cannot afford it.

There is some mystery about it. It is not at all right about it.

You cannot get at it.

I like it all the better. You must make shift. It is of no consequence.

No one can blame you for that.

I cannot bring it about.

He came of his own accord. He will turn it to account.

Do not take alarm at it.

He is the best man living—in the world.

It is all over with him—he is

Let him alone to do it.

I was under great apprehension.

Rich as he is.

As I live—as sure as I live. He made away with himself. Will you bear me company?

You are before hand with me. Shall I secure a seat for you?

That is no business of mine. Mind your own business. Wein bekommt mir nicht gut Nun, was joll dies Alles bebeuten?

Sie mussen es thun, Sie mogen wollen oder nicht.

Glauben Sie, so leicht davonzu-

Sie murden nichts dabei ge-

Es würde mir nichts nüten.

Ich bin nicht reich genug dazu. Es stedt etwas dahinter.

Es geht nicht mit rechten Dingen zu.

Man kann nicht dahinter kommen.

Es ift mir um fo lieber.

Sie mussen sich behelfen.

Es hat nichts auf sich — es hat nichts zu sagen.

Das kann Ihnen Niemand verbenken.

Ich tann es nicht zu Stande bringen.

Er kam aus eigenem Antriebe. Er wird es sich (Dat.) zu Ruße

machen. Gerathen Sie nicht in Unruhe darüber.

Er ist der beste Mann auf der Welt.

Es ist aus (or vorbei) mit ihm.
—Es ist um ihn geschehen. Lassen Sie ihn nur machen.

Ich fürchtete fehr.

So reich er auch ist.

So wahr ich lebe.

Er nahm fich bas Leben.

Wollen Sie mir Gesellschaft leisten?

Sie sind mir zuvorgekommen.

Soll ich Ihnen einen Plat be-

Das ist nicht meine Sache.

Kümmern Sie sich um Ihre eigenen Sachen.

Reading Exercise No. 62.

Herzog Alba auf dem Schlosse zu Rudolstadt. (Schluß.)

Beim Eintritt1 dieser kampflustigen2 Schaar3 ver= änderte4 der Herzog Alba die Farbe; ftumm, betreten5 fah man einander an. Abgeschnitten6 von der Armee, von einer überlegenen,7 handfesten Menge8 umgeben,9 was blieb ihm übrig, als sich in Geduld zu fassen10, und auf welche Bedingung es auch sei, die beleidigte¹¹ Dame zu ver= söhnen¹². Heinrich von Braunschweig faßte¹³ sich zuerst und brach14 in ein schallendes15 Gelächter16 aus. Er ergriff17 den vernünftigen18 Ausweg19, den ganzen Vor= gang²⁰ ins Luftige²¹ zu kehren²², und hielt²³ der Gräfin eine Lobrede²⁴ über ihre landesmütterliche²⁵ Sorafalt²⁶ und den entschlossenen Muth, den sie bewiesen27. Er bat sie, sich ruhig zu verhalten28, und nahm es auf sich29, den Herzog Alba zu Allem, was billig30 sei, zu vermögen31. Auch brachte32 er es bei dem Letteren wirklich33 dahin, daß er auf der Stelle34 einen Befehl an die Armce auß= fertigte35, das geraubte36 Vieh den Eigenthümern ohne Verzug³⁷ wieder auszuliefern³⁸. Sobald die Gräfin der Burückgabe39 gewiß war, bedankte40 sie sich aufs Schönste41 bei ihren Gästen, die sehr höflich Abschied nahmen. Ohne Aweifel war es diese Begebenheit42, die der Gräfin Ka= tharina von Schwarzburg den Beinamen43 der Helben= müthigen44 erworben45 hat.

Schiller.

1 entrance, 2 warlike, 3 troop, 4 changed, 5 surprised, 5 cut off, 7 superior, 8 number of sturdy men, 9 surrounded, 10 to be patient, 11 offended, 12 to reconcile, 13 recovered, 14 to break out, *ausbrechen irr., 15 ringing, 16 laughter, 17 took, 18 wise, 19 alternative, 20 occurrence, 21 mirth, 22 to turn, 23 pronounced, 24 panegyric, 25 maternal, 26 care, 27 evinced, 28 to keep, 29 undertook, 30 reasonable, 31 to induce to do everything, 32 persuaded, 33 really, 34 spot, 35 dispatched, 36 stolen, 37 delay, 38 to deliver up, ausliefern, 39 restitution, 40 thanked, 41 in the most agreeable manner, 42 incidents, 43 cognomen, 44 Heroic, 45 acquired for.

Remarks on Verbs.

In English (especially in replies) a phrase is often not completed and the verb or the auxiliary only is used, the remainder being understood.

In German, on the contrary, the sense is usually completed either by using the principal verb or a corresponding pronoun, as is shown in the following examples:

Rommt et? Ja et sommt. Does he come? Yes, he does. Haben Sie ein Buch? Ja, ich habe eines. Have you a book? Yes, I have (one). Ramen Sie mit bem Gelb? Ja, ich sam bamit. Did you come with the money? Yes, I did (come with it). His et bem Mann? Rein, et hilft ihm nicht. Does he help the man? No, he does not help him). Sind Sie midbe? Ja, baß bin ich (or Ja, ich bin es). Are you tired? Yes, I am. Jit et Soldat? Ja, baß ift et. Is he a soldier? Yes, he is. Have you seen him? Yes, I have. Bill et die Rechnung begablen? Ja, baß will et (or Ja, et will sie begahlen). Will he pay the bill? Yes, he will. Birbe sie allein sommen? Rein, baß würde sie nicht. Would she come alone? No, she would not.

REMARK.-If a question in the negative is answered in the af-

firmative, yes is rendered both; as,

Bollen Sie nicht herein kommen? Doch (das will ich). Will you not come in? Yes, I will. Have you not received my letter? Yes, Doch (ich habe ihn erhalten). Have you not received my letter? Yes, I have.

Expressions like: is it not? has he not? must you not? in phrases similar to the following, are rendered by night mann? which may be placed first or last in the other phrase.—Thus:

Es ift hente ichones Wetter, nicht wahr? It is fine weather to-day, is it not? Er hat Ihnen geichrieben, nicht wahr? He has written to you, has he not? Richt wahr, sie kann ichon fingen? She can sing beautifully, can she not?

A verb after the conjunction als (than) is usually not repeated in German; as,

Das Wetter ist heute ichbner als gestern. The weather is siner to-day than it was yesterday. Sie kamen früher als ich. You came earlier than I did.

Inversion.

A sentence can be commenced nearly by any adverb or any word or words on which more stress is laid; but in such cases the subject, if preceded by such adverb or word, must be placed after

the verb or auxiliary in German; as,

Sente habe ich Ihren Bruber gesehen. To-day I have seen your
brother. Biesleicht wird er gar nicht da sein. Perhaps he will not be
there at all. In biesem Garten find teine Destfoldume. In this garden
there are no fruit-trees. Einen solchen hut same ich nicht tragen. Such
a hat I cannot wear. Eie und Ihren Bruber habe ich gestepen. You
auf sone heather I have seen. Un mich hat der Modolfauch get Un mich hat ber Abvotat auch geand your brother I have seen. In mid hat ber increben. To me the advocate has written as well.

Notes. 1.- The inversion of the subject does not take place if preceded by an

adverb used to determine it; as, Nur ich könnte Ihnen helfen. Only I could help you. Nicht einmal seine Estern wußten bavon. Not even his parents knew of it. 2.- See also pages 80, 190 & 194.

Observe also the inversion of the subject when the conjunction wenn (if) is omitted : as.

Had you said it to me (If you had ...). Ware id an Ihrer Stelle. Were I in your place (if I were ...).

Position of the Object and of the Negation might in a sentence.

If in a sentence there are two objects, one in the Dative and the other in the Accusative, the Dative (usually a person) precedes the Accusative : as,

Ich habe meinem Freund ein folches Buch empfohlen. I have recommended such a book to my friend. Ich have Ihnen etwas zu

fagen. I have to tell you something.

However, if the two objects are persons the Accusative is better first; as,

Ich habe ben Knaben meinem Freunde empfohlen. I have recommended the boy to my friend.

If two personal pronouns meet, the Accusative precedes the Dative or Genitive; as,

Et hat es mir gegeben. He has given it to me. Ich habe ihn Ihnen empfohlen. I have recommended him to you. Ich erinnere mich seiner. I remember him.

Note.—Mir or bir may also precede the pronoun in the Accusative: as. Er hat mir es gegeben.

When the subject is placed after the verb, or when the verb is removed to the end of the sentence, personal pronouns may precede the subject, if it is not a personal pronoun itself; as,

Has the stranger made a complaint? Has the stranger made a complaint? Here no one can see you. Der Hund, welchen Ihnen mein Bater ichenkte. The dog which my father gave you.

The negation nicht (not) usually follows an object in the Ac-

cusative, Dative or Genitive; as,
Ich have not the book. Haben Sie ben
Fremden Ihrem Bater nicht vorgestellt? Have you not introduced the
stranger to your father? Er exinnerte sich meiner nicht. He did not remember me.

Nicht precedes an object with a preposition or a predicate; as, Ift Ihr Ontel nicht mit einem Gepäckträger getommen? Has your uncle not come with a porter? Ift herr n. nicht ein Arzt? Is not Mr. N. a physician? Ich bin nicht Ihrer Weinung. I am not of your opinion.

Nicht usually follows adverbs or adverbial expressions of time

or manner (but not those of quality or place); as,

Er wird nächste Boche nicht hier sein. He will not be here
next week. Ich tann ebenfalls nicht fommen. I cannot come
likewise. Wir fonnten wegen bes schlechten Wetters nicht ausgehen.
We could not go out on account of the bad weather.

However, nicht, negativing any particular word, must precede it; as,

Ich habe nicht bas Buch, sonbern bie Beitung. I have not the book but the newspaper. Haben nicht Sie so gesagt? Have not you said so?

Night follows a personal pronoun in answers, if both stand alone; as, Wer hat das gethan? Ich nicht. Who has done that? Not I.

accidentally, by chance,

the actor, ber Schauspieler ,, address, die Abresse ,, assistance, der Beiftand

by return of post, mit umgehender Post the copy (of a book), bas

Gremplat difficulty, die Schwie-

the divine service, der Gottesdienst

important, wichtig the library, die Bibliothet married (adj.), verheirathet

to marry, heirathen now and then, bann unb wann

to occupy (a place), bejepen out of fashion, and ber

Mobe over, past, vorüber

grobably, wahricheinlich

really, indeed, wirflich to reckon upon, rechnen

auf (Acc.) the roll, bas Brödchen ,, sandwich, bas belegte

Brödchen ,, seat, place, ber Plat ,, sight (curiosity), die

Sehenswürdigkeit " way of living, die Lebensweise

" writer (author), ber Schriftfteller

Exercise No. 63.

- 1. Does the child sleep? Yes, it does (sleep). Has your father a library? No, he has not (any). Do you know his address? Yes, I do (know it). Are you married? Yes, I am. Is he an actor? Yes, he is. Should you not alter your way of living? Yes, (that) I should. Have you not two copies of this book? Yes, I have (two). You wished for a sandwich, did you not? He had more difficulty than I had. Probably all the seats will be occupied. On the left there was a church, and on the right there was a theatre. In five minutes all will be over. Even you would not have been able to do it. Had you come a little later, (so) you would not have found (treffen) me at home. Shall I introduce your cousin to my sister? No, thank [you], I have already introduced him to her. Where did your sister catch cold? Is not his uncle a famous writer? I really did not recognise you. He will not only expect you, but also me. I do not come [for] the first time. Am I to go? No, not you.
- 2. Jst Niemand bort gewesen? Doch, es sind viele Leute dort gewesen. Sein Bruder kam häusig zu uns, und dann und wann besuchte uns auch seine Schwester. Kann ich auf Ihren Beistand rechnen? Ja, das können sie (or ja, Sie können darauf rechnen). Warum haben Sie dem Gottesdienst nicht beigewohnt? Nicht wahr, sie wird bald heirathen? Der Führer zeigte den Reisenden alse Sehenswürdigkeiten. Ich wußte nicht, daß Ihren diese Sache fremd war.

We could not skate because the river was not frozen in spite of the intense (stark) cold. He visits you more frequently than he visits me. Did you take a walk? No, I did not. I wished to buy something, but accidentally I had no money with me. Bring some rolls [for] the children. Have you found (treffen) your cousin (f.)? Yes, I have (found her). Are not these hats out of fashion? Yes, (that) they are. Can you not send the parcel by return of post? The matter is important, is it not? We had not to wait for the train.

Conversational and Idiomatic Phrases.

You had better

I was sitting by myself.
They differed in opinion.
There was nothing to be done.
I cannot do without it.
Have done (with you)!
Take it easy.
Make yourself easy.
He made his escape.
He had a narrow escape.

Do the windows face the street?

The room looks into the garden.

The house is fitted up.
The furniture does not match
the paper.
I was working hard.
That is hard work.
Take courage!
It is idle talk.
You cannot be ignorant of it.

He is well—ill or badly—off. It is a bad job.
Keep your temper.
Will you take the lead?
Not even one—not so much as one.

one.
They parted company.
The book is out of print.
He has a screw loose.
He is second to none.
Stand out of the way!
When the worst comes to the worst.
Not a bit—whit—better.

Keep your distance—keep off!
Avoid my presence!
You are fit for nothing.
He does not listen to reason.
With the naked eye.
I have no relish for such things.

Do not let go your hold.

Sie waren verschiedener Meinung. Es war nichts zu machen. Ich kann es nicht entbehren. Hören Sie auf! Machen Sie sich nichts baraus. Beruhigen Sie sich. Er ist entkommen. Er ift mit knapper Noth davon gefommen. Geben die Fenfter auf die Strake? Das Zimmer geht auf Garten. Das Haus ist eingerichtet. Das Möbel paßt nicht BUL Tapete. Ich habe tüchtig gearbeitet. Das ift schwere Arbeit. Fassen Sie Muth! Es ist leeres Gerede. Es kann Ihnen nicht unbekannt sein. Er ift gut- übel-baran. Es ist eine schlimme Sache. Bleiben Sie ruhig. Wollen Sie vorangehen?

Sie follten lieber

Ich saß allein sda].

Sie trennten sich. Das Buch ist vergriffen. Er hat einen Sparren zu viel. Er steht Keinem nach. Aus dem Wege! Im schlimmsten Falle.

Nicht einmal einer.

Richt um ein Haar besser. Bleiben Sie mir vom Leibe! Gehen Sie mir aus den Angen! Sie sind zu nichts zu gebrauchen. Er nimmt keine Vernunft an. Mit blosem Ange.
Ich sinde keinen Geschmack an solchen Sachen.
Lassen Sie nicht los.

Reading Exercise No. 63.

Göthe und Schiller.

Diese beiben größten Dichter Deutschlands wurden in der Mitte¹ des 18. Jahrhundert3² geboren³: — Johann Wolfgang von Göthe am 28. August 1749, Johann Christoph Friedrich von Schiller am 10. November 1759.

Gothe's Geburtsftadt4 war Frankfurt am Main, wo fein Bater Doktor der Rechtes und kaiserlicher Rathe war. Unter Leitung? seines Baters bilbete er sichs durch Privat= unterricht9 schon frühe vielseitig10 aus, besonder311 in den Naturwissenschaften12, in den alten13 Sprachen und im Frangofiichen, Englischen und Italienischen. Er bezog14 dem Wunsche seines Baters gemäß15 1765 die Universität16 Leipzig, um dort die Rechte¹⁷ zu studiren. Nach einigen Jahren ging er nach einem furzen Aufenthalt18 in feinem elterlichen19 Sause auf die Universität Stragburg, wo er seine juristischen20 Studien21 beendigte22 und 1771 als Doktor der Rechte promovirte23. Dann lebte er24 eine Reitlang in Frankfurt seinen vielseitigen Studien, war eine furze Reit beim Reichskammergericht25 in Weklar praftisch26 beschäftigt27, bis er 1775 als Geheimer Legationsrath28 nach Weimar berufen29 und dort der Freund und Rathgeber30 des trefflichensi Herzogs Karl August wurde. Im Rahre 1797 zog er fich von ben Staatsgeschäften32 gang zurück, und widmete33 seine Dienste nur noch der obern Leitung34 der wiffenschaftlichen35 und Runft36=Institute37, besonders des Theaters. 1806 vermählte er sich38, verlor aber seinen einzigen Sohn August 1830 in Rom burch ben Tod.

Schiller erblickte³⁹ in Marbach am Neckar, einem Landstädtchen⁴⁰ in Württemberg, das Licht der Welt⁴¹.

¹ middle, 2 century, 3 born, 4 native town, 5 doctor of laws, 6 imperial counsellor, 7 direction, 8 he was educated in, 9 private instruction, 10 numerous subjects, 11 especially, 12 physics, 13 ancient, 14 he entered, 15 according to, 16 university, 17 law, 18 stay, 19 parents', 20 juridical, 21 studies, 22 finished, 23 took the degree of, 24 he gave himself up, 25 imperial chamber, 26 practically, 27 employed, 28 counsulor in the foreign office, 29 called, 30 adviser, 31 excellent, 32 affairs of state, 33 to devote, widmen, 34 superintendence, 35 scientific, 36 art, 37 institutions, 38 he was married, 39 saw, 40 a small country-town, 41 the light

Sein Vater war damals Lieutenant, rücktel später zum Major vor und wurde Kommandant2 des herzoglichen Tuftschlosses Solitube. Die erste Vorbildung⁴ erhielt Schiller auf der Karlsakademie⁵ in Stuttgart. Er wollte Theologie studiren, gab diesen Wunsch aber auf und widmete sich der Rechtswissenschaft,6 und nachher der Medizin.7 Nachdem er 1780 Regimentsarzts in Stuttgart geworden war, erhielt er in Folge9 der Herausgabe10 seiner "Räuber" vom Herzog den Befehl, nichts Underes drucken zu lassen als Werke über die Heilkunde¹¹. Diesem Zwange¹² ent= zog er sich¹³ durch die Flucht¹⁴. Er kam 1782 nach Mannheim, wo er Theaterdichter 15 wurde, begab sich 16 dann nach Mainz und 1785 nach Leipzig, nachher nach Dresben und siedelte¹⁷ 1787 nach Weimar über¹⁸. Nachdem er 1789 Professor der Geschichte in Jena geworden und sich 1790 vermählt hatte, lebte er von 1794 ab bis zu seinem Tobe in vertrautester¹⁹ Freundschaft²⁰ und Zusammenwirkung²¹ mit Göthe, und nahm 1799 seinen bleibenden²² Aufenthalt²³ in Weimar. Aus der lebendigen²⁴ Wechsel= wirkung²⁵ solch außerordentlicher²⁶ Kräfte²⁷ gingen²⁸ nun in rascher30 Folge31 jene reifsten32 und gehaltvollsten33 Dichtungen³⁴ hervor²⁹, die das deutsche Bolk wie seine besten Schätze³⁵ bewahrt³⁶. Der jüngere Schiller starb schon 1805, während Göthe ein Patriarchenalter37 er= reichte und erst 1832 diese Welt38 verließ. Beide Dichter ruben neben einander39 in der Fürstengruft40 zu Weimar.

Man hat zur Beurtheilung⁴¹ Göthe's und Schiller's Bücher geschrieben und sich lange herumgestritten⁴², wer von ihnen der Größere sei. Der Streit⁴³ hat sich endlich⁴⁴ beruhigt⁴⁵; man wurde eins⁴⁶, sie mit einander zu seiern⁴⁷, und stellt⁴⁸ nun ihre Bildnisse⁵⁰ aus⁴⁹, wie die Alten⁵¹ mit Hausgötter-und Hervenbildern⁵² ihre Wohnungen zierten⁵³.

¹ to advance, vorrücken, 2 commander, 3 ducal pleasure-castle, 4 preparatory education, 5 academy founded by duke Charles, 6 science of law, 7 medicine, 8 regimental surgeon, 9 in consequence, 10 publication, 11 healing art, 12 compulsion, 13 he freed himself from, 14 flight, 15 dramatic poet, 16 went, 17 & 18 settled, 19 most intimate, 20 friendship, 21 co-operation, 22 permanent, 22 stay, 24 active, 25 reciprocal effect, 26 extraordinary, 27 faculties, 28 & 29 originated, 30 rapid, 31 succession, 32 most matured, 33 most comprehensive, 34 poetical works, 35 treasures, 36 guards, 37 patriarchal age, 38 world, 39 side by side, 40 ducal tomb, 41 in judgment, 42 disputed, 43 controversy, 44 at last, 45 calmed down, 46 agreed, 47 to celebrate, feiern, 48 & 49 are put up, 50 effigies, 51 ancients, 52 images of domestic deities and of heroes, 53 embellished.

APPENDIX.

The principal rules, &c., for learning the German language in an easy and practical manner having been given with numerous exercises, it only remains to give in the following supplement the remaining rules which are of no vital importance, but which a student, who wishes to study the German language thoroughly, must have ready for reference.

We also give full lists and explanations concerning the use of German cases and the use of prepositions, which will be found useful.

On the Article and the Noun.

(see also page 226.)

1. The indefinite article is omitted:

a.) In many a and no less a: as,

manche Familie, many a family tein geringerer Mann, no less a man

b.) In expressions like:

in Buth, in a passion in Eile, in a hurry mit schwacher Stimme, in a faint voice. Ich habe Kopiweh, Husten, etc., I have a head-ache, a cough, etc.

c.) Before nouns denoting the profession of a person which is the subject of the sentence; as,

Er ist Solbat. He is a soldier. Seine Schwester wurde Schauspielerin. His sister became an actress.

- 2. The definite article is omitted before names of the cardinal points when preceded by the prepositions gegen or nad; as,
 - 3. The definite article is used:
 - a.) With the preposition 3u after verbs denoting to make, etc., a person something; as,

Er wurde zum General ernannt. He was appointed general. Er ist zum Bürgermeister gewählt worden. He has been elected mayor.

b.) In expressions like:

Ist das Frühstlick — bas Mittagessen — bas Abendessen — ber Thee —fertig? (see page 228.)

Also in:

in ber Stadt-Kirche-Schule, in town-church-school in bie Stadt-Kirche-Schule, to town-church-school.

c.) With the names of streets; as, Id woone in der Königestraße. I am living in King street. d.) Usually with the following words:

ber Mensch, man (mankind) das Paradies, paradise ber Himmel, heaven bie Hölle, hell ber Durst, thirst ber Hunger, hunger bas Leben, life ber Tob, death

bas Gefet, law die Matur, nature bie Beit, time bie Sitte, custom bas Schickal, fate bas Glüd, fortune, happiness bas Unglüd, misfortune

bie Boriehung, providence

ber Krieg, war Examples.—Der Arzt kam zu spät, ber Tob war schon eingetreten. The physician came too late, death had already taken place. Die Sitte verbietet es. Custom prohibits it.

EXCEPTION.—No article with the above words is used in:

Durst-Hunger haben, to be thirsty—hungry. Clud—Unglüd haben, to be lucky—unlucky. Auf (um) Leben und Tob, for life and death. In Arieg und Frieden, in war and peace. Gen himmel, towards

e.) Sometimes with the Genitive of foreign names of persons ending in \$, \(\text{z}, \) as,

Der Tob bes Solvates. The death of Socrates.

f.) Occasionally with names of persons for the sake of distinctness, or in an emphatic way; as,

Ich ziehe Gothe bem Schiller vor. I prefer Gothe to Schiller. Da ift der Tell. There is Tell (that well known man).

4. The name of a person, preceded by a noun denoting rank, title or profession, or by the words Herr, Frau, Fraulein, is often used with the article; of course the name of the person not then being declined; as,

die Kriegstunst des Feldmarschalls Woltte, the strategy of field-marshal Moltke. Dieses Hauß gehört dem Fabrikanten (Herry) Braun. This house belongs to Mr. Braun, the manufacturer. Er ist ein Schüler des Herrn Prosessor Pahl. He is a pupil of professor Pahl

Notes. 1.—The word ferr in polite society is placed before the "title or rank," etc., and even in the same manner the words frau and fraulein; as,

ber herr herzog (D.), the Duke of D. bie Frau General (N.), Mrs. N. (wife of General N.)

2.—If the word Fraulein precedes a proper name, the feminine article

in preference to the neuter article is usually employed; as, Ich begegnete ber (also bem) Fraulein Schmidt. I met Miss Schmidt.

5. If no article is employed with the name of a person preceded by a noun denoting rank, title or profession, the name of the person only is declined; as,

Professor Pahl's Schriften, Professor Pahl's writings mit Fürft

Bismard, with Prince Bismarck.

Note .- However the word ferr is declined as well; as, herrn Schmidt's Bferbe. Mr. Schmidt's horses.

6. According to the rule given on page 226 masculine and neuter nouns expressing measure, number and weight, are only used in the singular, if preceded by a numeral and followed by a noun or adjective whether expressed or understood. - To this rule the following additions are to be made:

a.) Feminine nouns of this kind are used in the plural; as,

brei Flaschen Bein, three bottles of wine sechs Tonnen Rohlen. six tons of coal.

b.) Nouns denoting a measure or division of time are also used in the plural; as,

feche Tage lang, for six days brei Jahre alt, three years old.

c.) The German coins ber Pfennig and bie Mart with a numeral are not declined; as,

20 Pfennig, twenty pfennigs zehn Mart, ten marks.

7. The following plural nouns cannot be used in the singular:

bie Gebrüber, the brothers bie Rosten, the expense bie Geschwister, the brothers and (Untoften) bie Spesen, the charges sisters bie Ettern, the parents
bie Seute, the people
bie Reinfleiber, the trousers
bie Mpen, the Alps
bie Boden, the small-pox
bie Molfen, the whey bie Rante, the intrigues bie Trümmer, the ruins

bie Ferien, the holidays bie Fasten, Lent bie Ostern, Easter bie Pfingsten, Whitsuntide bie Beihnachten, Christmas Die Ginfünfte, the revenue

8. The following nouns are used in the singular if denoting one, and in the plural if denoting more than one; -if denoting the whole of their kind they may be used in the singular or plural:

ber Blasebalg", the bellows ber Blafebalg", the bellows bie Brille", the spectacles bie Lidfputge", the snuffers bie Sedere", the scissors, shears bie Bange", the tongs, pincers ber Birtel", the compasses bie Frucht, the fruit bie Roble, the coal die Epargel, the asparagus der Fisch, the fish

bie Forelle, the trout bas Reh, the deer, roe bas Schaaf, the sheep
bas Schaaf, the sheep
bas Schwein, the pig, swine
bas Alimofen, the alms
bas Mittel, the means
bie Nadytidt
bie Neuigleit
the news ber Rathichlag, the advice

bie Renntniß (Pl.: bie Renntniffe), the

ber Reichthum (Pl.: bie Reichthumer),

knowledge

the riches

Note, -The above nouns marked with a * when used in English with pair of do not require these words in German; as,

eine Schere, a pair of scissors brei Brillen, three pairs of spectacles.

9. The following nouns may be used in the singular or plural:

bie Soie, the breeches

her övsenträger, the braces has Eingeweide, the bowels has Haar, the hair der Fortschritt, the progress

das Geschäft, business, is used in the plural in expressions like:—die Geschäfte gehen schlecht (also das Geschäft geht schlecht), business is dad. Er macht gute Geschäfte. He does a good business.

See also page 17, No. 6.

10. If derivative or compound substantives are connected by a co-ordinative conjunction and their last component is the same noun, the latter may be used with the last substantive only; as,

ber Aus-und Untergang ber Conne, the rising and setting of the sun Brief-oder Kandleipapier, note paper or foolscap paper sowoff bie haus-als auch die Gartentfüre, both the street and garden door.

On the Preposition OF and the Genitive of Nouns.

- 11. The preposition of is rendered by non instead of by the Genitive in the following cases:
 - a.) With names of countries and places in the cases mentioned on page 44.

b.) Before cardinal numbers as mentioned on page 122.

c.) Usually with demonstrative, interrogative, and indefinite pronouns and after numerals or a superlative : as.

basienige von diesen Büchern, welches ..., that of these books, which ... welcher von Jeren Hunden? which of your dogs? Jemand von seinen Leuten, some one of his people zwei von meinen Brüdern, two of my brothers das beste von seinen Perden, the best of his horses.

d.) Before abstract nouns, names of material and plural nouns, if

they qualify or determine the preceding noun; as,

ein Strahl bon hoffnung, a ray of hope ein Geraufch bon Baffer, of water eine Kette von (or aus)(*) Silber, a chain of das Geraffel von Kädern, the clattering of wheels ein Mann noise of water bon feltenen Fähigkeiten, a man of rare qualities.

Notes. 1.—The greater part of such nouns can be compounded, the second preceding the first noun and taking usually, if an abstract noun, an & (or es); as,

ein hoffnungestrahl eine Silbertette.

2.—Instead of the noun denoting solid material, the corresponding adjective may also be used; as,

eine silberne Rette, a silver chain.

3.—Many of these and other nouns are even used in the compounded form only, then having a more general meaning; as,

bic Articg@wi||en|djaft, the science of war ein Ge|djaft&mann, a man of business ber Geridjafyof, the court of justice.

12. Of, occurring after a noun derived from a verb or an adjective requiring a certain preposition in German, is rendered by the same(**) preposition; as,

ber Gebante an Gott, the thought of God (from benten an (Acc.), to think of). Die Berfügung über sein Bermögen, the disposal of his fortung (from berfügen über (Acc.), to dispose of). Die Eitelkeit auf ihre Schönheit, the vanity of her beauty (from eitel auf (Acc.), vain of).

13. The Genitive is not expressed in German with nouns where in English the second noun is understood; as,

3d war bei seinem Onkel. I was at his uncle's (house).

Sie gum Fleischer. Go to the butcher's (shop).

Note.-With proper names denoting public places the second noun must be put in German; as, Sind Sie icon in ber St. (Santt) Paul's Kirche gewesen? Have

you ever been to St. Paul's.

- 14. The preposition of, as the sign of the Genitive, is not rendered in German:
 - a.) Before names of months, countries, and places (towns, villages, etc.), preceded by a word descriptive of them, the proper name being not then declined; as,

ber Monat Mai, the month of May ber 13te Juli, the 13th of July (die Stadt(†) Berlin, the city of Berlin (der Staat(†) Heffen, the state of Hesse die Festung Mainz, the fortress of Mayence.

*) With materials also aus instead of bon may be used.

(**) This is always the case if a noun is derived from such a verb or adjective, whether the equivalent of the preposition be in English of or not.

(†) bie Stadt, ber Staat, in this position, are seldom expressed in German

b.) After nouns expressing number, measure, weight or quantity; as, brei Meter Tuch, three metres of cloth brei Tage Raft, three

days of rest ein Pfund Buder, a pound of sugar eine Taije Thee, a cup of tea ein Regiment Insanterie, a regiment of foot (soldiers) eine Anzahl Zuschauer, a number of spectators.

Notes. 1 .- The second noun should always be in the Genitive, however, it is usually considered now to be in apposition with the preceding noun and therefore

in the same case; as,

Er brachte einen Becher alten Wein. He brought a goblet of old wine. Mit dieser Flasche Bier, with this bottle of beer. Hir zwei Meter gutes Tuch, for two metres of good cloth. Mit einem Paar neuen Sanbiduhen (also Genitive: neuer Sanbiduhe).

2.—If the second noun is accompanied by an article or a determinative

adjective "of" is usually translated von; as, ein Glas von diesem Bein, a glass of this wine ein Dugend von Jhren Krägen, a dozen of your collars brei Pjund von dem Kassee, ben Sie mir gestern empsohsen haben, three pounds of the coffee, you recommended me yesterday.

On the Qualifying Adjective.

15. Attributive Adjectives, in poetry, are sometimes found undeclined, and either preceding or following the noun; as,

ein harmloß Bolf von hirten, a harmless people of herdsmen ein Edelfnecht, fanst und ked, an esquire, gentle yet daring ein Rößlein roth, a little red rose.

16. Adjectives used as nouns and having a general meaning or being preceded by an indefinite pronoun or numeral, are of the neuter gender and follow the declension of adjectives; as,

bas Schöne, the beautiful bas Deutsche, the German viel Gutes, much good mit etwas Neuem, with something new wenig Ebles, little that is noble nichts Großes, nothing great.

17. Such adjectives, if having a more definite meaning, donot change, except in the Genitive, when they add 3 (or e3); as,

bas Blau bes himmels, the blue of the sky ber Anblid bes saftigen Grans, the sight of the fresh green. Er spricht ein reines Deutich. He speaks a pure German.

18. If two adjectives qualifying a noun, imply one idea, the second is declined only; as,

> der frangösisch-deutsche Krieg, the Franco-Gorman war eine schwarz und meiße Fahne, a black and white flag.

19. Names of places can be used as adjectives by adding er, beginning with a capital letter and being then not declined; as,

ber Kölner Dom, the cathedral of Cologne bie Farbe eines Lonboner Rebels, the colour of a London fog.

Note.—Sometimes they are also formed by ifth instead of er, in which case they must be declined; as,-ber Rolnifche Dom.

On the Declension of Adjectives if preceded by determinative words.

20. On pages 60, 64 & 68, it was explained how an attributive adjective preceded by an article or substitute must be declined. -As these rules are, however, not always strictly observed, some additional remarks are given:

a.) After the words folder and mander the adjective is sometimes found with the terminations of bicier; as,

foldes icones (instead of icone) Better, such fine weather

mancher after (instead of afte) Mann, many an old man.

Note. - It is, however, often preferred to abbreviate folder or also mander in all cases into fold or mand, if followed by an adjective, which must take the termination of biefer in this case; as, manch alter Mann. fold icones Wetter

b.) After the words vieler (viele), aller, einiger (etlicher), mehrere, the adjective is sometimes declined as if preceded by the definite article: as.

alle guten (instead of gute) Leute, all the good people einiger.

neue (instead of neuer) Wein, some new wine.

c.) If folder or any indefinite numeral is preceded by an article or a determinative adjective, they take the termination of an adjective preceded by such word; as,

in einem folden Garten, in such a garden wegen feiner vielen

Schulben, on account of his many debts.

21. Adjectives, like articles, and other determinative words, must be repeated before each noun in succession if the nouns are of different genders or numbers, and qualified by the same adjective; as,

Er hat eine franke Frau und franke Rinder. He has a sick wife and children. Saben Sie ichon unfer neues Saus und unfern neuen Garten gesehen? Have you seen our new house and garden yet?

On the Pronouns, Determinative Adjectives, and Numerals.

22. On page 238 it was shown that the possessive adjectives (my, thy, etc.) if occurring with parts of the body or clothes, etc., are usually rendered by the article, a personal pronoun, etc.

Sometimes these parts of the body, etc., must be used with a preposition, and the personal pronoun in the Accusative or Dative.—If my, thy, etc. denote the same person as the subject, the reflective pronoun must be employed. - Verbs requiring such prepositions are:

ichneiben in (Acc.) irr., to cut (into) stechen in (Acc.) irr., to prick (into) verletzen an (Dat.), to hurt (one's ...) an (Dat.), to wound bermunben (one's ...)

ind Geficht-in bie Augen-ichlagen irr. -fehen irr., to strike, to look into one's face—into one's eyes, &c. auf ben Ruden-auf bie Schulter, etc. -ichlagen irr .- flopfen, to strike, to pat on one's back-shoulder, etc. auf die Füße, etc. treten irr., to step on one's feet, etc. bei ben Haaren reißen irr., to pull

one's hair

Examples.—Es ftach mich (also mir) in ben Arm. He pricked my arm. Er berwundete sich am Bein. He wounded his leg. Ich trat ihm (also ihn) auf ben Fuß. I stepped on his foot.

Notes. 1.—Schneiben, stechen, have the pronoun usually in the Accusative (or also Dative); schlagen, klopsen, treten, usually in the Dative (or also Accusative); sehen in the Dative; verlegen, verwunden, reigen in the Accusative only.

2 -The pronoun must be always in the Dative if the noun with a prepo-

sition is preceded by an object in the Accusative; as, Ich nahm ihm den Brief aus der hand. I took the letter out of

his hand.

23. Der meinige or ber meine, etc., may be used substantively

in cases like the following:

Die Meinigen (or die Meinen) lassen sich den Ihrigen (or den Ihren) empsehlen. My people (family) send their compliments to yours. Wir haben das Univige (or Unive) gethan, die Undern sollen das Ihrige (or Ihre) thun. We have done our duty, let the others do theirs. Jeder soll das Seine (or Sire) had. Let everyone have his own.

24. Mein Herr corresponds to the English sir, and mein Fräulein to miss; however, they are not so frequently used in conversation as in English.—Sometimes simply Herr with the name or title following, or Fräulein with the name following are used.

Madam is rendered by Madam, or by Frau with the title following.

Gentlemen, is expressed by meine Herren; Ladies, by meine Damen; Ladies and Gentlemen, Meine Herren und Damen.

25. In polite speaking of somebody's relations, in German, the words perr, Frau, Fraulein are inserted between ffr, etc. and the noun; as,

Ihr herr Gemahl, Ihre Frau Gemahlin, Ihre Fraulein Tochter, etc. Your husband, your wife, your daughter, etc.

- 26. The demonstrative biefer, etc. is often used for the English the latter (ber lettere), and jener for the former (ber erstere); as,

 Der Ossister rief bem Soldaten, aber bieser hörte ihn nicht. The officer called the soldier, but the latter did not hear him.
- 27. Such as, meaning those who, are rendered by diejeningen (or die), welche (see page 108); as,
 Diejenigen, welche unglüdlich find. Such as are unhappy.
 - 28. The very same is rendered ebenberselbe, etc.; as, an ebenbemselben Tage, on the very same day.
- 29. What, if subject of to be, and referring to a following noun as rendered meldes; as,

Beldes find Ihre Bebingungen? What are your terms?

- 30. Which, referring to whole phrases is rendered was; as, Bas wollen Sie thun, singen ober Klavier spielen? Which will you do, sing or play the piano? Gehen Sie ins Theater ober ins Concert?—Id weiß noch nicht, was ich thun werde. Do you go to the theatre or to the concert!—I do not know yet which I shall do.
- 31. The relative of which, standing with a noun which describes a preceding noun is rendered by the Genitive weighes in the masculine or neuter, and weigher in feminine or plural; as,

Cicero, welches großen Redners Schriften ich gelesen habe. Cicero the works of which great orator I have read.

32. All cardinal numbers, if used substantively, are declined according to the common rules.

They are of the feminine gender, except Sunbert and Taufenb which are neuter; as,

bie Eins, bie 8mei, etc. Plural: bie Einsen, bie 8meien, etc. bas hunbert, bas Taufenb. Plural: hunberte, Taufenbe.

33. Frequently these numbers are of the masculine gender instead of the feminine, but in this case they are formed by adding er; as,

ber Einer, ber Ameier, etc. Plural: bie Einer, bie Ameier, etc.

34. If they have an adjectival meaning (i.e. if the noun referred to is understood only), they add e in the plural (en in the Dative); as,

alle Reune wersen, to knock down all nine (ninepins) auf allen Bieren, on all fours (hands and feet).

- 35. They may signify the age of a person by adding er; as, ein Biergiger, a man of forty ein Funfgiger, a man of fifty.
- 36. By taking er they may also signify the year when a particular event took place: as.

Er ift ein (Achtzehnhundert) vierundfünfziger. He was born in 1854. Der (Achtgehnhundert) fünfundsechziger Wein war gut. The 1865 wine

was good.

37. In asking for the number of a person or thing ber wiepielte, etc. is used; as,

Der wievielte ist Ihr Sohn in der Schule? What number has your son at school? Die wievielte Station ist es von hier? How many stations is it from here? Hence: ber wievielte (Tag bes Monats) iff heute? What is the date? (see page 121.)

38. All if used in a general sense is Alles (declined like bieses); as,

Alles ift verloren. All is lost. Bon Allem bem weiß ich nichts. Of all that I know nothing.

39. All that meaning all which, used in a general sense is rendered Alles mas, whether that is expressed or understood; as,

All that he said was not true. War dies Alles, was er schrieb? Was this all he wrote?

40. Alles is sometimes used in the sense of everybody, instead of Mue; as,

Mes verließ (or Alle verließen) bas Zimmer. All left the room.

41. MI, followed by a demonstrative or possessive adjective, may be declined (like biefer), or not; as,

aller (or all) unser Wein, all our wine alle (or all) biese Butter, all this butter alles (or all) bieses Geld, all this money alle (or all) seine Kinder, all his children.

Note.—MI is found undeclined especially in the masculine and neuter.

42. The definite article instead of being omitted may also follow all, which in this case is not declined; as,

all bas Geld (or alles Gelb), all the money all bie Männer (or alle Männer), all the men.

43. All can even follow the noun, in which case it is always declined; as,

Seine Hunde sind alle verkauft worden. His dogs have all been sold. Ich have bas Gelb alles verloren. I have lost all the money.

44. Each, preceded by a noun expressing measure, number, or weight, is rendered by je which in German precedes such noun; as,

Diese Stöde kosten je 3 Mark. These sticks cost 3 marks each. Ich schidte Juen 2 Kisten Thee von je 25 Pjund. I sent you 2 cases of tea of 25 pounds each.

45. Both, used without a noun, is beide, which is declined like biese (plural); as,

Ich batte zwei Bruber, aber beibe find als Anaben geftorben. I had

two brothers, but both died when boys.

- 46. Beibe(n) is sometimes used instead of amei (two); as, meine beiden (or zwei) Schwestern, my two sisters.
- 47. Biel or wenig, if preceded by an article or another determinative word, is declined like an adjective; as,

ber viele Bein fein vieles Gelb mit biefer wenigen Tinte, with

this little ink meine wenigen Freunde, my few friends.

48. Biel or wenig, in the sense of many kinds of or few kinds of, is declined like biejer; as,

Bieler Bein ist nicht rein. Much wine is not pure. Beniges Basser enthält keine Unreinigkeiten. Few kinds of water contain no

49. Biel or wenig, meaning much or little (of the same sort), is not declined in the singular; -however, in the plural it is usually declined; as,

> Bu viel Wein ist ichablich. Too much wine is hurtful. wenig Tinte im Tintenials. There is little ink in the inkstand.—But: Es find viele (also viel) Aepfel auf diesem Baume. There are many apples on this tree. Benige (also wenig) Menschen würden so handeln. Few people would act thus.

50. Manche (plural) is sometimes used for rendering many or some; as,

manche Menschen, many (some) persons.

51. There are two more indefinite numerals; viz:-fammtlicher or ber gesammte, all collectively, all together, and verschiedener, some, various, sundry, divers, which are declined like adjectives; as,

fammtlicher Wein or der sammtliche or der gesammte Wein, all the wine (together) sammtliche Freunde or die sammtlichen or die ge-sammten Freunde, all the friends (together) verjchiedenes Kapier, some paper verschiedene Männer, various men die verschiedenen Männer, the various men.

52. A Monarch in writing of himself or herself uses the first person plural of the personal and possessive pronouns or adjectives, which commence then with a capital; as,

Somit beschlen Bir (Raiser Bilhelm) Unserem Kanzler ..., therefore We (Emperor William) order our Chancellor

53. The possessive adjectives, occurring with nouns denoting title or rank, begin with a capital letter; as,

Ihre Majestat, your Majesty Geine Excellenz, ber Minister R.,

his Excellency, Minister N.

Note.—Instead of Ihre (your) also the old form Euere still occurs, which is often abreviated into Ew.—Seine is sometimes abreviated into Se, and Seiner in Gr.

54. Indefinite numerals or adjectives, with which the noun is understood, referring to persons of both sexes, take the masculine gender; as,

Bon ben herren und Damen wollte jeber zuerst im Zimmer sein. Each of the gentlemen and ladies wished to be first in the room. Mis ber letzte von der Gesellschaft gegangen war ..., when the last of the society had gone ...

Note.—Instead of the masculine, the neuter gender is sometimes employed.

55. The nominatives of the personal pronouns ich, I; bu, thou; wir, we, and Sie or ihr, you; if followed by the relative, ber, bie or bas(*), etc., may be repeated after the relative, in which case the verb must agree in number and person with the personal pronoun. Thus:

ich, ber ich, I who bu, ber bu, thou who wir, die wir, we who Sie, der Sie (or ihr, die ihr), you who

Example:—ich, ber ich nie an Verrath benke, I who never thinks of treason.

Note.—If the personal pronoun is not repeated, the verb agrees with the relative pronoun, as in English; as,
id, her nie an Berrath benet.

56. A personal pronoun in the Genitive may precede a cardinal number, meaning then a party of; as,

Wir gingen unserer sechs zu einer. Photographen. Six of us went to a photographer.

57.-a.) If the word ever (or soever) is added to the relatives who, what, etc., for the sake of emphasis; who, what, etc., are rendered in the usual way by wer, was, etc., and ever (or soever) by auth, which is generally placed after the subject or object of the sentence; as,

Ich will the nicht sehen, wer er auch sein mag. I will not see him whoever he may be. Ich bleibe sein Freund, wer ihn auch verschied mag. I romain his friend whoever may abandon him. Ich glaube es nicht, was Sie auch sagen mögen. I do not believe it whatever you may say.

b.) Whatever preceded by a noun is rendered by welther ... auth or was für (ein) ... auth; as,

Belche Ausflüchte Sie auch gebrauchen mögen. Whatever evasions you may make. Bas für Bein Sie auch trinten mögen. Whatever wine you may drink.

Note.—"Ever or soever" in these positions are sometimes rendered also by immer, auch immer or auch nur instead of auch.

c.) Whatever (or at all) with a negation, is rendered by gar which must precede the negation; as,

gar Riemand, nobody whatever (at all) gar nichts, nothing whatever (at all) gar kein Geld, no money whatever (at all), etc.

^(*) After these pronouns ber, etc. is used instead of welcher etc.

On the Verbs.

58. Besides the cases mentioned on page 268, the verb is in the Subjunctive if a wish or a command is expressed; as,

Sott sei mit dir! God be with thee! Mögen Sie glüdlich sein! May you be happy! Bäre ich (boch) bei ihm! That I might be with him! Alles verlasse bas Haus. Let everybody leave the house.

59. After verbs expressing a wish, a hope, an advice,—should, may or might, with another verb in a sentence introduced by daß, that (expressed or understood), are not rendered, and the following verb is put in the Subjunctive in German; as,

3ch rathe, daß das Fenster geschlossen werde. I advise, that the window should be shut. Er hosst, daß er das Bergnügen habe, Sie auf dem Ball zu tressen. He hopes, that he may have the pleasure of meeting you at the ball. Ich minschte, daß Sie er Ihnen bergäbe. I wished, that he might forgive you.

60. However, after the verbs befehlen, jagen and others of a similar meaning should is rendered by jollen usually; as,

Besehlen Sie, daß Niemand die Kaserne verlassen soll. Order that no one should leave the barracks. Et saste, daß Jhnen das Geld bezahlt werden soll. He said that the money should be paid to you.

61. After the verbs fürchten, bitten, münichen, and similar in the past tense, should or might is rendered möchte in preference to the subjunctive of the other verb; as,

Ich sürchtete, daß ich zu spät kommen möchte. I feared, lest I should come too late. Wir vönsighten, daß das sichen Wetter anhalten möchte. We wished that the fine weather might continue.

62. If the Infinitive with to is used as subject, to is not rendered in German; as,

Geben ist seliger als nehmen. To give is more blessed than to review. Seinen Feinden berzeihen ist ehel. To forgive one's enemies is noble.

Note.—It will be seen by the second example that the infinitive, if accompanied by a complement, must follow this complement.

- 63. An Infinitive must be used with um ... zu:
- a.) If an intention or purpose is implied, corresponding then to in order to, or for with a present participle after; as,

3ch thue es, um Ihrem Bruber einen Gefallen zu erweisen. I do i (in order) to do a favour to your brother. Ich mußte in die Stadt ichiden, um Fleisch zu erhalten. I had to send to town for getting meat.

b.) If occurring after an adjective preceded by zu, too, or followed by genug, enough; as,

Sie sind zu krank, um ausgehen zu können. You are too ill to be able to go out. Sie sind nicht stark genug, um diesen Kosser zu tragen. You are not strong enough to carry this trunk.

64. An Infinitive occurring with an Accusative after the verbs expressing a knowledge, wish, command, etc., must be rendered by a clause, introduced by bag, in which the English Accusative becomes the subject; as,

I wish him to go to N. I wish him to go to N.

He knows you to be at home. Note.—After verbs governing the Dative in German, the Infinitive, etc. may also be rendered literally; as,

3th rieth ihm, nach haufe zu gehen. I advised him to go home.

65. An Infinitive after words of interrogation, not used in direct questions, is rendered by a subordinate clause with follen. as an auxiliary; as,

Id weiß nicht, wann ich kommen soll. I do not know when to-come. Sagte er Ihnen, wo Sie ihn tressen sollen? Did he tell you, where to meet him? Wir batten bergessen, mit welchem Zug wir kom-men sollten. We had forgotten by what train to come.

66. If several Infinitives with zu, are governed by the same verb, zu must be used with each; as,

Er bat mich in einen Laben zu gehen und ein Messer zu kaufen. He asked me to go to a shop and buy a knife.

67. A Present Participle, except as an adjective (see page 230), can be used in the following cases only:

a.) If it is formed from an intransitive verb, and is occurring with an-

other verb to expres a manner or condition; as,

Die Truppen zogen sich sechtenb zurück. The troops retired fight-y. Er stand vor mir zitternd vor Kälte. He stood besore metrembling with cold.

b.) Also sometimes as participle of a transitive verb in poetry; as, Seine eigenen Leiben bergessend ... Forgetting his own sufferings ...

68. A present participle used in English to form a compound substantive with a following noun cannot be rendered literally, and the corresponding noun must be employed in German; as,

fein Sterbetag, his dying day ber Wartesaal, the waiting-room.

bas Speisezimmer, the dining-room.

Notes. 1.—The examples will show that the German first component is formed from an infinitive by leaving out the n; viz. from: fterben, marten,

speisen; but no fixed rule can be given.

2.—Do not confound the above words like: waiting-room, Wartefaal (i.e. a room for waiting), with words like: a waiting child, ein wartenbes kind (i.e. a child who is waiting), "waiting" heing in the latter case an adjective.

69. Examples showing the change of Present Participles.

to an Infinitive or to a verb of a dependent clause:

1. He did not succeed in letting his house. Es gelang ihm nicht, sein-Saus zu vermiethen. 2. He decided on going to France. Er beschloß nach. Frankreich zu geben. 3. I shall insist upon selling the dog. Ich werbe barauf bestehen, ben hund zu vertaufen (or bag ber hund vertauft wirb). 4. I went to N., without having any money with me. Ich ging nach N., ohne Gelb bei mir zu haben (or ohne daß ich Gelb bei mir hatte). 5. You laugh instead of being serious. Sie lachen, anftatt ernft zu fein (or anftatt, bag Sie ernft finb). 6. The man was near drowning. Der Mann war nahe baran zu ertrinten (or am Ertrinfen). 7. He grumbled at having no breakfast. Er murrte, weil (or barüber, bag) er fein Frühftud hatte. 8. He hinted at being without means. Er beutete barauf bin, bag er ohne Mittel fet. 9. I rejoiced at

finding my purse. 3d freute mich, weil (or barüber, bag) ich meine Borfe fand. 10. He complained of not being invited. Er beflagte fich, weil (or barüber, baß) er nicht eingelaben wurde. 11. He excused himself for having offended us. Er entschuldigte sich, weil (or bafur, bag) er uns beleidigte hatte. is ready for starting at once. Er ift bereit, fogleich abzureifen. 13. He is irritated at having received no answer. Er ift anigebracht, meil (or barüber, baß) er keine Antwort erhalten hat. 14. He was amused at having frightened me. Er war beluftigt, weil (or barüber, bak) er mich erschreckt hatte. 15. He is worthy of becoming an officer. Er ist würdig, ein Offigier gu werden. 16. He is proud of being able to receive us. Er ift ftolz, weil (or darauf, daß) er und empfangen fann. 17. We have nothing against his coming. Wir haben nichts bagegen, daß er fommt. 18. He came to me on account of my being ill. Er fam zu mir, weil ich frant war. 19. I heard your knocking at the door. Ich horte, daß (or wie) Sie an die Thure flopften. 20. I did not think of your coming. Ich bachte nicht baran, baß Sie kommen, 21. I rejoiced at your visiting my parents. 3th freute mich barüber, baß Sie meine Eltern besuchten. 22. We approached the fortress without the enemy's remarking us Wir naberten uns ber Festung, ohne bag ber Feind uns bemertte. 23. I gratified him by sending him a basket of strawberries. 3d erfreute ihn baburch, daß ich ihm ein Korbchen Erdbeeren schickte. 24. You will be laughed at for having been so foolish. Sie werben ausgelacht werben, weil Sie so thöricht gewesen waren. 25. (After) having been to France, I went to Germany. Nachdem ich in Frankreich gewesen war, ging ich nach Deutschland. 26. Having no money with me, I must walk. Da ich fein Gelb bei mir habe, muß ich geben. 27. This story being read, we will read another. Da bieje Beschichte gelesen ift, wollen wir eine andere lefen. 28. On reaching the town, we saw a conflagration. Als wir die Stadt erreichten, faben wir eine Feuers-29. When crossing the bridge, our horses were frightened. 213 wir über die Brude fuhren, erschraden unsere Pferde. 30. While going to N., I met an old woman riding on a donkey. Während ich nach N. ging, begegnete ich einer alten Frau, die auf einem Giel ritt. 31. Besides having a good situation, he has a large fortune. Außerbem baß er eine gute Stelle hat, hat er ein großes Bermögen. 32. He pointed to me with his finger, saying ... Er zeigte mit bem Finger auf mich, indem er fagte ... (or und fagte). asked a gentleman sitting next me. Ich fragte einen Herrn, der neben mir 34. The judge, being about to try a prisoner ... Der Richter, ber im Begriffe ftand, einen Gefangenen zu berhoren ... 35. A war vessel cruising off Suez ... Gin Rriegsichiff, bas bei Gueg freugte ... 36. He is a young man, anxious of perfecting himself in the German language. Er ift ein junger Mann, ber fich gerne in ber beutiden Sprache vervolltommnen möchte, painter, on finishing his painting, perceived ... Als ber Maler fein Gemälbe beenbigte, bemerkte er ... 38. The doctor, some time after seeing me, said to me ... Alls ber Dottor mich einige Beit nachher fah, fagte er ju mir ... 39. The emperor, esteeming one artist as much as the other, and not knowing to whom to give the preference, decided ... Da ber Raiser einen Runftler jo febr achtete, wie ben anbern, und ba er nicht wußte, welchem er ben Borgug geben follte, entichied er ... 40. One day, wishing to see the museum, your brother asked me to accompany him. Da Ihr Bruder eines Tages bas Museum seben wollte, bat er mich, ihn zu begleiten. 41. The first said this and the second that, and having disputed for some time, the latter exclaimed : ... Der Erfte fagte bies und ber Unbere bas, und nachbem fie fich eine Reitlang berumgeftritten hatten, rief ber Lettere aus: ... 42. Your father, in sending for another doctor offended Dr. X. Daburch daß Ihr Bater einen andern Dottor holen ließ, beleidigte er Dr. n.

70. The Present Participle of an intransitive verb expressing motion, used with to come, formmen, is replaced by the Past Participle in German; as,

Er fam gelaufen, geritten, gefahren, 2c. He came running, riding, driving, etc.

71. In a similar manner the past participle versoren is used in the expression versoren gehen, to be lost; as.

Ein hund ift verloren gegangen. A dog has been lost.

72. The Past Participle is sometimes used instead of the Imperative in German; as,

Ausgetrunken! Empty your glasses! Dageblieben! Remain here! Richt verzweiselt! No despairing!

Agreement of Verb and Subject.

73. The verb agrees with its subject in number; thus a subject in the singular takes the verb in the singular, and a subject in the plural takes the verb in the plural; as,

Die ganze Mannschaft bes Schiffes wurde gerettet. All the crew of the ship were rescued. Das Ministerium hat seine Entlasung eingereicht. The ministry have tendered their resignation. Her Brille liegt auf dem Lisse. Your spectacles lie on the table. Die Kosten sind zu groß. The expense is too great.

74. Nouns denoting a quantity or number, followed by a plural noun, may take the verb in the plural or singular; as,

Eine Anzahl Solbaten stehen (or steht) vor dem Bahnhof. A number of soldiers stand before the railway-station.

75. If several subjects standing together, have the same verb, the verb must be in the plural; as,

. Mein Bater und meine Mutter lommen. My father and my mother come. Der Löwe, der Tiger und der Kanther sind Kaubthiere. The lion, tiger and panther are animals of prey. Sie und er sollen zusammen reisen. You and he are to travel together.

76. However, it occurs sometimes, that a verb having several singular nouns as subjects, may be in the singular, especially if the nouns can be thought to signify a whole idea; as,

Meer und Land muß ihm gehorchen. Sea and land must obey him. Mein Leben und Blut gehört Jhnen. My life and blood belong to you.

77. If the subjects are connected by the conjunctions over, sowohl ... als auch, nicht nur ... sondern auch, theils ... theils, sondern, entweder ... over, weder ... noch, the verb takes the number and person of the subject next to it; as,

Entweber Here Brüber, oder Ihr Vater muß anwesend sein. Either your brothers or your father must be present. Nicht nur die Thüre, sondern auch die Fenster standen offen. Not only the door, dut also the windows were open. Weder er, noch ich werde Sie besuchen. Neither he nor I will visit you.

On Separable Verbs.

78. Verbs, the prefixes of which consist of prepositions or adverbs, as a rule are separable (see page 142).

Besides these, verbs having adjectives as prefixes are se-

parable; as,

fehlichlagen irr., to fail, to miscarry festbinben irr., to bind tightly freisprechen irr., to acquit tobtichießen irr., to shoot dead.

79. Excepted are the following, which are not separable:

argwöhnen, to suspect frohloden, to exult frühstüden, to breakfast furzweilen, to divert, amuse langweisen, to tire

liebtofen, to caress offenbaren, to reveal rechtfertigen, to justify weisfagen, to prophecy

Note.—These verbs, although they are inseparable, have the accent on the first syllable, and form their past participles in the regular way, like: gerüßfüdt, gerechtertigt, etc.—But froßloden, having the accent on the second syllable, has the past participle froßlodt.

80. The following verbs, the prefixes of which are substantives, are also separable:

achtgeben irr., to pay attention bantiagen, to return thanks gludwunschen, to congratulate haushalten irr., to keep house hoshalten irr., to keep nouse theilnehmen irr., to snare theilnehmen irr., to participate

preisgeben irr., to give up ftattfinben irr. (ftatthaben irr.), to take place theilhaben irr., to share

Note.—The prefixes of these verbs are often not joined to the verb and then

commence with a capital letter; as,

Acht geben, Dant fagen, etc.

81. If several separable verbs of the same mood, tense and person, and having the same root verb, occur together, the root verb is not usually repeated; as,

Die Sonne geht Morgens auf und Abends unter. The sun rises in the morning and sets in the evening. Maden Sie bie Thure auf und bas Fenster zu. Open the door and shut the window.

On to have.

82. To have rendered by müffen see page 258, and by Iaffen see page 264.

83. Phrases like the following have to be changed in trans-

ation; thus:

He had a large fortune left him a large fortune was left to him. He had a large lottung leit him a large lottung used to the des wurde ihm ein großes Bermögen hinterlassen. My uncle often had princes visit his hotel my uncle's hotel was often visited by princes. Satel meines Onfess wurde oft von Kürsten besucht. She had Das Gotel meines Ontels murbe oft bon Fürsten besucht. She had her dress trimmed with flowers: her dress was trimmed with flowers. Ihr Rleid war mit Blumen geichmudt.

84. Note the translation of the following and similar phrases:

All kinds of playthings can be had there. Allerlei Spielmagren find bort zu haben (or Dan fann bort allerlei Spielmaaren betommen). nno our zu gaen (or Wan tann our alertei Spieiwaaren betommen). Nothing was to be had. Es war nicht zu haben (or Man sonnte nichts bekommen). I would have you to go there. In would have you to go there. In wonsight, daß Singingen. I had better wait. Es wäre bester, wenn ich warten würbe (or wartete or ich sollte lieber warten). I had rather read another book. Ich würde lieber ein anderes Buch sesen. I had as lieve go to Germany. Ich möchte (or murbe) ebenso gern nach Deutsch-land gehen. I had like to have fallen into the river. Ich ware beinahe in ben Glug gefallen.

On to be.

- 85. I am to, etc., rendered by ith foll, etc., see page 259, and for the translation of to be with a Passive Infinitive following, see page 284.
- 86. I am likely to, etc., is rendered ich werde wahrscheinlich (or wohl); as,

Ich werbe wahrscheinlich (or wohl) kommen. I am likely to come. Wir werben wahrscheinlich (or wohl) keine Antwort erhalten. We are not likely to receive an answer.

- 87. He was likely to die, etc., is rendered: Er war nahe baran zu fterben or Er ftarb beinahe.
- 88. For indicating the place where the subject is, in English usually the verb to be is employed, whereas in German it is preferable to use the verb showing the exact position of the subject; as,

Der Tisch steht (also ift) im andern Limmer. The table is in the other room. Das Buch liegt (also ist) auf Jhrem Pust. The book is on your desk Der Nagel stedt in der Wand. The nail is in the Die Rate fitt auf bem Stufle. The cat is on the chair.

89. If the subject is a person, fich befinden is often employed to indicate the place, which is also used for indicating a condition of a person or thing; as,

Es befanden sich (also es waren) viese Disiziere auf dem Balle. There were many officers at the ball. Wie besindet sich Ihr Bruder heute? How is your brother to-day? Das haus besindet sich in einem schlechten Zustand. The house is in a bad condition.

90. Note the following expressions:

I am late—early, etc. Ich komme spät—sprüh, etc. I am right—wrong. Ich habe Kecht—Unrecht. I am in a hurry. Ich habe Eile. I am in earnest. Es ist mein Ernst. I am hungry—thirsty—sleepy. Ich habe hunger—Durst—Schlas (also Ich din hungrig—burstig—ichläfrig). I am sevensh. Ich habe Fieber. I am anxious to ... Ich möchte gern ...

See also impersonal verbs on page 166.

91. Note further the following verbs:

to be afraid, to fear, befürdten to be afraid of, fid fürdten vor to be ashamed, fid fidmen to be asleep, idlafen irr. to be astonished, *erftannen

to be aware of, wissen irr. to be called, heißen irr.

to be drowned, *ertrinfen irr.

to be frightened, *erichreden irr.

to be mistaken, sich irren to be silent, schweigen irr.

to be worth, geften irr. to be of weight, miegen irr. to be wrecked, *icheitern

On to do.

- 92. To do as an auxiliary not expressed, see page 133.
- 93. To do with an Infinitive is in English often used to make the sense more emphatic. - In German, in such a case, to do is not rendered, and the following adverbs are employed instead:

a.) In the Imperative, ja is used; as,

Geben Sie ja heute Abend zu ihm. Do go to him this evening. Seien Sie ja nicht unhöflich. Do not be impolite.

b.) In the Present and Imperfect the emphasis is expressed by wirflich; as,

> Ich weiß, sie kommen wirklich. I know, they do come. Es ist nicht möglich, daß er es wirklich that. It is not possible that he did do it.

c.) In answers freilich or allerdings are used for expressing the emphasis: as.

Sagten Sie e3? Freilich or allerdings (fagte ich e8). Do you say it? I did (say it). Warten Sie auf ihn? Freilich or allerdings (warte ich auf ihn). Do you wait for him? I do (wait).

94. To have done with a present participle following is rendered as follows:

> Have they done singing? Sind fie fertig mit Singen? I have not yet done writing. 3ch bin noch nicht fertig mit Schreiben.

95. To have done with a thing, is rendered fertig fein; as, Sind Sie fertig mit Ihrem Brief? Have you done with your letter?

96. However, in the Imperative to have done in the cases 94 & 95 is rendered thus:

> Have done lamenting! Soren Gie auf zu flagen! Have done it! Soren Gie bamit auf!

97. To do in the sense of to make (i.e. meaning to manufacture. to do by work) is usually machen; as,

> Bis wann konnen Sie meine Stiefel machen? How soon can you do my boots? Saben Sie Ihre Aufgabe gemacht? Have you done your task?

98. Note the following expressions:

to do business, Geichafte machen to do honour (credit, kindness), Ehre (Freundichaft) erweisen irr.

to do justice to, Berechtigfeit wiber: fahren laffen irr.

to do one's duty, feine Pflicht erfüllen (or thun) to do one's hair, fein Saar (gurecht)

machen to do one's self the pleasure, fich bas

Bergnügen machen to do a commission, order, etc, ein

Beichaft, einen Auftrag, etc., beforgen

to do a picture, ein Bild malen

to do an order, command, einen Be-fehl bollziehen irr. to do like for like, Gleiches mit Glei-

chem bergelten irr.

to do away, wegihun, wegihaffen how do you do? wie geht es Ihnen? that will do, das genügt that will not do, das darf nicht sein

it will not do (it is of no avail), eshilft nichts

I cannot do without it, ich fann esnicht entbehren

what did you do all day with your-self? Was haben Sie ben ganzen Tag gethan?

On to make.

99. To make rendered by laffen see page 264.

100. To make as a rule is rendered machen (also sometimesperfertigen or anfertigen).

101. However, note the following expressions:

to make account of, achten, hochichäken to make an alliance, ein Bünbniß

ichließen irr.

to make allowance for, Nachsicht haben

to make amends, to make up for, Erfat leisten

to make an apology, fich enticuls

to make a good (bad) appearance, gut (jhleht) aussehen irr.

to make a bargain, ein Beichaft (einen Sanbel) abichließen irr.

to make the best of one's way, fich beeilen

make a boast of, sich rühmen über (Acc.)

to make a change, eine Beränderung treffen irr.

to make choice, eine Wahl treffen irr. to make complaint of, Rlage führen

über (Acc.) to make one's escape, *entichlüpfen, *entfommen irr

to make haste, fich beeilen

to make head or tail of a thing, aus etwas flug *werben irr.

to make a mistake, sich irren to make money of a thing, etwas au Geld machen

to make oath (to take oath), einen Eid ablegen

to make a request, eine Bitte vor-tragen irr. or vorbringen irr. to make shift, sich behelsen irr.

to make a sign, ein Beiden geben irr. to make a good soldier, etc., einen guten Solbaten, etc., abgeben irr. to make a speech, eine Rebe halten irr.

to make a trial, einen Bersuch (eine-Brobe) anstellen or machen to make use of, sich bebienen (Gen.)

to make war upon, betriegen to make way, room, Play machen to make after, *nachlegen (Dat.), verfolgen (Acc.)

to make away with one's self, fich umbringen irr.

to make off, away, sich davon machen to make out, sich (Dat.) erklären to make over, vermachen

to make up one's losses, feinen Berluft wieder einbringen irr.

to make up a letter, ein Brief falten or zusammenlegen

to make up one's mind, sich ent-schließen irr. to make up a quarrel, einen Streit

beilegen

to make angry, (fich) ärgern to make free with any one, nicht viel Umftanbe mit Ginem machen

to make merry at, fich luftig machen: über (Acc.)

to make nice, Einwendungen machen

On to get.

102. To get is very frequently used in English, and has such various meanings, that no equivalent can be given in German. and in rendering it, always a corresponding other verb must be used: thus:

to get (to receive, to obtain), erhalten irr., betommen irr., erlangen to get (to induce), veranlassen (reg.) bewegen

to get (to become), *werden irr. to get (to come), *fommen irr.

to get (to arrive), *ankommen irr. to get (to buy), kaufen to get (to incur), sich zuziehen irr. to get (to procure one's self), fich anschaffen

to get (to take), nehmen irr., etc.

103. Note the following expressions:

to get into, "gerathen in (Acc.) irr. to get into (a carriage, etc.), "einfteigen irr.

to get out of (a carriage, etc.), *au3. fteigen irr.

to get into favour of, sich in Sunst fegen bei

to get above, übertreffen irr. to get away, wegbringen irr. (fich) entfernen

to get between, (ba)zwischen gerathen

get down, *hinunterfteigen irr., *hinuntergehen irr., hinunter: bringen irr.

to get up, *(hin)aufsteigen irr., *auffteben irr.

to get upon a horse, zu Pferbe *fteigen irr.

to get off, wegichaffen, *babontommen

irr.

to get on in, Fortidritte maden in to get out of one's depth, Boben berlieren irr.

to get out of one's sight, Einem aus ben Augen *gehen irr. to get abroad, bekannt (ruchbar) *wer-

ben irr.

to get the better of, übertreffen irr.

to get one's bread, fein Bcob ver-

to get clear of, frei *werben von irr. to get drunk, sich betrinken irr. to get friends, sich Freunde machen to get riches, Reichthümer erwerben

I could not get him to do it, ich fonnte ihn nicht bagu bringen, es au thun

104. The past participle got, if used pleonastically after to have, is not expressed in German; as,

Saben Sie Gelb bei fich? Have you got any money with you?

3d habe funf Mart. I have got five marks.

105. To get, rendered by lassen, see page 264.

On the Cases.

As mentioned on page 12 there are four cases in German; viz.: the Nominative, the Genitive, the Dative, and the Accusative .- Besides these four cases there is also a fifth case—seldom used—the Vocative, which is the same as the Nominative.

The case in which a declinable German word has to be, is always dependent on the word by which it is governed, or on the position which it occupies in the sentence.

The following are full lists and rules about the German cases.

I. The Vocative.

106. All declinable words used in exclamations and addressing are in the vocative, which is the same as the nominative; as,

O Freund! was haben Sie gethan? O friend! what have you been doing? Mein lieber Bater! My dear father! Wollen Sie nicht herauftommen, herr Schmibt? Will you not come upstairs, Mr. Schmidt? Bas fehlt bir, guter Knabe? What is the matter with you, good boy?

II. The Nominative.

107. All nouns and pronouns which are the subject of the sentence, are in the Nominative case; as,

Der Tiger ift graufam. The tiger is cruel. 3ch habe geschlafen. have been sleeping. Ber fommt? Who is coming?

108. Verbs governing the Nominative.

a.) The following verbs require their predicate (noun or pronoun) in the nominative; as,

bleiben irr., to remain | scheinen irr., to seem heißen irr., to be called | sein irr., to be | *werben irr., to become

For examples see page 276.

EXCEPTION.—The nominative is not used if the noun is in the Genitive (see No. 110) or if it is preceded by a preposition; as,

3d bin Ihrer Meinung. I am of your opinion. Die Sache ist bon Bichtigleit. The matter is of importance.

b.) The following verbs, if used passively, require also the nominative case:

heißen irr. } to call schimpfen, to insult rufen irr., to call taufen, to baptize schelten irr., to abuse, to call names

Example .- Er murbe ber alte Jager geheißen. He was called the old hunter.

c.) A noun, preceded by als, is in the nominative after any verb. if the noun denotes the same person as the subject; as,

Er ftarb als Seid. He died a(*) hero. Bir schieden als Freunde. We departed as friends.

III. The Genitive.

109. The Genitive is used when possession, origin, or partition is implied; therefore it generally corresponds to the English possessive (see also page 297); as,

Das haus unseres Nachbars. Our neighbour's house. Die Tapferfeit ber Spartaner. The bravery of the Spartans. Der Kopf eines Clephanten. The head of an elephant. Shiller's Werte. Schiller's works. Wessen hut? Whose hat? Ein Garten, bessen Bäume ... A garden, the trees of which ... Gin Glas bes besten Weines. A glass of the best wine.

110. The Genitive occurs generally after the verbs fein, werben, Scheinen (see No. 108 a.), if in English these verbs are followed by a noun with of, and the subject of the verb denotes a person; as,

Ich bin Ihrer Meinung. I am of your opinion. Der Mensch ist göttlicher Natur. Man is of divine nature.

111. Adverbal expressions denoting indefinite time are in the Genitive, which is also used with some other adverbial expressions; as,

Der Briefträger kommt nur bes Morgens (or Morgens). The postman comes in the morning only. Ich founde gerades Weges aus ber Stabt. I am coming straight from town. Wir folgten ihnen stehenben Fußes. We followed them without hesitation.

Note.—Adverbial expressions denoting definite time, are in the accusative (see page 318).

112. Adjectives governing the Genitive are:

ansichtig,1 getting a sight of baar, barren of bebürftig } in want of, in need of benöthigt } in want of, in need of bewußt, conscious of (see No. 115) eingebent, mindful of gewahr,1 aware of gewärtig, expecting gewis,2 certain of gewohnt,1 used, accustomed to habhaft, getting possession of fundig, acquainted with (something) 103.1 & 2 rid of maditig, master of mube, tired of, weary of fatt, satiated with ichuldig, guilty of sicher, sure of, on theithaft(ig), partaking of iberbrüffig,1 weared, disgusted with berbächtig, suspected of berluftig, having forfeited werth wurdig worthy of

For rules and examples see page 234.

Notes. 1.—The adjectives marked with 1 are used in common life often with the accusative, like: ich murbe ihn gemahr, I became aware of his presence. 2.—Gewiß and log sometimes take the preposition boninstead of the Genitive.

113. Verbs governing the Genitive.

a.) The following verbs require their object in the Genitive:

bedürfen1 irr., to want, to need begehren,1 to desire entrathen irr. to dispense with enibebren 1 ermangeln, to be void of ermannen,1 to mention genießen1 irr., to enjoy

(ge)benten irr., to think of, to remember gewahren, to perceive pliegen, to take care of, to attend to-idjonen, to spare bergesenl irr., to forget wahrnehmen irr., to see to

Example.-Ich gedachte feines Baters. I thought of his father.

Note .- Most of these verbs, except in poetry, are seldom used with the Genitive; thus those marked with the figure 1 have generally their object in the Accusative.

- b.) For the Genitive after sein, werden, scheinen, see No. 110.
- c.) The following verbs, if followed by two objects, require the indirect object in the Genitive, and the direct object (i.e. the person) in the Accusative:

antiagen, to accuse of berauben, to rob of beidulbigen, to charge with entbinben irr., to release from entblößen, to deprive of entheben1 irr., to exempt from entileiben, to divest of

entlaffen1 irr., entjegen, to discharge from (employment) überführen, to convict of berfichern,2 to assure of würdigen, to hold worthy of zeihen irr., to impeach of

For examples see page 276.

Notes. 1.—Those verbs, marked with the figure 1, may also be used with bon, instead of with the Genitive.

2.—Berfichern may also take the person in the Dative, and the thing in the Accusative.

Remark.-In the passive voice the indirect object must remain in the Genitive ; as,-Der Gefangene murbe bes hochverrathe angeflagt. The prisoner was accused of high-treason.

d.) The following reflective verbs, besides having their reflective pronoun in the accusative, require their object in the Genitive:

fich annehmen irr., to take care of fich bebienen, to make use of

fich befleißigen, to apply one's self to fich bemächtigen, to take possession of

fich erbarmen,2 to have mercy upon fich entäußern, to get rid of, to dis-

fich enthaltent irr., to abstain from

fich entledigen, to rid one's self of fich entwöhnen, to break the habit of

sich entichlagen irr., to throw off

(thoughts)

presume fich versichern, to make sure of

fich gelüsten lassen irr., to covet to fich rühmen, to boast of fich schämen,2 to be ashamed of

sich vermessen irr., to arrogate, to-

fich erbreiften, fich erfrechen, fich er-

fühnen, to be emboldened, to dare-

fich weigern, to refuse

fich erinnern, to remember fich erwehren, to keep off

fich freuen.2 to rejoice

For examples see page 276.

Notes. 1 .- Sich entäußern, fich enthalten may take the preposition bon instead of the Genitive.

2.—Sich erbarmen, fich freuen, fich schämen take usually the prepositionüber (Acc.) instead of the Genitive.

e.) The Genitive occurs in the following expressions:

sind eines Bestern besinnen irr., to think of something better seines Weges "gehen irr., to go one's way ber Kusepssiegen, to take one's ease, to rest Hungers "sterben irr. (also: vor Hunger sterben), to die of hunger eines plöysiden Todes "sterbenirr., to die a sudden death Einendes Landes verweisen irr., to exile some one seines Untes watten to attend to one's office or business bes Todes sein, to be a dead man. Es ift nicht der Mühe werth (also: es verlohnt sich nicht der Mühe). It is not worth the trouble. Es ist nicht der Nede werth. It is not worth mentioning.

114. Prepositions governing the Genitive.

(See page 180.)

IV. The Dative.

115. Adjectives governing the Dative are:

abgeneigt, averse from, to ähnlich, like, resembling angeboren, innate in angemessen, suitable to (an)genehm, pleasant, agreeable to annehmbar, acceptable to anstößig, scandalous to ärgerlich, vexatious to ausgesett, liable to begreislich, comprehensive to befannt, known to behülflich (sein), to assist bequem, convenient to beschwerlich,1 troublesome to (sich Dat.) bewußt (Gen. sein), to be conscious of banfbar,2 grateful to bentbar, conceivable to bienlich, serviceable to bienstbar, subject to eigen eigenthümlich | peculiar to entsetslich, 1 shocking to entiprement, correspondent to ergeben, devoted, attached to erinnerlich (fein), to remember erwünscht, wished for, desirable to feind(lich), hostile to fremt, 1 strange, foreign to freund(lid), friendly, kind to fletinitud, thendy, and to folgiam, obedient to furditor, awful to furditorlid, frightful to gefährlid, dangerous to gegenüberliegend, opposite to gehoriam, obedient to geläufig, familiar to gemäß, persuant to gemein(jam), common to geneigt, inclined to abgeneigt, disinclined to geiunb, healthy for gewachien (fein), (to be) equal to, (to be) a match for gewogen, favourable to gleid, like to, even with gleidgültig,2 indifferent to anabig,2 gracious to

gram (jein), to dislike gunftig, favourable to, for gut (sein), to like heiliam, salutory, healing for holb, benignant to laftig, troublesome to leicht,1 easy to, for lieb, dear to möglich,1 possible for nachtheilig,1 prejudicial, disadvanta geous to nahe, near to natürlich, natural to neu,1 new to nöthig! nothwendia, necessary to, for nühlich,1 useful to, for offen, free to parallel (gleichlaufenb) | parallel to peinlich (schmerzlich), painful to, forrecht, agreeable to charling, hurtful, injurious to idredlich,1 terrible, horrible to, for iduldig, owing to idwer, difficult to, for theuer, dear to treu,2 faithful to überlegen, superior to, (in knowledge. or strength) unentbehrlich, indispensable to unterworfen, amenable, subject to unvergessis, memorable to verantwortlish, accountable to verbunden, obliged, indebted to verberblish, fatal, ruinous to verhaßt, hateful, odious to permandt,3 related to boraus, beforehand with werth, dear to withtig,1 important to, for widerlich, abominable to willfommen, welcome to zugänglich, 1 accessable to zuträglich,1 benificial to, for sumider, abhorrent to zweifelhaft, doubtful to

And all of these adjectives with the prefix un having an opposite meaning, as well as participles of verbs governing the dative, used as adjectives.

(For examples see page 234.)

Notes. 1.—The adjectives marked with the figure 1 occur sometimes with the preposition für, instead of with the Dative.

2.—Those adjectives marked with 2 may also take the preposition gegen instead of the Dative.

3.—Befannt with the Dative means "known to," whilst befannt mit is corresponding to "acquainted with."-Bermandt usually takes the preposition mit, instead of the Dative.

116. Verbs governing the Dative.

a.) The following verbs, when having one object only, require it in the Dative:

abrathen irr, to dissuade angehören, to appertain to *anhangen irr., to adhere to antworten, to answer anteehen irr., to suit aufbinden irr., to impose on aufbrängen, to force upon *auffallen irr., to strike, surprise aufpassen, to waylay autimaten, to attend to, wait on autipaten, to attend to, wait on autipaten irr., to give a hand, assist *autipation irr., to give way, evade befethen irr., to command *beggnen, to meet (in passing by) behagen, to please *beistehen irr., to help, assist beistimmen to agree with (some one), beisslichten to assent to beimohnen (anwohnen), to be present at *befommen irr., to agree with (some one's health) *bevorstehen irr., to impend *bleiben irr., to remain to banten, to thank bienen, to serve brohen, to threaten cinpragen, to impress on *einfallen irr., to occur to (one's mind) cinpflangen, to ingraft in cinlendsten, to be clear, obvious to cinfdarfen, to enjoin upon *entfallen irr., to escape, to slip out (of one's memory) entfremben, to alienate, estrange from *entsliehen irr., *entgehen irr., *ent-tommen irr., *entlaufen irr., *ent-rinnen irr., to escape from *entwijchen, to slip away, to escape from entiagen, to renounce entsprechen irr., to answer (a pur-

*entgegengehen irr., to go to meet *entgegentommen irr., to come to

meet, to meet (figuratively)

pose, etc.)

entreißen irr., to wrest from *entstammen, to spring of (a family) entivenden, to filch from entivinden irr., to wrench from erlauben, to allow, permit *erliegen irr., to succumb to retident int., to appear to feblen (mangeln), to be wanting to fluden, to curse, execrate "folgen, to follow tröhnen, to indulge in (a passion) sich fügen, to buckle, defer to gebühren, to be due to gefallen irr., to please mißfallen irr., to displease gegenüberstellen irr., to confront with gehorden, to obey gehören, to belong to (some one) *gelingen4 (imp.) irr., to succeed in *miklingen4 (imp.) irr., to fail in genügen, to suffice gerathen irr., to turn out (well, etc.) for "migrathen irr., to turn out ill for gereithen, to redound to genafren, to bestow upon, on gleithen irr., to resemble glauben, to believe "gluden, 4 to succeed (in) *miggliden,4 to fail (in) helfen irr., to help hulbigen, to do homage to, to swear allegiance flingeln, to ring for (some one) zur Last legen, to charge against leuchten, to light (some one) Gegenvorftellungen machen, to remonstrate with melben, to announce to mittheilen, to communicate to, to inform nachahmen, to imitate (some one) nachbrängen, to throng after nacheifern, to ennulate

entgegenschauen, to gaze against *entgegenstehen irr., to stand against

*namiolgen, to succeed (some one), to follow after nachgeben irr., to yield, to submit to *nachgehen irr., to go, walk after *nachjagen, to hunt after *nachlaufen irr. }to run after *nachfeten namiagen, to say of (some one) namiehen irr., to look after namice irr., to look after "nadjitellen, to lay snares for ith name in the name is to lay snares for ith name is to be of use to passen, to fit, suit (some one) rathen irr., to advise rusen irr., to call lagen, to tell fagen, to tell forcher to hurt schaden, to hurt ideinen irr., to seem to idmeidein, to flatter iteuern, 2 to check (ver)trauen,3 to trust mißtrauen, to mistrust migratien, to inistrust trogen, to defy "uniterliegen irr., to succumb to lich unterwerfen irr., to submit to verbieten irr., to forbid, prohibit verplicifien, to oblige to (some one) verprechen irr., to pardon

"vorangehen irr., to lead the way. to precede vorbehalten irr., to reserve for vorbengen, to obviate, prevent vorleien irr., to read to *vortommen irr., to occur to, to seem to *vorstehen irr., to administer, tosurvey mehren, to check *widerfahren irr., to happen to fich widersen, to resist, to oppose ing morregen, to resist, to oppose miber[preden irr., to contradict *miber[tehen irr., to resist willfahren irr., to comply with minten, to wink, beckon wohlwollen irr., to favour, to wish well (ge) ziemen, to suit, to be suitable to, to become aufören, to hearken, to give ear to *aufommen irr., to fall to one's share-aufädein, to smile to aumiden, to nod at, to (some one) aurnien irr., to call to guiggen, to promise guiggen irr., to look on gutrinten irr., to drink to (some one) auvortommen irr., to be beforehand with (some one) auminten, to wink at (some one)

(For examples see page 276.)

Notes. 1.—Rufen in common governs the Accusative.

2.—Steuern in the sense of "to direct, to steer," governs the Accusative.

3.—Trauen in the sense of "to be married by some one" governs the Accusative.

4.—Gelingen and mißlingen if speaking of a person are used as follows:—Es gelingt mir, es mißlingt mir, I succeed, I fail;—bie Sache gelingt mir, bie Sache mißlingt mir, I succeed in the matter, I fail in the matter.—However if the subject is a thing in Englisn, gelingen and mißlingen are used as in English; as,—bas Bild if gelingen (mißlingen), the picture has succeeded (failed). Glüden and mißglüden are sometimes used instead of gelingen and miglingen, and follow the same rules.

b.) All verbs having two objects or which can have two objects, require the direct object (i.e. the object suffering the action) in the Accusative, and the indirect object (generally a person) in the Dative.

(For examples see page 280.)

c.) The following impersonal verbs require the Dative:

es büntt mir, methinks es efelt mir, I am disgusted es ahnt mir, my heart misgives

es gefällt (irr.) mir, I am pleased es beliebt mir, I like es fehlt mir, I miss es grant mir, I am afraid of es ichwindelt mir, I am giddy

es träumt mir, I dream es ist mir Angst, I am in sear

es if mir behaglith, I am comfortable es gebricht (irr.) mir an I am want-es mangelt mir I am ing

es liegt mir baran, it is important for me

(See also page 166.)

V. The Accusative.

117. A noun must be in the Accusative:

a.) If denoting definite time and it is not the subject, or governed by a verb requiring the nominative; as,

3ch habe ben ganzen Tag gearbeitet. I worked the whole day. Kommen Sie ben nächsten Morgen zu mit. Come to my house the next morning. Ich sehe ihn jeden Samstag. I see him every Saurslay.

Note.—Nouns denoting indefinite time and being in the Genitive see page 313.

 b.) If denoting measure, weight, value, if with an adjective or with the verbs tosten, wiegen (irr.), messen (irr.), *wachsen (irr.), and similar ones; as,

Diese Mauer ist einen Fuß breit. This wall is a foot broad. Dieser hut ist einen Thaler billiger als jener. This hat is one dollar cheaper than that one. Das beste hammelseich losset einen Schilling bas Psiud. The best mutton costs one shilling a pound. Der Sad wiegt einen Centner. The sack weighs a hundred weight.

118. a.) Adjectives formed from participles of transitive verbs require their complement in the Accusative; as,

Ein mich besuchenber Freund. A friend visiting me.

b.) The Accusative is sometimes used with the adjectives mentioned on page 313, No. 112 (note 1).

119. Verbs governing the Accusative.

a.) All transitive verbs require their object in the Accusative (i.e. all those verbs not requiring another case or a preposition).

(For examples see page 280.)

b.) After verbs, requiring two objects both of which denoting the same person or thing, these objects must be in the Accusative; as,

Man nannte ihn ben alten Jäger. They called him the old hunter.

Er ical trainen Bruber einen Narren. He stigmatised my brother

Such verbs are: heißen (irr.), nennen (irr.), schelten (irr.), schimpfen, taufen.

Note.—After some verbs the two accusatives are connected by the conjunction als; as,—3th fenne ihn als einen guten Geschäftsmann. I know him to be a good man of business.

c.) The verbs fragen and lehren if having two objects require them in the Accusative; as,

Er fragte mich Mes. He asked me everything. Ich lehrte ihn die beutiche Sprache. I taught him the German language.

d.) Intransitive verbs, requiring in ordinary no object, are sometimes followed by an Accusative, which signifies in a noun form what the verb signifies in a verb form; as,

Er schlaft ben Schlaf bes Verechten. He sleeps the sleep of the just. Er spielt ein gefährliches Spiel. He plays a dangerous play.

120. Verbs governing the Accusative in German, and a preposition in English.

abhalen, to call for anbellen, to bark at annalen irr, to fall (run) foul of angaffen, to gape at antideln, to smile at (some one) annehmen irr, to accept of anddreien irr, to hoot at aniehen irr, to because there is an iehen irr, to sowl at aniehen irr, to spit at, upon antiaunen, to gaze on, upon antiaunen, to gaze at aniiteren irr, to proceed on anajiden, to hiss at bereuen, to repent of befteigen irr, to mount on, upon betragen irr, to amount to billicen, to approve of

errathen irr., (vermuthen), to guess at 311 Abend essen irr., to sup on 31 Mittag essen irr., to dine on frussisten, to detract from hoten lassen, to detract from boten lassen irr. to send for sich 311 Auste machen, to avail one's self of mississen to disapprove of somen, to bask in (the sun) Arten, etc., spielen, to play at eards, etc. suchen, to look for subsent of the selficial from the support of the selficial from the selficial

augeben irr., to allow of

Examples.—Der hund belite mich an. The dog barked at me. Wen suchen Sie? Whom are you looking for?

121. Prepositions governing the Accusative. (See page 181.)

Remarks on some Prepositions.

ABOUT.

122. About is usually rendered über; as,

3ch will mit Ihnen über bie Sache sprechen. I will speak to you about the matter.

123. It is rendered um if meaning round; as, Der Bind bließ uns um ben Ropf. The wind blew about our heads.

124. It is translated mit if meaning with; as, haben Sie Cigarren bei sich? Have you any cigars with you?

125. About meaning near to, in time, quantity, etc. or nearly,

is rendered by the adverb ungefähr; as,

Es ist ungefähr 8 Uhr. It is about, 8 o'clock. Wann werben Sie ungefähr hier jein? When about will you be here? Ich have about 6 marks with me. Ich be- gegnete ihm ungefähr an berjelben Stelle. I met him about the same place. Das ist es ungefähr, was er mir sagte. That is about all he told me.

By.

126. By is rendered nach if standing with a noun denoting time, measure, quantity or weight; as,

Wir werben nach der Stunde bezahlt. We are paid by the hour. Die Bohnen werben nach dem Gewicht verlauft. The beans are sold by the weight.

127. By after a comparative is rendered um which with its noun precedes the comparative in German; as,

> Er ift um Bieles reicher als ich. He is richer by far than I am. Ihr but ist um 2 Mart theurer als meiner. Your hat is dearer by 2 marks than mine.

128. Note the following expressions:

by land, zu Land by water, zu Wasser by day, bei Tag by night, bei Macht

one by one, Einer nach bem Anbern by degrees, nach und nach (ftujenmeise)

by 8 o'clock, gegen 8 Uhr

What is the time by your watch? Wie viel Uhr haben Sie (Wie viel Uhr ift es nach Ihrer Uhr)? A carpet six metres by five. Ein Teppich sechs Meter lang und fünf Deter breit.

IN.

129. Note the following expressions:

in the street, auf ber Strafe in the university, auf ber Universität in the island, auf ber Apfel in the world, auf ber Welt in this page, auf biefer Seite in his hat (outside), auf seinem Hute in this manner, auf biefe Weife in your place, an Ihrer Stelle in my opinion, nach meiner Ansicht (Meinung) in love, aus Liebe

in love with, perliebt in (Acc.) in justice to, aus Berechtigfeit gegen in this weather, bei biesem Wetter in a heavy rain, bei einem ftarken Regen, etc. in the day time, bei Tage in print, gebrudt in silence, mit Schweigen (ichwei-

gend) in itself, themselves, an fich black in white, fcwarz auf weiß

130. Verbs and Prepositions.

*Abhangen (irr.) bon, to depend on fich abharmen über (A.) um, to pine at, after, for abhärten gegen, to inure to

abhauen (irr.) an, (D.) to cut up by Rechning ablegen bon, to account for abnehmen (irr.) an (D.), to decrease in abrichten zu, to train to *abreisen nach, to depart, set out for abzielen auf (A.), to tend to achten auf(") (A.), to attend, to pay attention to

abreffiren an (A.), to address, direct to anbrängen gegen, to press on anjangen (irr.) an (D.) (mit), to com-mence, begin from (with)

anhalten (irr.) bei, to stop at anheiten an (A.), to affix to anflagen bei, to accuse before antlagen wegen, to impeach for fich antlammern an (A.), to cling to antnupfen an, to annex to anloden zu, to allure to anreigen gu, to incite to anichwellen zu, to swell to anipielen auf (A.), to allude to aniporuen zu, to spur to Bermuthungen anstellen über (A.), to

form conjectures of antreiben au, to impel to

antworten auf (A.), to answer (s.p.280) anwenden zu. to employ upon, on sich ärgern über (A.), to be vexed at aufsahren (irr.) bei, to start at auffordern zu, to summon to (something)

aufheben (irr.) gegen, to uplift at fich aufmachen nach, to set forward

aufregen zu, to rouse to aufftacheln zu, to instigate to *auftauchen aus, to emerge from aufwenden für, to spend in aufwiegeln zu, to stir to ausbreiten über (A.), to spread upon,

ausbehnen auf (A.), to extend to ausgeben (irr.) für (bermenben auf), to expend on

ausgießen (irr.) aus, to pour from ausgießen (irr.) über (A.), to pour on ausgraben (irr.) aus, to dig from ausrüften zu, to fit for

ausschelten (irr.) wegen, to upbraid ansichlagen (irr.) nach, to kick at (of

animals) ausiehen (irr.) nach, to show of ausiprechen (irr.) über (A.), to pro-

nounce on

ausstreden nach, to stretch to austauschen gegen, to (ex)change for austheilen an (A.), to distribute to fich balgen um, to grapple for beben vor (D.), to quiver, shiver beben

with

bedeuten für, to signify to befähigen zu, to qualify for befestigen an (D.), to fasten to, against befragen über (A.), to question on,

upon beglüdwünschen zu, to compliment on *beharren bei, to persevere in,

stand to beitragen (irr.) zu, to contribute to, towards

fich beklagen bei-über (A.), to complain to-of

bekleiden mit, to invest in

sich bekümmern um, to concern one's self about

belästigen (qualen) wegen (mit), to trouble about

fich belaufen (irr.) auf (A.) (betragen irr. A.), to amount to

sich belustigen mit, to divert in bemerken über (A.), to remark on, upon

fich bemühen um, to endeavour after benennen (irr.) nach, to name from sich berrathen (irr.) über (A.), to consult, confer on

berathichlagen über (A.), to deliberate

berechtigen zu, to entitle to *berften (irr.) vor, to burst with

(anger, etc.) fich berufen (irr.) auf (A.), to appeal to beschirmen vor, to screen, shield from beschränten auf (A.), to confine, limit to beschützen vor (D.), to protect from beschwäßen um, to talk out of beschwören bei, to conjure by

fich besinnen (irr.) auf (A.), to bethink one's self of

*bestehen (irr.) auf (D.), to persist in, to insist on

*bestehen (irr.) aus, to consist in, of bestellen bei, to bespeak of bestimmen über (A.), to determine

about bestimmen zu, to design, destine for beten um, to pray for (something)

bethören um, to fool out of fich betrüben über (A.), to grieve at, for betrügen (irr.) um, to cheat of, out of

betteln um, to beg for (alms) fich beugen vor (D.), to bend to bewahren vor (D.), to guard, preserve from

sich bewerben (irr.) (nachsuchen) um, to

apply, sue for

bewundern wegen, to admire for fich beziehen (irr.) auf (A.), to refer. relate to

binden (irr.) an (A.), to tie to, against bilben aus, to form, frame of, from

bilben nach, to mould from bitten um, to ask, beg for (some-

thing) ftehen *bleiben (irr.) bei, to stop at

briden auf (A.), to look on brauden zu, to want for brennen (irr.) vor (D.), to burn with

(desire, etc.) bringen (irr.) über (A.), to bring upon bringen (irr.) um, to deprive of

brüllen nach, to roar for

sich büden vor (D.), to stoop to beden gegen, to cover from

beflamiren über (A.), to declaim on benten(*) (irr.) an (A.), to think of fich brehen um, to hinge, turn, on,

bruden an (A.) (gegen), to press to, against

buften nach, to redolent of burften nach, to thirst for

sich einbrängen bei, to intrude on.

einführen bei, to introduce to (some one's house)

*eingehen (irr.) auf (A.), to enter on sich einigen über (A.), to agree upon einladen (irr.) zu, to invite, ask to fich einlassen (irr.) in (A.), to engage upon

sich einmengen in (A.), to inter-

meddle with sich einschiffen nach, to embark for

(of persons) einschreiben (irr.) auf (A.), to in-

scribe on

einwenden gegen, to object to einwilligen in (A.), to consent, agree to Edel empfinden (irr.) vor (D.), to sicken at

*emporsteigen (irr.) zu, to ascend to *entstiehen (irr.) vor (D.), to flee from entlassen (irr.) aus, to discharge from entinehmen (irr.) auß, to gather from fid entideiben (irr.) für, to fix upon entideiben (irr.) iber (A.), to determine, decide on, upon

sich entschließen (irr.) zu, to resolve upon, on

fich entichulbigen bei, to apologize to. to make excuse to

entschulbigen wegen, to excuse for *entspringen (irr.) aus, to issue, escape from

*entstehen (irr.) aus, to arise from entzüden burch, to delight with sich erbarmen über (A.), to mercy upon

(*) This verb occurs sometimes with the Genitive, especially in poetry. 11 Besitz ergreifen (irr.) von, to seize on, upon

erheben (irr.) von, to levy on rhellen (*hervorgehen irr.) aus. to appear by, from

kinnern an (A.), to remind of sich erinnern an (A.) or Gen., to re-

collect, remember erfennen (irr.) an (D.), to know by *erflingen (irr.) bon, to ring with sich erkundigen bei, to inquire of

sich erkundigen nach, to inquire for, about

ermahnen zu, to exhort to ernennen (irr.) zum m. (zur f.), to appoint (a person) a ...

errathen (irr.) aus, to guess by *erröthen über (A.)-vor (D.)-wegen, to blush at-with-for

*erschassen von, to resound with *erschreden (irr.) bei, to be terrified.

frightened at verstaunen über (A.), to be astonished at

"erwachen aus, to awake from rerwachsen (irr.) aus, to accrue from mit Namen erwähnen, to mention

by name erweden aus, to awaken from *fallen (irr.) an (A.), to fall to *fallen (irr.) auf (A.), to fall (down)

feilschen um, to bargain for fesseln an (A.), to fetter to festhalten (irr.) an (D.), to stick to feuern auf (A.), to fire at Reranügen finden (irr.) an (D.). delight in

fischen nach, to fish for flehen um, to crave for *folgen auf (A.), to succeed to *folgen aus, to ensue, follow from folgern aus, to infer from forigen nach, to search, inquire for fragen nach, to ask about, for (a

person) um Rath fragen wegen, to consult

about freijpreden (irr.) von, to absolve from,

acquit of fressen (irr.) (nagen) an (D.), to prey on fich freuen über (A.), to rejoice at, for frohloden über (A.), to exult at fich fügen (fich schiden) in (A.), to ac-

commodate one's self to führen zu, to conduce to fich fürchten vor (D.), to be afraid of

unter Cegeln *gehen (irr.) nach, to set sail for

gehören zu, to belong to (s. p. 276) gewinnen (irr.) an (D.), to gain in gewöhnen an (A.), to accustom to glauben an (A.), to believe in glühen vor (D.), to glow with (joy, etc.) graben (irr.) nach, to dig for fich grämen über (A.), to repine at

gratuliren zu, to congratulate on graviren (eingraben irr.) in (A.), to engrave on

greifen (irr.) nach, to reach, grasp, snatch at

grenzen an (A.), to adjoin to, to border on

grübeln über (A.), to ponder on, upon gründen auf (A.), to found upon, on guden nad, to peep at Mangel haben an (D.), to want in

bie Oberhand haben über (A.), prevail against

Theil haben an (D.), to share, participate of Ueberfluß haben an (D.) to abound

with, in in Berbacht haben wegen, to suspect of halten (irr.) an (D.), to hold to halten (irr.) für, (s. p. 280) handeln mit, to deal, trade in hängen (trans.) an (A.), to hang on,

upon hangen (intr. irr.) an (D.), to hang on, upon

haschen nach, to catch, scramble at hassen wegen, to hate for heften an (A), to fix to heimsuchen an (D.), to visit on helfen (irr.) bei, to aid in herablächeln auf (A.), to smile upon fich herablassen (irr.) zu, to condes-

cend to herausfordern zu, to provoke to herauswideln aus, to extricate from herausziehen (irr.) aus, to extract

from *hereinbrechen (irr.) über (A.),

burst on *herfallen (irr.) über (A.), to fly at, to fall on, to attack

herrschen über (A.), to reign over *herumgehen (irr.) um, to walk round *hervorbrechen (irr.) aus, to break

from *hervorgehen (irr.) aus, to result from *hervorichießen (irr.) aus, to dart from *hervorstrudeln aus, to gush from

heulen (ichreien irr.) hinter (D.) ... her, to hoot after *hinabsteigen (irr.) zu, to descend to hinarbeiten auf (A.), to work towards

*hinaufsteigen (irr.) zu, to mount to hindern an (D.), to hinder from hindeuten auf (A.), to hint at, about hindrangen nach, to press towards *hinfieden an (D.), to languish under

hinzufügen zu, to add to hoffen auf (A.), to hope for, in horchen auf (A.), to hearken to, to listen after

hören auf (A.), to listen to hören über (A.), to hear about

hungern nach, to hunger for *hupfen bor (D.), to bound, jump

with (joy, etc.)

fich haten vor (D.), to beware of jagen nach, to hunt for jaudzen über (A.), to exult in famplen um, to combat, struggle for faufen zu, to buy at (a price) fetten an (A.), to chain to *feuchen hinter (D.) ... her, to pant

atter feuden bor (D.), to gasp with flagen gegen, to lament to flagen fiber (A.), to complain of fleben an (D.), to cleave to fleben an (A.), to paste to flingeln nach, to ring for (something) flopien an (A.), to knock at *fnicen bor, to kneel to to the following the following

finispien an (A.), to tie to finuren über (A.), to snarl at fochen vor (D.), to boil with (rage,

"fommen (irr.) über (A.), to come upon, on

"fommen (irr.) wegen, to call for *fommen (irr.) zu, to call on (some

(anrufen irr., to call on (with the voice)

fosten bon, to taste of

fich kümmern um (fragen nach), to care about, for

lächeln über (A.), to smile at (some-

lächeln vor (D.), to smile with (delight etc.)

lachen(*) über (A.), to laugh at finten lassen (irr.) auf (A.), to sink

lauern auf (A.), to watch for lauschen auf (A.), to listen for leben von, to live on, by lechzen nach, to pant for bei Geite legen, to lay aside (sid) lehnen an (A.), to lean against leiben an (D.), to labour under, to suffer from

leimen an (A.), to glue to lieben (gern haben, etc.) wegen, to like for

lieben um ... willen (wegen), to love for vor Anter *liegen irr., to ride at

anchor loben wegen, to praise for *losbrechen (irr.) gegen, to burst upon "losgehen (irr.) auf (A.), to make at loshaden auf (A.), to peck at losstürzen (sich stürzen) auf (A.), to

rush against sich machen an (A.), to set about machen aus, to make of machen zum m. (zur f.), (s. p. 280) befannt machen mit, to acquaint of Jago machen auf (A.), to give chase to Reuerungen machen in (D.), to innovate on

unfähig machen zu, to disqualify for fid) berbient maden um, to make one's self deserved of

vertraut machen mit, to familiarize to

Borwürfe machen wegen (vorwerfen irr. A.), to reproach with sich mengen in (A.), to meddle with messen (irr.) nach, to measure by sich mischen unter (A.), to mingle with mitwirfen bei, to co-operate in

murren über (A.), to murmur, grumble at

nachbenten (irr.) über (A.), to meditate on, upon

nachlassen (irr.) an (D.), to abate in nachsinnen (irr.) über (A.), to muse upon, on

nachsuchen um, to sue for nageln an (A.), to nail to nagen un, to feed upon nehmen (irr.) bei, to take at nehmen (irr.) auf (A.), to take on, upon sich in Acht nehmen (irr.) vor. to be-

ware of Anstand nehmen (irr.) bei, to demur at Anstoß nehmen (irr.) an (D.), to be

offended at

Theil nehmen (irr.) an (D.), to par-take in, of, to join in (fid) neigen auf (A.), to bend down on (fid) neigen zu, to incline to, towards

sich niederlassen (irr.) als (conj.), to set up for fich niedersehen (irr.) zu, to sit down to

nieten an (A.), to rivet to fid öffnen nach, to open to (a place).

on, upon pfuschen in, to dabble with, in plaubern über (A.), to chat on prehlen mit, to boast, brag of präsidiren bei, to preside at prophezeien über (A.), to prophecy

upon rächen an (D.), to revenge, avenge on, upon

rauchen von, to reek with rechnen auf (A.), to count, reckon upon rediten mit, to reply against rechtfertigen mit, to account from reden über (A.), to discourse upon reiben (irr.) an (D.), to rub against reichen bis an (A.), to reach to reisen nach, to quit, leave for *reisen über (A.), to travel by (a

place) richten auf (A.) (nach), to direct, point at sich richten nach, to conform to

riechen (irr.) nach, to smell of ringen (irr.) um, to wrestle for rufen (irr.) nach, to call for (something)

zu Gülfe rufen irr., to call in aid rühmen als (conj.), to renown for

bie Nase rümpfen über (A.), to sneer at bie Stirne rungeln über (A.) to frown

fagen über (A.), to say upon, about fagen (erzählen) von, to tell about fagen zu, to say to

ichaffen (irr). aus, to create of fich schämen über (A.) or Gen., to be

ashamed of, at schätzen auf (A.), to value, estimate at ichagen wegen, to value on ichaubern vor (D.), to shudder of *scheiben (irr.) von, to part with

icheinen (irr.) auf (A.) (bescheinen irr. A.), to shine on ichelten (irr.) über (A.), to scold at ichelten (irr.) wegen, to scold, up-

braid for

ichiden (fenben irr.) an(*) (A.)-nach, to send (something someone)-(to a place)-(someone to a person)

in einem Auftrag ichiden (fenben irr.),

to send on an errand fcielen nach, to leer at

ichießen (irr.) auf (A.), nach, to shoot at *ichießen hinter (D.) ... her, to dart after

ichlagen (irr.) an (A.).—auf (A.) — nach -wegen, to strike against,-on-

at-about

schließen (irr.) aus, to conclude from schleubern nach, to fling, hurl at immachten nach, to languish for schmäben auf (A.), to inveigh against schmeden nach, to taste, savour of fich schmiegen por (D.), to crouch to schnappen nach, to snap at, to gasp for idrauben an (A.), to screw to idreiben (irr.) an(*) (A.)—nad, to write (to a person)—(to a place) idreiben (irr.) über (A.)—um, to write

(on a subject)-(for something) fchreien (irr.) nach, to bawl, cry for

*ichreiten (irr.) zu, to proceed upon schütteln gegen, to shake at schütten auf (A.), to empty on schüten vor (D.), to shelter from, pro-

tect against ichwärmen bon, to swarm with

*feaeln nach, to sail for sehen (irr.) nach, to see to, about sich sehnen nach, to long for migbergnügt *fein über (A.), to repine at

ftolz *fein auf (A.), to pride in fich segen auf (A.), to settle on (ausfegen für, to settle something on) an die Stelle fegen von, to substitute for

feufzen nach (um), to sigh for fichern bor (D.), to secure from, against finnen (irr.) auf (A.), to think upon spielen um, to play for (something) spotten über(t) (A.), to mock, jeer at sprechen (irr.) mit, to speak, talk to sprechen (irr.) über (A.), to talk, speak upon, about

steden (irr.) nach, to stab at in Brand steden, to set on fire *sterben (irr.) an (D.) to die of *sterben (irr.) burch, to die by stinken nach, to stink of *stoßen (irr.) an (A.), to push against stoßen (irr.) nach, to butt at

streben nach, to strive for, aspire to streiten (irr.) (zanken) um (wegen), to

dispute, quarrel for

sich stützen auf (A.), to lean upon, on fuchen nach, to seek for tabeln wegen, to blame, censure for

taugen au, to be fit for telegraphiren an(*) (A.)—nach, to telegraph (to someone)-(to a place)

Eingriffe thun (irr.) in (A.), to encroach upon trachten nach, to strive for, aspire to

Bebenken tragen (irr.) bei, to scruple

trauern um (betrauern A.), to mourn for träumen von, to dream about

treffen (irr.) auf (A.), to hit upon trinfen (irr.) aus, to drink from triumphiren über (A.), to triumph in.

fich üben iu (D.), to practise

*übereinkommen (irr.) über übereinstimmen in, to agree about überreben zu, to persuade to übersehen aus, to translate from übertreffen an (D.), in (D.), to sur-

pass in umberreichen in (D.), to hand about *umberstreisen in (D.), to stroll about umberitrenen in (D.), to strew about *umfommen (irr.) burth, to perish of sich unterhalten (irr.) über (A.), to converse about

urtheilen nach-über (A.), to judge from, by-of

verbergen (irr.) vor (D.), to conceal

fich verbeugen vor (D.), to bow to perbinden (irr.) mit, to join, link to fich verbreiten über (A.), to enlarge upon

perbrennen (irr.) zu, to burn to verbunden mit, to ally to berbrängen aus, to dispossess of vereinigen mit, to unite to fich vereinigen mit, to join (someone) auf (A.), to bererben entail on.

upon

^(*) It may also take the object in the Dative, instead of with the preposition an. (†) This verb occurs sometimes in the Genitive, especially in poetry.

verfahren (irr.) nach, to act by verfügen über (A.), to dispose of bergelten (irr.) an (D.), to retaliate on vergleichen (irr.) mit, to compare to verhaften wegen, to arrest for verhandeln über (A.), to debate upon verhängen über (A.), to inflict upon verheirathen mit, to marry to verhelfen (irr.) zu, to help to verhindern an (D.), to hinder, prevent

from verhüllen gegen (vor D.), to shroud

from

perfaufen um, to sell at (a price) vertleinern zu, to diminish to verturzen um, to abridge from verladen (irr.) nach, to ship (goods)

verlangen nach, to long, sicken for sich verlassen (irr.) auf (A.), to rely,

depend on verleiten, veranlassen (reg.) zu, to induce to

fid berlieben in (A.), to fall in love

with

perlieren (irr.) an (D.)-an (A.), to lose on, in-to

(fich) verloben, versprechen (irr.) mit, to betroth, engage to perloden zu, to entice to permählen mit, to wed to vermögen (irr.) über (A.), to prevail on verrathen (irr.) an (A.), to betray to verschwenden an (A.), to lavish on,

upon *berichwinden (irr.) bor (D.) aus, to

vanish from

persöhnen mit, to reconcile to persteden por (D.), to hide from perstehen (irr.) aus, to understand by vertagen auf (A.), to adjourn to, for vertauschen gegen, to exchange for vertheibigen gegen, to defend from vertrauen auf (A.), to trust in, to verurtheilen zu, to sentence to permanbeln aus, to change from verwandeln in (A.), to alter, change in *bermeilen bei, to dwell, harp upon,

verwenden auf (A.), to spend upon perzichten auf (A.), to dispense with,

to renounce perameifeln an (D.), to despair of (sid) porbereiten zu, to prepare for porherjagen aus, to presage from *vorriden gegen, to advance (to go forward) upon

poridiegen (irr.) auf (A.), to advance

(money) upon

vorsprechen (irr.) bei, to call on, to visit

fid) wagen auf (A.), to venture on warnen por (D.), to warn of, against warten(*) auf (A.), to wait, stay for wegwerfen (irr.) an (A.), to throw

away on wehtlagen um, to lament for weinen über (A.)-um, to weep at-

treinen por (D.), to weep with (joy.

etc.) fid menden an (A.), to apply to

(fid) wenden gegen, to turn (round)

*werben (irr.) ans, to become of, from fett *werben (irr.) von, to fatten on werfen (irr.) nach, to cast, throw at werfen (irr.) zu, to cast to

wetten auf (A.), to bet on wiederhallen von, to echo with wirfen auf (A.), to act, operate on,

upon

sich wundern über (A.), to admire. wonder at Glüd wünschen zu, to congratulate.

felicitate on, upon zählen auf (A.), to count on zählen bis (auf A.), to count to zeigen auf (A.) - nach, to point at

-to zerhauen (irr.) in (A.), to cut, chop to

zerreißen (irr.) in (A.), to rend, tear zerschmettern in (A.), to dash to ziehen (irr.) auf (A.), to draw on

gielen auf (A.), to aim, level at gittern bei-bor (D.), to tremble at -with

zögern bei, to hesitate at auden bor (D.), to palpitate with zulassen (irr.) zu, to admit to zurechtweisen (irr.) wegen, to prove for

*zurückfehren zu, to revert to *zurückommen (irr.) auf (A.), to recur to

*zurüchweichen (irr.) vor (D.), to shrink at

*zusammenschrumpfen zu, to shrink

zusammensegen aus, to compose of zuschließen (irr.) hinter (D.), to close, shut upon, on

autreiben (irr.) auf (A.), to drive at zweiseln an (D.), to doubt of, about awingen (irr.) zu, to force to gurnen(†) über (A.), auf (A.), to be angry at

^(*) This verb occurs sometimes with the Genitive, especially in poetry.

^(†) This verb may also take the object in the Dative, instead of with a preposition.

132. Adjectives with Prepositions.

abhangig von, dependent on, upon achtlos auf (A.), regardless, thoughtless of

achtiam auf (A.), heedful, regard-

ful of angestedt von, disgusted at, with angestedt von, infected with angitlich wegen, anxious about anitogend an (A.), contigous to anslößig für, offensive to anwendbar auf (A.), appliable to ärgerlich über (A.), vexed at argwöhnisch wegen, suspicious of arm an (D.), poor of aufgeblasen von, elated with aufgebracht über (A.), irritated, exas-

perated at aufgeregt burd, excited by aufmertiam auf (A.), attentive to außer sich über (A.), exasperated

with ausgebörrt burch, parched with ausgehungert burch, famished with bange por (D.), fearful, afraid of bankerott an (D.), bankrupt in, of barmherzig gegen, merciful to bedrängt durch, pressed with befriedigend für, satisfactory to befriedigt von, satisfied with begierig nach, eager for, on betannt mit, conversant about, ac quainted with

befannt unter (D.), known by befannt wegen (burch), noticed for bekummert über (A.), afflicted at befümmert um, concerned about beleidigt burth, affronted at, with beluftigt burch, amused at bemerfenswerth wegen, remarkable

for berauscht von, intoxicated with berechnet auf (A.), calculated for bereit zu, ready for berühmt burch, famed, famous for berühmt wegen, celebrated for beidamt über (A.), abashed ashamed of

beidwerlich für, burthensome to beforgt um, afraid, anxious for beforgt wegen, anxious about bestimmt nach, bound for bestürzt über (A.), confounded, per-

plexed at betäubt von, stunned by betheiligt bei, concerned in bethört von, infatuated with betroffen bon, struck with beunruhigt über (A.), vexed with beunruhigt von, troubled at bewegt burch, affected, agitated by bezaubert bon, enchanted with

blag vor (D.), pale with blind auf (D.)—gegen—vor (D.), blind of-to-with blutig von, bloody with

boje auf (A.), cross at boje gegen, evil towards boje wegen, angry about bunt an (D.), varied in bantbar gegen, thankful to bight an (D.), close to big bon, thick with bienlich zu, serviceable to burchbringlich für, pervious to ehrgeizig nach, ambitious of eifersüchtig auf (A.), jealous of eigen in (D.), particular about, on eingebildet auf (A.), conceited about eingenommen für, partial to eingenommen bon, captivated with eitel auf (A.), vain of empfänglich für, sensible to empfindlich über (A.), sensible of entruftet über (A.), indignant at entscheibend in (D.), decisive of entscheibend über (A.), decisive on entzudt über (A.), delighted at entzudt von, delighted with erfahren in (D.), expert at erfreut burch, pleased at ergriffen von, seized, taken with erhaben über (A.), paramount to erheitert burch, cheered with ermübet von, fatigued with erpicht auf (A.), intend upon erichrect burch, frightened at erichreckt über (A.), dismayed at erichrocken über (A.), frightened with

förderlich zu, conducive to frech gegen, insolent to freigebig gegen, liberal, bountiful to freundlich gegen, friendly to froh(*) über (A.), glad of, at fruchtbar an (D.), fertile, productive

erstaunt über (A.), astonished at

erstidt von, suffocated with fähig(*) zu, capable, able of

falich gegen, false to

feucht von, moist with

früher als (conj.), prior to furchtlos vor, fearless of gebieterisch für, imperative on geblenbet von, dazzled with, by geboren zu, born to gedulbig gegen, patient with geeignet zu, proper, qualified for gefühlloß gegen, insensible of, to gefühlvoll für, sensible of, to geizig mit, avaricious of geneigt zu, prone, inclined to genug an (D.), enough of

^(*) It takes sometimes its compliment in the Genitive, instead of with a preposition.

gerecht gegen, just to gereizt burch, provocated by gereizt über (A.), irritated at geringer an (D.), inferior in gerührt über (A.), moved with gerührt von, touched at, with gefättigt von, sated with geintigt but, sacet when geighted in (D.), apt, skilful at geighted au, apt for geignet burch, blest in geinub an (D.), healthy in getaulfut in (D.), disappointed of gewählt in (D.), choice of gewöhnlich bei, usual with gewöhnt an (A.), used to gierig nach, greedy for gleich an (D.), equal in gleichgültig gegen, indifferent to glücklich über (A.), happy at gnäbig gegen, gracious to grau por (D.), grey with grausam gegen, cruel to greifbar für, palpable to grenzend an (A.), adjacent to großmüthig gegen, generous to gut gegen (zu), good to gütig gegen, kind to habgierig nach, covetous of herborragend burch, eminent for höslich gegen, polite, civil to interessant (anziehend) für, inter sting to flein (gering) an (D.), little in fnapp an (D.), scant, short of frant an (D.) - vor (D.), sick in, -with langmüthig gegen, forbearing towards leer an (D.), empty, void of leutselig gegen, affable to liebevoll gegen, affectionate to lüstern nach, eager for, lusting after milb gegen, gentle to milbthätig gegen, charitable to mißtrauisch gegen, diffident, distrustful of mitleibig gegen, compassionate to mörberisch für, murderous to

langmittig gegen, forbearing towards leer an (D.), empty, void of leentieling egen, affable to liebeboll gegen, affable to liebeboll gegen, affectionate to liftern nadh, eager for, lusting after mith gegen, gentle to milbthätig gegen, charitable to milbthätig gegen, charitable to mibraulid gegen, diffident, distrustful of mitheibig gegen, compassionate to mibe bon, weary with nadhfähig in (D.), neglectful of nadhfähig gegen, indulgent to nadhfehilig für, derogatory to nadhfehilig für, derogatory to nach bon, wet with neibijd auf (A.), envious at, of neugierig in (D.), inquisitive about nöthig au, requisite to nothwenbig au, essential to offen für, open to passens für, convenient to passens füt, for tagenb dur (D.), rich in, with reif au (D.), rich in, with reif au (Fir), ripe for toft bor (D.), red with rubig bet, calm at schmipflig für, disgraceful to ichmeralich für, painful to

schüchtern gegen, shy to schüchtern vor (D.), shy of chulbig gegen, guilty to chulblos an (D.), guiltless of entrecht auf (A.), perpendicular to ficher über (A.), sure of ficher vor (D.), secure against, from parlam mit, frugal, saving of später als (conj.), posterior to fibig auf (A.), proud of ftrenge gegen, severe on, strict to ftumm uper (A.), dumb on ftumm tor (D.), dumb with fib fit, sweet to taub auf (D.), deaf in taub gegen, deaf to tobt für, dead to toll vor (D), mad with trairig wegen, sorry for treulos gegen, perfidious to übereinstimmend mit, according to überlegen an (D.), superior in überrascht burch, surprised at überboll bon, replete with übermältigt von, overwhelmed with umwölft bon, clouded with unbekannt mit, ignorant of unbefümmert um, reckless of unbemerkbar für, inperceptible to undurchbringlich für, inpenetrable to unempfindlich gegen, insensible of, to unfähig geworben zu, disabled from unfreundlich gegen, ill-natured to ungebulbig über (A.), impatient at unglüdlich burch, distressed with unruhig wegen, uneasy about unidulbig an (D.), innocent of unsichtbar für, invisible to unterbrochen von, broken with unterwürfig gegen, submissive to unpereinbar mit, abhorrent to unzufrieben über (A.), displeased at verbunden mit, adjunct to verderblich für, ruinous to vergeklich in (D.), forgetful of vergleichbar mit, comparable to perlepend für, injurious to amorous of perliebt love with, in perschwenderisch mit, lavish, profuse verträglich mit, compatible to vertrauensvoll gegen, confident to vertraut mit, familiar to mit, related, akin, converwandt genial to verwirrt burdy-von, distracted at, -with berzehrt durch, worn with

voll von (voller),(*) full of borfidity in (D.), cautious about bortheilhaft für, advantageous, profitable to madham auf (A.), watchful of mählbar zu, eligible to wejentich für, material to

mohithātig für, beneficial to mithend liber (A.), enraged at, with sornig gegen, angry with sornig (böje) liber (A.), angry at sulfammengeleht aus, composed of smeifelhaft in (D.), dubious of

^(*) Boll usually governs the Genitive; as,—boll süben Beines, full of sweet wine; however the Genitive is seldom expressed if boll is directly followed by the noun; as,—eine Tashe boll Esto, a pocket full of money.—Instead of boll also boller is occurring, especially in the scriptures.

How to write a Letter in German with the assistance of Hossfeld's English-German Commercial Correspondent.

For the direction of persons wishing to correspond in German, we give in the following pages specimens of letters, &c., in English, taken from Hossfeld's English-German Commercial Correspondent; these letters, constructed from paragraphs or clauses from this work, have in juxtaposition the exact translation, and, by joining these together, the letter is translated into good German.

The small figures in these specimens indicate the page of the book on which the paragraph or sentence is to be found; the translation of it is opposite.

The words marked in *italics* are to be found in the vocabulary given at the end of the Correspondent, and are variations introduced in the text, thus enabling the writer to subdivide the phrases to an unlimited extent.

Therefore, the pupil who wishes to learn to correspond in German by this method, has

First to select the phrases from the English part of the Correspondent, put them together from the beginning to the end, so that they form the letter he wishes to write;

Second to copy the translation of these phrases.

By doing so he will have the correct translation of his letter into German; and, by using the Correspondent in this way daily for a few months, he will be able to correspond in German without further assistance.

Edinburgh, 5th May, 18... 33

Messrs. Duval & Co., Merchants, Rouen. 89
Gentlemen. 38

It is with deep sorrow that³⁸ we hasten to inform you that⁴¹ your ship, the "Hardy," disabled by a furious gale,¹²¹ stranded yesterday at noon on the rocks of ¹²¹ Ardrossan. Her hull is staved in in several places, and her masts are severely damaged.¹²¹ The work of salvage is actively proceeding,¹²² under the direction of the marine authorities.¹²² Half of the cargo, at least, must be considered as lost,¹²² the remainder will be seriously damaged.¹²³

The crew, worn out with fatigue, 123 were objects of the most assiduous care. 123 To-morrow the authorities of this port will forward to their respective places of registration such of them as

may wish to return thither. 123

We have the honour to remain, yours respectfully, 70
Rt. P. BLACKWALL & MERTENS.

Birmingham, 7th July, 18...33

Messrs. Thompson & Co., Calcutta.35

Gentlemen,38

In consequence of the high recommendations with which my friend Mr. has furnished me in regard to your house, I should be inclined to make some consignments to you, 262 but as I am (sehe aber ...) very little decided as to the kind of transactions to be carried out 262 in your market, 262 I should desire (und würde ich), as a preliminary, to be informed by you upon the following points, viz.:—263

1. To (zu) furnish us with the necessary information²⁶³ with a view to enlightening us as to transactions of this kind in your

country.263

2. What is, in your estimation, the maximum net price, all charges included, at which it would be possible to act here, so as to maintain, under normal conditions, a fair prospect of success in reselling in your market? ²⁶⁴

3. What periods of the year are the most favourable for the

arrival of these goods at your port? 264

Awaiting your reply, I beg you to believe me your devoted servant. 75

J. HARRISON.

Dover, April 4th, 18...33

Mr. Jules Gaudin, Bordeaux.³⁴ Dear Sir.³⁸

In reply to your favour of ⁵³ the 3rd inst., ⁵¹ we beg to inform you that ⁵⁶ the steamer "Wilhelm" is a magnificent boat. ⁹² She has just been careened, and is in excellent condition. ⁹³ Her sails, chains and rigging are entirely new. ⁹³ The vessel has a capacity of 800 tons official measure, but can carry up to 980 tons. ⁹³ It would be impossible to make a better choice ⁹⁷ for the rough voyage in question. ⁹⁷ Our price, which has been calculated with exactness, and from which we cannot deviate, would be £17,650. ²³³

Requesting you to give us an early answer, 76 we remain, with

the most sincere regard,70

A. RUMBOLDT & Co.

London, April 9th, 18...33

Messrs. A. Paterson & Co., Paris. 90

Gentlemen,38

In accordance with the contents of our last⁵¹ we have the pleasure of transmitting you herewith a little order respecting⁴⁷ different articles.

3 dozen cloth brushes

3 ,, bone tooth brushes

2 ,, ivory hair brushes

2 " alarum clocks

2 bronze clocks

2 gilded copper clocks as sample

2 dozen combs, assorted. Tortoise-shell, metallic, indiarubber and horn.

A later advice will inform you as to the destination of the

goods in question, as well as the mode of conveyance.227

Should you deem it necessary to make inquiries respecting us, you could do so of Messrs. D... and S...⁴⁷ of your place,⁴⁷ with whom we have transacted business for upwards of ten years.⁴⁷

Be so good as to make the necessary arrangements for pro-

curing these articles within a reasonable time.22

Hoping that you will favour us with an early reply, 5 we remain, [gentlemen], yours respectfully, 51

DONALD HERGUS & Co.

Calcutta, 30th August, 18...

Mr. J. Harrison, Birmingham.³⁴ Sir.³⁸

In acknowledging the receipt of your favour of the 56 20th of last month, 51 we beg to inform you that 56 we accept without hesitation the proposal which you address to us. 267 Subject to the conditions which you prescribe, the transaction appears to us to present little difficulty, at the same time that it offers considerable advantages. 267 In order that the result may answer our expectations (Damit nun der Erfolg unseren Erwartungen entspreche so) web forward you herewith 169 a detailed list 227 of sundry goods in your department of trade. 236

1.—Needles, sewing and knitting.

2.—Steel pens.

3.—Pencils, pencil holders, penholders.

4.—Pins, hair-pins. 5.—Pocket-books.

6.—Purses; red, scarlet and purple; and

7.—Rings.

As to the net price (Hinsichtlich des Netto-Preises), all charges included, at which it would be possible to act here, 264 web area note in a position to fix any price for these goods, 244 but used to this sort of business, we know what is necessary in order to attain favourable results, 248 and you may be certain that nothing will be neglected in order to second the views of our constituents. 248 The periods of the year which (welche) are the most favourable for the arrival of these goods at our (unserem) port 264 would be (würen) January and February. 351

Placing our services at your disposal,75 we shall feel attered

should you find frequent occasion to make use of them.74

T. THOMPSON & Co.

Barcelona, February 2nd, 18....

Messrs. Elliott Brothers, London.

I remit you with this ten bills upon Messrs. of Liverpool, and Messrs. of Bristol, at three months' date, 150 and request the favour of you to effect the negotiation of them to the best of my interests, 190 crediting me the proceeds and advising me of the result. 190 · Hoping 77 that you will use in this respect the greatest promptitude, 77 believe me to be your most devoted servant, 69 J. Barder.

London, April 25th, 18...38

Messrs. J. Dominguo & Co.,35 Buenos Ayres.

Gentlemen.38

We have to apologise for not having written to you sooner, ⁶⁴ but we were so busy at the time of the departure of the last mail⁶⁴ that it was impossible for us to write to you fully. ⁶⁴

Desirous of meeting your wishes, we have collected information¹⁹⁴ which (welche) we have the pleasure of remitting you.¹⁷¹

The last political changes have met a very indifferent reception here; for a moment it might have been expected that business would be affected thereby, ¹⁹⁸ but this bad feeling fortunately did not last long, ¹⁹⁸ and although the demand has diminished slightly, prices have not given way, ¹⁹⁶ and the firmness of the market has not been disturbed for a moment. ¹⁹⁶

English consols remain very firm at 192 $99\frac{7}{8}$, $100\frac{1}{8}$ for money (gegen baar) and at $100\frac{1}{8}$, $\frac{1}{4}$, for the account (auf Zeit).

Cotton is firm;²⁰⁸ the demand has assumed great dimensions within the last fortnight,²⁰¹ and (*und die*) prices have risen considerably in the last few days.²⁰¹

The supply in coffees greatly exceeding the demand, there has naturally followed a serious decline, which threatens to assume still larger proportions;²⁰⁶ 800 bags Porto Rico coffee have been disposed of at 16s. 3d.²⁰⁹

Prices for sugar have been well sustained hitherto, but they begin to waver. 205

All our works are in full operation.²²¹ Industrial activity does not flag for a moment; it is passing through a period of prosperity.²²¹ If the demand continues to keep thus, manufacturers will soon be overdone with orders, and will run short of means of executing them.²²²

We avail ourselves of this opportunity to place our services at your disposal, and in the hope that you will reserve us a few orders, we present you⁷⁴ our most sincere regards.⁷⁰

MORENO & NEPHEW.

Rouen, August 30th, 18 ...

Messrs. L. Rothe & Co., Berlin. Gentlemen.³⁸

Permit us to introduce to you the bearer of this letter, Mr. R..., of ..., one of the most important manufacturers in ... 46 The principal object of his journey is to revive old connections and form new ones, with a view to extend the sale of his (seiner) articles of manufacture. 181

We therefore venture to request your kind assistance in the furtherance of his object, as we feel persuaded that you will not refuse him your advice, especially in any case of credit to be granted, agreements to be made, etc. 181

With respect to the funds placed at Mr. R.'s disposal, 181 web oeg to open a credit with you in his favour (für ihn) of ..., and request you to forward us his receipts, that we may meet them forthwith. 181

Accept our thanks (und danken wir Ihnen) beforehand for the marks of civility which we are sure you will show him, 180 and believe us to be, a gentlemen, your obedient servants, 71

GEO. FLEURY & Sa

Paris, March 6th, 18 ...

Messrs. J. T. BARKER & Son, London.

Gentlemen,

My object in writing you this is to inform you that, 148 under vesterday's date, 148 I have drawn on you the following drafts:

Frs. 3,000 at 8 days' date, to the order of J. Ferrier. Frs. 2,500 at 10 days' date to the order of A. Martin.

Frs. 5,500 total.148

Which I request you kindly to honour with your acceptance. 150 I shall (werde ich) take care to remit the necessary funds to you before maturity. 150

I shall write you⁸⁰ more at length on this subject,⁸¹ pressed as I am for time by the departure of the mail (da ich durch den Abgang der Post zur Eile gezwungen bin).

Accept, gentlemen, the assurance of my sincere attachment, 69 yours truly, 69

A. LEFAURE.

London, March 20th, 18 ...

Mr. A. LEFAURE, Paris.

Dear Sir.

We are in receipt of your letter of 56 the 6th of March, 57 by which you advise us of having drawn on us163 for the sum of 153 Frs. 5.500.

It is almost superfluous to say that these drafts will meet with due acceptance on our part; 154 pray take care (und bitten) to cover us at the proper time for the amount. 169

Reiterating our offers of service, we tender you our sincerest

and most cordial respects.75

Yours faithfully,69 J. T. BARKER & SON

Leipsic, June 2nd, 18 ...

Mr. ADOLPH HOSSFELD, Stettin.

Sir.

Be so good as to do what is necessary in order to effect a policy of insurance upon our vessel,128 the brig "Gaston," bound for Havannah from Stettin, 128 subject to the ordinary clauses and conditions.¹²⁸ We fix upon the round sum of Marks 41,500 as the amount of insurance, 129

We also beg you to open a policy upon the goods in course of shipment, for our account on her board (mit diesem Schiffe) and of which you will find annexed a complete inventory. 130

The insurance is intended to cover the entire voyage; that is to say, it is to extend to the discharge in this last-mentioned port, 130 and web confide in your uniform attention to carefully protect our interests in treating with the company. 132

Hoping that you will favour us with an immediate reply, 77

web have the honour to remain yours respectfully.70

H. BACKHAUS & Co.

Inventory-130

25 cases (Kisten) buttons, assorted (assortirt); silk, motherof-pearl, wood and metal; brushes and combs.

20 cases muslin, embroidered, checked and printed.

20 cases silk goods.

9 cases stationery, including (enthaltend) printing paper, writing paper, buff paper, packing paper.

London, February 5th, 18 ...

Messrs. Robert, Son & Co., rue des Marais, Paris. 35

Gentlemen,

We have (wir haben) the pleasure of sending you annexed a note comprising three articles, which we shall feel obliged by your purchasing on our account in your market,²²⁷ observing our instructions as to form and dimension.²²⁸

In case there should be no stock of them in the market of the required size, they will have to be ordered at once from the manufactory.²²⁸

Six dozen gentlemen's kid gloves: Nos. 7, 7½, 7½, two dozen each, black, deep black, blue black.

Twelve dozen ladies' kid gloves: Nos. 6, $6\frac{1}{4}$, $6\frac{1}{2}$, long.

Twelve dozen ditto ditto: same Nos., short.

The ladies' kid gloves to be well assorted (müssen gut assortirt sein) in yellow, bright yellow, lime yellow, canarian and straw colour.

Two dozen mittens, netted.

One ,, ,, fine woollen.

Trusting (hoffend) that you will follow our instructions with judgment and promptitude, 230 web offer you, gentlemen, our best regards. 70

THOMPSON BROTHERS.

London, February 20th, 18 ...

Mr. L. Carlito, Manufacturer, Burgos. 90

Dear Sir,38

We regret to have to inform you that ¹² your draft, dated November 6th, 18..., to the order of J. B., has not been taken up by the drawee. ¹⁷⁶

Desirous of protecting the honour of your signature, we have taken upon ourselves to intervene, and have accepted this draft under protest. ¹⁷⁶ Be so good as to favour us with the remittance (den Betrag) without delay. ¹⁶⁸

Not doubting that you will reply with your usual promp-

titude,76 web havea the honour to remain,

Yours respectfully,70

A. PATERSON & Co.

Burgos, February 28th, 18...

Messrs. A. Paterson & Co., London.

Gentlemen,

I (ich) rely on your kindness to excuse the slight delay that has arisen in answering⁶² your favour of the 20th inst., ⁵⁹ respecting my draft, dated (wegen meines Wechsels vom) 6th of November, 18...³³

I forward you herewith, 175 in two cheques upon Mr. Holmes, banker, of your town, the sum of £... 170 with which you will have the goodness to do the needful. 172

I am causing you a great deal of trouble: pray excuse this, and 78 believe me to be your most devoted servant, 69

L. CARLITO.

London, November 10th, 18...

Mr. J. Lyons, Manchester.

Sir.

Your credit balance amounts at present to the sum of ..., representing about one half the amount of your draft of ..., to the order of X. Z., which falls due the 22nd inst. 168

We beg of you to favour us by completing the provision for this in due time. 168

In the hope of receiving favourable news from you, 76 web remain, a yours most respectfully, 71

J. BARKER & SON.

Brussels, November 5th, 18...

Mr. Jules Gaudin, Bordeaux.34

Sir,

We beg to inform you that,⁴¹ the rate of exchange being at present advantageous, we propose availing ourselves of it by realising the balance in our favour which you show in your last,¹⁴⁵ and we propose drawing upon you for £... (Wir beabsichtigen deshalb für £... auf Sie zu ziehen), not doubting that you will accept our drafts as you have done in forms. ses.¹⁴⁶

We have the honour to assure you of our high esteem.70

LÉON VALIN & DUMAS.

Brussels, February 2nd, 18 ...

Messrs. Roger & Son, Marseille.35

Dear Sirs,38

The sole object of this letter is to inform you that³⁸ in compliance with the desire expressed in your favour of the³⁹ 22nd of January, we⁵ have^a done our utmost, but without success, to overcome the objections raised upon²⁵⁴ the periods of delivery and of payment which you propose, and which are deemed inadmissible.²⁵⁴

In the actual condition of the market your prices will not be practicable (ausführbar); ²⁵⁴ a term of six months is excessive, and altogether beyond the established usage in transactions of this sort. ²⁵²

It will accordingly be necessary for you to modify your first conditions in this sense. $^{254}\,$

If you are therefore (deshalb) decidedly unable to admit any modification of the prices indicated, everything leads us to the conclusion that the transaction will not be practicable.²⁵³

We await your reply with impatience, 77 and remain, with the most sincere regard, 70

R. LESLIE & Co.

Paris, March 4th, 18...

Messrs. Thompson Brothers, London.35

Gentlemen,

According to instructions contained in your favour of ⁵² Feb. 5th, ³³ and the orders which accompanied it, ²³⁰ we⁵ have^a sought in vain the warehouses and stores for the articles in question. ²⁵⁵ We have therefore been obliged to order them expressly from Lyons (in Lyon), ²⁵⁶ and this is the reason of the short delay which has occurred in our reply. ⁶²

We fear that, notwithstanding our sincere wish and most active exertions, 254 it will necessitate (dass es verursachen

wird) a delay of a month.255

You will receive very shortly from us the most ample information (Auskunft) on this subject.⁸¹

Faithfully yours,

ROBERT, SON & Co.

Berlin, August 29th, 18...

Messrs. Blunt & Sons, Bristol. Gentlemen,

It is of importance to us to be informed as to the position and responsibility of the house of Mr. J. B..., of your place. 192 We have been informed that it (das Haus) has been severely tried by recent financial disasters, and that it is at present seriously embarrassed. 193

Your opinion on this subject would be of great value to us, ¹⁹³ and we^b beg^a you to favour us with it in perfect frankness, ¹⁹³ assuring you that your communication will be used with the utmost discretion. ¹⁹³

Trusting that you will reply to us with your usual promptitude, 77 web have the honour to remain,

Yours respectfully,70

KLEIN & Co.

Manchester, November 22nd, 18...

Messrs. J. BARKER & Son, London.

Gentlemen,

I remit to you¹⁶⁹ herewith, in two drafts to your order, payable at sight, the sum of ...¹⁶⁹; in order to complete the necessary provision for my (*meinen*) draft to the order of X. Z.¹⁶⁹

I have the honour to be, with great respect, your most

obedient servant,70

J. LYONS.

Manchester, December 25th, 18...

Messrs. Lambert & Co., Paris.

Gentlemen,

Your draft of Frs. 12,280, to the order of R. S., falls due the 5th proximo. 168 Reminding you of this circumstance, 168 (and), according to your promise, we positively expect that you will in due time cover us for the amount of this (diesen) draft. 169

It will be a great pleasure to us to receive an immediate

answer.76

Yours respectfully, 70
J. W. Brown & Co.

Barcelona, November 26th, 18...

Messrs. John Beck & Co., London. 89

Gentlemen.38

We have just received your letter of .53 the 20th inst,55 by which you advise us of having drawn upon us153 for Rvn. 60,000, at 60 days' date, to the order of Pedro Fernandez. 148

It is almost superfluous to say that these drafts will meet with due acceptance on our part, 154 and salute you, gentlemen, most cordially.70

RODRIGUEZ & HERMANO.

Barcelona, January 25th, 18...

Messrs. McPherson & Co., Dublin.35 Gentlemen.38

We beg leave to recommend to your kind office the bearer of this letter, Mr. ..., and hope that his stay in your metropolis will not only be an agreeable one, but will also prove of mutual advantage to our houses.¹⁸⁴ We have fully prepared and equipped our young traveller, whom you will find not inexperienced in business, so that you may consult and decide with him on every point.184 He has samples of goods of every description with him, for which he hopes to find a good market. 184 We shall consider ourselves greatly obliged by any services you may be able to render our young friend, who, we doubt not, will endeavour to show himself worthy of your kindness. 182

We have the honour to assure you of our high esteem, 70 and

remain yours respectfully,70

MAJO & CARLOS.

Paris, December 29th, 18...

Messrs. J. W. Brown & Co., Manchester.

Gentlemen,

Messrs Lambert & Co. instruct us to remit you the balance of their account. 171 In accordance, 171 you will find enclosed three bills, amounting together to the sum of £..., 172 with which (mit welchen) we beg you to do the needful, and to credit their account, 172

Believe us to be faithfully yours,69

DUMAINE, SON & Co.

CIRCULARS.

Liverpool, November 14th, 1883.

Dear Sir (Dear Sirs),

I beg to inform you that I have established a general commission business in this town.

Having ample means and good commercial connections, I am in a position satisfactorily to attend to any orders that may be entrusted to me.

I therefore take the liberty to offer you my services, assuring you beforehand that I shall always devote my best attention to your interest.

I subjoin my signature, of which please to take note.

I remain, Dear Sir,

Your obedient servant,

W. SANTON.

References:

Liverpool: Messrs. ...
London: Messrs. ...

London, November 30th, 1883.

Sir (Gentlemen),

We beg to inform you that we have commenced business here under the firm of

BROWN, JACKSON & LOMAN.

We intend to operate in colonial produce on a large scale especially in coffee and $\cos a$.

We shall have great pleasure in receiving your business pro-

posals or orders to any extent.

In requesting you to enter into business relations with us, we beg you will rely on the conscientious care which we shall always give to any transaction confided to us.

Please to take note of our signatures at foot, and believe us,

Sir (Gentlemen),

Yours respectfully,

BROWN, JACKSON & LOMAN.

Mr. Brown will sign ...

" Jackson " " ..

" LOMAN " " ...

Runcorn, December 31st, 1883

Sir (Gentlemen),

I beg leave to inform you that on the first of January next I shall make over my wholesale business in chemicals and drugs to my nephew, Mr. Longwood, who has been in my employ for the last ten years, and to Mr. Allen.

The means at the disposal of these gentlemen, added to the capital I shall put into the concern, will enable them to carry on

the business satisfactorily.

I thank you for the confidence you have had the kindness to show me, and beg of you to transfer the same to my successors, who will do their utmost to deserve the same.

I am, Sir (Gentlemen),

Yours faithfully,

JAMES SULLIVAN.

(Annexed to the preceding.)

Runcorn, January 1st, 1883.

Sir (Gentlemen),

Referring to the annexed circular, we beg to inform you that we have this day taken over the wholesale chemical and drug business of Mr. James Sullivan.

The style of the new firm will be

LONGWOOD & ALLEN.

We entertain the hope that you will continue to favour us with the same confidence you accorded to our predecessor, and which it shall be our endeavour to prove ourselves worthy of.

We request you to take note of our signatures at foot, and

remain, Sir (Gentlemen),

Your obedient servants,

LONGWOOD & ALLEN.

Our Mr. Longwood will sign ...

, ALLEN

Glasgow, December 15th, 1883.

Sir (Gentlemen),

We beg to inform you that we have taken into partnership Mr. A Harper, who has taken an active part in our business for more than 10 years.

Underneath you will find his signature, of which please take

note

LAWRENCE & Co.

Mr. A. HARPER will sign ...

Southampton, December 31st, 1883.

Sir (Gentlemen),

I have much pleasure in announcing to you that I have taken into partnership Mr. John Saunders, my nephew, who has been brought up in my office, and who has assisted me in the management of my business since 1865.

The style of the new firm will be

PARKHURST & NEPHEW.

I am, your obedient servant,

W. PARKHURST.

Mr. Saunders will sign ...

Leeds, December 31st, 1883.

Sir (Gentlemen),

We beg leave to inform you that we have agreed to amalgamate into one concern the two houses doing business in this town under the firms of F. Warner and W. Blunt.

The new firm, under the style of

WARNER & BLUNT,

will attend to the liquidation of the above-named two firms.

F. WARNER. W. BLUNT.

Portsmouth, December 31st, 1883.

Sir (Gentlemen),

We beg to inform you that the partnership existing between W. Longtree and L. Gardiner, having reached the term originally fixed, it has been decided by the co-partners to dissolve the same from this day forward.

Mr. Longtree undertakes the liquidation; he will sign as

follows: ...264

COMMERCIAL BILLS.

DRAFTS.

No. 583. Rvn. 16,600.

Marseilles, March 6th, 1884.

At presentation, please pay this second of exchange (the first not having been paid), to Mr. Guerrero or order the sum of Rvn. Sixteen thousand six hundred, value received, and place the same to account, with or without further advice, of W. S. Harris & Co.

To Mr. J. SERBANO, Madrid.

(Signature.)

No. 6341. F. 19,070. 75cs.

Manchester, 2nd March, 1884.

Two months after date, pay this bill of exchange to our order, the sum of Nineteen thousand and seventy Francs 75cs., value received, which place to account as per advice.

To Mr. LELONG, Lyons.

(Signature.)

No. 397. £443 10s.

Vera Cruz, 15th January, 1884.

Three months after date, pay this first of exchange (the second and third not paid) to the order of Messrs. Marsala & Co. the sum of Four hundred and forty-three Pounds ten shillings, at the exchange rate as per endorsement, value received, and which place to the account of Messrs. J. Fernandez & Co., as per advice.

To Mr. BANNER, Manchester. Payable in London. (Signature.)

--:0:--

PROMISSORY NOTES.

£460 15s.

Dublin, December 17th, 1883.

Three months after date, I promise to pay to Messrs. Mackey & Co., or order, the sum of Four hundred and sixty Pounds 15 Shillings, value received in goods, with interest computed upon the said sum from this day, at five per cent. per annum.

PATRICK O'CONNOR.

Rvn. 3,500.

Barcelona, November 30th, 1883.

One year from this date we promise to pay to Mr. Rovigo, or order, the sum of Rvn. Three thousand five hundred, value received in cash.

L. Armigo & Co.

-:0:-

RECEIPTS.

Liverpool, December 31st, 1883.

Received of Mr. Moreton the sum of One thousand Pounds Sterling, on account of credit opened in my name by Messrs. Millot Brothers of Rouen, as per their letter of advice of the 27th inst.

HENRY PARKER.

Received of Mr. HAYES the sum of Six hundred and fifty Pounds, advanced upon deposits of title deeds.

Leeds, November 16th, 1883.

SALOMON ROSENBERG.

CONJUGATION

OF

GERMAN VERBS

AND

ALPHABETICAL LIST

IRREGULAR VERBS.

CONTENTS

Conjugation of:	Conjugation of:				
The Auxiliary Verbs:		The Separable Verb			
haben page	2	abholen page	21		
fein "	4	The Intransitive Verb			
werden "	6	landen (conjugated			
The Auxiliary Verbs of		with sein) page	22		
Mood:		The Reflective Verb			
müssen page	8	sich erkälten 'page	24		
fönnen " wollen "	11	The Impersonal Verb			
follen "	12	schneien page	26		
dürfen "	14	The Irregular Verb			
mögen "	15	geben page	27		
The Regular Verb loben		1 2			
I. Active voice page	17	List of the Irregular			
II. Passive voice ,,	19	Verbs page	29		

page

THE AUXILIARY VERBS.

Saben, to have.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich habe, I have du hast, thou hast er (sie, es) hat, he (she, it) has wir haben, we have Sie haben or ihr habt, you fie haben, they have

du hattest, thou hadst er (sie, es) hatte, he (she, it) had

Sie hatten or ihr hattet, you

ich hatte, I had

wir hatten, we had

fie hatten, they had

ich habe, I have or (that) I may bu habest, thou hast | have, etc. er (sie, es) habe, he (she, it) has wir haben, we have Gie haben or ihr habet, you have fie haben, they have

had

Imperfect. [might have, etc. ich hätte, I had or (that) I du hättest, thou hadst er (fie, es) hätte, he (she, it) had wir hätten, we had Sie hatten or ihr hattet, you sie hätten, they had had

Future (I).

Thave ich werde haben, (that) I shall du werdest haben, thou wilt have er (fie, es) werbe haben, he

(she, it) will have wir werden haben, we shall have

Sie werden haben or ihr werdet haben, you will have fie werden haben, they will have

ich werde haben, I shall have du wirst haben, thou wilt have er (fie, es) wird haben, he (she, it) will have

wir werden haben, we shall have Sie werden haben or ihr werdet haben, you will have fie werden haben, they will have

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich würde haben, I should have du würdest haben, thou wouldst have er (fie, es) wurde haben, he (she, it) would have wir würden haben, we should have Sie würden haben or ihr würdet haben, you would have fie würden haben, they would have

Perfect.

ich habe gehabt, I have had

du hast gehabt, thou hast had er (fie, es) hat gehabt, he (she, it) has had

wir haben gehabt, we have had Sie haben gehabt or ihr habt gehabt, you have had fie haben gehabt, they have had ich habe gehabt, I have had or (that) I may have had, etc. bu habeit gehabt, thou hast had er (fie, es) habe gehabt, he (she, it) has had wir haben gehabt, we have had

Sie haben gehabt or ihr habet gehabt, you have had fie haben gehabt, they have had INDICATIVE.

Pluperfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hatte gehabt, I had had

du hattest gehabt, thou hadst had er (fie, es) hatte gehabt, he (she, it) had had

wir hatten gehabt, we had had Sie hatten gehabt or ihr hattet gehabt, you had had

fie hatten gehabt, they had had

ich hätte gehabt, I had had or (that) I might have had, etc. du hättest gehabt, thou hadst had er (fie, es) hätte gehabt, he (she, it) had had

wir hatten gehabt, we had had Sie hätten gehabt or ihr hättet gehabt, you had had

fie hätten gehabt, they had had

Future Perfect (II), SKIP

ich werde gehabt haben, I shall Thave had have had du wirst gehabt haben, thou wilt er (fie, es) wird gehabt haben, he (she, it) will have had

wir werden gehabt haben, we shall have had

Sie werden gehabt haben or ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had have had fie werden gehabt haben, they will ich werde gehabt haben, (that) I shall have had have had bu werdest gehabt haben, thou wilt er (fie, es) werde gehabt haben, he (she, it) will have had wir werden gehabt haben, we

shall have had

Sie werden gehabt haben or ihr werdet gehabt haben, you will have had Thave had fie werden gehabt haben, they will

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich würde gehabt haben, I should have had bu würdest gehabt haben, thou wouldst have and er (sie, es) wurde gehabt haben, he (she, it) would have had wir würden gehabt haben, we should have had Sie würden gehabt haben or ihr würdet gehabt haben, you would sie würden gehabt haben, they would have had have had

IMPERATIVE.

habe, have (thou) er (fie, es) foll haben, let him (her, it) have wir wollen haben (haben wir, lagt uns haben), let us have haben Sie or habt, have (you) sie sollen haben, let them have

INFINITIVE.

Present: haben, to have

Perfect: gehabt haben, to have had

PARTICIPLES.

| Past: gehabe, had Present: habend, having

Sein, to be.

INDICATIVE

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich bin, I am
bu bift, thou art
er (sie, e3) ist, he (she, it) is
wir sind, we are
Sie sind or ihr seid, you are
sie sind, they are

ich sei, I be or (that) I may be, bu seiest, thou be ser (sie, es) sei, he (she, it) be wir seien, we be Sie seien or ihr seiet, you be sie seien, they be

Imperfect.

ich war, I was du warst, thou wast er (sie, es) war, he (she, it) was wir waren, we were Sie waren or ihr waret, you were sie waren, they were ich wäre, I were or (that) I du wärest, thou wert [might be, etc. er (sie, es) wäre, he (she, it) were wir wären, we were Sie wären or ihr wäret, you were sie wären, they were

Future (I).

ich werde sein, I shall be
du wirst sein, thou wilt be
er (sie, es) wird sein, he (she,
it) will be
wir werden sein, we shall be
Eie werden sein or ihr werdet
sein, you will be
sie werden sein, they will be

ich werde sein, (that) I shall be du werdest sein, thou wilt be er (sie, es) werde sein, he (she, it) will be wir werden sein, we shall be Sie werden sein or ihr werdet sein, you will be sie werden sein, they will be

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich würde sein, I should be du würdest sein, thou wouldst be er (sie, es) würde sein, he (she, it) would be wir würden sein, we should be Sie würden sein or ihr würdet sein, you would be sie würden sein, they would be

Perfect.

ich bin gewesen, I have been

bu bist gewesen, thou hast been er (sie, es) ist gewesen, he (she, it) has been wir sind gewesen, we have been Sie sind gewesen, you have been sie sind gewesen, they have been sie sind gewesen, they have been

ich fei gewesen, I have been or (that) I may have been, etc. bu seiest gewesen, thou hast been er (sie, es) sei gewesen, he (she, it) has been

wir seien gewesen, we have been Sie seien gewesen or ihr seiet gewesen, you have been

fie feien gewesen, they have been

INDICATIVE.

Pluperfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich war gewesen, I had been

du warst gewesen, thou hadst been er (sie, es) war gewesen, he (she, it) had been wir waren gewesen, we had been

Sie waren gewesen or ihr waret gewesen, you had been

fie waren gewesen, they had been

ich wäre gewesen, I had been er (that) I might have been, etc. bu wärest gewesen, thou hadst been er (sie, es) wäre gewesen, he (she, it) had been

wir wären gewesen, we had been Sie wären gewesen or ihr wäret

gewesen, you had been sie wären gewesen, they had been

Future Perfect (II).

ith werde gewesen sein, I shall have been surift gewesen sein, thou wilt er (sie, es) wird gewesen sein, he (she, it) will have been

wir werden gewesen sein, we shall have been

Sie werden gewesen sein or ihr werdet gewesen sein, you will have been [will have been sie werden gewesen sein, they ich werde gewesen sein, (that) I shall have been shave been du werdest gewesen sein, thou wilt er (sie, es) werde gewesen sein, he (she, it) will have been

wir werden gewesen sein, we shall have been

Sie werden gewesen sein, or ihr werdet gewesen sein, you will have been swill have been sie werden gewesen sein, they

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich würde gewesen sein, I should have been bu würdest gewesen sein, thou wouldst have been er (sie, es) würde gewesen sein, he (she, it) would have been wir würden gewesen sein or ihr würdet gewesen sein wurden Sie würden gewesen sein or ihr würdet gewesen sein, you would sie würden gewesen sein, they would have been [have been

IMPERATIVE.

sei, be (thou)
er (sie, es) soll sein, let him (her, it) be
wir wollen sein (seien wir, laßt uns sein), let us be
seien Sie or seid, be (you)
sie sollen sein, let them be

INFINITIVE.

Present: fein, to be

| Perfect: gewesen fein, to have been

PARTICIPLES.

Present: seiend, being

| Past: gewesen, been

Werden, to become (to get, to grow.)

INDICATIVE. ich werde, I become

bu wirst, thou becomest er (fie, e3) wird, he (she, it) be-

wir werden, we become | comes Sie werden or ihr werdet, you fie werden, they become | become

Present. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde, I become or (that) I may become, etc.

bu merbeit, thou becomest er (fie, e3) werde, he (she, it) bewir werden, we become | comes Sie werben or ihr werbet, you fie merden, they become | become

Imperfect.

ich wurde, (old form: ward), I

becamebu wurdest (wardst), thou be-[(she, it) became er (sie, e3) wurde (ward), he wir wurden, we became

Sie wurden or ihr wurdet, you fie wurden, they became | became

ich würde, I became or (that) I might become, etc. du würdest, thou becamest

er (fie, es) würde, he (she, it) became

wir würden, we became

Sie würden or ihr würdet, you fie würden, they became | became.

Future (1).

ich werde werden, I shall become

du wirst werden, thou wilt become er (fie, es) wird werden, he (she, it) will become wir werden werden, we shall Sie werden werden on ihr werdet werden, you will become become

ich werde werden, (that) I shall become du werdest werben, thou wilt er (sie, es) merbe werden, he (she, it) will become [become wir werden werden, we shall Sie werden werden or ihr werdet werden, you will become fie werden werden, they will fie werden werden, they will become

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich würde werden, I should become du würdest werden, thou wouldst become er (fie, e3) würde werden, he (she, it) would become wir würden werden, we should become Sie murden werden or ihr murdet werden, you would become fie würden werden, they would become

Perfect.

ich bin geworden (... worden), I have become

du bist geworden, thou hast become er (sie, e3) ist geworden, he (she, it) has become wir find geworden, we have become

Sie find or ihr feid geworden, you have become fie find geworden, they have become

ich fei geworden: (... worden), I have become or (that) I may have become, etc. du seiest geworden, thou hast beer. (fie, es) fei geworden, he (she, it) has become wir seien geworden, we have be-Sie feien or ihr feiet geworden, you have become fie feien geworden, they have become INDICATIVE.

Pluperfect. Subjunctive.

I had become

[become bu warst geworden, thou hadst er (sie, es) war geworden, he (she, it) had become [become wir waren geworden, we had Sie waren geworden or ihr waret geworden, you had become: [become sie waren geworden, they had

ich war geworden (... worden), | ich wäre geworden (... worden), I had become or (that) I might have become, etc. [become du märest geworden, thou hadst er (sie, es) wäre geworden, he (she, it) had become [become wir wären geworden, we had Sie wären geworden or ihr wäret geworden, you had become: become fie wären geworden, they had

Future Perfect. (II).

ich werde geworden (... worden) fein. I shall have become

du wirst geworden sein, thou wilt have become

er (fie, es) wird geworden fein, he (she, it) will have become wir werden geworden sein, we shall have become

Sie werden geworben fein or ihr werdet geworden fein, you will have become

fie werden geworden fein, they will have become

ich werde geworden (... worden) fein. (that) I shall have become

du werdest geworden fein, thou wilt have become

er (fie, es) werbe geworden fein, he (she, it) will have become wir werden geworden sein, we shall have become

Sie werden geworden sein or ihr werdet geworden feint you will have become

fie werden geworden fein, they will have become

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich würde geworden (... worden) fein, I should have become du würdest geworden sein, thou wouldst have become er (sie, es) wurde geworden sein, he (she, it) would have become wir würden geworden sein, we should have become Sie würden geworben fein or ihr würdet geworden fein, you would fie würden geworden sein, they would have become have become

IMPERATIVE.

werde, become (thou) er (fie, es) foll werden, let him (her, it) become wir wollen werden, (werden wir, lagt uns werden), let us become werden Sie or werdet, become (you) sie sollen werden, let them become

INFINITIVE.

Present: werden, to become

| Perfect: geworden (...worden) fein, to have become

PARTICIPLES.

Present: werdend, becoming | Past: geworden or worden , become

THE AUXILIARY VERBS OF MOOD.

1) Müssen, (must) to be obliged, to have to.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich muß, I must (I am obliged, etc.) du mußt, thou must er (fie, es) muß, he (she, it) must wir muffen, we must Sie muffen or ihr mußt, you fie muffen, they must

ich müsse, (that) I must (I be obliged, etc. du müssest, thou must er (fie, es) muffe, he (she, it) must wir muffen, we must Sie muffen or ihr muffet, you must | fie muffen, they must

Imperfect.

ich mußte, I was obliged du mußtest, thou wast obliged er (fie, es) mußte, he (she, it) was obliged wir mußten, we were obliged Sie mußten or ihr mußtet, you were obliged fie mußten, they were obliged

ich müßte, I were obliged du müßtest, thou wert obliged er (fie, es) mußte, he (she, it) were obliged wir müßten, we were obliged Sie mußten or ihr mußtet, you were obliged fie müßten, they were obliged

Future (I).

ich werde mussen, I shall be ich werde mussen, (that) I shall

obliged stc. be obliged sec. be obliged be obliged, etc. du wirst mussen, thou wilt be du werdest mussen, thou wilt

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich mußte (or ich murbe muffen), I should be obliged bu mußtest (or bu murdest muffen, thou wouldst be obliged, etc.

Perfect.

ich habe gemußt (...muffen), I ich habe gemußt (...muffen), have been obliged (that) I have been obliged have been obliged du haft gemußt (...muffen), etc. | bu habeft gemußt (...muffen), etc.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte gemußt (...muffen), I ich hätte gemußt (...muffen), had been obliged (that) I had been obliged had been obliged

Du hattest gemußt (... muffen), etc. | bu hättest gemußt (... muffen), etc.

Future Perfect (II).

ich werde gemußt haben (...haben muffen), I shall have been obliged

du wirst gemußt haben (... haben muffen), etc.

ich werde gemußt haben (...haben muffen), (that) I shall have been obliged

du werdest gemußt haben (... haben mujjen), etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich hätte gemußt (...mussen) [or ich würde gemußt haben (...haben mussen], I skould kave been obliged

du hättest gemußt (...mussen) [or du wurdest gemußt haben (...haben mussen], etc.

INFINITIVE.

Present: muffen, to be obliged | Perfect: gemußt haben (haben muffen), to have been obliged

PARTICIPLES.

Present: muffend, being obliged | Past: gemußt or muffen, been obliged

2) Rönnen, (can) to be able.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich fann, I can (I am able, etc.)

du kannst, thou canst er (sie, es) kann, he (she, it) can wir können, we can Sie können or ihr könnt, you can sie können, they can ich fönne, (that) I can (1 be able, etc.)
bu fönnest, thou canst
er (sie, ed) fönne, he (she, it) can
wir fönnen, we can
Gie fönnen or ihr fönnet, you can
sie fönnen, they can

Imperfect.

ich konnte, I could (I was able, etc.)
bu konntest, thou couldst
er (sie, e3) konnte, he (she, it)
could
wir konnten, we could
Sie konnten or ihr konntet, you
could
sie konnten, they could

ich fönnte, I could (I were etc.)
bu fönnteft, thou couldst
er (sie, es) fönnte, he (she, could
wir fönnten, we could
Sie fönnten or ihr fönntet, you

Future (I).

ich werde können, I shall be able du wirst können, thou wilt be able, etc.

ich werde können, (that) I shall be able
bu werdest können, thou wilt be able, etc.

fie fönnten, they could

CONDITIONAL (I).

to fonnte (or ich wurde fonnen), I should be able bu fonntest (or bu würdest fonnen), thou wouldst be able, etc.

> INDICATIVE. Perfect. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich habe gekonnt (...konnen), I | ich habe gekonnt (...konnen), (that) I have been able have been able bu haft gekonnt (...fonnen), etc. | bu habest gekonnt (...fonnen), etc.

Pluperfect.

lch hatte gekonnt (...können), I ich hätte gekonnt (...können), had been able (that) I had been able bu hattest gekonnt (...können), etc. bu hattest gefonnt (...fonnen).

Future Perfect (II).

ich werde gekonnt haben (haben | ich werde gekonnt haben (haben ... fönnen), I shall have been able bu wirst gekonnt haben (haben ...fönnen), etc.

... fönnen), (that) I shall have been able du werdest gekonnt haben (haben ...fönnen), etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich hatte gefonnt (... fonnen) [or ich wurde gefonnt haben (haben ...fönnen], I should have been able du hättest gekonnt (...fonnen) [or bu wurdest gekonnt haben (haben

...fonnen], etc.

INFINITIVE.

| Perfect: gekonnt haben (haben Present: fönnen, to be able ...fonnen), to have been able

PARTICIPLES.

Present: fonnend, being able | Past: gefonnt or fonnen, been able

3) Wollen, (will) to be willing (to wish, to like).

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNOTIVE.

etc.) du willst, thou wilt er (fie, es) will, he (she, it) will wir wollen, we will Sie wollen or ihr wollt, you will fie wollen, they will

ich will. I will (I am willing, ich wolle, (that) I will (I be willing, etc.) du wollest, thou will er (sie, e3) wolle, he (she, it) mir wollen, we will will Sie wollen an ihr wollet, you will fie wollen, they will

Imperfect.

ich wollte, I would (I was , ich wollte, (that) I would (I willing, etc.) du wolltest, thou wouldst er (fie, es) wollte, he (she, it) wir wollten, we would [would Sie wollten or ihr wolltet, you fie wollten, they would | would

were willing, etc.) bu wolltest, thou would er (fie, es) wollte, he (she, it) mir mollten, we would | would Sie wollten or ihr wolltet, vou fie mollten, they would | would

Future (I).

du wirst wollen, thou wilt be. willing, etc.

ich werde wollen, I shall be ich werde wollen, (that) I shall be willing du werdest mollen, thou wilt be willing, etc.

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich wollte (or ich würde wollen), I should be willing du wolltest (or du würdest wollen), thou wouldst be willing, etc.

Perfect.

ich habe gewollt (...wollen), I ich habe gewollt (...wollen), have been willing (that) I have been willing

bu haft gewollt (... wollen), etc. | bu habeft gewollt (... wollen), etc.

Pluperfect.

id hatte gewollt (...wollen), I id hätte gewollt (...wollen), had been willing (that) I had been willing du hattest gewollt (... wollen), etc. du hättest gewollt (... wollen), etc.

Future Perfect (II).

ich werde gewollt haben (haben ... wollen). I shall have been willing

du wirst gewollt haben (haben ... wolleu), etc.

ich werbe gewollt haben (haben ... wolfen), (that) I shall have been willing

bu werdest gewollt haben (haben ... wollen), etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich hätte gewollt (...wollen) [or ich würde gewollt haben] (haben ...wollen), I should have been willing du hättest gewollt (...wollen) [or du würdest gewollt haben] (haben ...wollen), etc.

INFINITIVE.

Present: wollen, to be willing | Perfect: gewollt haben (haben... wollen), to have been willing

PARTICIPLES.

Present: wollend, being willing | Past: gewollt or wollen, been willing

4) Sollen, shall, ought.

INDICATIVE. Pres

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

du sollst, thou shalt er (sie, es) soll, he (she, it) shall wir sollen, we shall Sie sollen or ihr sollt, you shall sie sollen, they shall ich folle, (that) I shall (I be to, etc.)
bu follest, thou shall
er (sie, e3) folle, he (she, it) shall
wir follen, we shall
Sie sollen or ihr sollet, you shall
sie sollen, they shall

Imperfect.

ich sollte, I should (I ought, I was to, etc.)
bu solltest, thou shouldst
er (sie, e3) sollte, he (she, it)
should
wir sollten, we should
Sie sollten or ihr solltet, you
should
sie sollten, they should

ich follte, (that) I should (I ought, I were to, etc.)
bu folltest, thou should er (sie, es) follte, he (she, it) should wir follten, we should
Sie follten or ihr folltet, you should
should
sie follten, they should

Future (I).

ich werbe sollen, I shall be to bu wirst sollen, thou wilt be to, etc. ich werde sollen, (that) I shall be to bu werdest sollen, thou will be to, etc.

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich soute (or ich würde sollen), I should be to bu solltest (or du würdest sollen), thou wouldst be to, etc.

Indicative. Perfect. Subjunctive.

ich habe gesollt (...sollen), I ich habe gesollt (...sollen), (that)
have been to
bu hast gesollt (...sollen), etc.
bu habest gesollt (...sollen), etc.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte gesollt (...sollen), I ich hätte gesollt (...sollen), (that) had been to du hattest gesollt (...sollen), etc. du hättest gesollt (...sollen), etc.

Future Perfect (II).

ich werde gesollt haben (haben... folsen), I shall have been to bu wirst gesollt haben (haben... sollen), etc.

ich werde gesollt haben (haben... folsen), (that) I shall have been to bu werdest gesollt haben (haben ... sollen), etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich hätte gesollt (...follen) [or ich würde gesollt haben (haben... sollen], I skould have been to du hättest gesollt (...sollen) [or du würdest gesollt haben (haben... sollen], etc.

INFINITIVE.

Present: jollen, shall, ought | Perfect: gefollt haben (haben... follen), to have been to

PARTICIPLES.

Present: sollend, being to | Past: gesollt or sollen, been to

5) Dürfen, to be allowed (to dare).

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich barf, I am allowed bu barfit, thou art allowed er (fie, es) darf, he (she, it) is allowed wir dürfen, we are allowed Sie durfen or ihr durft, you are allowed fie bürfen, they are allowed

ich dürfe. I be allowed bu dürfest, thou be allowed er (fie, es) burie, he (she, it) be allowed wir burfen, we be allowed Sie dürfen or ihr dürfe, you be allowed fie dürfen, they be allowed

Imperfect.

ich burfte. I was allowed du durftest, thou wast allowed er (sie, es) durfte, he (she, it) was allowed wir burften, we were allowed Sie burften or ihr durftet, you were allowed fie burften, they were allowed

ich dürfte, I were allowed bu bürftest, thou wert allowed er (sie, es) bürfte, he (she, it) were allowed wir bürften, we were allowed Sie dürften or ihr dürftet, you were allowed fie dürften, they were allowed

Future (I).

ich werde dürfen, I shall be ich werde dürfen, (that) I shall allowed du wirst dürfen, thou wilt be allowed, etc.

be allowed du werde ft bürfen, thou wilt be allowed, etc.

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich hätte dürfen (or ich würde dürfen), I should be allowed du hättest durfen (or du würdest durfen), thou wouldst be allowed, etc.

Perfect.

ich habe gedurft (... burfen), I | ich habe gedurft (... burfen), (that) I have been allowed have been allowed du haft gedurft (... burfen), etc. | du habeft gedurft (... burfen), etc

Pluperfect.

du hattest gedurft (... dürfen), etc.

ich hatte gedurft (...bürfen), I ich hätte gedurft (...bürfen), had been allowed (that) I had been allowed bu hatteft gedurft (... burjen),

Future Perfect (II).

ich werde gedurft haben (haben ...burfen), I shall have been allowed

du wirst gedurft haben (haben ... dürfen), etc.

ich werde gedurft haben (haben ... burfen), (that) I shall have been allowed du werdest gedurft haben (haben

... bürfen), etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich hatte gedurft (...burfen) [or ich wurde gedurft haben (haben... bürfen], I should have been allowed du hatteft gedurft (... burfen) [or du wurdest gedurft haben (haben .. burfen], etc.

INFINITIVE.

Present: dürfen, to be allowed | Perfect: gedurft haben (haben ... burfen), to have been allowed

PARTICIPLES.

Present: dürfend, being allowed | Past: gedurft or dürfen, been allowed

6) Mögen, (may) to like.

INDICATIVE. ich mag, I may (I like, etc.)

Present. Subjunctive.

bu magst, thou mayest er (sie, es) mag, he (she, it) may wir mögen, we may Sie mögen or ihr mögt, you fie mögen, they may

ich möge, (that) I may (I like, bu mögest, thou may er (fie, es) möge, he (she, it) may wir mögen, we may Sie mögen or ihr möget, you fie mögen, they may

Imperfect.

ich mochte, I liked

du mochtest, thou likedst er (fie, es) mochte, he (she, it) liked wir mochten, we liked Sie mochten or ihr mochtet, you fie mochten, they liked

ich möchte, (that) I might (I liked, etc.) du möchtest, thou might er (fie, es) möchte, he (she, it) mightwir möchten, we might Sie möchten or ihr möchtet, you fie möchten, they might

INDICATIVE. Future (I). SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde mögen, I shall like bu wirft mögen, thou wilt like, etc. ich werde mögen, (that) I shall like bu werdest mögen, thou wilt like, etc.

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich möchte (or ich mürbe mögen), I should like bu möchtest (or bu mürbest mögen), thou wouldst like, etc.

Perfect.

ich habe gemocht (...mögen), I ich habe gemocht (...mögen), have liked bu hast gemocht (...mögen), etc. bu habest gemocht (...mögen), etc.

Pluperfect.

ich hatte gemocht (...mögen), I ich hätte gemocht (...mögen), had liked bu hattest gemocht (...mögen), etc. ich hättest gemocht (...mögen), etc.

Future Perfect (II).

ich werbe gemocht haben (haben ...mögen), I shall have liked

du wirst gemocht haben (haben ... mögen), etc.

ich werbe gemocht haben (haben ... mögen), (that) I shall have liked

bu werdest gemocht haben (haben ... mögen), etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich hätte gemocht (...mögen) [or ich würde gemocht haben (haben ...mögen], I should have liked bu hättest gemocht (...mögen) [or du würdest gemocht haben (haben

... mögen], etc.

INFINITIVE.

Present: mogen, to like

| Perfect: gemocht haben (haben ... mögen), to have liked

PARTICIPLES.

Present: mogend, liking | Past: gemocht or mogen, liked

THE REGULAR VERB Loben, to praise.

I. Active Voice.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich lobe, I praise (I am praising, I do praise, etc.)
bu lobst, thou praisest
er (sie, es) lobt, he (she, it)
wir loben, we praise [praises
Sie loben or ihr lobt, you praise
sie loben, they praise

ith lobe, I praise or (that) I
may praise, etc.
bu lobest, thou praise
er (sie, es) lobe, he (she, it)
wir loben, we praise [praise
Sie loben or ihr lobet, you praise
sie loben, they praise

Imperfect.

ith lobte, I praised (I was praising, I did praise, etc.) bu lobteft, thou praisedst et (fie, e\$) lobte, he (she, it) wir lobten, we praised [praised Sie lobten or ihr lobtet, you praised fie lobten, they praised

ich lobte, I praised or (that) I might praise, etc. bu lobtest, thou praised er (sie, e3) lobte, he (she, it) wir lobten, we praised | praised Gie lobten or ihr lobtet, you praised sie lobten, they praised

Future (I).

ich werde loben, I shall praise
(I shall be praising, etc.)
du wirst loben, thou wilt praise
er (sie, es) wird loben, he (she,
it) will praise
wir werden loben, we shall praise

wir werden loben, we shall praise
Sie werden loben or ihr werdet
loben, you will praise
Ne werden loben, they will praise

ill praise | sie werd Conditional (I).

ich werde loben, (that) I shall praise
du werdest loben, thou wilt praise
er (sie, es) werde loben, he (she, it) will praise

wir werden loben, we shall praise Sie werden loben or ihr werdet loben, you will praise fie werden loben, they will praise

ich würde loben, I should praise du würdest loben, thou wouldst praise er (sie, e3) würde loben, he (she, it) would praise wir würden loben, we should praise Sie würden loben or ihr würdet loben, you would praise sie würden loben, they would praise

Perfect.

th have gelobt, I have praised (I have been praising, etc.) bu halt gelobt, thou hast praised er (sie, es) hat gelobt, he (she, it) has praised wir haben gelobt, we have praised Sie haben gelobt or ihr habt gelobt, you have praised ste haben gelobt, they have praised ste haben gelobt, they have praised

ich habe gelobt, I have praised or (that) I may have praised, etc. bu habeft gelobt, thou hast praised et (fie, e3) habe gelobt, he (she, it) has praised wir haben gelobt, we have praised Sie haben gelobt or ihr habet gelobt, you have praised

fie haben gelobt, they have praised

INDICATIVE. Pluperfect. SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hatte gelobt, I had praised (I had been praising, etc.) du hattest gesobt, thou hadst praised sit) had praised er (fie, es) hatte gelobt, he (she, wir hatten gelobt, we had praised Sie hatten gelobt or ihr hattet gelobt, you had praised [praised

fie hatten gelobt, they had

ich hätte gelobt, I had praised or (that) I might have praised, etc. bu hättest gelobt, thou hadst praised [it) had praised er (sie, es) hätte gelobt, he (she, wir hätten gelobt, we had praised Sie hatten gelobt or ihr hattet gelobt, you had praised [praised fie hätten gelobt, they had

Future Perfect (II).

ich werde gelobt haben, I shall | ich werde gelobt haben, (that) have praised (I shall have been praising, etc.) bu wirst gelobt haben er (sie, es) wird gelobt haben wir werden gelobt haben Sie werden gelobt haben or ihr werdet gelobt haben fie werden gelobt haben

I shall have praised, etc.

du werdest gelobt haben er (fie, es) werde gelobt haben wir werden gelobt haben Sie werden gelobt haben or ihr werdet gelobt haben fie werden gelobt haben

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich würde gelobt haben, I should have praised, etc. bu mürdest gelobt haben er (fie, es) würde gelobt haben wir würden gelobt haben Sie würden gelobt haben or ihr wurdet gelobt haben fie würden gelobt haben

IMPERATIVE.

lobe, praise (thou) er (sie, es) soll loben, let him (she, it) praise wir wollen loben (loben wir, lagt und loben), let us praise loben Sie or lobet, praise (you) fie follen loben, let them praise

INFINITIVE.

Present: Ioben, to praise (to be Perfect: gelobt haben, to have praising) praised (to have been praising)

PARTICIPLES.

| Past: gelobt, praised (been Present: lobend, praising praising)

II. Passive Voice.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werbe gelobt, I am praised (I am being praised, etc.) bu wirst gelobt, thou art praised er (fie. es) wird gelobt, he (she, it) is praised

wir werden gelobt, we are praised Sie werden gelobt or ihr werdet gelobt, you are praised

fie werden gelobt, they are praised

ich werde gelobt, I be praised or (that) I may be praised du werdest gelobt, thou be praised er (fie, es) werde gelobt, he (she, it) be praised

wir werden gelobt, we be praised Sie werden gelobt or ihr werdet gelobt, you be praised

fie merden gelobt, they be praised

Imperfect.

ich wurde gelobt, I was praised (I was being praised, etc.)

[praised du wurdest gelobt, thou wast er (fie, es) wurde gelobt, he (she, it) was praised praised wir wurden gelobt, we were Sie wurden gelobt or ihr wurdet gelobt, you were praised [praised fie murden gelobt, they were ich würde gelobt, I were praised or (that) I might be praised, praised etc. du würdest gelobt, thou wert er (fie, es) würde gelobt, he (she, it) were praised wir würden gelobt, we were Sie würden gelobt or ihr würdet gelobt, you were praised [praised fie würden gelobt, they were

Future (I).

ich werde gelobt werden, I shall be praised

du wirft gelobt werden, thou

wilt be praised

er (fie, es) wird gelobt werden, he (she, it) will be praised wir werden gelobt werden, we

shall be praised

Sie werden gelobt werden or ihr werdet gelobt werden, you will be praised

fie werden gelobt werden, they will be praised

ich werde gelobt werden, (that) I shall be praised

du werdest gelobt werden, thou wilt be praised

er (fie, es) werde gelobt werden, he (she, it) will be praised wir werden gelobt werden, we

shall be praised

Sie werden gelobt werden or ihr werdet gelobt werben, you will be praised

fie werben gelobt werben, they

will be praised

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich würde gelobt werden, I should be praised du würdest gelobt werden, thou wouldst be praised er (sie, es) würde gelobt werden, he (she, it) would be praised wir würden gelobt werden, we should be praised Sie würden gelobt werden or ihr würdet gelobt werden, you woule fie würden gelobt werden, they would be praised be praisea INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich bin gelobt worden, I have been praised

du bist gelobt worden, thou hast

been praised

er (fie, es) ift gelobt worden, he (she, it) has been praised wir find gelobt worden, we have

been praised

Sie find gelobt worden or ihr
feid gelobt worden, you have
been praised [been praised
fie find gelobt worden, they have

ich sei gelobt worden, (that) I have been praised

du seiest gesobt worden, thou hast been praised

er (sie, es) sei gelobt worden, he (she, it) has been praised wir seien gelobt worden, we have

been praised

Sie seien gelobt worden or ihr seiet gelobt worden, you have been praised shave been praised sie seien gelobt worden, they

Pluperfect.

ich war gesobt worden, I had been praised

du warst gelobt worden, thou

hadst been praised

er (fie, es) war gelobt worden, he (she, it) had been praised wir waren gelobt worden, we had been praised

Sie waren gelobt worden or ihr waret gelobt worden, you had been praised shad been praised sie waren gelobt worden, they ich wäre gelobt worden, (that) I had been praised

bu wärest gelobt worden, thou hadst been praised

er (fie, e3) wäre gelobt worden, he (she, it) had been praised wir wären gelobt worden, we had been praised

Sie wären gelobt worden or ihr wäret gelobt worden, you had been praised [had been praised fie wären gelobt worden, they

Future Perfect (II).

ich werbe gelobt worden sein, I shall have been praised bu wirst gelobt worden sein, thou wilt have been praised, etc.

ich werde gelobt worden sein, (that) I shall have been praised bu werdest gelobt worden sein, thou will have been praised, etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich würde gelobt worden sein, I should have been praised du würdest gelobt worden sein, thou wouldst have been praised, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

werde (or fei) gelobt, be (thou) praised

er (fie, e3) foll gelobt werben, let him (she, it) be praised

wir wollen gelobt werben (werden wir gelobt, lagt uns gelobt werden, let us be praised

werden (or seien Sie) gelobt or werdet (or seid) gelobt, be you sie sollen gelobt werden, let them be praised praised

INFINITIVE.

Present: gelobt werden, to be | Past: gelobt werden sein, topraised | have been praised

PARTICIPLES.

Present: (311 Tobent), to be praised | Past: gelobt morben, been occurs as adjective only) | praised

THE SEPARABLE VERB

21b'holen, to fetch off, to call for.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich hole...ab, I fetch off

du holst ab, thou fetchest off er (fie, es) holt ab, he (she, it) fetches off wir holen ab, we fetch off Sie holen ab or ihr holt ab, you fetch off

ich hole...ab, I fetch off or (that) I may fetch off, etc. du holest ab, thou fetch off er (fie, es) hole ab, he (she, it) fetch off wir holen ab, we fetch off Sie holen ab or ihr holet ab, you fetch off

fie holen ab, they fetch off

Imperfect.

ich holte...ab, I fetched off

fie holen ab, they fetch off

du holtest ab, thou fetchedst off er (fie, es) holte ab, he (she, it) fetched off wir holten ab, we fetched off Sie holten ab or ihr holtet ab, you fetched off fie holten ab, they fetched off

ich holte...ab, I fetched off or (that) I might fetch off, etc. du holtest ab, thou fetched off er (fie, es) holte ab, he (she, it) fetched off wir holten ab. we fetched off Sie holten ab or ihr holtet ab, you fetched off fie holten ab, they fetched off

Future (I).

ich werde abholen, I shall fetch ich werde abholen, (that) I shall off, etc. du wirst abholen, thou wilt fetch | du werdest abholen, thou wilt

fetch off [fetch off, etc.

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich würde abholen, I should fetch off bu würdest abholen, thou wouldst fetch off, etc.

Perfect.

fetched off, etc.

ich habe abgeholt, I have fetched | ich habe abgeholt, (that) I have fetched off fetched off, etc. bu hast abgeholt, thou hast | bu habest abgeholt, thou hast

Pluperfect.

bu hattest abgeholt, thou hadst | bu hättest abgeholt, thou had

ich hatte abgeholt, I had fetched | ich hätte abgeholt, (that) I had [fetched off, etc. | fetched off [fetched off, etc.

INDICATIVE. Future Perfect (II). SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich werde abgeholt haben, I shall have fetched off bu wirst abgeholt haben, thou wilt have fetched off, etc. Ich werde abgeholt haben, thou wilt have fetched off, etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich würde abgeholt haben, I should have fetched off du würdest abgeholt haben, thou wouldst have fetched off, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

hole...ab, fetch (thou) off er (sie, es) soll abholen, let him (she, it) fetch off wir wollen abholen (holen wir...ab, laßt uns abholen), let us fetch holen Sie...ab or holet...ab, fetch (you) off sie sollen abholen, let them fetch off

INFINITIVE.

Present: abholen (abzuholen), to | Perfect: abgeholt haben, to have fetch off | fetched off

PARTICIPLES.

Present: abholend, fetching off | Past: abgeholt, fetched off

THE INTRANSITIVE VERB Landen, to land. Conjugated with fein.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

Subjunctive.

ich lande, I land
bu landest, thou landest
er (se, es) landet, he (she, it)
lands, etc.

Subjunctive.

ich lande, I land or (that) I man,
bu landest, thou land [land, etc.]
er (se, es) lande, he (she, it)
land, etc.

Imperfect.

ich landete, I landed
bu landetest, thou landedst
er (sie, es) landete, ha (she, it)
landed, etc.

ich landete, I landed or (that) I might land, etc. bu landetest, thou landed er (sie, e2) landete, he (she, it)

landed, etc.

Future (I).

ich werde landen, I shall land ich werde landen, (that) I shall bu wirft landen, thou wilt land, our werdest landen, thou will

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich würde landen. I should land bu würdest landen, thou wouldst land, etc.

INDICATIVE.

Perfect.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich bin gelandet, I have landed

du bist gesandet, thou hast landed er (fie, es) ist gelandet, he (she, it) has landed

wir find gelandet, we have landed Sie sind gelandet or ihr seid gelandet, you have landed

fie find gelandet, they have landed

ich sei gesandet, (that) I have landed Flanded du seiest gelandet, thou hast er (fie, e3) fei gelandet, he (she. it) has landed [landed wir feien gelandet, we have Sie feien gelandet or ihr feiet gelandet, you have landed fie feien gelandet, they have landed

Pluperfect.

ich war gesandet, I had landed

Flanded du warst gesandet, thou hadst er (sie, es) war gelandet, he (she, it) had landed [landed wir waren gelandet, we had Sie waren gelandet or ihr waret gelandet, you had landed fie waren gelandet, they had landed

ich ware gelandet, (that) I had [landed] du wärest gelandet, thou hadst er (fie, es) wäre gelandet, he . (she, it) had landed [landed wir wären gelandet, we had Sie wären gelandet or ihr wäret gelandet, you had landed fie maren gelandet, they had landed

Future Perfect (II).

have landed du wirft gelandet fein, etc.

ich werde gelandet sein, I shall ich werde gelandet sein, (that) I shall have landed bu werbeft gelandet fein, etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich würde gelandet sein, I should have landed du würdest gelandet sein, thou wouldst have landed, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

lande, land (thou) landen Sie or landet, land (you), eta

INFINITIVE.

Present: landen, to land

| Perfect: gelandet fein, to have landed

PARTICIPLES.

Present: landend, landing

| Past: gelandet, landed

THE REFLECTIVE VERB

Sich erfälten, to catch cold

Indicative.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

ich erfälte mich, I catch cold

du erfältest dich, thou catchest

er (sie, es) erfältet sich, he (she, it) catches cold

wir erfälten uns, we catch cold Sie erfälten sich or ihr erfältet ench, you catch cold

fie erfälten fich, they catch cold

ich erfälte mich, I catch cold or (that) I may catch cold, etc. bu erfältest dich, thou catch cold

er (sie, es) erfälte sich, he (she,

it) catch cold

wir erfälten uns, we catch cold Sie erfälten sich or ihr erfältet euch, you catch cold

sie erkälten sich, they catch cold

Imperfect.

ich erfältete mich, I caught cold

du erkältetest dich, thou caughtest

er (sie, es) erfältete sich, he (she, it) caught cold

wir erfälteten uns, we caught cold Sie erfälteten sich or ihr erfältetet euch, you caught cold

sie erfälteten sich, they caught cold

ich erfältete mich, I caught cold or (that) I might catch cold, etc. bu erfältetest dich, thou caught

er (sie, es) erkältete sich, he (she, it) caught cold

wir erfälteten uns, we caught cold Sie erfälteten sich or ihr erfältetet euch, you caught cold

sie erfälteten sich, they caught cold

Future (I).

ich werde mich erfälten, I shall catch cold

bu wirst dich erkälten, thou wilt catch cold, etc.

ich werde mich erfälten, (that)
I shall catch cold
bu werdest dich erfälten, thou

will catch cold, etc.

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich würde mich erfälten, I should catch cold bu würdest bich erfälten, thou wouldst catch cold, etc.

Perfect.

ich habe mich erkältet, I have caught cold

du hast bich erkältet, thou hast caught cold, etc.

ich habe mich erkältet, (that) I have caught cold

bu habest dich erfältet, thou hast caught cold, etc.

Future (I). SUBJUNCTIVE. INDICATIVE.

ich hatte mich erfältet, I had ich hätte mich erfältet, (that) I caught cold bu hattest bich erfaltet, thou hadst caught cold, etc.

had caught cold bu hättest bich erfältet, thou hadst caught cold, etc.

Future Perfect (II).

ich werde mich erfältet haben, I ich werde mich erfältet haben, shall have caught cold

(that) I shall have caught cold

du wirst bich erfältet haben. etc.

bu werbest bich erfaltet haben, etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich würde mich erkältet haben, I should have caught cold bu würdest bich ertältet haben, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

erfälte bich, catch (thou) cold er (fie, es) foll fich erfalten, let him (she, it) catch cold wir wollen uns erfalten (erfalten wir uns, lagt uns erfalten), let us catch cold erfälten Sie fich or erfältet euch, catch (you) cold fie follen fich erfälten, let them catch cold

INFINITIVE.

Present: fich erfälten, to catch | Perfect: fich erfältet haben, to cold 1 nave caught cold

PARTICIPLES.

Present: sich erfältend, catching | Past: sich erfältet, caught cold cold

THE IMPERSONAL VERB

Schneien, to snow.

INDICATIVE

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

es schneit, it snows (it is snow- | es schneie; (that) it may snow ing)

Imperfect.

es same it snowed (it was | es same that) it might snow snowing)

Future (I).

es wird schneien, it will snow | es werde schneien, (that) it will snow

CONDITIONAL (I).

es würde ichneien, it would snow

Perfect.

es hat geschneit, it has snowed | es habe geschneit, (that) it has (it has been snowing) | snowed

Pluperfect.

es hatte geschneit, it had snowed | es hätte geschneit; (that) it had (it had been snowing) | snowed

Future Perfect (II).

er wird geschneit haben, it will | es werde geschneit haben, (that)
have snowed it will have snowed

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

es würde geschneit haben, it would have snowed

INFINITIVE.

Present. ichneien, to snow

| Perfect: geschneit haben, to have snowed

PARTICIPLES.

Present: schneiend, snowing | Past: geschneit, snowed

THE IRREGULAR VERB

Geben, to give.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

SUBJUNCTIVE

ich gebe, I give

bu giebst, thou givest er (sie, e3) giebt, he (she, it) gives wir geben, we give Sie geben or ihr gebt, you give sie geben, they give ich gebe, I give or (that) I may give, etc. du gebest, thou give er (sie, es) gebe, he (she, it) give wir geben, we give Sie geben or ihr gebet, you give sie geben, they give

Imperfecti

ich gab, I gave

bu gabst, thou gavest er (sie, e1) gab, he (she, it) gave wir gaben, we gave Sie gaben or ihr gabt, you gave sie gaben, they gave ich gäbe, I gave or (that) I might give, etc. bu gäbest, thou gave er (sie, es) gäbe, he (she, it) gave wir gäben, we gave Sie gäben or ihr gäbet, you gave sie gäben, they gave

Future (I).

ich werde geben, I shall give bu wirst geben, thou wilt give, etc.

ich werde geben, (that) I shall give [etc. du werdest geben, thou wilt give,

CONDITIONAL (I).

ich würde geben, I should give o du würdest geben, thou wouldst give, etc.

Perfect.

ich habe gegeben, I have given ich habe gegeben, (that) I have given given [etc. du haft gegeben, thou hast given, du habeft gegeben, thou hast given,

Pluperfect.

ich hatte gegeben, I had given sich hätte gegeben, (that) I had given stern given stern given stern hauteft gegeben, thou hadst

INDICATIVE. Future Perfect. Subjunctive.

ich werbe gegeben haben, I ich werbe gegeben haben, (that) shall have given I shall have given

bu wirft gegeben haben, etc. bu werdest gegeben haben, etc.

CONDITIONAL PERFECT (II).

ich würde gegeben haben, I should have given bu würdest gegeben haben, thou wouldst have given, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

gicb, give (thou) er (fie, es) foll geben, let him (her, it) give wir wollen geben (geben wir, lagt uns geben), let us give geben Sie or gebet, give (you) fie follen geben, let them give

INFINITIVE.

Present: geben, to give

1 Perfect: gegeben haben, to have given

PARTICIPLES.

Present: gebend, giving

| Past: gegeben, given

List of the Irregular Verbs.

REMARKS.

- Compound verbs are not given; they are in general conjugated like their rootverbs.
- 2. Verbs marked with a * are conjugated with fein.

				,
	2nd & 3rd Person singular	T	IMPERA-	PAST PAR-
Infinitive.	INDICATIVE PRESENT	IMPERFECT	TIVE.	TICIPLE.
	if changed from 1st Person.		11,2	11011111
		1	1	
Baden, to bake	bu badft (badft), er badt (badt)			gebaden
Befehlen, to command	du befiehlft, er befiehlt	ich befahl	befiehl	befohlen
Besleißen (sich), to apply		ich befliß mich	pelieiße oich	befliffen
one's self to		ich begann	beginne	begonnen
Beginnen, to begin Beißen, to bite		ich biß	beike	gebiffen
Beklemmen, to oppress		ich beklemmte		betlemmt
Streammen, to oppross		1		(beflommen)
Bergen, to hide	du birgft, er birgt	ich barg	birg	geborgen
*Berften, to burst	bu berfteft (birfteft), er	ich barft	berfte (birft)	geborften
	berftet (birft)		-	
Bewegen, to induce		ich bewog	bewege	bewogen
Biegen, to bend		ich bog ich bot	biege biete	gebogen
Bieten, to bid Binben, to bind		ich banb	binbe	geboten gebunben
Bitten, to beg		ich bat	bitte	gebeten.
Blasen, to blow	bu blafeft, er blaft	ich blies	blase	geblasen
*Bleiben, to stay		ich blieb	bleibe	geblieben
Braten, to roast	bu bratest (bratit) er bratet	ich bratete	brate	gebraten
	(brät)	(briet)	vs• xe	
Brechen, to break	du brichst, er bricht	ich brach ich brannte	brich brenne	gebrochen
Brennen, to burn Bringen, to bring		ich brachte	bringe	gebrannt gek acht
Denten, to think		ich bachte	bente	gebacht
Dingen, to hire (a ser-		ich bingte	binge	gebingt
vant)		(bang)		(gebungen)
Dreschen, to thrash	bu brifcheft, er brifcht	ich broich	drisch	gebroschen
***************************************		(drasch) ich brang	bringe	
*Dringen, to press for- ward		ing bruing	ottilge	gebrungen
Dürfen, may	see auxil, verbs of mood p. 14.			
	bu empfiehlft, er empfiehlt	ich empfahl	empfiehl	empfohlen
mend			1	100,000
*Erbleichen, to turn pale	20 4114	ich erblich	erbleiche	erblichen
"Erlöschen, to be extin-	see verloigen			
guished Ericallen, to resound		ich erschallte	ant that (a	
etimanen, to resound	,	(ericholl)	etlajane	erschallt (erschollen)
*Gridreden to be frigh-	bu erichricit, er erichrict	ich erschraf	erschrict	eridiroden
tened	or collaboration to collaboration	1,,		
Essen, to eat	bu iffest, er ift	ich aß	iß	gegeffen
*Fahren, to drive (in a	bu fährst, er fährt	ich fuhr	fahre	gefahren
carriage)	S. EEWEL ON EEWA	: X ELV	Falls	r . w
"Fallen, to fall	du fällst, er fällt	lich fiel lich fing	falle fange	gefallen
Fangen, to catch Fechten, to fence	bu fängft, er fängt bu fichft (fechteft), er ficht	ich fricht	fechte (ficht)	gefangen gefochten
October, to Tendo	(fectet)	10001	leader (leads)	Relogiten
Finden, to find		ich fanb	finbe	gefunben
Flechten, to twist	bu flichft (flechteft), er flicht	ich flocht	flechte (flicht)	geflochten
	(flechtet)			

10001110700	2nd & 3rd Person singular	200 70	- 1012	
INFINITIVE.	INDICATIVE PRESENT	IMPERFECT	IMPERA-	PAST PAR-
INFINITIVE.	if changed from 1st Person.	Lati Bite noi	TIVE.	TICIPLE.
	il changed from 1st Ferson.		3	
		ide Nas	P(*	1
Fliegen, to fly		ich flog ich floh	fliege fliebe	geflogen
*Flieben, to floo Flieben, to flow		ich floß	fließe	geflohen gefloffen
Fressen, to now Gressen, to eat (of ani-	he fuillalt au fuißt	ich fraß	friß	gefressen
mals)	on teilleir' er teibr	in linb	irib	Retrellen
Frieren, to be cold		ich fror	friere	gefroren
Gähren, to ferment		ich gohr	gähre	gegohren
Gebären, to bring forth	bu gebarft (gebierft), er ge-	ich gebar	gebare(gebier)	
	bart (gebiert)	, ,		
Geben, to give	bu giebst, er giebt	ich gab	gieb	gegeben
*Gebeihen, to thrive		ich gedieh	gebeihe	gediehen-
*Gehen, to go		ich ging	gehe	gegangen
*Gehen, to go *Gelingen, to succeed Gelten, to be worth	es gelingt	es gelang		gelungen
Gelten, to be worth	du giltst, er gilt	ich galt	gilt	gegolten
*Geneien, to recover		ich genas	genefe	geneten
Genießen, to enjoy	a calchiant	ich genoß		genoffen
Gewinnen, to win	es geschieht	es geschah	geichehe	geschehen
Gienen to pour		ich gewann ich goß	gewinne gieße	gewonnen
Gießen, to pour Gleichen, to be like		ich glich	gleiche	geglichen
*Gleiten, to glide		ich glitt	gleite	geglitten
Glimmen, to burn		ich glomm	glimme	geglommen
faintly		ing Brennin	9	90900
Graben, to dig	bu grabft, er grabt	ich grub	grabe	gegraben
Graben, to dig Greifen, to grasp	Surfa, as Surv	ich griff	greife	gegriffen
Saben, to have	see auxiliary verbs p. 2.			
halten, to hold	bu hältst, er hält	ich hielt	halte	gehalten
Gangen, to hang	du hängst, er hängt	ich hing	hange	gehangen
hauen, to hew heben, to lift	1	ich hieb	haue	gehauen
Deben, to lift		ich hob	hebe	gehoben
peigen, to be called pelfen, to help	F . K. 1465 K. 1461	ich hieß.	heiße	geheißen
belien, to help	du hilfst, er hilft	ich half ich kannte	hilf	geholfen
Rennen, to know		ich flomm	fenne flimme	gefannt geflommen
*Rlimmen, to climb		ich flang	flinge	geflungen
Rlingen, to tinkle Kneisen, to pinch		ich tniff	Ineife .	getniffen
*Rommen, to come		ich kam	fomme	getommen
Können, can	see auxil. verbs of mood p. 9.	,		3
*Ariechen, to creep		ich froch	trieche	gefrochen
Ruren, to choose		ich fürte (for)	füre	gefürt
				(gekoren)
Laben, to load (a gun)			lane	geladen
Lassen, to let	du läffest, er läßt	ich ließ	I Tie	gelaffen
Laufen, to run	bu laufft, er lauft	ich lief	lause leibe	gelaufen
Leiben, to suffer		ich lieh	leihe	gelitten
Leihen, to lend	he finfalt on finft	ich las	lies	geliehen gelesen
Lejen, to read Liegen, to lie	du liefest, er lieft	ich lag	liege	gelegen
Lügen, to tell a lie	1	ich log	lüge	gelogen
Mahlen, to grind		ich mablte	mable	gemahlen
Meiben, to shun		ich mied	meibe	gemieden
Meiben, to shun Melfen, to milk	2 - 4	ich meltte	melte	gemolfen
		(molf)		
Messen, to measure	bu miffeft, er mißt	ich maß	miß	gemeffen
Mögen, may	see auxil. verbs of mood p. 15.			
Müffen, must	see auxil. verbs of mood p. 8.			
Nehmen, to take	bu nimmst, er nimmt	ich nahm	nimm.	genommen
Rennen, to name		ich nannte	nenne	genannt
Pfeifen, to whistle		ich pfiff	pfeife	gepfiffen
Bflegen, to be accus-	1	ich pflegte	pflege .	gepflegt (gepflogen)
tomed Preisen, to laud		(pflog) ich pries	preise	gepriefen
presion, so made		ind beica	Peccie	Baherelen

2nd & 3	rd Person singular		_	
INFINITIVE. INDICA	TIVE PRESENT	IMPERFECT	IMPERA-	PAST PAR-
if change	ed from 1st Person.		TIVE.	TICIPLE.
		1		
"Quellen, to spring forth bu quill		ich quoll		gequollen
Rathen, to advise bu räthst	, et tutij	ich rieth	rathe reibe	gerathen gerieben
Reiben, to rub Reißen, to tear		ich riß	reiße	geriffen
*Reiten, to ride		ich ritt	reite	geritten
*Mennen, to run		ich rannte	renne	gerannt
Riechen, to smell Ringen, to wring		ich roch	rieche	gerochen
Ringen, to wring		ich rang	ringe	gerungen
Rinnen, to leak		ich rann	rinne	geronnen
Rufen, to call		ich rief ich salzte	rufe	gerufen
Salzen, to salt saufen, to drink (of bu fäufst	ar fänft	ich foff	falze faufe	gefalzen gefoffen
animals)	, et luult	1011	lunic	Reinlierr
Saugen, to suck		ich faugte(fog)	fauge	gefaugt (gefo.
				gen)
Schaffen, to create		ich schuf	fc affe	geschaffen
*Scheiden, to part	-0	ich schied	icheibe	geschieben
Scheinen, to shine Scheiten, to scold Scheren, to shear	t, er schilt	ich schien	ideine idilt	geschienen
Scheren, to shoon			idere	gescholten
Schieben, to shove		ich ichoh	iniebe	geschoven geschoven
Schießen, to shoot		்ற ந்ற்று	ichieße	gefchoffen
Schinden, to flay	•	ich schund	idinbe	geschunden
Schlafen, to sleep bu ichläff	t, er schläft	ich schlief	idilafe	geschlafen
	st, er schlägt	ich schlug	ich lage	geschlagen
*Schleichen, to sneak		்த் திர்த்	ich leiche	gefchlichen
Schleifen, to sharpen		ich schliff ich schliff	ichleife	geschliffen
Schleißen, to slit Schließen, to shut		ich schloß	foleiße foließe	geschlissen
Schlingen, to twine			folinge	geschlossen geschlungen
Schmeißen, to fling		ich schmiß	dmeiße	geschmissen
Schmelzen, to melt bu ichmi	elzest (schmilzest), er	ich schmolz	ichmelze	geschmolzen
1 igmetz	t (schmilzt)			
Echnauben, to snort		ich schnaubte	schnaube	geschnaubt
Education to ant		(jchnob) ich schnitt	fcneibe .	(geschnoben)
Schneiben, to cut Schreiben, to write		ich schrieb	dreibe	geschnitten geschrieben
Schreien, to scream			fcreie	geschrieen
*Schreiten, to stride		ich schritt	(chreite	geschritten
Schweigen, to be silent			ich weige	geschwiegen
*~ * · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	C 10	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	(schweig)	
*Schwellen, to swell du schwill	lst, er schwillt	ich schwoll	ichwelle	geschwollen
*Schwimmen, to swim		ich schwamm	(jchwill)	a alah mamusan
Cujulitatett, to swim		in windittill	(jchwimm)	geschwommen
*Schwinden, to vanish		ich schwand	fdwinde	geschwunden
Schwingen, to swing Schwören, to swear		ich schwang	ichwinge	geschwungen
Schwören, to swear		ich schwor	ichwöre	geschworen
Gaham to and	6.61	(schwur)	Flax	
Sehen, to see bu siehst, *Sein, to be	er sieht	ich sah	fleh	gesehen
Senden, to send	ary verbs p. 4	ich fanbte	senbe	acianht (
		(jenbete)	101100	gesandt (ge
Sieben, to beil Singen, to sing		ich sott	stebe	gesotten
Singen, to sing		ich jang	finge	gefungen
*Sinten, to sink Sinnen, to muse			inte	gesunten
*Sitter to muse				gesonnen
*Sizen, to sit Sollen, shall, ought see auxil.	verbs of mood p. 12.	ich saß	fige	gesessen
Spalten, to split	verue di moote p. 12.	ich spaltete	ipalte	gespalten
Spalten, to split Speien, to spit		ich spie		gespatten
Spinnen, to spin		ich spann		gesponnen
	0.	1	3	

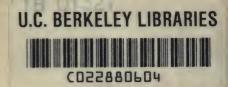
	-			
	2nd & 3rd Person singular		Trenma	D D.
Infinitive.	INDICATIVE PRESENT	IMPERFECT	IMPERA-	PAST PAR-
	if changed from 1st Person.		TIVE.	TICIPLE.
		1	-	
Spleißen, to split	5 . D. 180 D. 181	ich spliß	ipleiße .	gesplissen
Eprechen, to speak *Eprießen, to sprout	bu sprichst, er spricht	ich sprach	ipridi	gesprochen
*Epringen, to spring		ich fprang	iprieße ipringe	gesprossen
Stechen, to sting	bu ftichft, er fticht	ich stach	frich	gesprungen
*Steden, to stick	an lender on lende	ich ftedte (ftat)	ftede	geftochen geftedt
*Stehen, to stand		ich ftanb	itebe	gestanben
Stehlen, to steal	du stiehlst, er stiehlt.	ich stahl	stiehl	geftohlen
*Steigen, to mount	S. Stinks on Stinks	ich stieg	fteige	gestiegen
*Sterben, to die *Stieben, to be scat-	du stirbst, er stirbt	ich starb	ftirb	gestorben
tered scar-		itij koo	stiebe	gestoben
Stinken, to stink		ich ftant	ftinte	gestunten
Stoßen, to push	bu stößest, er stößt	ich ftieß	ftone	gestoßen
Streichen, to stroke		ich strich	ftreiche	gestrichen
Streiten, to strive		ich stritt	ftreite	gestritten
Thun, to do	ich thue, bu thust, er thut,	ich that	thue	gethan
Tragen, to carry	wir thun, etc. bu trägst, er trägt	ich trug	+====	
Treffen, to hit	bu triffft, er trifft	ich traf	trage	getragen
Treiben, to drive		ich trieb	treibe	getroffen
Treten, to kick	bu trittst, er tritt	ich trat	tritt	getreten
Triefen, to drip		ich triefte	triefe	getrieft
~		(trof)		
Trinten, to drink		ich trank	trinte	getrunten
Trügen, to cheat Berderben, to spoil	bu verdirbft, er verdirbt	ich verbarb	trüge verbirb	getrogen
Berdrießen, to vex	es verdrießt	es verbroß	Detotto	verborben verbroffen
Bergessen, to forget	bu vergiffeft, er vergißt	ich vergaß	pergiñ	vergessen
Berlieren, to lose		ich verlor	verliere	verloren
	du verlöschest (verlischest), er	ich verlosch	verlöjche	perloiden
tinguished, to go out		ide would W	(verlisch)	
*Verschallen, to disap-		ich verscholl	verichalle	verschollen
pear (a person) *Bachjen, to grow	bu machfest, er machft	ich wuchs	machie	gewachien
Bajden, to wash	bu majchest, er mascht	ich wusch	waiche	gewaschen
Wagen, to weigh		ich wog	mäge	gewogen
Weben, to weave		ich webte	webe	gewebt (ge-
***************************************		(mob)		moben)
*Beichen, to yield		ich wich ich wies	weiche	gewichen
Weisen, to show Wenden, to turn		ich wendete	weise wende	gewiesen gewendet (ge-
asenben, to turn		(manbte)	ibelibe	manbt)
Berben, to sue for	bu wirbft, er wirbt	ich warb	wirb	geworben
*Berben, to become	see auxiliary verbs p. 7.			
Werfen, to throw	bu wirfft, er wirft	ich warf	wirf	geworfen
Wiegen, to weigh		ich wog	wiege	gewogen
Winden, to wind	. E 15 S 151	ich wußte	winde wiffe	gewunden
Wissen, to know Wollen, will	ich weiß, du weißt, er weiß see auxil. verbs of mood p. 11.		TO CITE	gewußt
Beihen, to accuse of	зее шили. чегоз ој тооа р. 11.	ich zieh	zeihe	geziehen
Biehen, to draw		ich zog	ziehe	gezogen
Swingen, to force		ich zwang	zwinge	gezwungen
				1



CIRCULATION DEPARTMENT RETURN 202 Main Library LOAN PERIOD HOME USE 4 5 6 ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS RENEWALS AND RECHARGES MAY BE MADE 4 DAYS PRIOR TO DUE DATE. LOAN PERIODS ARE 1-MONTH, 3-MONTHS, AND 1-YEAR. RENEWALS: CALL (415) 642-3405 **DUE AS STAMPED BELOW** MAY 19 1990 REC'D NW 23 '90

UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA, BERKELEY BERKELEY, CA 94720 Ps

FORM NO. DD6, 60m, 1/83



926682

THE UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY

